

OWNER'S MANUAL

MAZDA 2

MAZDA MOTOR CORPORATION

OwnersManuals2.com

A Word to Mazda Owners

Thank you for choosing a Mazda. We at Mazda design and build vehicles with complete customer satisfaction in mind.

To help ensure enjoyable and trouble-free operation of your Mazda, read this manual carefully and follow its recommendations.

Regular servicing of your vehicle by an expert repairer helps maintain both its roadworthiness and its resale value. A world-wide network of Authorised Mazda Repairers can help you with their professional servicing expertise.
Their specially trained personnel are best qualified to service your Mazda vehicle properly and exactly. Also, they are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools and equipment specially developed for servicing Mazda vehicles. When maintenance or service is necessary, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

We assure you that all of us at Mazda have an ongoing interest in your motoring pleasure and in your full satisfaction with your Mazda product.

Mazda Motor Corporation
HIROSHIMA, JAPAN

Important Notes About This Manual
Keep this manual in the glove compartment as a handy reference for the safe and enjoyable use of your Mazda. Should you resell the vehicle, leave this manual with it for the next owner.

All specifications and descriptions are accurate at the time of printing. Because improvement is a constant goal at Mazda, we reserve the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice and without obligation.

Please be aware that this manual applies to all models, equipment and options. As a result, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

©2022 Mazda Motor Corporation
November 2022 (Print1)

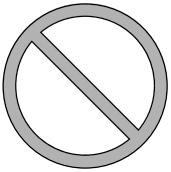
OwnersManuals2.com

How to Use This Manual

We want to help you get the most driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your owner's manual, when read from cover to cover, can do that in many ways.

Illustrations complement the words of the manual to best explain how to enjoy your Mazda. By reading your manual, you can find out about the features, important safety information, and driving under various road conditions.

The symbol below in this manual means “Do not do this” or “Do not let this happen”.



References to left hand and right hand are made as if facing in the same direction the vehicle faces. Although this manual explains a left-hand-drive model, it also applies to right-hand-drive models.

Index: A good place to start is the Index, an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

You'll find several WARNINGs, CAUTIONs, and NOTEs in the manual.

⚠ WARNING

A WARNING indicates a situation in which serious injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.

⚠ CAUTION

A CAUTION indicates a situation in which bodily injury or damage to your vehicle, or both, could result if the caution is ignored.

NOTE

A NOTE provides information and sometimes suggests how to make better use of your vehicle.

The following symbol, located on some parts of the vehicle, indicates that this manual contains information related to the part.
Please refer to the manual for a detailed explanation.



OwnersManuals2.com

Table of Contents

Pictorial Index 1
Interior, exterior views and part identification of your Mazda.

Essential Safety Equipment 2
Important information about safety equipment, including seats, seat belt system, child-restraint systems and SRS air bags.

Before Driving 3
Use of various features, including keys, doors, mirrors and windows.

When Driving 4
Information concerning safer driving and stopping.

Interior Features 5
Use of various features for ride comfort, including air-conditioning and audio system.

Maintenance and Care 6
How to keep your Mazda in top condition.

If Trouble Arises 7
Helpful information on what to do if a problem arises with the vehicle.

Customer Information 8
Important consumer information including warranties and add-on equipment.

Specifications 9
Technical information about your Mazda.

Index 10

OwnersManuals2.com

OwnersManuals2.com

1 Pictorial Index

Interior, exterior views and part identification of your Mazda.

Interior Overview (Left-Hand Drive Model).....1-2
Interior Equipment (View A).....1-2
Interior Equipment (View B).....1-3
Interior Equipment (View C).....1-4
Interior Equipment (View D).....1-5

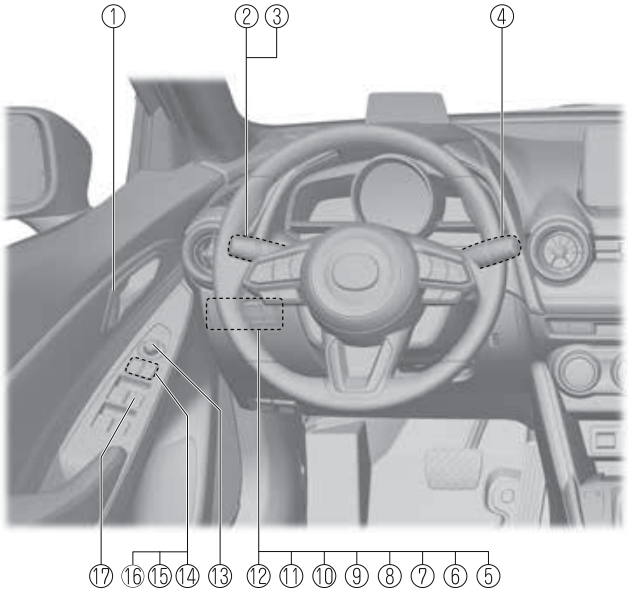
Interior Overview (Right-Hand Drive Model).....1-6
Interior Equipment (View A).....1-6
Interior Equipment (View B).....1-7
Interior Equipment (View C).....1-8
Interior Equipment (View D).....1-9

Exterior Overview.....1-10
Saloon.....1-10
Hatchback.....1-11

OwnersManuals2.com

Interior Overview (Left-Hand Drive Model)

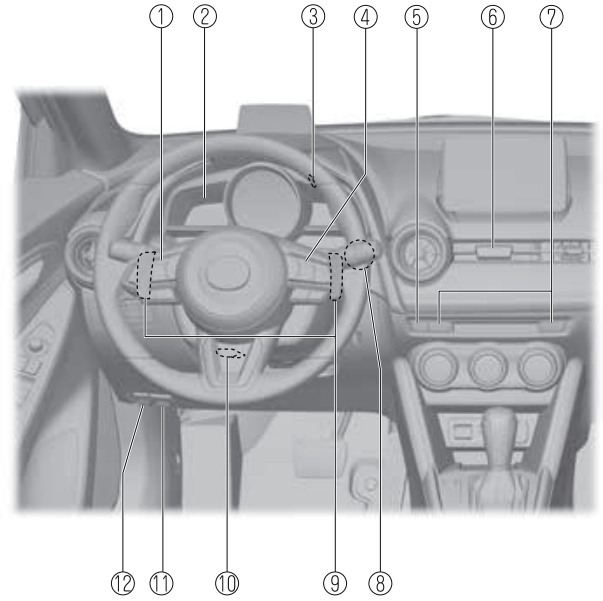
Interior Equipment (View A)



① Door-lock knob..... page 3-17
② Turn and lane-change signal.....page 4-70
③ Lighting control.....page 4-63
④ Wiper and washer lever.....page 4-71
⑤ Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF switch.....page 4-114
⑥ DSC OFF switch..... page 4-87
⑦ Tyre pressure monitoring system set switch.....page 4-225
⑧ i-stop OFF switch.....page 4-20
⑨ Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) OFF switch.....page 4-106
⑩ Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) OFF switch.....page 4-162, 4-173
⑪ Parking sensor switch..... page 4-239
⑫ 360° View Monitor switch.....page 4-183
⑬ Outside mirror switch.....page 3-29
⑭ Power window lock switch..... page 3-34
⑮ Outside mirror folding switch..... page 3-29
⑯ Door-lock switch..... page 3-16
⑰ Power window switch..... page 3-33

OwnersManuals2.com

Interior Equipment (View B)

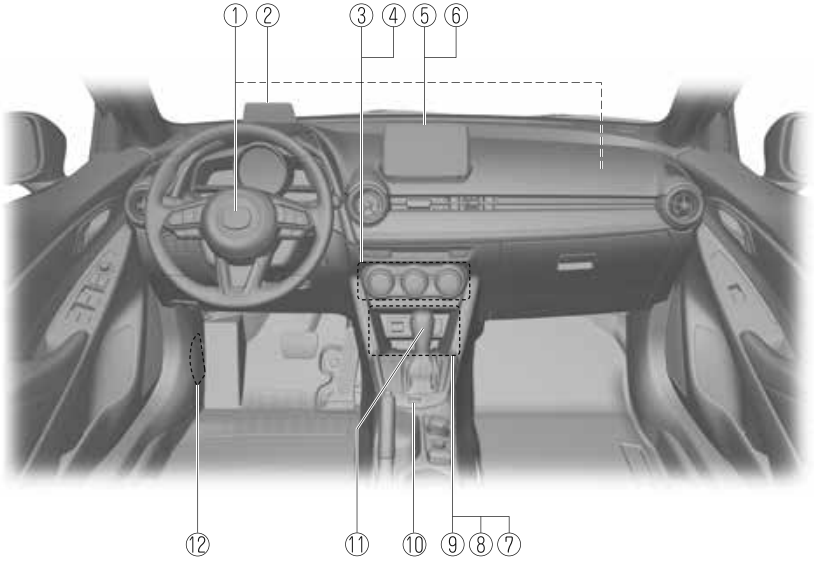


① Audio remote control switches..... page 5-15, 5-80
② Instrument cluster.....page 4-23
③ Instrument panel illumination knob..... page 4-30
④ Cruise control switches..... page 4-132, 4-218
⑤ Heated steering wheel switch.....page 2-20
⑥ Hazard warning flasher switch.....page 4-78
⑦ Seat warmer switches.....page 2-19
⑧ Push button start.....page 4-4
⑨ Steering shift switches.....page 4-57
⑩ Lock release lever..... page 2-5
⑪ Bonnet release handle..... page 6-18
⑫ Remote fuel-filler flap release.....page 3-27

OwnersManuals2.com

Interior Overview (Left-Hand Drive Model)

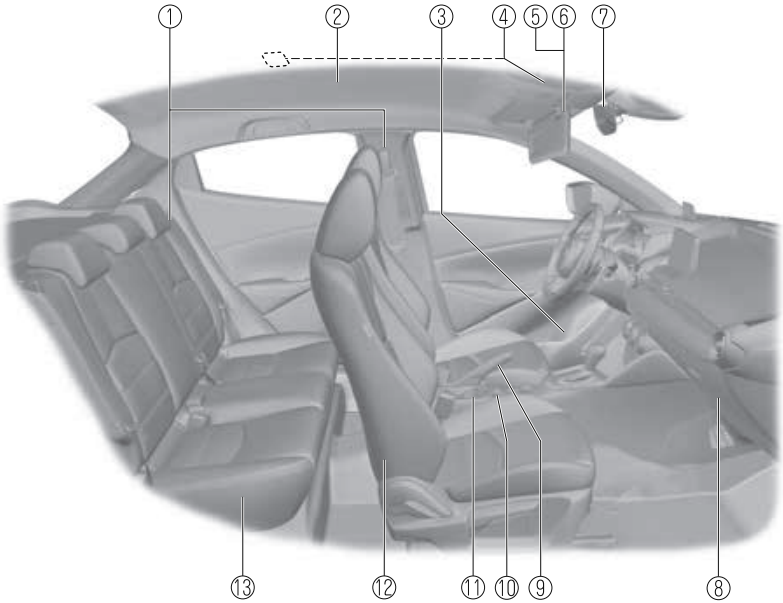
Interior Equipment (View C)



① SRS air bags..... page 2-47
② Active driving display..... page 4-36
③ Air-conditioning system..... page 5-2
④ Rear window defogger switch..... page 4-76
⑤ Audio..... page 5-21
⑥ Mazda Connect..... page 5-73
⑦ Wireless Charger (Qi)..... page 5-94
⑧ Accessory socket..... page 5-93
⑨ External input terminal..... page 5-17
⑩ Drive selection switch..... page 4-92
⑪ Shift lever/Selector lever..... page 4-49, 4-52
⑫ Fuse block (Left side)..... page 6-53

OwnersManuals2.com

Interior Equipment (View D)

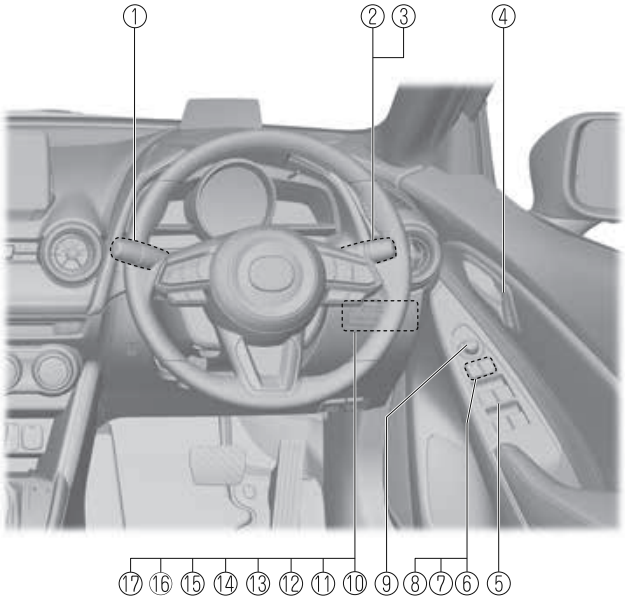


① Seat belts..... page 2-21
② SRS air bag.....page 2-47
③ Bottle holder.....page 5-99
④ Overhead lights..... page 5-91
⑤ Sunvisor.....page 5-91
⑥ Vanity mirror..... page 5-91
⑦ Rearview mirror..... page 3-31
⑧ Glove compartment.....page 5-100
⑨ Parking brake..... page 4-80
⑩ Commander switch.....page 5-78
⑪ Cup holder.....page 5-98
⑫ Front seat.....page 2-5
⑬ Rear seat..... page 2-14

OwnersManuals2.com

Interior Overview (Right-Hand Drive Model)

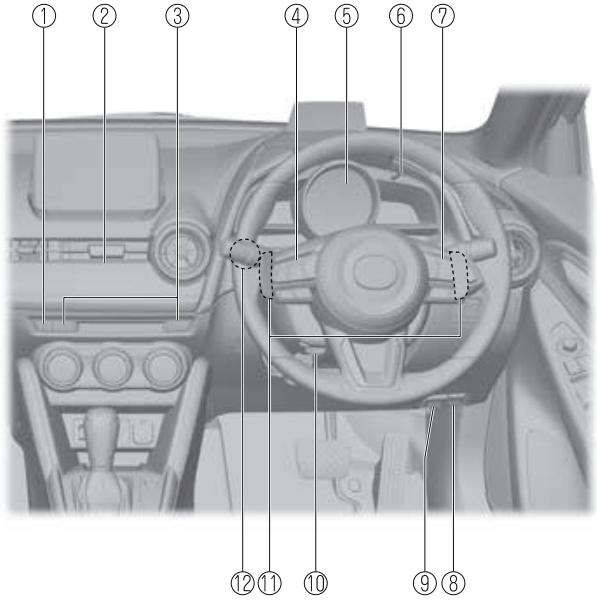
Interior Equipment (View A)



① Wiper and washer lever.....page 4-71
② Turn and lane-change signal.....page 4-70
③ Lighting control.....page 4-63
④ Door-lock knob..... page 3-17
⑤ Power window switch..... page 3-33
⑥ Power window lock switch..... page 3-34
⑦ Door-lock switch.....page 3-16
⑧ Outside mirror folding switch..... page 3-29
⑨ Outside mirror switch.....page 3-29
⑩ DSC OFF switch..... page 4-87
⑪ Tyre pressure monitoring system set switch.....page 4-225
⑫ i-stop OFF switch.....page 4-20
⑬ Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) OFF switch.....page 4-106
⑭ Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) OFF switch.....page 4-162, 4-173
⑮ Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF switch.....page 4-114
⑯ Parking sensor switch..... page 4-239
⑰ 360° View Monitor switch.....page 4-183

OwnersManuals2.com

Interior Equipment (View B)

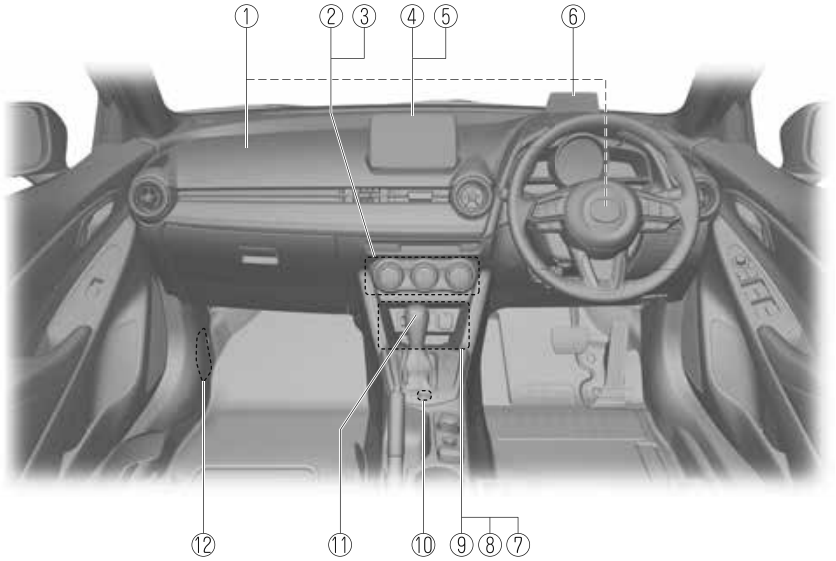


① Heated steering wheel switch.....page 2-20
② Hazard warning flasher switch.....page 4-78
③ Seat warmer switches.....page 2-19
④ Audio remote control switches..... page 5-15, 5-80
⑤ Instrument cluster.....page 4-23
⑥ Instrument panel illumination knob..... page 4-30
⑦ Cruise control switches..... page 4-132, 4-218
⑧ Boot release button.....page 3-19
⑨ Remote fuel-filler flap release.....page 3-27
⑩ Bonnet release handle..... page 6-18
⑪ Lock release lever..... page 2-5
⑫ Steering shift switches.....page 4-57
⑬ Push button start.....page 4-4

OwnersManuals2.com

Interior Overview (Right-Hand Drive Model)

Interior Equipment (View C)

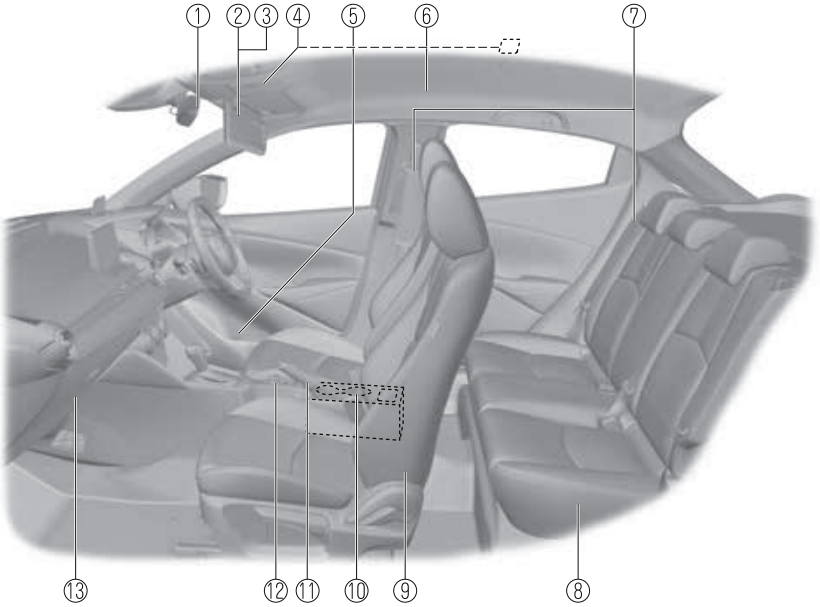


① SRS air bags..... page 2-47
② Air-conditioning system..... page 5-2
③ Rear window defogger switch..... page 4-76
④ Audio..... page 5-21
⑤ Mazda Connect..... page 5-73
⑥ Active driving display..... page 4-36
⑦ Wireless Charger (Qi)..... page 5-94
⑧ Accessory socket..... page 5-93
⑨ External input terminal..... page 5-17
⑩ Drive selection switch..... page 4-92
⑪ Shift lever/Selector lever..... page 4-49, 4-52
⑫ Fuse block (Left side)..... page 6-53

OwnersManuals2.com

Interior Overview (Right-Hand Drive Model)

Interior Equipment (View D)

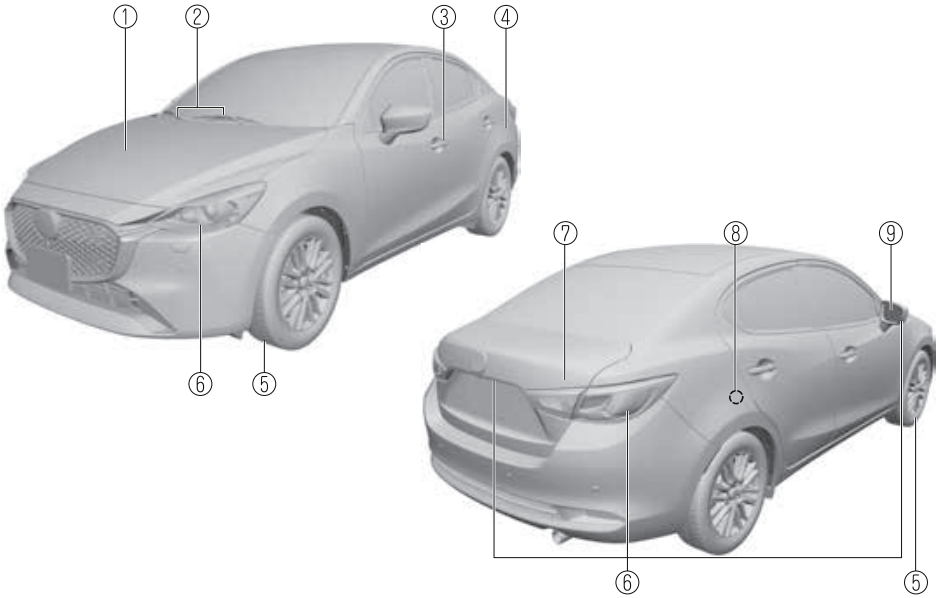


① Rearview mirror..... page 3-31
② Sunvisor.....page 5-91
③ Vanity mirror..... page 5-91
④ Overhead lights..... page 5-91
⑤ Bottle holder.....page 5-99
⑥ SRS air bag.....page 2-47
⑦ Seat belts..... page 2-21
⑧ Rear seat..... page 2-14
⑨ Front seat.....page 2-5
⑩ Cup holder.....page 5-98
⑪ Parking brake..... page 4-80
⑫ Commander switch.....page 5-78
⑬ Glove compartment.....page 5-100

OwnersManuals2.com

Exterior Overview

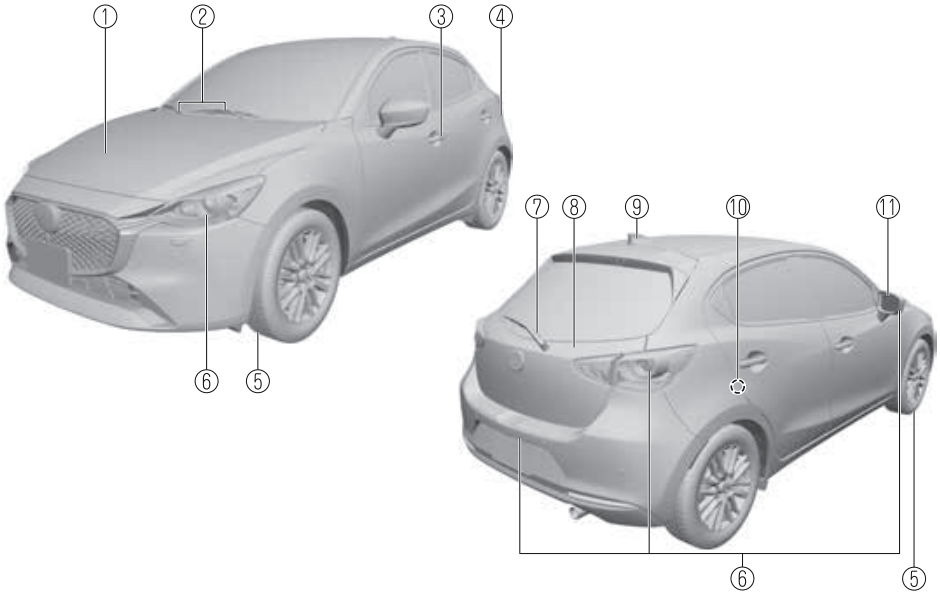
Saloon



① Bonnet..... page 6-18
② Windscreen wiper blades.....page 6-31
③ Door and key.....page 3-12
④ Fuel-filler flap..... page 3-27
⑤ Wheels and Tyres..... page 6-40
⑥ Exterior lights.....page 6-44
⑦ Boot lid.....page 3-19
⑧ Child safety lock..... page 3-18
⑨ Outside mirror..... page 3-29

OwnersManuals2.com

Hatchback



① Bonnet..... page 6-18
② Windscreen wiper blades.....page 6-31
③ Door and key..... page 3-12
④ Fuel-filler flap..... page 3-27
⑤ Wheels and Tyres..... page 6-40
⑥ Exterior lights.....page 6-44
⑦ Rear window wiper blade.....page 6-34
⑧ Liftgate..... page 3-19
⑨ Aerial.....page 5-19
⑩ Child safety lock..... page 3-18
⑪ Outside mirror..... page 3-29

OwnersManuals2.com

MEMO

OwnersManuals2.com

2 Essential Safety Equipment

Important information about safety equipment, including seats, seat belt system, child-restraint systems and SRS air bags.

Seats.....2-2
- Seat Precautions.....2-2
- Front Seat.....2-5
- Rear Seat.....2-14
- Head Restraints.....2-17

Seat Warmer/Heated Steering Wheel.....2-19
- Seat Warmer*.....2-19
- Heated Steering Wheel*..... 2-20

Seat Belt Systems.....2-21
- Seat Belt Precautions.....2-21
- Seat Belt.....2-24
- Seat Belt Warning Systems.....2-25
- Seat Belt Pretensioner and Load Limiting Systems.....2-26

Child Restraint..... 2-28
- Child-Restraint Precautions.....2-28
- Child-Restraint System Installation..... 2-33
- Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions Table..... 2-38
- Installing Child-Restraint Systems.....2-43

SRS Air Bags.....2-47
- Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) Precautions.....2-47
- Front Passenger Air Bag Deactivation Switch*.....2-52
- Supplementary Restraint System Components.....2-55
- How the SRS Air Bags Work..... 2-56
- SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria.....2-59
- Limitations to SRS Air Bag.....2-60
- Constant Monitoring.....2-62

OwnersManuals2.com

Seat Precautions

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the adjustable components of a seat are locked in place:
Adjustable seats and seatbacks that are not securely locked are dangerous. In a sudden stop or collision, the seat or seatback could move, causing injury. Make sure the adjustable components of the seat are locked in place by attempting to slide the seat forward and backward and rocking the seatback.

Never allow children to adjust a seat:
Allowing children to adjust a seat is dangerous as it could result in serious injury if a child's hands or feet become caught in the seat.

Do not drive with the seatback unlocked:
All of the seatbacks play an important role in your protection in a vehicle. Leaving the seatback unlocked is dangerous as it can allow passengers to be ejected or thrown around and baggage to strike occupants in a sudden stop or collision, resulting in severe injury. After adjusting the seatback at any time, even when there are no other passengers, rock the seatback to make sure it is locked in place.

Adjust a seat only when the vehicle is stopped:
If the seat is adjusted while the vehicle is being driven, the seating posture may become unstable and the seat could move unexpectedly resulting in injury.

Do not modify or replace the front seats:
Modifying or replacing the front seats such as replacing the upholstery or loosening any bolts is dangerous. The front seats contain air bag components essential to the supplementary restraint system. Such modifications could damage the supplementary restraint system and result in serious injury. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) if there is any need to remove or reinstall the front seats.

Do not drive with damaged front seats:
Driving with damaged front seats, such as seat cushions torn or damaged down to the urethane, is dangerous. A collision, even one not strong enough to inflate the air bags, could damage the front seats which contain essential air bag components. If there was a subsequent collision, an air bag may not deploy which could lead to injuries. Always have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) inspect the front seats, front seat belt pretensioners and air bags after a collision.

OwnersManuals2.com

Do not drive with either front seats reclined:
Sitting in a reclined position while the vehicle is moving is dangerous because you do not get the full protection from seat belts. During sudden braking or a collision, you can slide under the lap belt and suffer serious internal injuries. For maximum protection, sit well back and upright.

Do not place an object such as a cushion between the seatback and your back:
Putting an object such as a cushion between the seatback and your back is dangerous because you will be unable to maintain a safe driving posture and the seat belt cannot function at its full capacity in a collision, which could result in a serious accident, injury or death.

Do not place objects under the seat:
The object could get stuck and cause the seat to not be fixed securely, and result in an accident.

Do not stack cargo higher than the seatbacks:
Stacking luggage or other cargo higher than the seatbacks is dangerous. During sudden braking or a collision, objects can fly around and become projectiles that may hit and injure passengers.

Make sure luggage and cargo is secured before driving:
Not securing cargo while driving is dangerous as it could move or be crushed during sudden braking or a collision and cause injury.
Additionally, if the air bags deploy, the cargo may scatter which could result in serious injury or death.

Never allow a passenger to sit or stand on the folded seatback while the vehicle is moving:
Driving with a passenger on the folded seatback is dangerous. Allowing a child to sit up on the folded seatback while the vehicle is moving is particularly dangerous. In a sudden stop or even a minor collision, a child not in a proper seat or child-restraint system and seat belt could be thrown forward, back or even out of the vehicle resulting in serious injuries or death. The child in the baggage area could be thrown into other occupants and cause serious injury.

Never give the car keys to children and do not allow them to play in the vehicle (Saloon):
Playing with the folding rear seats is dangerous. Once the seatbacks are back up, a child in the boot would not be able to get out the way they had entered. If you have small children, keep the seatbacks locked.

OwnersManuals2.com

Seats

Always leave your car locked and keep the car keys safely away from children (Saloon):
Leaving your car unlocked or the keys in reach of children is dangerous. Children who find their way into the boot through an unlocked rear seatback or an open boot can become accidentally locked in the boot. This could result in death or brain damage from heat prostration, particularly in the summer. Always lock the doors and the boot, and as an added measure, keep the rear seatbacks locked, whether you have children in your home or not.

⚠ CAUTION

- *When operating a seat, be careful not to put your hands or fingers near the moving parts of the seat or on the side trim to prevent injury.*
- *When moving the seats, make sure there is no cargo in the surrounding area. If the cargo gets caught it could damage the cargo.*
- *When moving the seats forward and rearward or returning a rear-reclined seatback to its upright position, make sure you hold onto the seatback with your hand while operating. If the seatback is not held, the seat will move suddenly and could cause injury.*
- *When inserting your hand under the seat to clean the cabin or pick up something you dropped under the seat, be careful not to hurt yourself. If you contact the moving parts of the seat rail or seat frame, it could result in injury.*

NOTE

- *When returning a rear seat to its original position, place the seat belt in its normal position. Verify that the seat belt pulls out and retracts.*

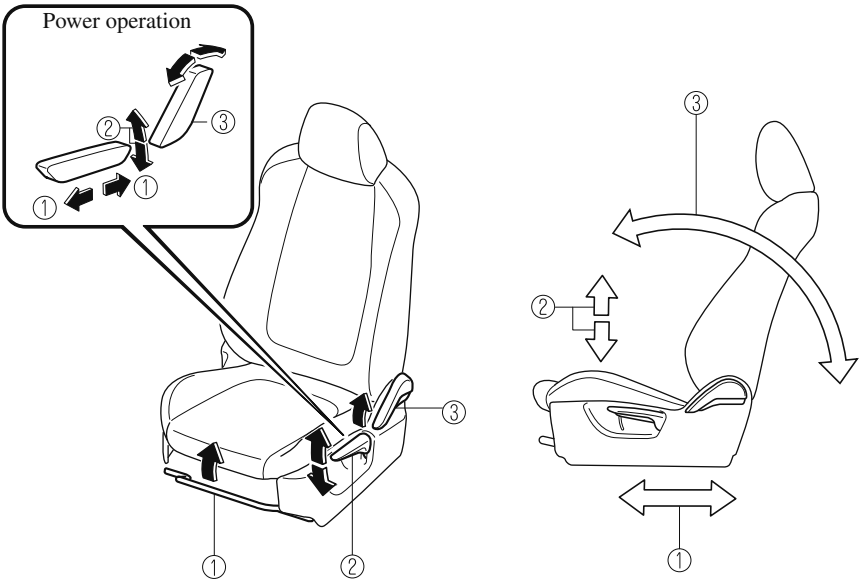
OwnersManuals2.com

Front Seat

▼ Adjusting the Driver's Seat

Using the driving position set up procedure recommended by Mazda allows you to maintain a relaxed posture, drive the vehicle for longer periods without feeling tired, and make quick operations naturally.
Also, you can be assured of a clear view in the forward direction to help you drive more safely and comfortably.
The adjustments for the driving position recommended by Mazda are done using the following procedures.

1. Moving the steering wheel and seat to their default positions.
2. Adjusting the seatback angle.
3. Adjusting the seat position forward and back.
4. Adjusting the seat height.
5. Adjusting the steering wheel position.
6. Adjusting the head restraint position.



① Seat Slide

(Manual Seat)

To move a seat forward or backward, raise the lever and slide the seat to the desired position and release the lever.

OwnersManuals2.com

Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seat is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.
(Power Seat)
To slide the seat, move the slide lifter switch on the outside of the seat to the front or back and hold it. Release the switch at the desired position.

② **Height Adjustment**
(Manual Seat)
To adjust the seat height, move the lever up or down.
(Power Seat)
To adjust the seat height, move the slide lifter switch up or down.

③ **Seat Recline**
(Manual Seat)
To change the seatback angle, lean forward slightly while raising the lever. Then lean back to the desired position and release the lever.
Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seatback is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.
(Power Seat)
To change the seatback angle, press the front or rear side of the reclining switch. Release the switch at the desired position.

Before making adjustments to the driving position recommended by Mazda

Before making adjustments, move the steering wheel and seat to their default positions.

How to move the steering wheel to its default position

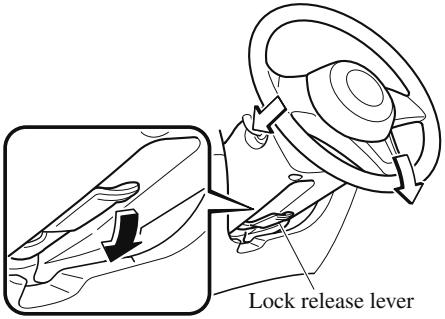
⚠ WARNING

Never adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving:
Adjusting the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Moving it can very easily cause the driver to abruptly turn to the left or right. This can lead to loss of control or an accident.

After adjusting the steering wheel position, make sure it is securely locked by trying to move it up and down:
Driving with the steering wheel not securely locked in position is dangerous. If the steering wheel moves unexpectedly while driving, you could lose control of the steering resulting in an accident.

OwnersManuals2.com

Lower the lever, move the steering wheel to the lowest position, and then push it down and all the way back.



How to move a driver's seat to its default position

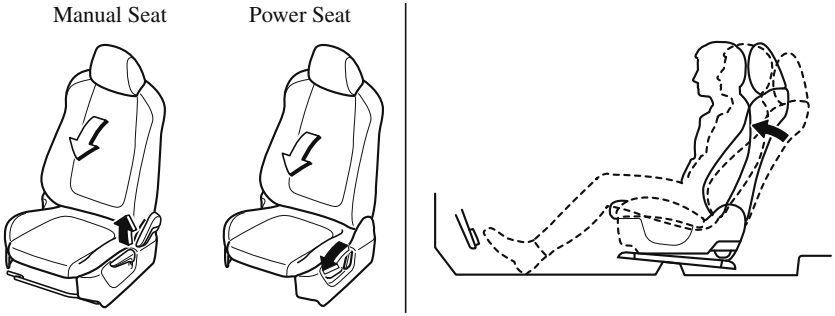
1. Slide the seat all the way back.
2. Lower the seat to its lowest height.
3. Sit squarely in the seat and rest your back against the seatback.

Seat adjustment procedure for the driving position recommended by Mazda

Adjusting the seatback angle (reclining)

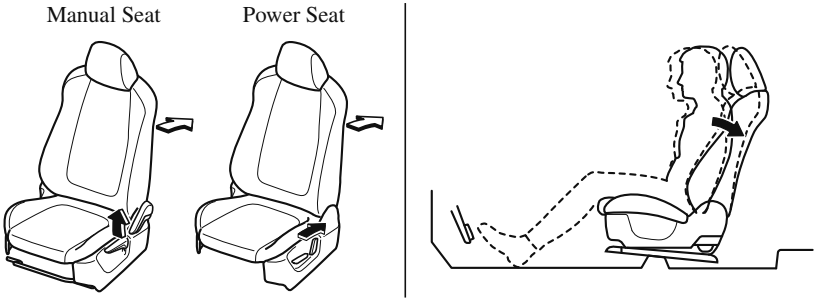
Adjust the seatback to the angle providing a comfortable seated posture.

1. With your posture slightly slouched, move the seatback forward to the angle where your waist feels slightly cramped.



OwnersManuals2.com

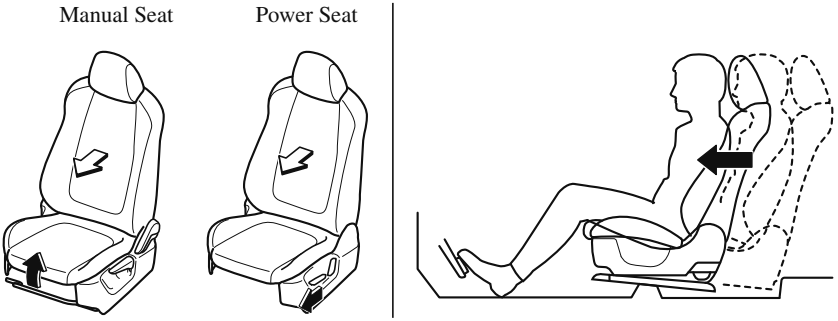
2. Move the seatback backward to a comfortable seated posture without any feeling of cramping in your waist.



Adjusting the seat position forward and back (sliding)

Adjust the seat to the position best for operating the accelerator and brake pedals.

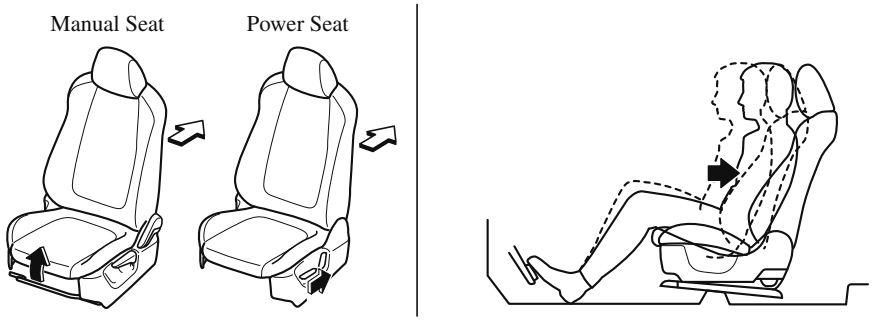
1. Place your left foot on the footrest, your right foot between the accelerator and brake pedals, and position your heel to the position allowing easy switching between the pedals.
2. With your heel set on the floor, set your right foot on the brake pedal and move the seat forward as far as possible until you feel a slight cramping in your ankle.



3. With your right foot set on the brake pedal, move the seat back until you no longer feel cramping in your ankle.
4. With your heel set on the floor, make sure you can move your foot between the brake pedal and accelerator pedal smoothly.

OwnersManuals2.com

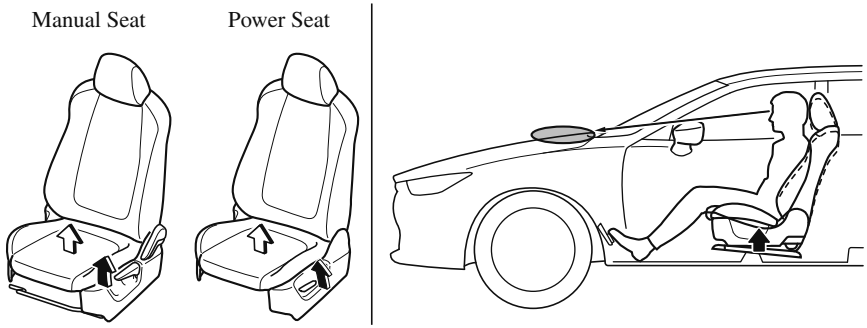
5. Depress the accelerator pedal completely with your heel set on the floor and make sure that your ankle does not feel over-stretched.



Adjusting the seat height

Adjust the seat height to a position where you have a clear forward view and you can drive the vehicle easily.

1. With your back resting against the seatback, raise the seat to the height where you can see the rear edge area of the bonnet surface from the windscreen.
   With the manual seat, if you raise the seat height, the seat moves forward. Adjust the seat forward or back again.

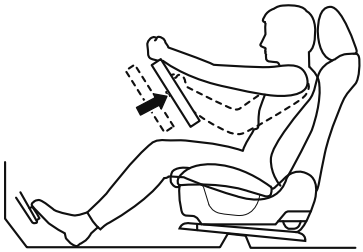


Adjusting the steering wheel position

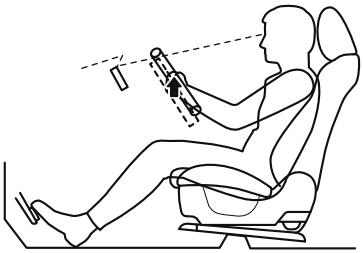
Adjust the steering wheel to the position where it can be operated easily and the gauges can be viewed easily.

OwnersManuals2.com

1. With your back resting against the seatback, extend both arms, place them on the top of the steering wheel, and pull the steering wheel towards you to the position of your wrists.



2. Adjust the steering wheel height so that the gauges can be viewed easily.
3. Raise the lever to securely lock the steering wheel.



Adjusting the head restraint position

To prevent shock to the head and neck, adjust the head restraints to their correct positions. Refer to Height Adjustment on page 2-17.

OwnersManuals2.com

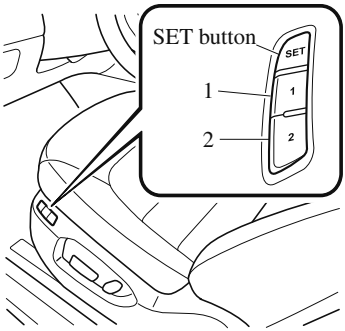
▼ Driving Position Memory*

The desired driving position can be called up after programming the position.
The following driving positions can be programmed.

- Driver's seat position (seat slide, height adjustment, seat recline)
  Refer to Adjusting the Driver's Seat on page 2-5.
- Active driving display (display position, brightness level, display information)
  Refer to Active Driving Display on page 4-36.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not place fingers or hands around the bottom of the seat while the seat memory function is operating. The seat moves automatically while the seat memory function is operating and fingers or hands could get pinched and injured.



A driving position can be programmed or operated using the buttons on the side of the seat or the key.

NOTE

- *A driving position can be programmed to the buttons on the side of the seat and the key in use for driving the vehicle.*
- *If the vehicle has been serviced and the lead-acid battery leads disconnected, the programmed seat positions will have been erased. Re-programme the seat positions.*

Programming

1. Make sure the parking brake is on.
2. Make sure the selector lever is in the P position.
3. Start the engine.
4. Adjust the seat and the active driving display to the desired driving position.
5. Press the SET button on the seat until a beep sound is heard 1 time.
6. Perform one of the following settings within 5 seconds of completing step 5 above:
   - **Programming using a button on the side of the seat**
     Press the button you want to programme, either button 1 or 2, until a beep sound is heard 1 time.
   - **Programming using the key**
     Press the key unlock button until a beep sound is heard 1 time.

NOTE

If a beep sound is heard 3 times, the operation is cancelled.

To move the driving position to a programmed position

(Using a button on the side of the seat)

1. Make sure the parking brake is on.
2. Make sure the selector lever is in the P position.

OwnersManuals2.com

3. Start the engine.
4. Press the programming button for the driving position you want to call up (button 1 or 2).
5. A beep sound is heard when the driving position adjustment is completed.

NOTE

· If the driving position movement is not changed, only the beep sounds.
· A seat position can be called up even with the engine not running.
· The driving position adjustment is cancelled in the following cases:

· Any of the seat adjustment switches is operated.
· The SET button is pressed.
· Programming button 1 or 2 is pressed.
· The key lock button or unlock button is operated.
· The vehicle starts moving.
· The active driving display is adjusted.

(Using a programmed key)

1. Unlock the doors by pressing a request switch or the key unlock button.
2. After unlocking the doors, the seat position adjustment begins within 40 seconds of opening the driver's door, and a beep sounds when the operation is finished.
3. Make sure the parking brake is on.
4. Make sure the selector lever is in the P position.
5. Start the engine.
6. The active driving display adjustment begins.

NOTE

· If there is no driving position movement, a beep is not heard.
· The driving position adjustment is cancelled in the following cases:

· Any of the seat adjustment switches is operated.
· The SET button is pressed.
· Programming button 1 or 2 is pressed.
· The key lock button or unlock button is operated.
· The vehicle starts moving.
· The active driving display is adjusted.

Erasing programmed driving positions

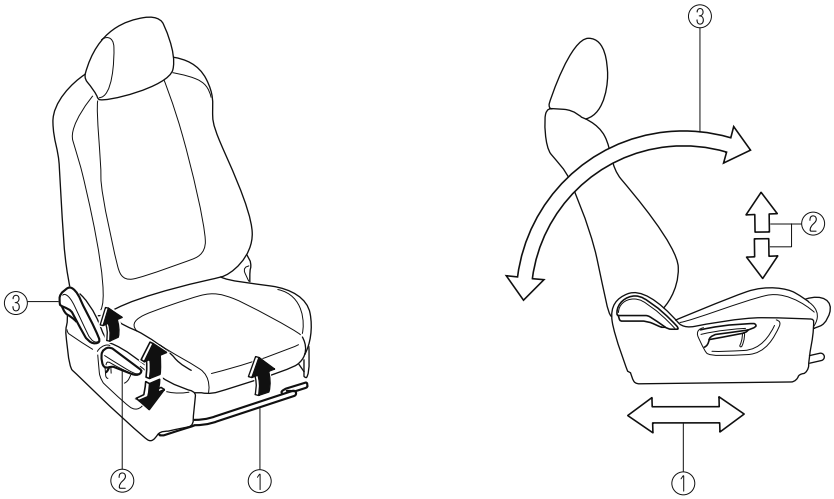
(Erasing the driving positions programmed to the key)

1. Switch the ignition OFF.
2. Press the SET button on the side of the seat until a beep sound is heard 1 time.
3. After the beep sounds, press the key lock button within 5 seconds until a beep sound is heard 1 time.

NOTE
If a beep sound is heard 3 times, the operation is cancelled.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Adjusting the Front Passenger's Seat



① Seat Slide

To move a seat forward or backward, raise the lever and slide the seat to the desired position and release the lever.

Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seat is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

②Height Adjustment*

To adjust the seat height, move the lever up or down.

③ Seat Recline

To change the seatback angle, lean forward slightly while raising the lever. Then lean back to the desired position and release the lever.

Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seatback is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

OwnersManuals2.com

Rear Seat

▼ Split/One-piece Folding the Seatback

By lowering the rear seatback(s) the luggage compartment space can be expanded.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive the vehicle with occupants on folded down seatback(s) or in the luggage compartment.
Putting occupants in the luggage compartment is dangerous because seat belts cannot be fastened which could lead to serious injury or death during sudden braking or a collision.

Do not allow children to play inside the vehicle with the seatback(s) lowered.
Allowing children to play in the vehicle with the seatback(s) folded down is dangerous. If a child enters the luggage compartment and the seatback(s) were raised back up, the child may become trapped in the luggage compartment which could lead to an accident.

Tightly secure cargo in the luggage compartment when it is transported with the seatback(s) folded down.
Driving without tightly securing cargo and luggage is dangerous as it could move and become an obstruction to driving during emergency braking or a collision resulting in an unexpected accident.

When transporting cargo, do not allow the cargo to exceed the height of the seatback(s).
Transporting cargo stacked higher than the seatback(s) is dangerous as visibility to the rear and sides of the vehicle is reduced which could interfere with driving operations and lead to an accident.

Lowering the seatback(s)

⚠ CAUTION

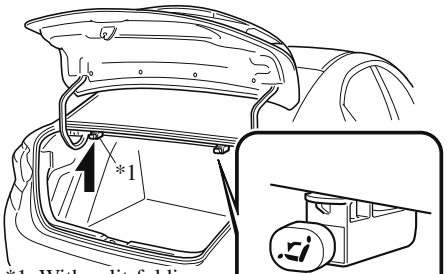
- ***(Hatchback)***
  When folding the seatback forward, always support the seatback with your hand. If it is not supported by a hand, fingers or the hand pressing the push knob could be injured.
- *Check the position of a front seat before folding a rear seatback.*
  Depending on the position of a front seat, it may not be possible to fold a rear seatback all the way down because it may hit the seatback of the front seat which could scratch or damage the front seat or its pocket. Remove the head restraint on the rear outboard seat if necessary.

(Saloon)

1. If your vehicle is equipped with the head restraint, lower it all the way down.
   Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-17.

OwnersManuals2.com

2. **(Split-folding type seat)**
   Open the boot lid and pull the lever of the seatback you want to fold down.
   (One-piece folding type seat)
   Open the boot lid and pull the lever of the seatback.

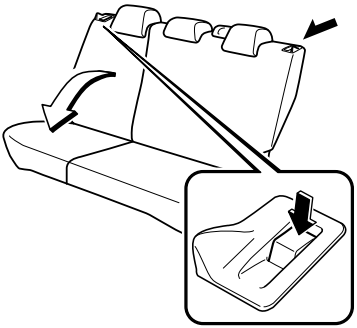


*1: With split-folding type seat only

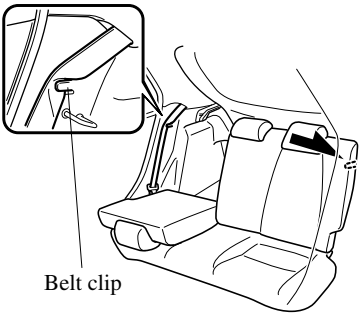
3. Open a rear door and fold the rear seat forward.

(Hatchback)

1. Lower the head restraint all the way down.
   Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-17.
2. **(Split-folding type seat)**
   Press the push knob to fold down the seatback you want to fold down.
   (One-piece folding type seat)
   Press the push knob to fold down the seatback.



3. Secure the rear seat belt in the belt clip.



To return the seatback to its upright position:

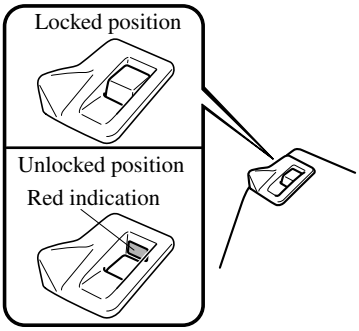
⚠ WARNING

When returning a seatback to its upright position, make sure the 3-point seat belt is not caught in the seatback and the 3-point seat belt is not twisted.
If the seat belt is used while it is twisted and caught in the seatback, the seat belt cannot function at its full capacity, which could cause serious injury or death.

OwnersManuals2.com

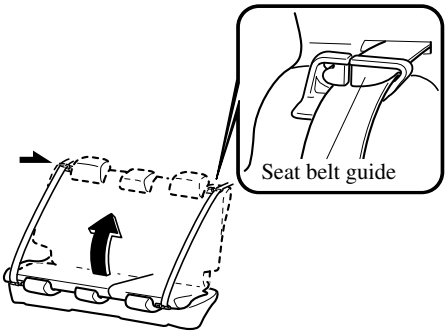
When returning a seatback to its upright position, make sure that it is firmly locked and the red indication is not visible (Hatchback).

If the red indication is visible behind the push knob, it means the seatback is not locked. If the vehicle is driven without the seatback locked, it could fold down suddenly and cause an accident.



(Saloon)

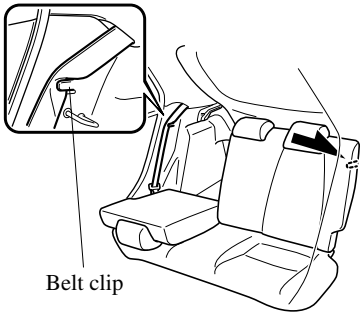
1. Make sure that the seat belt passes through the seat belt guide correctly and it is not twisted, then raise the seatback while preventing the seat belt from being caught in the seatback.



2. Press the seatback rearward and lock it in place. After returning the seatback to its upright position, make sure it is securely locked.

(Hatchback)

1. Verify that the seat belt is secured in the belt clip.



2. Lift the seatback upright.
3. Press the seatback rearward and lock it in place. After returning the seatback to its upright position, make sure it is securely locked.
4. Make sure that the seat belt is neither stuck in the rear seat nor twisted, then remove the seat belt from the belt clip.

OwnersManuals2.com

Head Restraints

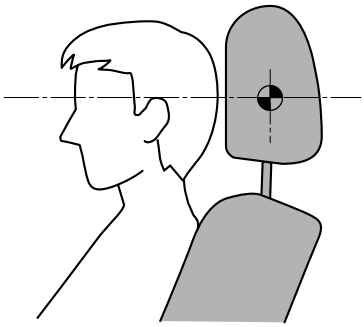
Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints on all outboard seats and the rear centre seat. The head restraints are intended to help protect you and the passengers from neck injury.

⚠ WARNING

Always drive with the head restraints installed when seats are being used and make sure they are properly adjusted. In addition, always raise the head restraints on all rear seats when they are being used:
Driving with the head restraints adjusted too low or removed is dangerous. With no support behind your head, your neck could be seriously injured in a collision.

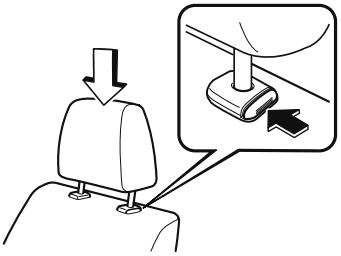
▼ Height Adjustment

Adjust the head restraint so that the centre is even with the top of the passenger's ears.

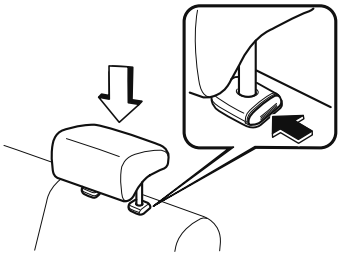


To raise a head restraint, pull it up to the desired position.
To lower the head restraint, press the stop-catch release, then push the head restraint down.

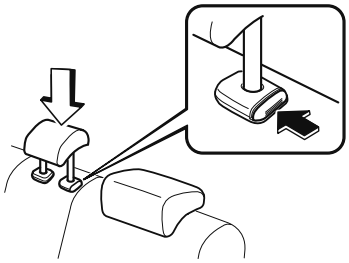
Front seats



Rear outboard seats



Rear centre seat



▼ Removal/Installation

To remove the head restraint, pull it up while pressing the stop-catch.
To install the head restraint, insert the legs into the holes while pressing the stop-catch.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ WARNING

Always drive with the head restraints installed when seats are being used and make sure they are properly installed:
Driving with the head restraints not installed is dangerous. With no support behind your head, your neck could be seriously injured in a collision.

After installing a head restraint, try lifting it to make sure that it does not pull out:
Driving with an unsecured head restraint is dangerous as the effectiveness of the head restraint will be compromised which could cause it to unexpectedly detach from the seat.

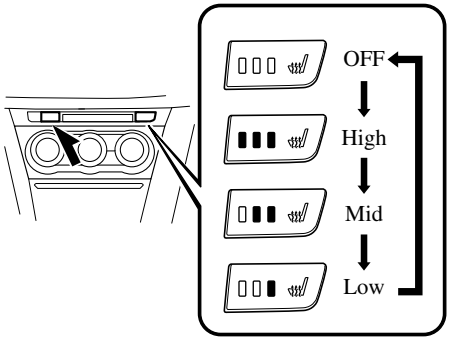
⚠ CAUTION

- *When installing a head restraint, make sure that it is installed correctly with the front of the head restraint facing forward. If the head restraint is installed incorrectly, it could detach from the seat during a collision and result in injury.*
- *The head restraints on each of the front and rear seats are specialized to each seat. Do not switch around the head restraint positions. If a head restraint is not installed to its correct seat position, the effectiveness of the head restraint during a collision will be compromised which could cause injury.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Seat Warmer*

The front seats are electrically heated. The ignition must be switched ON.
Press the seat warmer switch while the ignition is switched ON to operate the seat warmer. The indicator lights turn on to indicate that the seat warmer is operating. The mode changes as follows each time the seat warmer switch is pressed.



⚠ WARNING

Be careful when using the seat warmer:
The heat from the seat warmer may be too hot for some people, as indicated as follows, and could cause a low-temperature burn.

- *Infants, small children, elderly people, and physically challenged people*
- *People with delicate skin*
- *People who are excessively fatigued*
- *People who are intoxicated*
- *People who have taken sleep-inducing medicine such as sleeping pills or cold medicine*

Do not use the seat warmer with anything having high moisture-retention ability such as a blanket or cushion on the seat:
The seat may be heated excessively and cause a low-temperature burn.

Do not use the seat warmer even when taking a short nap in the vehicle:
The seat may be heated excessively and cause a low-temperature burn.

Do not place heavy objects with sharp projections on the seat, or insert needles or pins into it:
This could cause the seat to become excessively heated and result in injury from a minor burn.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not use organic solvents to clean the seat. It may damage the seat surface and the heater.*

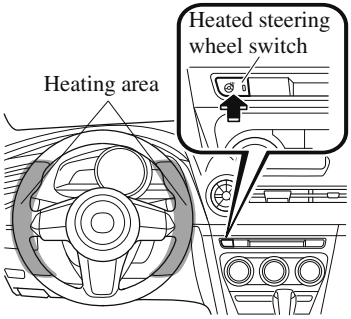
NOTE

- *Use the seat warmer when the engine is running. Leaving the seat warmer on for long periods with the engine not running could cause the lead-acid battery power to be depleted.*
- *If the ignition is switched off while the seat warmer is operating (High, Mid or Low) and then switched ON again, the seat warmer will automatically operate at the temperature set before switching off the ignition.*
- *The temperature of the seat warmer cannot be adjusted beyond High, Mid and Low because the seat warmer is controlled by a thermostat.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Heated Steering Wheel*

The grips on the left and right of the steering wheel can be warmed up.



The ignition must be switched ON.

Press the switch to turn on the heated steering wheel. The heated steering wheel operates for about 30 minutes and then turns off automatically.
The indicator light illuminates when the heater is operating.

To turn off the heated steering wheel before the 30 minutes has elapsed, press the switch again.

⚠ CAUTION

The following types of persons should be careful not to touch the steering wheel. Otherwise, it could cause a low-temperature burn.

- *Infants, small children, elderly people, and physically challenged people*
- *People with delicate skin*
- *People who are excessively fatigued*
- *People who are intoxicated*
- *People who have taken sleep-inducing medicine such as sleeping pills or cold medicine*

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Seat Belt Precautions

Seat belts help to decrease the possibility of severe injury during accidents and sudden stops. Mazda recommends that the driver and all passengers always wear seat belts.
All the seats have lap/shoulder belts. These belts also have retractors with inertia locks that keep them out of the way when not in use. The locks allow the belts to remain comfortable on users, but they will lock in position during a collision.

⚠ WARNING

Always wear your seat belt and make sure all occupants are properly restrained:
Not wearing a seat belt is extremely dangerous. During a collision, occupants not wearing seat belts could hit someone or things inside the vehicle or even be thrown out of the vehicle. They could be seriously injured or even killed. In the same collision, occupants wearing seat belts would be much safer.

Do not wear twisted seat belts:
Twisted seat belts are dangerous. In a collision, the full width of the belt is not available to absorb the impact. This puts more force on the bones beneath the belt, which could cause serious injury or death. So, if your seat belt is twisted, you must straighten the seat belt to remove any twists and to allow the full width of the belt to be used.

Never use one seat belt on more than one person at a time:
Using one seat belt for more than one person at a time is dangerous. A seat belt used in this way cannot spread the impact forces properly and the two passengers could be crushed together and seriously injured or even killed. Never use one belt for more than one person at a time and always operate the vehicle with each occupant properly restrained.

Do not operate a vehicle with a damaged seat belt:
Using a damaged seat belt is dangerous. An accident could damage the belt webbing of the seat belt in use. A damaged seat belt cannot provide adequate protection in a collision. Have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) inspect all seat belt systems in use during an accident before they are used again.

Have your seat belts changed immediately if the pretensioner or load limiter has been expended:
Always have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) immediately inspect the seat belt pretensioners and air bags after any collision. Like the air bags, the seat belt pretensioners and load limiters will only function once and must be replaced after any collision that caused them to deploy. If the seat belt pretensioners and load limiters are not replaced, the risk of injury in a collision will increase.

OwnersManuals2.com

Seat Belt Systems

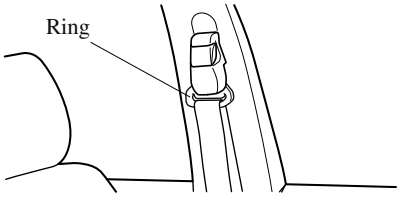
Positioning the Shoulder Portion of the Seat Belt:
Improper positioning of the shoulder portion of the seat belt is dangerous. Always make sure the shoulder portion of the seat belt is positioned across your shoulder and near your neck, but never under your arm, on your neck, or on your upper arm.

Positioning the Lap Portion of the Seat Belt:
The lap portion of the seat belt worn too high is dangerous. In a collision, this would concentrate the impact force directly on the abdominal area, causing serious injury. Wear the lap portion of the belt snugly and as low as possible.

Instructions for Use of Seat Belt Assemblies:
Seatbelts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.
Seatbelts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.
Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.
It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.
Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.
Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.
No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

⚠ CAUTION

Belt retraction may become difficult if the belts and rings are soiled, so try to keep them clean. For more details about cleaning the seat belts, refer to "Seat Belt Maintenance" (page 6-65).



OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Pregnant Women and Persons with Serious Medical Conditions

Pregnant women should always wear seat belts. Ask your doctor for specific recommendations.
The lap belt should be worn SNUGLY AND AS LOW AS POSSIBLE OVER THE HIPS. The shoulder belt should be worn across your shoulder properly, but never across the stomach area.
Persons with serious medical conditions also should wear seat belts. Check with your doctor for any special instructions regarding specific medical conditions.



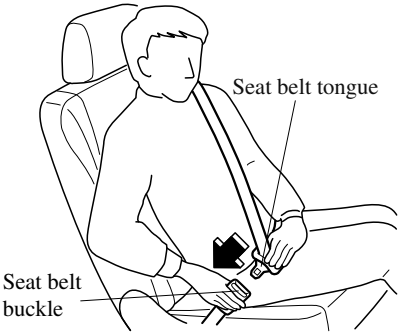
▼ Emergency Locking Mode

When the seat belt is fastened, it will always be in the emergency locking mode.
In the emergency locking mode, the belt remains comfortable on the occupant and the retractor will lock in position during a collision.
If the belt is locked and cannot be pulled out, retract the belt once, and then try pulling it out slowly. If this fails, pull the belt strongly 1 time and loosen, then pull it out again slowly.

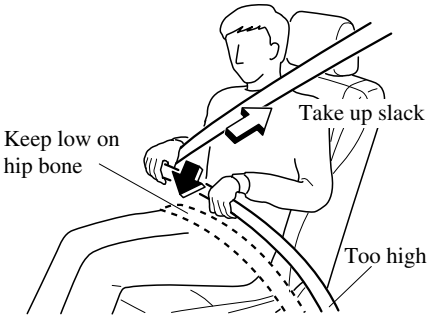
OwnersManuals2.com

Seat Belt

▼ Fastening the Seat Belt

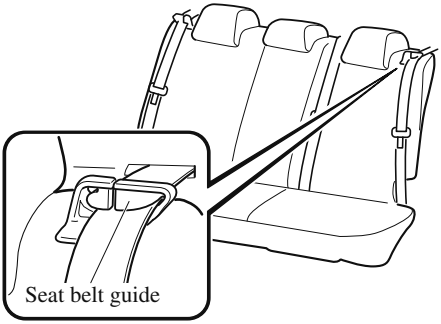


Position the lap belt as low as possible, not on the abdominal area, then adjust the shoulder belt so that it fits snugly against your body.



(Saloon)

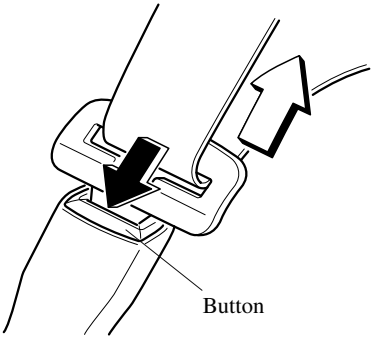
Before fastening the rear seat belt, make sure that the seat belt passes through the seat belt guide correctly and it is not twisted.



OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Unfastening the Seat Belt

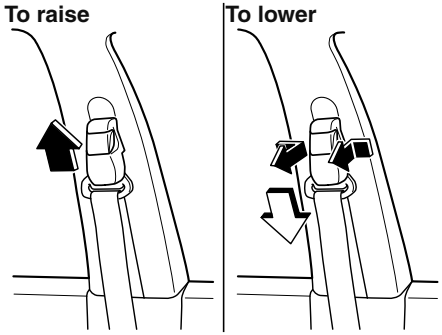
Depress the button on the seat belt buckle. If the belt does not fully retract, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Then make sure it remains untwisted as it retracts.



NOTE

If a belt does not fully retract, inspect it for kinks and twists. If it is still not retracting properly, have it inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Front Shoulder Belt Adjuster



Make sure the adjuster is locked.

Seat Belt Warning Systems

If it detects that the occupant seat belt is unfastened, the warning light or beep alerts the occupant.
Refer to Taking Action on page 7-42.
Refer to Seat Belt Warning Beep on page 7-49.

Seat belt indicator light (rear seat) (green) *



The light turns on when the ignition is switched ON and a rear seat belt is fastened, and then it turns off after a certain period of time.

OwnersManuals2.com

Seat Belt Pretensioner and Load Limiting Systems

For optimum protection, the front seat belts and rear outboard seat belts* are equipped with pretensioner and load limiting systems. For both these systems to work properly you must wear the seat belt properly.

Pretensioners:
When a collision is detected, the pretensioners deploy simultaneously with the air bags.
For deployment details, refer to the SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria (page 2-59).

The seat belt retractors remove slack quickly as the air bags are expanding. Any time the air bags and seat belt pretensioners have fired they must be replaced.
A system malfunction or operation conditions are indicated by a warning. Refer to Taking Action on page 7-42. Refer to Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Beep on page 7-49.
(With front passenger air bag deactivation switch)
In addition, the pretensioner system for the front passenger, like the front and side passenger air bag, is designed to only deploy when the front passenger air bag deactivation switch is turned to the ON position.
For details, refer to Front Passenger Air Bag Deactivation Switch (page 2-52).

Load limiter:
The load limiting system releases belt webbing in a controlled manner to reduce belt force on the occupant's chest. While the most severe load on a seat belt occurs in frontal collisions, the load limiter has an automatic mechanical function and can activate in any accident mode with sufficient occupant movement.
Even if the pretensioners have not fired, the load limiting function must be checked by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

⚠ WARNING

Wear seat belts only as recommended in this owner's manual:
Incorrect positioning of the seat belts is dangerous. Without proper positioning, the pretensioner and load limiting systems cannot provide adequate protection in an accident and this could result in serious injury. For more details about wearing seat belts, refer to "Fastening the Seat Belt" (page 2-24).

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Have your seat belts changed immediately if the pretensioner or load limiter has been expended:
Always have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) immediately inspect the seat belt pretensioners and air bags after any collision. Like the air bags, the seat belt pretensioners and load limiters will only function once and must be replaced after any collision that caused them to deploy. If the seat belt pretensioners and load limiters are not replaced, the risk of injury in a collision will increase.

Do not modify the components or wiring, or use electronic testing devices on the pretensioner system:
Modifying the components or wiring of the pretensioner system, including the use of electronic testing devices is dangerous. You could accidentally activate it or make it inoperable which would prevent it from activating in an accident. The occupants or repairers could be seriously injured.

Properly dispose of the pretensioner system:
Improper disposal of the pretensioner system or a vehicle with non-deactivated pretensioners is dangerous. Unless all safety procedures are followed, injury could result. Have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) safely dispose of the pretensioner system or scrap a pretensioner system equipped vehicle.

NOTE

- *The pretensioner system may not operate depending on the type of the collision. For details, refer to the SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria (page 2-59).*
- *Some smoke (non-toxic gas) will be released when the air bags and pretensioners deploy. This does not indicate a fire. This gas normally has no effect on occupants, however, those with sensitive skin may experience light skin irritation. If residue from the deployment of the air bags or the pretensioner system gets on the skin or in the eyes, wash it off as soon as possible.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Child-Restraint Precautions

Mazda strongly urges the use of child-restraint systems for children small enough to use them.
Mazda recommends use of a Mazda genuine child-restraint system or one that complies with the UN-R *1 44 or UN-R 129 regulation. If you would like to purchase a Mazda genuine child-restraint system, please contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children riding in your vehicle.
*1 UN-R stands for United Nations Regulation.

Whatever child-restraint system you consider, please pick the appropriate one for the age and size of the child, obey the law and follow the instructions that come with the individual child-restraint system.

A child who has outgrown child-restraint systems should sit in the rear and use seat belts.

The child-restraint system should be installed on the rear seat.
Statistics confirm that the rear seat is the best place for all children up to 12 years of age-the more so with a supplementary restraint system (air bags).

A rear-facing child-restraint system should **NEVER** be used in the front passenger seat with the air bag system activated. The front passenger's seat is also the least preferred seat for other child-restraint systems.

For some models, we have provided a deactivation switch that will disable front passenger air bag inflation. Do not switch off the front passenger air bag without reading the “Front Passenger Air Bag Deactivation Switch” (page 2-52).

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ WARNING

Use the correct size child-restraint system:
For effective protection in vehicle accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained using a seat belt or child-restraint system depending on age and size. If not, the child could be seriously injured or even killed in an accident.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and always keep the child-restraint system buckled down:
An unsecured child-restraint system is dangerous. In a sudden stop or a collision it could move causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. Make sure any child-restraint system is properly secured in place according to the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions. When not in use, remove it from the vehicle or fasten it with a seat belt, or latch it down to BOTH ISOFIX anchors, and attach the corresponding tether anchor.

Always secure a child in a proper child-restraint system:
Holding a child in your arms while the vehicle is moving is extremely dangerous. No matter how strong the person may be, he or she cannot hold onto a child in a sudden stop or collision and it could result in serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. Even in a moderate accident, the child may be exposed to air bag forces that could result in serious injury or death to the child, or the child may be slammed into an adult, causing injury to both child and adult.

Extreme Hazard! Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat with an air bag that could deploy:
NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
Vehicles with a front passenger air bag have the following warning label. The warning label reminds you not to put a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat at any time.

OwnersManuals2.com

(Taiwan Only)
依規定前排座椅禁止乘載嬰兒、幼童及兒童。

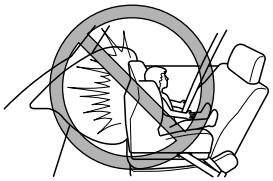
(Europe and other countries (Except Taiwan))



(Taiwan only)



Even in a moderate collision, the child-restraint system can be hit by a deploying air bag and moved violently backward resulting in serious injury or death to the child. If your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger air bag deactivation switch, always set the switch to the OFF position when installing a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat.



(Taiwan, except front passenger seat, if equipped with the following label)
NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



Do not install a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat unless it is unavoidable:
In a collision, the force of a deploying air bag could cause serious injury or death to the child. If installing a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat is unavoidable, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust the seat bottom (height adjustable seat bottom) to the highest position at which the seat belt fastening the child-restraint system is securely tightened.

OwnersManuals2.com

Make sure that the front passenger air bag deactivation switch is in the OFF position. Refer to Front Passenger Air Bag Deactivation Switch (page 2-52).



Do not allow a child or anyone to lean over to or against the side window of a vehicle with side and curtain air bags:
It is dangerous to allow anyone to lean over to or against the side window, the area of the front passenger seat, the front and rear window pillars and the roof edge along both sides from which the side and curtain air bags deploy, even if a child-restraint system is used. The impact of inflation from a side or curtain air bag could cause serious injury or death to an out of position child. Furthermore, leaning over to or against the door could block the side and curtain air bags and eliminate the advantages of supplementary protection. Because the front seats are equipped with front air bags, the rear seat is always a better location for children. Take special care not to allow a child to lean over to or against the side window, even if the child is seated in a child-restraint system.

Never use one seat belt on more than one person at a time:
Using one seat belt for more than one person at a time is dangerous. A seat belt used in this way cannot spread the impact forces properly and the two passengers could be crushed together and seriously injured or even killed. Never use one belt for more than one person at a time and always operate the vehicle with each occupant properly restrained.

Use the tether and tether anchor only for a child-restraint system:
Child-restraint system anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly installed child-restraint systems. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always remove the head restraint and install child-restraint system (except when installing a booster seat):
Installing a child-restraint system without removing the head restraint is dangerous. The child-restraint system cannot be installed correctly which may result in death or injury to the child in a collision.

OwnersManuals2.com

Child Restraint

⚠ CAUTION

A seat belt or child-restraint system can become very hot in a closed vehicle during warm weather. To avoid burning yourself or a child, check them before you or your child touches them.

NOTE

Your Mazda is equipped with ISOFIX anchors for attachment of ISOFIX child-restraint systems on the rear seats. When using these anchors to secure a child-restraint system, refer to "Using ISOFIX Anchor" (page 2-44).

OwnersManuals2.com

Child-Restraint System Installation

▼ Categories of Child-Restraint Systems

NOTE
When purchasing, ask the manufacturer of the child-restraint system which type of child-restraint system is appropriate for your child and vehicle.

(Europe and countries conforming to the UN-R 44 and UN-R 129 regulation)
Child-restraint systems are classified into the following 5 groups according to the UN-R 44 and UN-R 129 regulation.

Group	Age	Weight	Size Classification/ Fixture (CRF)
0	Up to about 9 months old	Up to 10 kg (up to 22 lb)	ISO/L1
			ISO/L2
			ISO/R1
0+	Up to about 2 years old	Up to 13 kg (up to 29 lb)	ISO/R1
			ISO/R2
			ISO/R3
1	About 8 months to 4 years old	9 kg — 18 kg (20 lb — 40 lb)	ISO/R2
			ISO/R3
			ISO/F2
			ISO/F2X
			ISO/F3
2	About 3 to 7 years old	15 kg — 25 kg (33 lb — 55 lb)	—
3	About 6 to 12 years old	22 kg — 36 kg (48 lb — 79 lb)	—

(Other countries)
Please comply with the legal regulations concerning the use of child-restraint systems in your country.

▼ Child-Restraint System Types

(Europe and countries conforming to the UN-R 44 and UN-R 129 regulation)
In this owner's manual, explanation of child-restraint systems secured with seat belts is provided for the following 3 types of popular child-restraint systems: baby seat, child seat, junior seat.

NOTE

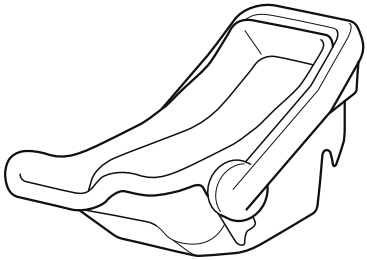
- *Installation position is determined by the type of child-restraint system. Always read the manufacturer's instructions and this owner's manual carefully.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Child Restraint

- *Due to variations in the design of child-restraint systems, vehicle seats and seat belts, all child-restraint systems may not fit all seating positions. Before purchasing a child-restraint system, it should be tested in the specific vehicle seating position (or positions) where it is intended to be used. If a previously purchased child-restraint system does not fit, you may need to purchase a different one that will.*

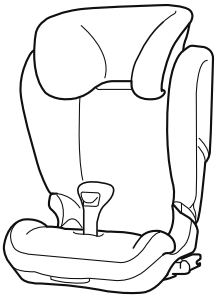
Baby seat
Equal to Group 0 and 0+ of the UN-R 44 and UN-R 129 regulation.
Recommended child-restraint system:
Britax Römer BABY-SAFE 3 i-SIZE and FLEX BASE i-SENSE



Child seat
Equal to Group 1 of the UN-R 44 and UN-R 129 regulation.
Recommended child-restraint system:
Britax Römer TRIFIX 2 i-SIZE



Junior seat
Equal to Group 2 and 3 of the UN-R 44 and UN-R 129 regulation.
Recommended child-restraint system:
Britax Römer KIDFIX i-SIZE
When using the KIDFIX i-SIZE, make sure that the shoulder belt passes through the shoulder belt pad (XP-PAD), and the lap belt passes through the lap belt guide (SecureGuard).
For details on use, refer to the user manual accompanying the KIDFIX i-SIZE.

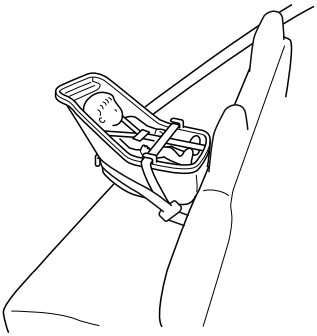


(Other countries)
Please comply with the legal regulations concerning the use of child-restraint systems in your country.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Baby Seat Installation Position

A baby seat is used in the rear-facing position only.



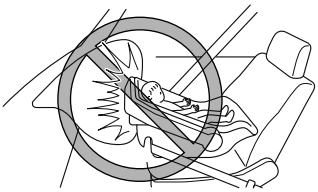
Refer to the table, “Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions” for baby seat installation position (page 2-38).

⚠ WARNING

Always install a baby seat in the correct seat position:
Installing a baby seat without first consulting the table “Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions” is dangerous. A baby seat installed on the wrong seat position cannot be properly secured. In a collision, the child could hit something or someone in the vehicle and be seriously injured or even killed.

Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat protected by an air bag:
NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

The child-restraint system can be hit by the deploying air bag and knocked out of position. A child in the child-restraint system could be seriously injured or killed. If your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger air bag deactivation switch, always set the switch to the OFF position if installing a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat is unavoidable.



▼ Child Seat Installation Position

A child seat is used in front-facing and rear-facing positions depending on the age and size of the child. When installing, follow the manufacturer's instructions in accordance with the appropriate age and size of the child as well as the directions for installing the child-restraint system. Refer to the table, “Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions” for child seat installation position (page 2-38).

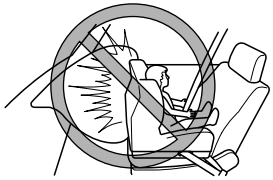
OwnersManuals2.com

Rear-facing type

⚠ WARNING

Always install a rear-facing child seat in the correct seat position:
Installing a rear-facing child seat without first consulting the table "Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions" is dangerous. A rear-facing child seat installed on the wrong seat position cannot be properly secured. In a collision, the child could hit something or someone in the vehicle and be seriously injured or even killed.

Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat protected by an air bag:
NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
The child-restraint system can be hit by the deploying air bag and knocked out of position. A child in the child-restraint system could be seriously injured or killed. If your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger air bag deactivation switch, always set the switch to the OFF position if installing a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat is unavoidable.



Front-facing type

⚠ WARNING

Never install a front-facing child seat in the wrong seat position:
Installing a front-facing child seat without first consulting the table "Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions" is dangerous. A front-facing child seat installed in the wrong seat position cannot be properly secured. In a collision, the child could hit something or someone in the vehicle and be seriously injured or even killed.

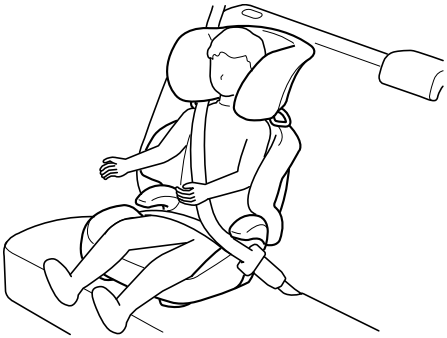
Do not install a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat unless it is unavoidable:
In a collision, the force of a deploying air bag could cause serious injury or death to the child. If installing a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat is unavoidable, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust the seat bottom (height adjustable seat bottom) to the highest position at which the seat belt fastening the child-restraint system is securely tightened.
Make sure that the front passenger air bag deactivation switch is in the OFF position. Refer to Front Passenger Air Bag Deactivation Switch (page 2-52).



OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Junior Seat Installation Position

A junior seat is used in the front-facing position only.



Refer to the table, “Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions” for junior seat installation position (page 2-38).

⚠ WARNING

Always install a junior seat in the correct seat position:
Installing a junior seat without first consulting the table “Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions” is dangerous. A junior seat installed on the wrong seat position cannot be properly secured. In a collision, the child could hit something or someone in the vehicle and be seriously injured or even killed.

Do not install a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat unless it is unavoidable:
In a collision, the force of a deploying air bag could cause serious injury or death to the child. If installing a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat is unavoidable, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust the seat bottom (height adjustable seat bottom) to the highest position at which the seat belt fastening the child-restraint system is securely tightened.
Make sure that the front passenger air bag deactivation switch is in the OFF position. Refer to Front Passenger Air Bag Deactivation Switch (page 2-52).



OwnersManuals2.com

Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions Table

(Europe and countries conforming to the UN-R 16 regulation)
Provided information in the table shows your child-restraint system suitability for various seating position. For installation suitability of other manufacturer child-restraint system, carefully consult the manufacturer's instructions which accompany the child-restraint system.
When installing a child-restraint system, the following points must be observed:

- Always remove the head restraint before installing a child-restraint system. However, when installing a booster seat, always install the vehicle head restraint to the seat where the booster seat is installed. In addition, always use a tether strap and attach it securely.
  Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-17.
- When installing a child-restraint system to the front passenger seat, adjust the seat slide position as far back as possible. Adjust the seat bottom (height adjustable seat bottom) to the highest position so that the seat belt can securely fasten the child-restraint system.
  Refer to Adjusting the Front Passenger's Seat on page 2-13.
- When it is difficult to install a child-restraint system to the front passenger seat, or the seat belt cannot be secured to the child-restraint system, perform the following operations to adjust the seat holding the child-restraint system so that the seat belt can be secured completely to it.
  - Move the seat forward or back.
  - Move the seatback forward or back.
  - Move the seat bottom up or down. (Vehicles with height adjustment function)
- When installing a child-restraint system to the rear seat, adjust the front seat position so that the front seat does not contact the child-restraint system.
  Refer to Adjusting the Driver's Seat on page 2-5.
  Refer to Adjusting the Front Passenger's Seat on page 2-13.
- A child-restraint system with a support leg cannot be installed on the rear centre seat position.
- When installing a child-restraint system came equipped with a tether, remove the head restraint.
  Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-17.
- An i-Size child-restraint system refers to a child-restraint system which has acquired i-Size category certification for the UN-R 129 regulation.

When installing a child-restraint system to the rear seat, refer to the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions and the Using ISOFIX Anchor on page 2-44.

OwnersManuals2.com

Europe and other countries (Except Taiwan)

Seating position	Passenger		Rear (Left)	Rear (Centre)	Rear (Right)
	Airbag activated	Airbag de-activated			
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes (UF)	Yes (U)	Yes (U)	No	Yes (U)
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No	Yes (i-U)	No	Yes (i-U)
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1)	No	No	Yes (IL)	No	Yes (IL)
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R2)	No	No	Yes (IL)	No	Yes (IL)
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R2X)	No	No	Yes (IL)	No	Yes (IL)
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R3)	No	No	Yes (IL)	No	Yes (IL)
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2)	No	No	Yes (IUF)	No	Yes (IUF)
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X)	No	No	Yes (IUF)	No	Yes (IUF)
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F3)	No	No	Yes (IUF)	No	Yes (IUF)
Largest suitable lateral facing fixture (L1)	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable lateral facing fixture (L2)	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2)	No	No	Yes (IUF)	No	Yes (IUF)
Largest suitable booster fixture (B3)	No	No	Yes (IUF)	No	Yes (IUF)

OwnersManuals2.com

Seating position	Passenger		Rear (Left)	Rear (Centre)	Rear (Right)
	Airbag activated	Airbag de-activated			
Non i-size compatible with a support leg (Yes/No)	No	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
Lower ISOFIX anchorages but without Top Tether (Yes/No)	No	No	No	No	No

U = Suitable for “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
UF = Suitable for forward-facing “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.
L = Suitable for particular child restraints given on attached list. These restraints may be of the “specific vehicle”, “restricted” or “semi-universal” categories.*1
IL = Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS) given in the attached list. These ISOFIX CRS are those of the “specific vehicle”, “restricted” or “semi-universal” categories.*1
i-U = Suitable for i-Size “universal” Child Restraint Systems forward and rearward facing.
i-UF = Suitable for forward-facing i-Size “universal” Child Restraint Systems only.
Yes = Child-restraint system can be secured on the seat.
No = Child-restraint system cannot be secured on the seat, or there is no fixture.
X = Child-restraint system cannot be installed.

*1 A Mazda genuine child-restraint system can be installed. Regarding child-restraint systems which can be installed, refer to Child-Restraint System Types on page 2-33 or the accessories catalog. The manufacturer will also recommend a suitable ISOFIX child restraint system. For this, your vehicle and the seat must be listed on the child restraint system manufacturer's model list. For more information, contact the child restraint system manufacturer or visit the manufacturer's website.

Taiwan Only

ISOFIX anchor-secured child-restraint systems

Mass group	Size Class	Fixture	Seat Positions		
			Vehicle ISOFIX positions	Rear seat (centre)	Front passenger seat (outboard)
			Rear seat (outboard)		
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X
		(1)	X	X	X
GROUP 0 Up to 10 kg (up to 22 lb)	E	ISO/R1	IL	X	X
		(1)	X	X	X

OwnersManuals2.com

Mass group	Size Class	Fixture	Seat Positions		
			Vehicle ISOFIX positions	Rear seat (centre)	Front passenger seat (outboard)
			Rear seat (outboard)		
GROUP 0+ Up to 13 kg (up to 29 lb)	E	ISO/R1	IL	X	X
	D	ISO/R2	IL	X	X
	C	ISO/R3	IL	X	X
		(1)	X	X	X
GROUP 1 9 kg — 18 kg (20 lb — 40 lb)	D	ISO/R2	IL	X	X
	C	ISO/R3	IL	X	X
	B	ISO/F2	IUF	X	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF	X	X
	A	ISO/F3	IUF	X	X
		(1)	X	X	X
GROUP 2 15 kg — 25 kg (33 lb — 55 lb)		(1)	X	X	X
GROUP 3 22 kg — 36 kg (48 lb — 79 lb)		(1)	X	X	X

(1) For the CRS which do not carry the ISO/XX size class identification (A to G), for the applicable mass group, the car manufacturer shall indicate the vehicle specific ISOFIX child-restraint system(s) recommended for each position.

Key of letters to be inserted in the above table:

IUF = suitable for ISOFIX forward child-restraints systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group.

IL = suitable for particular ISOFIX child-restraint systems (CRS). These ISOFIX CRS are those of the “specific vehicle”, “restricted” or “semi-universal” categories.*1

X = ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child-restraint systems in this mass group and/or this size class.

*1 A Mazda genuine child-restraint system can be installed. Regarding child-restraint systems which can be installed, refer to Child-Restraint System Types on page 2-33 or the accessories catalog. In addition, if this vehicle model and the seat position are described in the vehicle compatibility list corresponding to the child-restraint system manufacturer, the child-restraint system is suitable for installation.

OwnersManuals2.com

i-Size child-restraint systems

An i-Size child-restraint system can be installed to the specified seat as follows:

	Front passenger seat	Rear seat (outboard)	Rear seat (centre)
i-Size child-restraint systems	X	X	X

Key of letters to be inserted in the above table:
i-U = Suitable for i-Size "universal" Child Restraint Systems forward and rearward facing.
i-UF = Suitable for forward-facing i-Size "universal" Child Restraint Systems only.
X = Seating position not suitable for i-Size "universal" child-restraint systems.

Seat belt-secured child-restraint systems

System group	Age group	Weight group	Child-restraint system type	Front passenger seat	Rear seat (outboard)	Rear seat (centre)
GROUP 0	Up to about 9 months old	Up to 10 kg (up to 22 lb)	Baby seat	X	U	X
GROUP 0+	Up to about 2 years old	Up to 13 kg (up to 29 lb)	Baby seat	X	U	X
GROUP 1	About 8 months to 4 years old	9 kg — 18 kg (20 lb — 40 lb)	Child seat	X	U	X
GROUP 2	About 3 to 7 years old	15 kg — 25 kg (33 lb — 55 lb)	Junior seat	X	U	X
GROUP 3	About 6 to 12 years old	22 kg — 36 kg (48 lb — 79 lb)	Junior seat	X	U	X

Key of letters to be inserted in the above table:
U = Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
UF = Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
X = Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

(Other countries)

- Regarding child-restraint systems which can be installed to your Mazda, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- A child-restraint system with a support leg cannot be installed on the rear centre seat position.
- Please comply with the legal regulations concerning the use of child-restraint systems in your country.
- For the CRS which do not carry the ISO/XX size class identification (A to G), for the applicable mass group, the child seat manufacturer shall indicate the vehicle specific ISOFIX child-restraint systems recommended for each position.

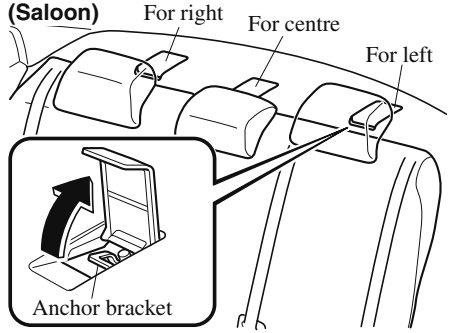
OwnersManuals2.com

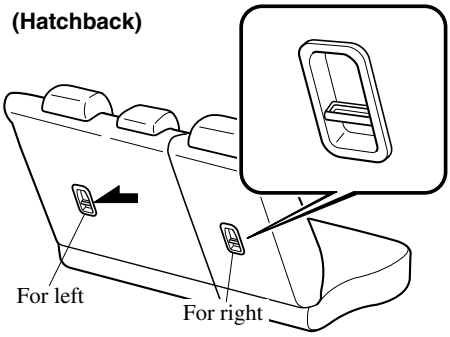
Installing Child-Restraint Systems

▼ Anchor Bracket

Anchor brackets for securing child-restraint systems are equipped in the vehicle. Locate each anchor position using the illustration.
To install a child-restraint system, remove the head restraint. Always follow the instruction manual accompanying the child-restraint system.

Anchor bracket location
Use the indicated anchor bracket locations when installing a child-restraint system equipped with a tether.





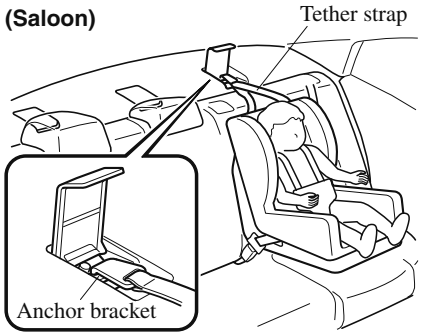
⚠ WARNING

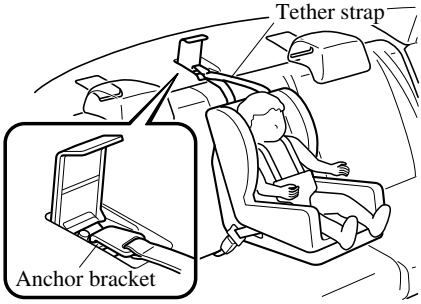
Always attach the tether strap to the correct tether anchor position:
Attaching the tether strap to the incorrect tether anchor position is dangerous. In a collision, the tether strap could come off and loosen the child-restraint system. If the child-restraint system moves it could result in death or injury to the child.

Always remove the head restraint and set the tether strap (except when installing a booster seat):
Routing the tether strap on top of the head restraint is dangerous. In a collision the tether strap could slide off the head restraint and loosen the child-restraint system. The child-restraint system could move which may result in death or injury to the child.

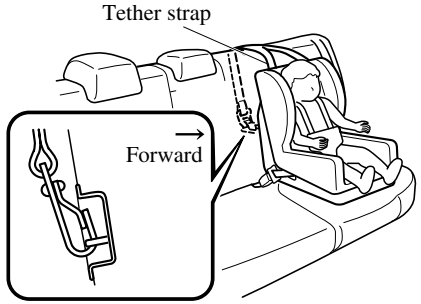
OwnersManuals2.com

(Saloon)





(Hatchback)



If the top tether strap does not reach the anchor bracket, purchase and use an extension strap provided by the CRS manufacturer.

Always install the head restraint and adjust it to the appropriate position after removing the child-restraint system:

Driving with the head restraint removed is dangerous as impact to the occupant's head cannot be prevented during emergency braking or in a collision, which could result in a serious accident, injury or death.
Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-17.

▼ Using the Seat Belt

When installing a child-restraint system, follow the installation instructions included with the product.
In addition, remove the head restraint. However, when installing a booster seat, always install the vehicle head restraint to the seat where the booster seat is installed.

▼ Using ISOFIX Anchor

⚠ WARNING

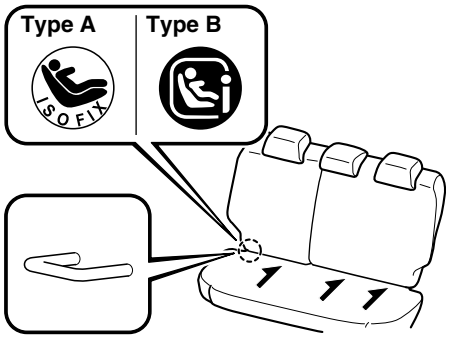
Follow the manufacturer's instructions for the use of the child-restraint system:
An unsecured child-restraint system is dangerous. In a sudden stop or a collision it could move causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. Make sure any child-restraint system is properly secured in place according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Make sure the child-restraint system is properly secured:
A child-restraint system that is not secured is dangerous. In a sudden stop or collision, it can become a projectile and hit someone, causing serious injury. When not in use, remove it from the vehicle, put it in the luggage compartment or at least make sure it is securely fastened to the ISOFIX anchors.

OwnersManuals2.com

Make sure there are no seat belts or foreign objects near or around the ISOFIX anchor-secured child-restraint system:
Not following the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions when installing the child-restraint system is dangerous. If seat belts or a foreign object prevent the child-restraint system from being securely attached to the ISOFIX anchors and the child-restraint system is installed improperly, the child-restraint system could move in a sudden stop or collision causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. When installing the child-restraint system, make sure there are no seat belts or foreign objects near or around the ISOFIX anchors. Always follow the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

1. First, adjust the front seat to allow clearance between the child-restraint system and the front seat.
   Refer to Adjusting the Driver's Seat on page 2-5.
   Refer to Adjusting the Front Passenger's Seat on page 2-13.
2. Make sure the seatback is securely latched by pushing it back until it is fully locked.
3. Expand the seams on the rear of the seat bottom slightly to verify the locations of the ISOFIX anchor.



NOTE

- *The markings above the ISOFIX anchors indicate the locations of the ISOFIX anchors for the attachment of a child-restraint system.*

4. Remove the head restraint. However, when installing a booster seat, always install the vehicle head restraint to the seat where the booster seat is installed.
   Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-17.
5. Secure the child-restraint system using the ISOFIX anchor, following the child-restraint system manufacturer's instruction.
6. If your child-restraint system came equipped with a tether, that probably means it is very important to properly secure the tether for child safety. Please carefully follow the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions when installing tethers (page 2-43).

OwnersManuals2.com

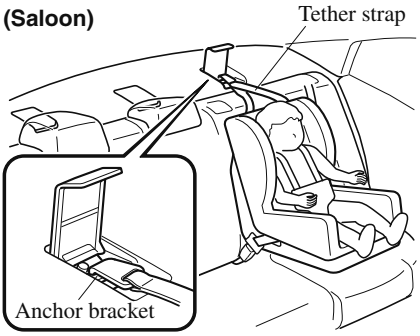
Child Restraint

⚠ WARNING

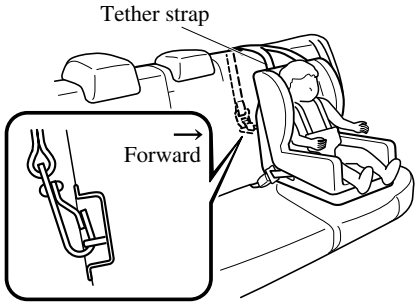
Always attach the tether strap to the correct tether anchor position:
Attaching the tether strap to the incorrect tether anchor position is dangerous. In a collision, the tether strap could come off and loosen the child-restraint system. If the child-restraint system moves it could result in death or injury to the child.
If the top tether strap does not reach the anchor bracket, purchase and use an extension strap provided by the CRS manufacturer.

Always remove the head restraint and install child-restraint system (except when installing a booster seat):
Installing a child-restraint system without removing the head restraint is dangerous. The child-restraint system cannot be installed correctly which may result in death or injury to the child in a collision.

(Saloon)



(Hatchback)



Always install the head restraint and adjust it to the appropriate position after removing the child-restraint system:
Driving with the head restraint removed is dangerous as impact to the occupant's head cannot be prevented during emergency braking or in a collision, which could result in a serious accident, injury or death.
Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-17.

OwnersManuals2.com

Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) Precautions

The front and side supplementary restraint systems (SRS) include different types of air bags. **Please verify the different types of air bags which are equipped on your vehicle by locating the "SRS AIRBAG" location indicators.** These indicators are visible in the area where the air bags are installed.
The air bags are installed in the following locations:

- The steering wheel hub (driver air bag)
- The front passenger instrument panel (front passenger air bag)
- The outboard sides of the front seatbacks (side air bags)*
- The front and rear window pillars, and the roof edge along both sides (curtain air bags)*

The air bag supplementary restraint systems are designed to provide supplementary protection in certain situations so seat belts are always important in the following ways:

Without seat belt usage, the air bags cannot provide adequate protection during an accident. Seat belt usage is necessary to:

- Keep the occupant from being thrown into an inflating air bag.
- Reduce the possibility of injuries during an accident that is not designed for air bag inflation, such as roll-over or rear impact.
- Reduce the possibility of injuries in frontal, near frontal or side collisions that are not severe enough to activate the air bags.
- Reduce the possibility of being thrown from your vehicle.
- Reduce the possibility of injuries to lower body and legs during an accident because the air bags provide no protection to these parts of the body.
- Hold the driver in a position which allows better control of the vehicle.

A child who is too small to use a seat belt must be properly secured using a child-restraint system (page 2-28).

Carefully consider which child-restraint system is necessary for your child and follow the installation directions in this Owner's Manual as well as the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

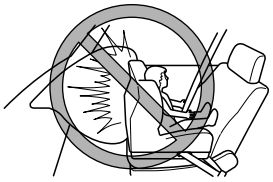
OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ WARNING

Seat belts must be worn in air bag equipped vehicles:
Depending only on the air bags for protection during an accident is dangerous. Alone, air bags may not prevent serious injuries. The appropriate air bags can be expected to inflate only in the first accident, such as frontal, near frontal or side collisions that are at least moderate. Vehicle occupants should always wear seat belts.

Children should not ride in the front passenger seat:
Placing a child, 12 years or under, in the front seat is dangerous. The child could be hit by a deploying air bag and be seriously injured or even killed. A sleeping child is more likely to lean against the door and be hit by the side air bag in moderate collision to the front-passenger side of the vehicle. Whenever possible, always secure a child 12 years and under on the rear seats with an appropriate child-restraint system for the child's age and size.

Extreme Hazard! Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat with an air bag that could deploy:
NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
Even in a moderate collision, the child-restraint system can be hit by a deploying air bag and moved violently backward resulting in serious injury or death to the child. If your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger air bag deactivation switch, always set the switch to the OFF position when installing a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat.



Do not sit too close to the driver and front passenger air bags:
Sitting too close to the driver and front passenger air bag modules or placing hands or feet on them is extremely dangerous. The driver and front passenger air bags inflate with great force and speed. Serious injuries could occur if someone is too close. The driver should always hold onto only the rim of the steering wheel. The front seat passenger should keep both feet on the floor. Front seat occupants should adjust their seats as far back as possible and always sit upright against the seatbacks with seat belts worn properly.

OwnersManuals2.com

Sit in the centre of the seat and wear seat belts properly:
Sitting too close to the side air bag modules or placing hands on them, or sleeping up against the door or hanging out the windows is extremely dangerous. The side and curtain air bags inflate with great force and speed directly expanding along the door on the side the car is hit. Serious injury could occur if someone is sitting too close to the door or leaning against a window, or if rear seat occupants grab the sides of the front seatbacks. Give the side and curtain air bags room to work by sitting in the centre of the seat while the vehicle is moving with seat belts worn properly.

Do not attach objects on or around the area where air bags deploy:
Attaching objects to the air bags or placing something in the area where the air bags deploy is dangerous. In an accident, an object could interfere with air bag inflation and injure the occupants. Furthermore, the bag could be damaged causing gases to release. Always keep the deployment area of the air bag modules free of any obstructions.
For example, you should not do any of the following as it may interfere with air bag deployment.

- *Do not put a covering on or lean anything against areas such as the instrument panel and lower portion of the instrument panel that blocks the passenger front air bag.*
- *Do not use seat covers on the front seats and rear seats equipped with in-seat side air bags.*
- *Do not hang any backpacks, bags or pouches that cover the sides of the seats that block the side air bags.*
- *Do not place any objects on the assist grips. Only hang clothes directly on the coat hooks.*

Do not touch the components of the supplementary restraint system after the air bags have inflated:
Touching the components of the supplementary restraint system after the air bags have inflated is dangerous. Immediately after inflation, they are very hot. You could get burned.

Never install any front-end equipment to your vehicle:
Installation of front-end equipment, such as frontal protection bar (kangaroo bar, bull bar, push bar, or other similar devices), snowplough, or winches, is dangerous. The air bag crash sensor system could be affected. This could cause air bags to inflate unexpectedly, or it could prevent the air bags from inflating during an accident. Front occupants could be seriously injured.

Do not modify the suspension:
Modifying the vehicle suspension is dangerous. If the vehicle's height or the suspension is modified, the vehicle will be unable to accurately detect a collision resulting in incorrect or unexpected air bag deployment and the possibility of serious injuries.

OwnersManuals2.com

Do not modify a front door or leave any damage unrepaired. Always have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) inspect a damaged front door:
Modifying a front door or leaving any damage unrepaired is dangerous. Each front door has a side crash sensor as a component of the supplementary restraint system. If holes are drilled in a front door, a door speaker is left removed, or a damaged door is left unrepaired, the sensor could be adversely affected causing it to not detect the pressure of an impact correctly during a side collision. If a sensor does not detect a side impact correctly, the side and curtain air bags and the front seat belt pretensioner may not operate normally which could result in serious injury to occupants.

Do not modify the supplementary restraint system:
Modifying the components or wiring of the supplementary restraint system is dangerous. You could accidentally activate it or make it inoperable. Do not make any modifications to the supplementary restraint system. This includes installing trim, badges, or anything else over the air bag modules. It also includes installing extra electrical equipment on or near system components or wiring. An expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) can provide the special care needed in the removal and installation of front seats. It is important to protect the air bag wiring and connections to assure that the bags do not accidentally deploy, and that the driver seat slide position sensor is not damaged and the seats retain an undamaged air bag connection.

Do not place luggage or other objects under the front seats:
Placing luggage or other objects under the front seats is dangerous. The components essential to the supplementary restraint system could be damaged, and in the event of a side collision, the appropriate air bags may not deploy, which could result in death or serious injury. To prevent damage to the components essential to the supplementary restraint system, do not place luggage or other objects under the front seats.

Do not operate a vehicle with damaged air bag/seat belt pretensioner system components:
Expended or damaged air bag/seat belt pretensioner system components must be replaced after any collision which caused them to deploy or damage them. Only a trained expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) can fully evaluate these systems to see that they will work in any subsequent accident. Driving with an expended or damaged air bag or pretensioner unit will not afford you the necessary protection in the event of any subsequent accident which could result in serious injury or death.

Do not remove interior air bag parts:
Removing any components such as the front seats, front instrument panel, the steering wheel or parts on the front and rear window pillars and along the roof edge, containing air bag parts or sensors is dangerous. These parts contain essential air bag components. The air bag could accidentally activate and cause serious injuries. Always have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) remove these parts.

OwnersManuals2.com

Properly dispose of the air bag system:
Improper disposal of an air bag or a vehicle with live air bags in it can be extremely dangerous. Unless all safety procedures are followed, injury could result. Have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) safely dispose of the air bag system or scrap an air bag equipped vehicle.

NOTE

- *When an air bag deploys, a loud inflation noise can be heard and some smoke will be released. Neither is likely to cause injury, however, the texture of the air bags may cause light skin injuries on body parts not covered with clothing through friction.*
- *Should you sell your Mazda, we urge you to tell the new owner of its air bag systems and that familiarization with all instructions about them, from the Owner's Manual, is important.*
- *This highly-visible label warns against the use of a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat.*

(Taiwan Only)
依規定前排座椅禁止乘載嬰兒、幼童及兒童。

(Europe and other countries (Except Taiwan))



(Taiwan only)



(Taiwan, except front passenger seat, if equipped with the following label)
The highly-visible labels warn against the use of a rear-facing child-restraint system on the seat protected by an air bag.

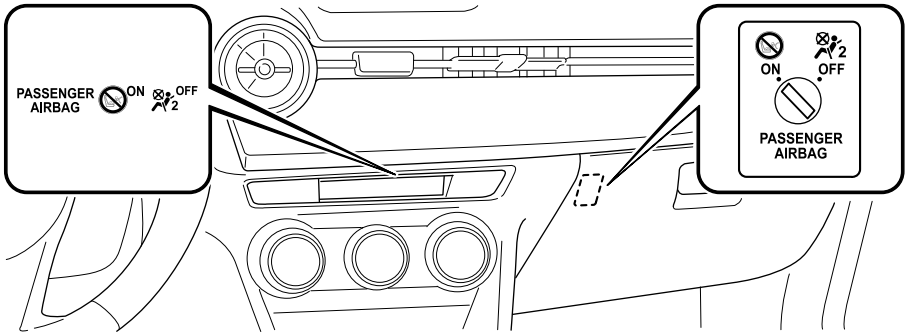


OwnersManuals2.com

Front Passenger Air Bag Deactivation Switch*

⚠ WARNING

Do not deactivate the front passenger air bag unnecessarily:
Unnecessary deactivation of the front passenger air bag is dangerous. If turned off unnecessarily, the front passenger will not receive the added protection of the air bag. Serious injuries or even death could occur. With the exception of installing a child-restraint system on the front passenger seat, do not turn the air bag deactivation switch to the OFF position.



The front passenger air bag deactivation switch should be used to deactivate the front passenger front and side air bags and also the front passenger seat belt pretensioner system if installing a child-restraint system on the front passenger seat.

When the ignition is switched ON, both front passenger air bag deactivation indicator lights illuminate regardless of the front passenger air bag deactivation switch position. The indicator light turns off after a specified period of time, then turns on/off depending on the conditions as indicated in the following table.

Front Passenger Air Bag Deactivation Switch	Front Passenger Seat/Side Air Bag, Front Passenger Seat Belt Pretensioner Operation Condition	Front Passenger Air Bag Deactivation Indicator Light
OFF position 	Deactivate	

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Front Passenger Air Bag Deactivation Switch	Front Passenger Seat/Side Air Bag, Front Passenger Seat Belt Pretensioner Operation Condition	Front Passenger Air Bag Deactivation Indicator Light
ON position 	Ready	 Turns off after a short period of time.

NOTE
Have the front passenger air bag deactivation switch inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) if any of these conditions occur:

- *The front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light does not illuminate for a specified period of time when the ignition is switched ON.*
- *The front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light does not turn off after a short period of time when the ignition is switched ON (front passenger air bag deactivation switch is in ON position).*

▼ Switch Positions

Before driving, always confirm that the front passenger air bag deactivation switch is in the appropriate position using the auxiliary key according to your requirements.

⚠ WARNING

Do not leave the key in the front passenger air bag deactivation switch:
Unintentional deactivation of the front passenger air bag is dangerous. In an accident, the front passenger will not be properly protected. Serious injuries or even death could occur. To avoid unintentional deactivation, always use the auxiliary key stored in the transmitter body currently being used to operate the front passenger air bag deactivation switch. After deactivating the air bag, put the auxiliary key back into the transmitter body. That way you will not leave the key in the front passenger air bag deactivation switch.

NOTE
After operating the front passenger air bag deactivation switch, put the auxiliary key back into the transmitter body.

OwnersManuals2.com

OFF

Front passenger front air bag, side air bag, and front passenger seat belt pretensioner do not operate.

Switching to OFF position

1. Insert the key into the front passenger air bag deactivation switch and turn the key clockwise until the key points to OFF.
2. Remove the key.
3. Make sure the air bag deactivation indicator light remains illuminated when the ignition is switched ON.

The front passenger front and side air bags and also the seat belt pretensioner system will remain deactivated until the front passenger air bag deactivation switch is turned to the ON position.

ON

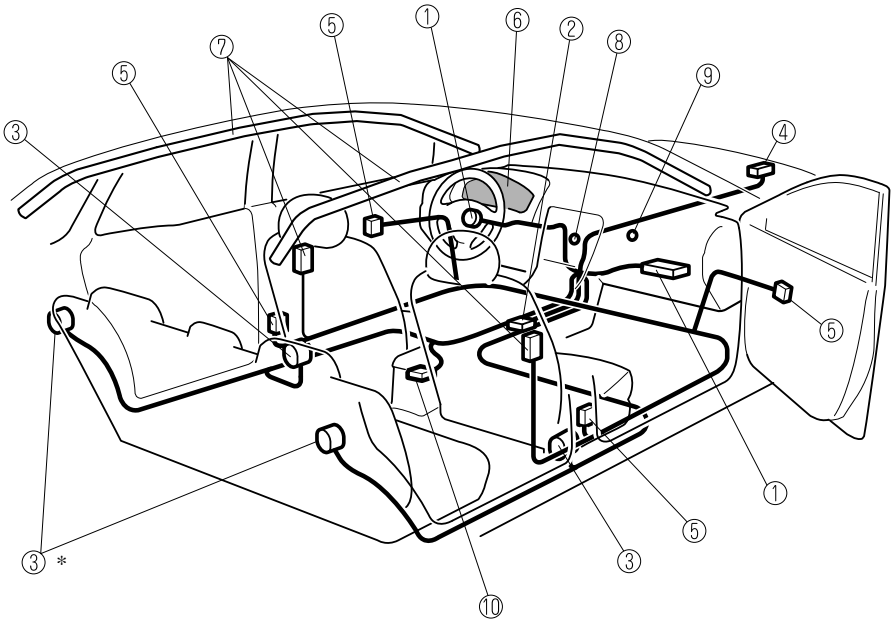
Front passenger front air bag, side air bag, and front passenger seat belt pretensioner operate. Activate the system only when a child-restraint system is not installed on the front passenger seat.

Switching to ON position

1. Insert the key into the front passenger air bag deactivation switch and turn the key anticlockwise until the key points to ON.
2. Remove the key.
3. Make sure the air bag deactivation indicator light remains illuminated when the ignition is switched ON. The air bag deactivation indicator light turns off after a short period of time.

OwnersManuals2.com

Supplementary Restraint System Components



* Some models

① Driver/Front passenger inflators and air bags
② Crash sensors, and diagnostic module (SAS unit)
③ Seat belt pretensioners (page 2-26)
④ Front air bag sensor
⑤ Side crash sensors*
⑥ Air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning light (page 4-40)
⑦ Side and curtain inflators and air bags*
⑧ Front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light* (page 2-52)
⑨ Front passenger air bag deactivation switch* (page 2-52)
⑩ Driver seat slide position sensor* (page 2-56)

OwnersManuals2.com

How the SRS Air Bags Work

Your Mazda is equipped with the following types of SRS air bags. SRS air bags are designed to work together with the seat belts to help to reduce injuries during an accident. The SRS air bags are designed to provide further protection for passengers in addition to the seat belt functions. Be sure to wear seat belts properly.

▼ Seat Belt Pretensioners

The pretensioners operate differently depending on what types of air bags are equipped. For more details about seat belt pretensioner operation, refer to the SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria (page 2-59).

Front

The front seat belt pretensioners are designed to deploy in moderate or severe frontal, near frontal collisions. In addition, during a side collision, the pretensioner operates.

Rear Outboard*

The rear outboard seat belt pretensioners are designed to deploy in moderate or severe frontal, near frontal collisions.

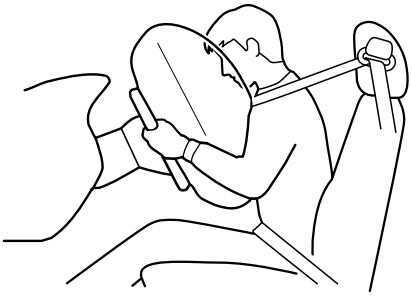
▼ Driver Air Bag

The driver's air bag is mounted in the steering wheel.
When air bag crash sensors detect a frontal impact of greater than moderate force, the driver's air bag inflates quickly helping to reduce injury mainly to the driver's head or chest caused by directly hitting the steering wheel.
For more details about air bag deployment, refer to "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria" (page 2-59).
(With Front Passenger Air Bag Deactivation Switch)
The inflation of the driver's dual-stage air bag is controlled in two energy stages depending on the driver's seat position. The driver's seat slide position sensor is located under the driver's seat. The sensor determines whether the driver's seat is forward of or behind a reference position and sends the seat position to the diagnostic module (SAS unit). The SAS unit is designed to control the deployment of the driver's air bag depending on how close the driver's seat is to the steering wheel.

 *Some models.

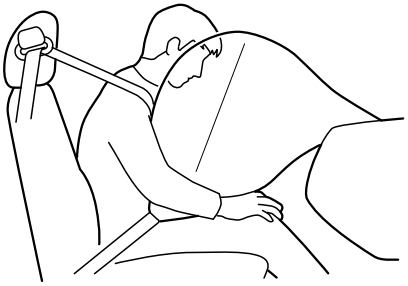
OwnersManuals2.com

During an impact of moderate severity, the driver's air bag deploys with lesser energy, whereas during more severe impacts and when the driver's seat is behind the reference position, it deploys with more energy.



▼ Front Passenger Air Bag

The front passenger air bag is mounted in the front passenger instrument panel.
The inflation mechanism for the front passenger air bag is the same as the driver's air bag.
For more details about air bag deployment, refer to "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria" (page 2-59).

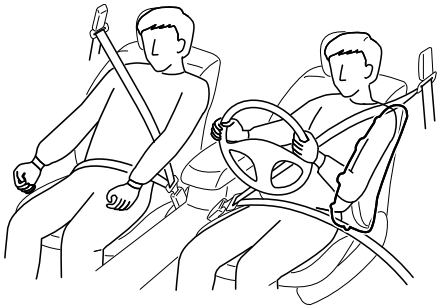


▼ Side Air Bags*

The side air bags are mounted in the outboard sides of the front seatbacks.
When the air bag crash sensors detect a side impact of greater than moderate force, the system inflates the side air bag only on the side in which the vehicle was hit. The side air bag inflates quickly to reduce injury to the driver or front passenger's chest caused by directly hitting interior parts such as a door or window.

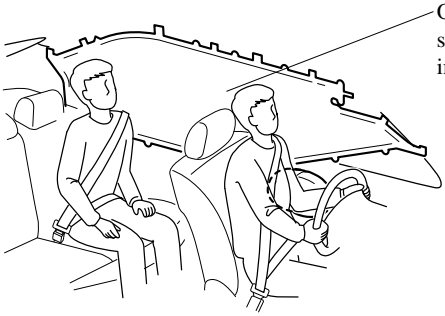
OwnersManuals2.com

For more details about air bag deployment, refer to "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria" (page 2-59).



▼ Curtain Air Bags*

The curtain air bags are mounted in the front and rear window pillars, and the roof edge along both sides.
When the air bag crash sensors detect a side impact of greater than moderate force, the curtain air bag inflates quickly and helps to reduce injury mainly to the rear outboard passenger's head caused by directly hitting interior parts such as a door or window.
For more details about air bag deployment, refer to "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria" (page 2-59).



Only one side curtain air bag will deploy on the side of the vehicle that receives the force of an impact.

▼ Warning Light/Beep

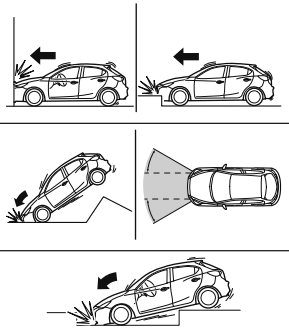
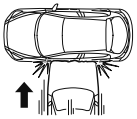
A system malfunction or operation conditions are indicated by a warning.
Refer to Warning/Indicator Lights on page 4-39.
Refer to Warning Sound is Activated on page 7-49.

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria

This chart indicates the applicable SRS equipment that will deploy depending on the type of collision.
(The illustrations are the representative cases of collisions.)

SRS equipment	Types of collision		
	A severe frontal/near frontal collision	A severe side collision*2	A rear collision
			
Front seat belt pretensioner	X*1 (both sides)	X*1(both sides)	No air bag and seat belt pretensioner will be activated in a rear collision.
Rear seat belt pretensioner*	X (both sides)	X (both sides)	
Driver air bag	X		
Front passenger air bag	X*1		
Side air bag*		X*1 (impact side only)	
Curtain air bag*		X (impact side only)	

X: The SRS air bag equipment is designed to deploy in a collision.

*1 **(With Front Passenger Air Bag Deactivation Switch)**
The front passenger front and side air bags and the front seat belt pretensioner are designed to deploy depending on the status of the front passenger air bag deactivation switch.

*2 **(With Side/Curtain Air Bags)**
In a side collision, the front seat belt pretensioners and the side/curtain air bags deploy.

NOTE

In a frontal offset collision, the equipped air bags and pretensioners may all deploy depending on the direction, angle, and rate of impact.

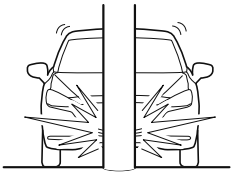
OwnersManuals2.com

Limitations to SRS Air Bag

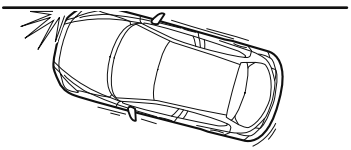
In severe collisions such as those described previously in "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria", the applicable SRS air bag equipment will deploy. However, in some accidents, the equipment may not deploy depending on the type of collision and its severity.

Limitations to front/near front collision detection:
The following illustrations are examples of front/near front collisions that may not be detected as severe enough to deploy the SRS air bag equipment.

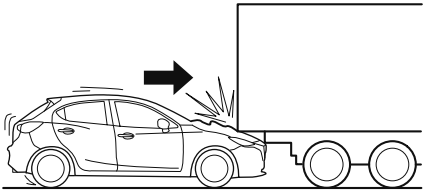
Impacts involving trees or poles



Frontal offset impact to the vehicle



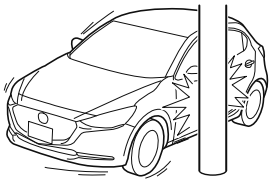
Rear-ending or running under a truck's tail gate



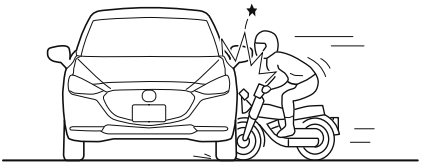
OwnersManuals2.com

Limitations to side collision detection:
The following illustrations are examples of side collisions that may not be detected as severe enough to deploy the SRS air bag equipment.

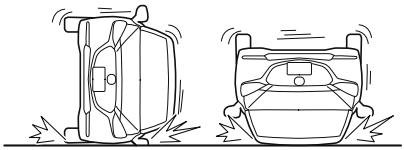
Side impacts involving trees or poles



Side impacts with two-wheeled vehicles



Roll-over



OwnersManuals2.com

Constant Monitoring

The following components of the air bag systems are monitored by a diagnostic system:

- Front air bag sensors
- Crash sensors, and diagnostic module (SAS unit)
- Side crash sensors
- Air bag modules
- Seat belt pretensioners
- Air bag/Seat belt pretensioner system warning light
- Related wiring

(With Front Passenger Air Bag Deactivation Switch)

- Driver seat slide position sensor
- Front passenger air bag deactivation switch
- Front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light

The diagnostic module continuously monitors the system's readiness. This begins when the ignition is switched ON and continues while the vehicle is being driven.

OwnersManuals2.com

3 Before Driving

Use of various features, including keys, doors, mirrors and windows.

Keys..... 3-2
Keys.....3-2
Keyless Entry System.....3-4

Advanced Keyless Entry System.....3-9
Advanced Keyless Entry System* 3-9
Operational Range.....3-10

Doors and Locks..... 3-11
Door Locks..... 3-11
Liftgate/Boot Lid.....3-18

Fuel and Emission..... 3-22
Fuel and Engine Exhaust Precautions..... 3-22
Fuel-Filler Flap and Cap.....3-27

Mirrors..... 3-29
Mirrors.....3-29

Windows.....3-33
Power Windows.....3-33
Manual Windows*..... 3-36

Security System..... 3-37
Modification and Add-On Equipment.....3-37
Immobilizer System.....3-37
Theft-Deterrent System*.....3-39

Driving Tips..... 3-43
Running-In.....3-43
Saving Fuel and Protection of the Environment..... 3-43
Hazardous Driving.....3-44
Floor Mat.....3-44
Rocking the Vehicle.....3-45
Winter Driving.....3-46
Driving In Flooded Area..... 3-48
Turbocharger Information (SKYACTIV-D 1.5).....3-49

Towing..... 3-50
Towing Caravans and Trailers (Europe/Turkey/Israel/South Africa).....3-50

OwnersManuals2.com

Keys

⚠ WARNING

Do not leave the key in your vehicle with children and keep them in a place where your children will not find or play with them:

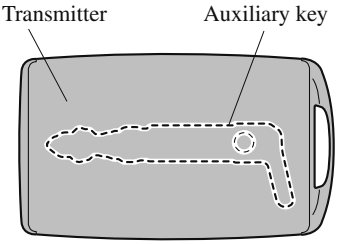
Leaving children in a vehicle with the key is dangerous. This could result in someone being badly injured or even killed. Children may find these keys to be an interesting toy to play with and could cause the power windows or other controls to operate, or even make the vehicle move.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Because the key (transmitter) uses low-intensity radio waves, it may not function correctly under the following conditions:*
  - *The key is carried with communication devices such as cellular phones.*
  - *The key contacts or is covered by a metal object.*
  - *The key is near electronic devices such as personal computers.*
  - *Non-Mazda genuine electronic equipment is installed in the vehicle.*
  - *There is equipment which discharges radio waves near the vehicle.*
- *The key (transmitter) may consume battery power excessively if it receives high-intensity radio waves. Do not place the key near electronic devices such as televisions or personal computers.*
- *To avoid damage to the key (transmitter), DO NOT:*
  - *Drop the key.*
  - *Get the key wet.*
  - *Disassemble the key.*
  - *Expose the key to high temperatures on places such as the instrument panel or bonnet, under direct sunlight.*
  - *Expose the key to any kind of magnetic field.*
  - *Place heavy objects on the key.*
  - *Put the key in an ultrasonic cleaner.*
  - *Put any magnetized objects close to the key.*

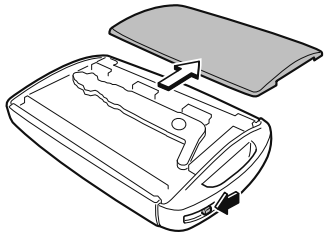
NOTE

The driver must carry the key to ensure the system functions properly.



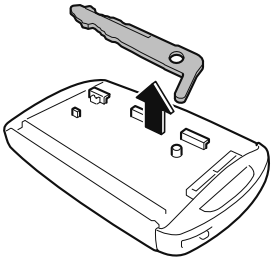
Removing the auxiliary key

1. Remove the lower cover while sliding the knob in the direction of the arrow.



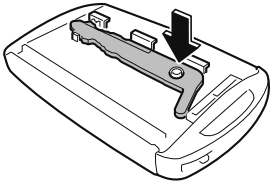
OwnersManuals2.com

2. Remove the auxiliary key.

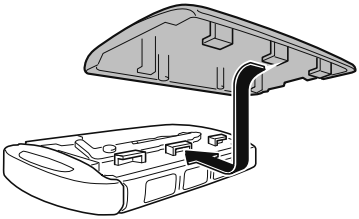


Installing the auxiliary key

1. Install the auxiliary key as the illustration.



2. Insert the tabs of the lower cover into the slots of the transmitter and install the lower cover.



Key code number plate

A code number is stamped on the plate attached to the key set; detach this plate and store it in a safe place (not in the vehicle) for use if you need to make a replacement key (auxiliary key).

Also write down the code number and keep it in a separate safe and convenient place, but not in the vehicle.

If your key (auxiliary key) is lost, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), and have your code number ready.



OwnersManuals2.com

Keyless Entry System

This system uses the key buttons to remotely lock and unlock the doors and the liftgate/boot lid, and opens the boot lid.
The system can start the engine without having to take the key out of your purse or pocket.
Operating the theft-deterrent system is also possible on theft-deterrent system-equipped vehicles.

System malfunctions or warnings are indicated by the following warning lights or beeps.

- KEY Warning Light (Red)
  Refer to Contact expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-37.
  Refer to Taking Action on page 7-42.
- Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP) Warning Beep
  Refer to Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP) Warning Beep on page 7-50.
- Key Removed from Vehicle Warning Beep
  Refer to Key Removed from Vehicle Warning Beep on page 7-50.

If you have a problem with the key, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

If your key is lost or stolen, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible for a replacement and to make the lost or stolen key inoperative.

⚠ CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

NOTE

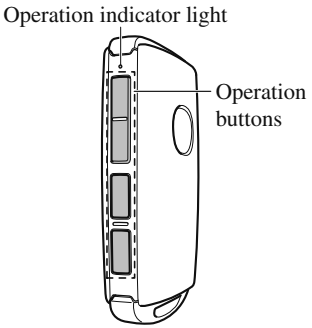
- *The keyless entry system operation may vary due to local conditions.*
- *The keyless entry system is fully operational (door/liftgate/boot lid lock/unlock) when the ignition is switched off. The system does not operate if the ignition is switched to any position other than off.*
- *If the key does not operate when pressing a button or the operational range becomes too small, the battery may be weak. To install a new battery, refer to Key Battery Replacement (page 6-38).*
- *Battery life is about 1 year. Replace the battery with a new one if the KEY indicator light (green) flashes in the instrument cluster. Replacing the battery about once a year is recommended because the KEY warning light/indicator light may not illuminate or flash depending on the rate of battery depletion.*



OwnersManuals2.com

・*Additional keys can be obtained at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). Up to 6 keys can be used with the keyless functions per vehicle. Bring all keys to the expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) when additional keys are required.*

▼ Transmitter



NOTE

・***(European models)***
The headlights turn on/off by operating the transmitter. Refer to Leaving Home Light on page 4-68.

・***(With theft-deterrent system)***
The hazard warning lights flash when the theft-deterrent system is armed or turned off.
Refer to Theft-Deterrent System on page 3-39.

・***(With the advanced keyless function (European models))***
The setting can be changed so that a beep sound is heard for confirmation when the doors and the liftgate/boot lid are locked/unlocked using the key.
(With the advanced keyless function (Except European models))
A beep sound can be heard for confirmation when the doors and the liftgate/boot lid are locked/unlocked using the key. If you prefer, the beep sound can be turned off.
The volume of the beep sound can also be changed.
Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Use the following procedure to change the setting.

1. *Switch the ignition off and close all of the doors and the liftgate/boot lid.*
2. *Open the driver's door.*
3. *Within 30 seconds of opening the driver's door, press and hold the LOCK button on the key for 5 seconds or longer.*
   The beep sound activates at the currently set volume. The setting changes each time the LOCK button on the key is pressed and the beep sound activates at the set volume. (If the beep sound has been set to not activate, it will not activate.)
4. *The setting change is completed by doing any one of the following:*
   - *Switching the ignition to ACC or ON.*
   - *Closing the driver's door.*
   - *Opening the liftgate/boot lid.*
   - *Not operating the key for ten seconds.*
   - *Pressing any button except the LOCK button on the key.*
   - *Pressing a request switch.*

The operation indicator light flashes when the buttons are pressed.

OwnersManuals2.com

Lock button

To lock the doors and the liftgate/boot lid, press the lock button and the hazard warning lights will flash once.
(With the advanced keyless function (Except European models))
A beep sound will be heard once.



NOTE

- ***(European models)***
  The doors and the liftgate/boot lid cannot be locked by pressing the lock button while any other door is open. The hazard warning lights will also not flash.
  (Except European models)
  The doors and the liftgate/boot lid cannot be locked by pressing the lock button while any other door or the liftgate is open. The hazard warning lights will also not flash.
- ***(With the i-stop function (European models))***
  Removing the key from the vehicle, closing all the doors and pressing the LOCK button on the key while the i-stop function is operating (engine is stopped) will switch the ignition OFF and lock all the doors (Steering wheel also locks). Refer to i-stop on page 4-12.
- *Make sure all doors and the liftgate/boot lid are locked after pressing the button.*
- ***(With double locking system)***
  Pressing the lock button twice within three seconds will activate the double locking system.
  Refer to Double Locking System on page 3-12.
- ***(With theft-deterrent system)***
  When the doors are locked by pressing the lock button on the key while the theft-deterrent system is armed, the hazard warning lights will flash once to indicate that the system is armed.

Unlock button

To unlock the doors and the liftgate/boot lid, press the unlock button and the hazard warning lights will flash twice.
(With the advanced keyless function (Except European models))
A beep sound will be heard twice.



NOTE

- ***(Auto re-lock function)***
  After unlocking with the key, all doors and the liftgate/boot lid will automatically lock if any of the following operations are not performed within about 30 seconds. If your vehicle has a theft-deterrent system, the hazard warning lights will flash for confirmation.
  The time required for the doors to lock automatically can be changed.
  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
  - *A door or the liftgate/boot lid is opened.*
  - *The ignition is switched to any position other than off.*

OwnersManuals2.com

· ***(With theft-deterrent system)***
When the doors are unlocked by pressing the unlock button on the key while the theft-deterrent system is turned off, the hazard warning lights will flash twice to indicate that the system is turned off.

Boot button (Saloon)

To open the boot lid, press and hold the boot button until the boot lid opens.

Boot button type A



Boot button type B



Intrusion sensor cancel button*

To cancel the intrusion sensor (part of the theft-deterrent system), press the intrusion sensor cancel button within 20 seconds after pressing the lock button and the hazard warning lights will flash three times.
Refer to Theft-Deterrent System on page 3-39.



Power saving function

By turning on the transmitter power saving function, the advanced keyless entry*1 and push button start system functions turn off and the battery power consumption of the transmitter is restricted.
The remote control function is operational by operating the transmitter switch even while the power saving function is turned on. However, the operation indicator light of the transmitter does not turn on/flash.

Turning on the power saving function

After you have turned on the power saving function according to the following procedure, the hazard warning lights and sound operate*1 one time.

1. Press the lock button on the transmitter 4 times within 3 seconds to turn on the operation indicator light.
2. Press the lock button continuously for 1.5 seconds or longer while the operation indicator light turns on (for 5 seconds).
3. Press any of the buttons on the transmitter to make sure that the operation indicator light does not turn on/flash.

Turning off the power saving function

After you have turned off the power saving function according to the following procedure, the hazard warning lights and sound operate*1 one time.

1. Press any of the buttons on the transmitter to make sure that the operation indicator light does not turn on/flash.
2. Press the lock button on the transmitter 4 times within 3 seconds to turn on the operation indicator light.
3. Press the lock button continuously for 1.5 seconds or longer while the operation indicator light turns on (for 5 seconds).

*1 With the advanced keyless function

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Operational Range

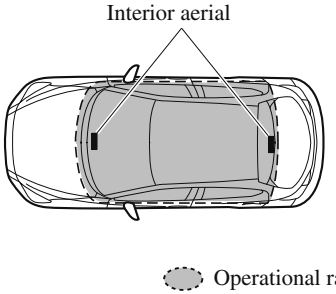
The system operates only when the driver is in the vehicle or within operational range while the key is being carried.

Starting the Engine

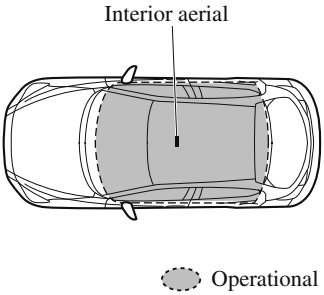
NOTE

- *Starting the engine may be possible even if the key is outside of the vehicle and extremely close to a door and window, however, always start the engine from the driver's seat.*
  If the vehicle is started and the key is not in the vehicle, the vehicle will not restart after it is shut off and the ignition is switched to off.
- *The luggage compartment/boot is out of the assured operational range, however, if the key (transmitter) is operable the engine will start.*

With the advanced keyless function



Without the advanced keyless function



NOTE

The engine may not start if the key is placed in the following areas:

- *Around the instrument panel*
- *In the storage compartments such as the glove compartment or the centre console*
- *On the rear parcel shelf (saloon)*

▼ Key Suspend Function

If a key is left in the vehicle, the functions of the key left in the vehicle are temporarily suspended to prevent theft of the vehicle.
To restore the functions, press the unlock button on the functions-suspended key in the vehicle.

OwnersManuals2.com

Advanced Keyless Entry System*

⚠ WARNING

Radio waves from the key may affect medical devices such as pacemakers:
Before using the key near people who use medical devices, ask the medical device manufacturer or your physician if radio waves from the key will affect the device.

The advanced keyless function allows you to lock/unlock the door and the liftgate/boot lid, or open the liftgate/boot lid while carrying the key.

System malfunctions or warnings are indicated by the following warning beeps.

- Request switch Inoperable Warning Beep
  Refer to Request Switch Inoperable Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function) on page 7-50.
- Key Left-in-luggage Compartment/Boot Warning Beep
  Refer to Key Left-in-luggage Compartment/Boot Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function) on page 7-50.
- Key Left-in-vehicle Warning Beep
  Refer to Key Left-in-vehicle Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function) on page 7-51.

NOTE
The advanced keyless entry system functions can be deactivated to prevent any possible adverse effect on a user wearing a pacemaker or other medical device. If the system is deactivated, you will be unable to start the engine by carrying the key. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for details. If the advanced keyless entry system has been deactivated, you can start the engine by following the procedure indicated when the key battery goes dead.
Refer to Engine Start Function When Key Battery is Dead on page 4-9.

OwnersManuals2.com

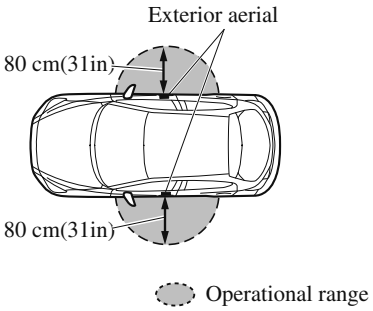
Operational Range

The system operates only when the driver is in the vehicle or within operational range while the key is being carried.

NOTE

When the battery power is low, or in places where there are high-intensity radio waves or noise, the operational range may become narrower or the system may not operate. For determining battery replacement, Refer to Keyless Entry System on page 3-4.

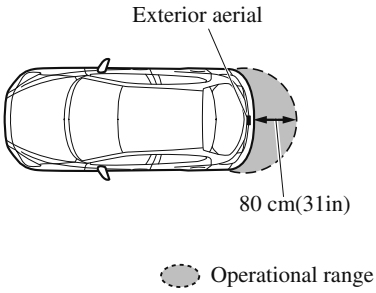
▼ Locking, Unlocking the Doors and the Liftgate/Boot Lid



NOTE

- *The system may not operate if you are too close to the windows or door handles.*
- *If the key is left in the following areas and you leave the vehicle, the doors may be locked depending on the radio wave conditions even if the key is left in the vehicle.*
  - *Around the instrument panel*
  - *In the storage compartments such as the glove compartment or the centre console*
  - *On the rear parcel shelf (saloon)*
  - *Next to a communication device such as a mobile phone*

▼ Opening the Liftgate/Boot Lid



OwnersManuals2.com

Door Locks

⚠ WARNING

Always take all children and pets with you or leave a responsible person with them:
Leaving a child or a pet unattended in a parked vehicle is dangerous. In hot weather, temperatures inside a vehicle can become high enough to cause brain damage or even death.

Do not leave the key in your vehicle with children and keep them in a place where your children will not find or play with them:
Leaving children in a vehicle with the key is dangerous. This could result in someone being badly injured or even killed.

Always close all the windows, lock the doors and the liftgate/boot lid and take the key with you when leaving your vehicle unattended:
Leaving your vehicle unlocked is dangerous as children could lock themselves in a hot vehicle, which could result in death. Also, a vehicle left unlocked becomes an easy target for thieves and intruders.

After closing the doors and the liftgate/boot lid, always verify that they are securely closed:
Doors and the liftgate/boot lid not securely closed are dangerous, if the vehicle is driven with a door and the liftgate/boot lid not securely closed, the door and the liftgate/boot lid could open unexpectedly resulting in an accident.

Always confirm the safety around the vehicle before opening a door and the liftgate/boot lid:
Suddenly opening a door and the liftgate/boot lid is dangerous. A passing vehicle or a pedestrian could be hit and cause an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Always confirm the conditions around the vehicle before opening/closing the doors and the liftgate/boot lid and use caution during strong winds or when parked on an incline. Not being aware of the conditions around the vehicle is dangerous because fingers could get caught in the door and the liftgate/boot lid or a passing pedestrian could be hit, resulting in an unexpected accident or injury.*

NOTE

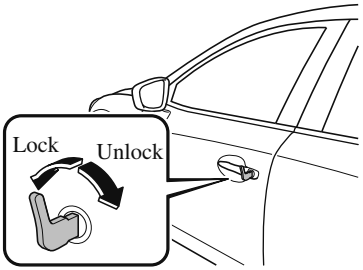
- *Always stop the engine and lock the doors. In addition, to prevent theft of valuables, do not leave them inside the cabin.*
- *If the key is left in the following areas and you leave the vehicle, the doors may be locked depending on the radio wave conditions even if the key is left in the vehicle.*
  - *Around the instrument panel*
  - *In the storage compartments such as the glove compartment or the centre console*
  - *On the rear parcel shelf (saloon)*
  - *Next to a communication device such as a mobile phone*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *The vehicle lock-out prevention feature prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle.*
  (European models)
  All doors and the liftgate/boot lid will automatically unlock if they are locked using the power door locks with any door open.
  If all the doors are closed even though the liftgate/boot lid is open, all the doors will lock.
  (Except European models)
  All doors and the liftgate/boot lid will automatically unlock if they are locked using the power door locks with any door or the liftgate open.
- ***(Door unlock (control) system with collision detection)****
  This system automatically unlocks the doors and the liftgate/boot lid in the event the vehicle is involved in an accident to allow passengers to get out of the vehicle immediately and prevent being trapped inside. While the ignition is switched ON and in the event the vehicle receives an impact strong enough to inflate the air bags, all the doors and the liftgate/boot lid are automatically unlocked after about 6 seconds have elapsed from the time of the accident.
  The doors and the liftgate/boot lid may not unlock depending on how an impact is applied, the force of the impact, and other conditions of the accident.
  If door-related systems or the battery is malfunctioning, the doors and the liftgate/boot lid will not unlock.

▼ Locking, Unlocking with Auxiliary Key

All doors and the liftgate/boot lid lock automatically when the driver's door is locked using the auxiliary key. They all unlock when the driver's door is unlocked using the auxiliary key.
Turn the auxiliary key toward the front to lock, toward the back to unlock.



▼ Double Locking System*

The double locking system is designed to prevent someone who has broken into your vehicle from opening the door from the inside.

If you have any problems with the double locking system, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

*Some models.

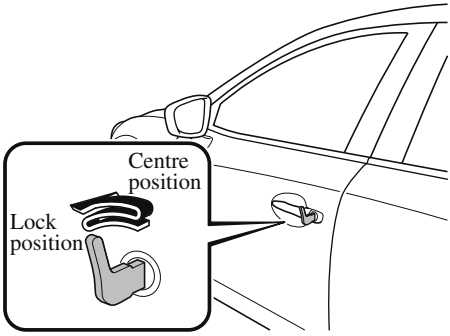
OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ WARNING

Never activate the double locking system with passengers, especially children, still inside the vehicle:
Activating the system with passengers, especially children, still inside the vehicle is dangerous. The passengers cannot open the doors from inside. They would be trapped and subjected to extreme temperatures. This could result in serious injuries or even death.

How to Activate the system

1. Close all the windows.
2. Switch the ignition off and take the key with you.
3. Close all doors and the liftgate/boot lid.
4. Insert the auxiliary key in the driver's door, turn the auxiliary key to the lock position, and return it to the centre position. Then turn it to the lock position again within 3 seconds.



NOTE

- *You can also activate the system by pressing the lock button on the transmitter twice within 3 seconds.*
- ***(With the advanced keyless function)***
  You can also activate the system by pressing the request switch twice within 3 seconds.

5. The indicator light illuminates for about 3 seconds to indicate that the system has been activated.



NOTE
The system cannot be activated when any door or the liftgate is open.

How to Deactivate the System

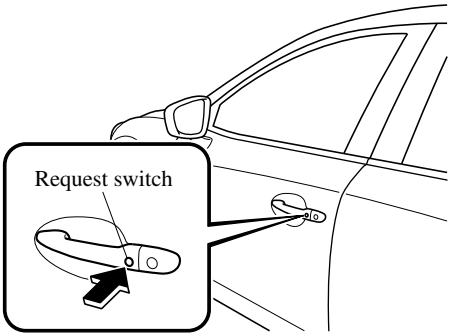
Unlock the driver's door or switch the ignition ON.

NOTE
If the power supply is interrupted (fuse blows or the lead-acid battery is disconnected), the system can only be deactivated by unlocking a door with the auxiliary key.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Locking, Unlocking with Request Switch (With the advanced keyless function)

All doors and the liftgate/boot lid can be locked/unlocked by pressing the request switch while the key is being carried.



To lock

To lock the doors and the liftgate/boot lid, press the request switch and the hazard warning lights will flash once.
(Except European models)
A beep sound will be heard once.

To unlock

To unlock the doors and the liftgate/boot lid, press the request switch and the hazard warning lights will flash twice.
(Except European models)
A beep sound will be heard twice.

NOTE

- *Confirm that all doors and the liftgate/boot lid are securely locked.*
  For the liftgate/boot lid, move it without pressing the electric liftgate/boot lid opener to verify that the liftgate/boot lid has not been left ajar.
- ***(European models)***
  All doors and the liftgate/boot lid cannot be locked when any door is open.
  (Except European models)
  All doors and the liftgate/boot lid cannot be locked when any door or the liftgate is open.
- *It may require a few seconds for the doors to unlock after the request switch is pressed.*
- ***(European models)***
  The setting can be changed so that a beep sound is heard for confirmation when the doors and the liftgate/boot lid are locked/unlocked using a request switch.
  (Except European models)
  A beep sound is heard for confirmation when the doors and the liftgate/boot lid are locked/unlocked using the request switch. If you prefer, the beep sound can be turned off.
  The volume of the beep sound can also be changed.
  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
  Use the following procedure to change the setting.
  1. *Switch the ignition off and close all of the doors and the liftgate/boot lid.*
  2. *Open the driver's door.*
  3. *Within 30 seconds of opening the driver's door, press and hold the LOCK button on the key for 5 seconds or longer.*

OwnersManuals2.com

The beep sound activates at the currently set volume. The setting changes each time the LOCK button on the key is pressed and the beep sound activates at the set volume. (If the beep sound has been set to not activate, it will not activate.)

4. *The setting change is completed by doing any one of the following:*
   - *Switching the ignition to ACC or ON.*
   - *Closing the driver's door.*
   - *Opening the liftgate/boot lid.*
   - *Not operating the key for ten seconds.*
   - *Pressing any button except the LOCK button on the key.*
   - *Pressing a request switch.*

- ***(With theft-deterrent system)***
  The hazard warning lights flash when the theft-deterrent system is armed or turned off.
  Refer to Theft-Deterrent System on page 3-39.
- ***(With double locking system)***
  The double locking system can be activated/deactivated using the request switch.
  Refer to Double Locking System on page 3-12.
- *The setting can be changed so that the doors and the liftgate/boot lid are locked automatically without pressing the request switch.*
  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

(Walk-away auto lock function)
A beep sound is heard when all doors and the liftgate are closed while the advanced key is being carried. All doors and the liftgate/boot lid are locked automatically after about three seconds when the advanced key is out of the operational range. Also, the hazard warning lights flash once. (Even if the driver is in the operational range, all doors and the liftgate/boot lid are locked automatically after about 30 seconds.) If you are out of the operational range before the doors and the liftgate/boot lid are completely closed or another key is left in the vehicle, the walk-away auto lock function will not work. Always make sure that all doors and the liftgate/boot lid are closed and locked before leaving the vehicle. The walk-away auto lock function does not close the power windows.

- ***(Auto re-lock function)***
  After unlocking with the request switch, all doors and the liftgate/boot lid will automatically lock if any of the following operations are not performed within about 30 seconds. If your vehicle has a theft-deterrent system, the hazard warning lights will flash for confirmation.
  The time required for the doors to lock automatically can be changed.
  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
  - *Opening a door or the liftgate/boot lid.*
  - *Switching the ignition to any position other than off.*

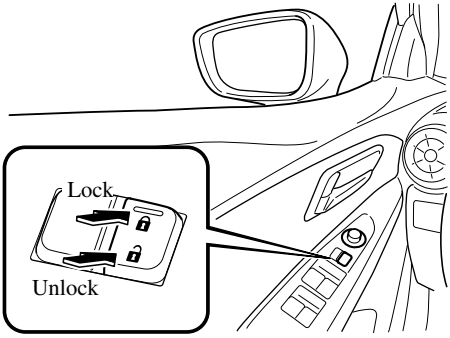
OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Locking, Unlocking with Transmitter

All doors and the liftgate/boot lid can be locked/unlocked by operating the keyless entry system transmitter, refer to Keyless Entry System (page 3-4).

▼ Locking, Unlocking with Door-Lock Switch*

All doors and the liftgate/boot lid lock automatically when the lock side is pressed with all doors and the liftgate closed.
They all unlock when the unlock side is pressed.



NOTE
The doors and the liftgate/boot lid cannot be locked while any other door or the liftgate is open.

▼ Auto Lock/Unlock Function*

⚠ WARNING

Do not pull the inner handle on a front door:
Pulling the inner handle on a front door while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Passengers can fall out of the vehicle if the door opens accidentally, which could result in death or serious injury.

- When the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph), all the doors and liftgate/boot lid lock automatically.
- When the ignition is switched off, all the doors and liftgate/boot lid unlock automatically.

NOTE
If the doors and liftgate/boot lid are unlocked by the auto lock/unlock function, it does not operate again until the doors or the liftgate are opened/closed, or the ignition is switched OFF.
The lock/unlock timing and the setting to make this function inoperable can be changed.
Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

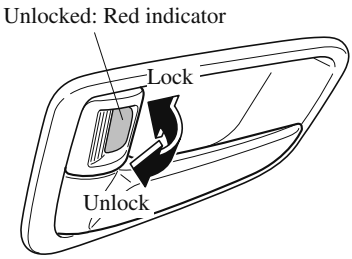
 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Locking, Unlocking with Door-Lock Knob

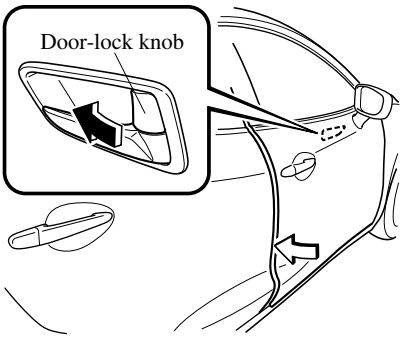
Operation from inside

(With door-lock switch)
To lock any door from the inside, press the door-lock knob.
To unlock, pull it outward.
This does not operate the other door locks.
(Without door-lock switch)
All doors and the liftgate/boot lid lock automatically when the driver's door-lock knob is pressed. They all unlock when the driver's door-lock knob is pulled out.



Operation from outside

To lock the rear and front passenger doors with the door-lock knob from the outside, press the door-lock knob to the lock position and close the door (holding the door handle in the open position is not required).
This does not operate the other door locks.



NOTE
When locking the door this way:

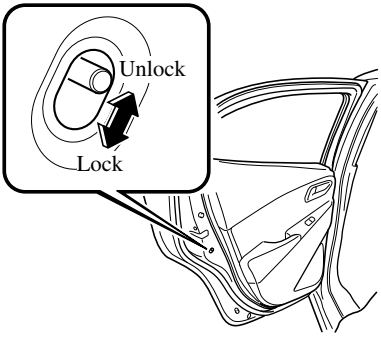
- *Be careful not to leave the key inside the vehicle.*
- *The driver's door lock knob cannot be used while the driver's door is open.*

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Rear Door Child Safety Locks

These locks are intended to help prevent children from accidentally opening the rear doors. Use them on both rear doors whenever a child rides in the rear seat of the vehicle.

If you slide the child safety lock to the lock position before closing that door, the door cannot be opened from the inside. The door can only be opened by pulling the outside handle.



Liftgate/Boot Lid

⚠ WARNING

Never allow a person to ride in the luggage compartment/boot:
Allowing a person to ride in the luggage compartment/boot is dangerous. The person in the luggage compartment/boot could be seriously injured or killed during sudden braking or a collision.

Do not drive with the liftgate/boot lid open:
Exhaust gas in the cabin of a vehicle is dangerous. An open liftgate/boot lid in a moving vehicle will cause exhaust gas to be drawn into the cabin. This gas contains CO (carbon monoxide), which is colourless, odourless, and highly poisonous, and it can cause loss of consciousness and death. Moreover, an open liftgate/boot lid could cause occupants to fall out in an accident.

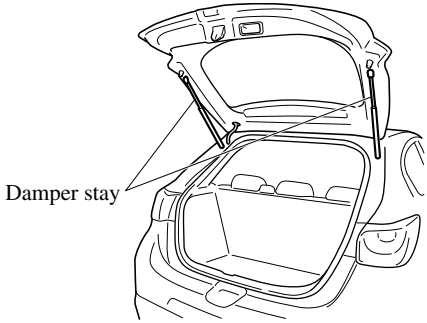
Do not stack or leave loaded luggage unsecured in the luggage compartment:
Otherwise, the luggage may move or collapse, resulting in injury or an accident. In addition, do not load luggage higher than the seatbacks. It may affect the side or rear field of view.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Before opening the liftgate/boot lid, remove any snow and ice accumulation on it. Otherwise, the liftgate/boot lid could close under the weight of the snow and ice resulting in injury.*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *Be careful when opening/closing the liftgate/boot lid during strong winds. If a strong gust blows against the liftgate/boot lid, it could close suddenly resulting in injury.*
- *Fully open the liftgate/boot lid and make sure that it stays open. If the liftgate/boot lid is only opened partially, it could slam shut by vibration or wind gusts resulting in injury.*
- *When loading or unloading luggage in the luggage compartment/boot, turn off the engine. Otherwise, you could get burned by the heat of the exhaust gas.*
- *Be careful not to apply excessive force to the damper stay on the liftgate such as by putting your hand on the stay. Otherwise, the damper stay may bend and affect the liftgate operation.*



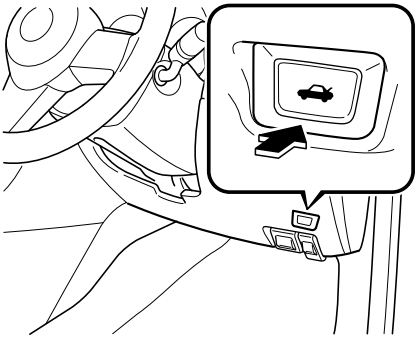
- *Do not modify or replace the liftgate damper stay. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) if a liftgate damper stay is deformed or damaged for reasons such as a collision or if there is some other problem.*

▼ Opening and Closing the Liftgate/Boot Lid

Opening the liftgate/boot lid

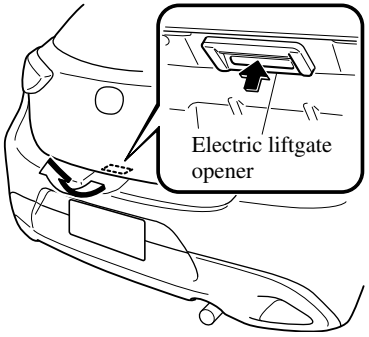
Using the remote release button (Saloon)*

Push the remote release button.



Using the electric liftgate/boot lid opener

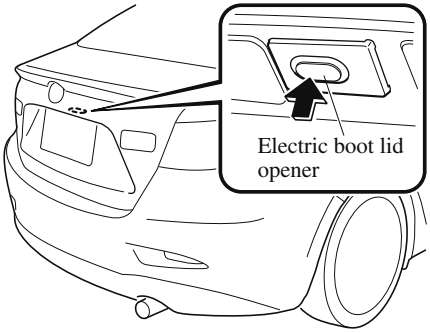
Unlock the doors and liftgate/boot lid, then press the electric liftgate/boot lid opener on the liftgate/boot lid and raise the liftgate/boot lid when the latch releases.
(Hatchback)



*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

(Saloon)*



NOTE
(With the advanced keyless function)

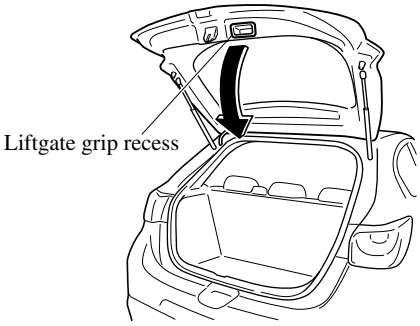
- *A locked liftgate/boot lid can also be opened while the key is being carried.*
- *When opening the liftgate/boot lid with the doors and the liftgate/boot lid locked, it may require a few seconds for the liftgate/boot lid latch to release after the electric liftgate/boot lid opener is pressed.*
- *The liftgate/boot lid can be closed when the doors are locked with the key left in the vehicle. However, to prevent locking the key in the vehicle, the liftgate/boot lid can be opened by pressing the electric liftgate/boot lid opener. If the liftgate/boot lid cannot be opened despite doing this procedure, first push the liftgate/boot lid completely closed, then press the electric liftgate/boot lid opener to fully open the liftgate/boot lid.*
- ***(Hatchback)***
  When the latch is released by pressing the electric liftgate opener, the liftgate raises slightly. If the liftgate is not operated for a certain period of time, the liftgate cannot be raised.

To open
Press the electric liftgate opener again.
To close
To close the liftgate from its slightly raised position, open it first by pressing the electric liftgate opener, then close it after waiting at least 1 second.

- *If the liftgate is not fully closed, the driver is notified by a warning indicated in the instrument cluster.*
- *If the vehicle battery is dead or there is a malfunction in the electrical system and the liftgate/boot lid cannot be unlocked, the liftgate/boot lid can be opened by performing the emergency procedure.*
  Refer to When Liftgate/Boot Lid Cannot be Opened on page 7-54.

Closing the liftgate/boot lid

(Hatchback)
Lower the liftgate slowly using the liftgate grip recess, then push the liftgate closed using both hands.
Do not slam it. Pull up on the liftgate to make sure it is secure.



 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

(Saloon)
Use both hands to push the boot lid down until the lock snaps shut. Do not slam it. Pull up on the boot lid to make sure it is secure.

▼ Luggage Compartment

Luggage compartment cover (Hatchback)*

⚠ WARNING

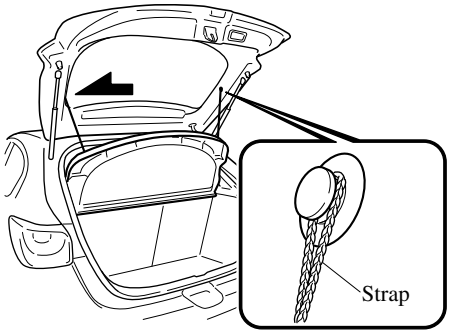
Do not place anything on top of the cover:
Placing luggage or other cargo on top of the luggage compartment cover is dangerous. During sudden braking or a collision, the cargo could become a projectile that could hit and injure someone.

Make sure luggage and cargo are secured before driving:
Not securing cargo while driving is dangerous as it could move or be crushed during sudden braking or a collision and cause injury.

⚠ CAUTION

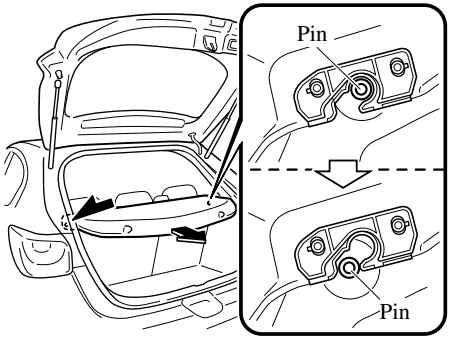
- *Make sure the luggage compartment cover is firmly secured. If it is not firmly secured, it could unexpectedly disengage resulting in injury.*

The luggage compartment can be accessed by opening the liftgate when the straps are attached to the sides of the liftgate.



Removing the cover

This cover can be removed for more room.
1. Remove the straps from the hooks.
2. Lift the end of the luggage compartment cover a little, pull it outward, and remove it from the pins.



3. Lift the front end of the luggage compartment cover and remove it.

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Fuel and Engine Exhaust Precautions

▼ Fuel Requirements (SKYACTIV-G 1.3, SKYACTIV-G 1.5, SKYACTIV-G 2.0)

Vehicles with catalytic converters or oxygen sensors must use ONLY UNLEADED FUEL, which will reduce exhaust emissions and keep spark plug fouling to a minimum.

To achieve maximum engine performance, use the specified fuel.

Fuel	Research Octane Number	Country
Premium unleaded fuel (Conforming to EN 228 and within E10)*1 	95 or above	Albania, Algeria, Andorra, Antigua, Aruba, Austria, Barbados, Belgium, Bermuda, Bolivia, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Botswana, Brunei, Bulgaria, Canary Islands, Colombia*2, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech, Denmark, Estonia, F.Guiana, Faeroe, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Grenada, Guadeloupe, Guatemala, Honduras, Hong Kong, Hungary, Iceland, Ireland, Israel, Italy, Jamaica, Latvia, Lebanon, Lesotho, Libya, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Macau, Macedonia, Madagascar, Malaysia, Malta, Martinique, Mauritius, Moldova, Monaco, Montenegro, Namibia, New Caledonia, Nicaragua, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Reunion, Romania, San Marino, Serbia, Seychelles, Singapore, Slovakia, Slovenia, South Africa, Spain, St. Lucia, St. Martin, St. Vincent, Surinam, Swaziland, Sweden, Switzerland, Tahiti, Taiwan, The Netherlands, Tunisia, Turkey, UAE, UK, Uruguay, Vanuatu, Vatican
Premium unleaded fuel (within E20) 	95	Thailand
Regular unleaded fuel	92 or above	Egypt, Myanmar
	90 or above	Angola, B. Virgin, Bahrain, Burundi, Cambodia, Cameroon, Chile, Colombia, Commonwealth of Dominica, Curacao, Dominican Republic (LHD), Ecuador, El Salvador, Fiji, Gabon, Haiti, Indonesia, Ivory Coast, Jordan, Kenya, Kuwait, Laos, Mozambique, Nepal, Nigeria, Oman, Panama, Peru, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, Sri Lanka, Tanzania, The Philippines, Trinidad and Tobago, Vietnam

*1 Europe
*2 SKYACTIV-G 2.0 (Hatchback)

OwnersManuals2.com

Fuel with a lower rating will negatively affect the emission control system performance and could also cause engine knocking and serious engine damage.

⚠ CAUTION

- *USE ONLY UNLEADED FUEL.*
  Leaded fuel is harmful to the catalytic converter and oxygen sensors and will lead to deterioration of the emission control system and or failures.
- *The use of E10 fuel with 10 % ethanol in Europe is safe for your vehicle. Damage to your vehicle may occur when ethanol exceeds this recommendation.*
- *Never add fuel system additives other than a Mazda genuine product, otherwise the emission control system could be damaged. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for details.*

▼ Deposit Cleaner

To get the best performance out of our newest-technology SKYACTIV petrol engines, cleaning of deposits adhering to the fuel related system, such as fuel injectors, may be required by using a Mazda genuine deposit cleaner in the specified countries.
Refer to Maintenance Table on page 6-4.

⚠ CAUTION

- *According to the inspection result of scheduled maintenance, Mazda genuine deposit cleaner is to be used. Neglected deposits in the fuel system may cause malfunction indicator light coming on to indicate an engine malfunction, and if the vehicle continues to be driven under this condition, it could result in problems occurring such as idling failure and poor acceleration.*
- *The Mazda genuine deposit cleaner is not a guarantee of engine performance no matter the quality of the fuel used. When a problem occurs even though the specified fuel is used and the Mazda genuine deposit cleaner is used according to the instructions, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *If a deposit cleaner other than the Mazda genuine product is used, it could result in damage to the fuel system or the engine internally; therefore use only the Mazda genuine product. Mazda genuine deposit cleaner: K002 W0 001A*
- *If cleaning required according to the inspection result of scheduled maintenance is not done with the Mazda genuine deposit cleaner, repair cost for engine malfunctions caused by deposits are borne by the customer.*

OwnersManuals2.com

How to use the cleaner

With the fuel tank full, infuse 1 bottle of Mazda genuine deposit cleaner directly into the fuel tank.

NOTE

- *Infusing the deposit cleaner when the fuel tank is full provides the concentration of cleaner within the range effective for removing the deposits and the best cleaning results can be obtained by the full tank of fuel with the infused deposit cleaner contacting the deposits for a long period of time until the full tank of fuel is nearly used up.*

▼ Fuel Requirements (SKYACTIV-D 1.5)

The vehicle will operate efficiently on diesel fuel with specification EN590 or the equivalent.



⚠ CAUTION

- *Never use fuel other than specification EN590 or the equivalent for your vehicle. Use of petrol or paraffin in diesel engines will result in engine damage.*
- *Never add fuel system additives other than a Mazda genuine product, otherwise the emission control system could be damaged. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for details.*

NOTE
When refuelling, always add at least 10 L (2.6 US gal, 2.2 Imp gal) of fuel.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Emission Control System (SKYACTIV-G 1.3, SKYACTIV-G 1.5, SKYACTIV-G 2.0)

This vehicle is equipped with an emission control system (the catalytic converter is part of this system) that enables the vehicle to comply with existing exhaust emissions requirements.

⚠ WARNING

Never park over or near anything flammable:
Parking over or near anything flammable, such as dry grass, is dangerous. Even with the engine turned off, the exhaust system remains very hot after normal use and could ignite anything flammable. A resulting fire could cause serious injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION

Ignoring the following precautions could cause lead to accumulate on the catalyst inside the converter or cause the converter to get very hot. Either condition will damage the converter and cause poor performance.

- *USE ONLY UNLEADED FUEL.*
- *Do not drive your Mazda with any sign of engine malfunction.*
- *Do not coast with the ignition switched off.*
- *Do not descend steep grades in gear with the ignition switched off.*
- *Do not operate the engine at high idle for more than 2 minutes.*
- *Do not tamper with the emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by a qualified technician.*
- *Do not push-start or tow-start this vehicle.*

▼ Emission Control System (SKYACTIV-D 1.5)

This vehicle is equipped with an emission control system (the catalytic converter is part of this system) that enables the vehicle to comply with existing exhaust emissions requirements.

⚠ WARNING

Never park over or near anything flammable:
Parking over or near anything flammable, such as dry grass, is dangerous. Even with the engine turned off, the exhaust system remains very hot after normal use and could ignite anything flammable. A resulting fire could cause serious injury or death.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ CAUTION

Ignoring the following precautions could cause lead to accumulate on the catalyst inside the converter or cause the converter to get very hot. Either condition will damage the converter and cause poor performance.

- *Do not drive your Mazda with any sign of engine malfunction.*
- *Do not coast with the ignition switched off.*
- *Do not descend steep grades in gear with the ignition switched off.*
- *Do not operate the engine at high idle for more than 2 minutes.*
- *Do not tamper with the emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by a qualified technician.*
- *Do not push-start or pull-start this vehicle.*

▼ Engine Exhaust (Carbon monoxide)

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle:
Engine exhaust gas is dangerous. This gas contains carbon monoxide (CO), which is colourless, odourless, and poisonous. When inhaled, it can cause loss of consciousness and death. If you smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, keep all windows fully open and contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) immediately.

Do not run the engine when inside an enclosed area:
Running the engine inside an enclosed area, such as a garage, is dangerous. Exhaust gas, which contains poisonous carbon monoxide, could easily enter the cabin. Loss of consciousness or even death could occur.

Open the windows or adjust the heating or cooling system to draw fresh air when idling the engine:
Exhaust gas is dangerous. When the vehicle is stopped with the windows closed and the engine running for a long time even in an open area, exhaust gas, which contains poisonous carbon monoxide, could enter the cabin. Loss of consciousness or even death could occur.

Clear snow from underneath and around your vehicle, particularly the tail pipe, before starting the engine:
Running the engine when a vehicle is stopped in deep snow is dangerous. The exhaust pipe could be blocked by the snow, allowing exhaust gas to enter the cabin. Because exhaust gas contains poisonous carbon monoxide, it could cause loss of consciousness or even death to occupants in the cabin.

OwnersManuals2.com

Fuel-Filler Flap and Cap

⚠ WARNING

When removing the fuel-filler cap, loosen the cap slightly and wait for any hissing to stop, then remove it:
Fuel spray is dangerous. Fuel can burn skin and eyes and cause illness if ingested. Fuel spray is released when there is pressure in the fuel tank and the fuel-filler cap is removed too quickly.

Before refuelling, stop the engine, and always keep sparks and flames away from the filler neck:
Fuel vapour is dangerous. It could be ignited by sparks or flames causing serious burns and injuries.
Additionally, use of the incorrect fuel-filler cap or not using a fuel-filler cap may result in a fuel leak, which could result in serious burns or death in an accident.

Do not continue refuelling after the fuel pump nozzle shuts off automatically:
Continuing to add fuel after the fuel pump nozzle has shut off automatically is dangerous because overfilling the fuel tank may cause fuel overflow or leakage. Fuel overflow and leakage could damage the vehicle and if the fuel ignites it could cause a fire and explosion resulting in serious injury or death.

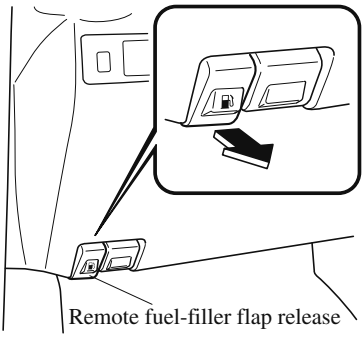
⚠ CAUTION

Always use only a designated Mazda fuel-filler cap or an approved equivalent, available at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). The wrong cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel and emission control systems.

▼ Refuelling

Before refuelling, close all the doors, windows, and the liftgate/boot lid, and switch the ignition OFF.

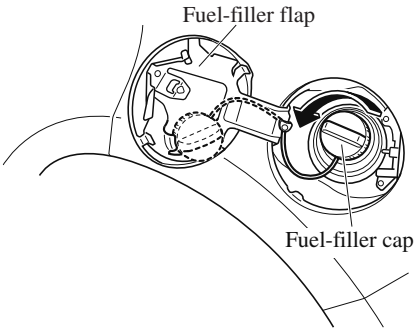
1. To open the fuel-filler flap, pull the remote fuel-filler flap release.



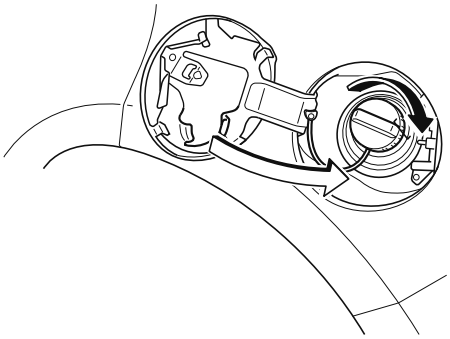
2. To remove the fuel-filler cap, turn it anticlockwise.

OwnersManuals2.com

3. Attach the removed cap to the inner side of the fuel-filler flap.



4. Insert the refuelling nozzle all the way and begin refuelling. Pull out the refuelling nozzle after the refuelling stops automatically.
5. To close the fuel-filler cap, turn it clockwise until a click is heard.
6. To close, press the fuel-filler flap until it locks securely.



OwnersManuals2.com

Mirrors

Before driving, adjust the inside and outside mirrors.

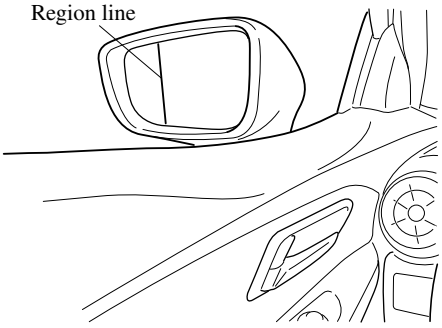
▼ Outside Mirrors

⚠ WARNING

Be sure to look over your shoulder before changing lanes:
Changing lanes without taking into account the actual distance of the vehicle in the convex mirror is dangerous. You could have a serious accident. What you see in the convex mirror is closer than it appears.

NOTE
(Driver's Side Wide Angle Mirror*)

- *The wide angle mirror has 2 curvatures on its surface separated by a region line into outer and inner regions. The inner region is a standard convex mirror whereas the outer region allows for a wider range of visibility within the same sweep. This combination allows for better assurance when making lane changes.*

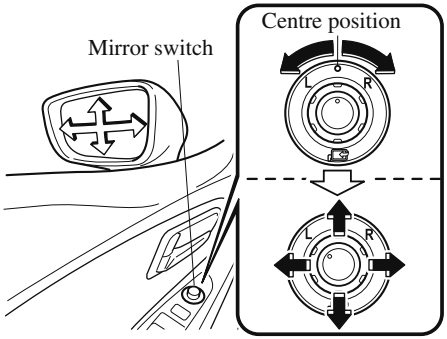


- *The perceived distance of objects in the outer and inner regions of the wide angle mirror is different. Objects appearing in the outer region are actually further away than they are in the inner region.*

Power mirror adjustment

The ignition must be switched to ACC or ON position.

To adjust:
1. Rotate the mirror switch to the left **L** or right **R** to choose the left or right side mirror.
2. Press the mirror switch in the appropriate direction.



After adjusting the mirror, lock the control by rotating the switch to the centre position.

OwnersManuals2.com

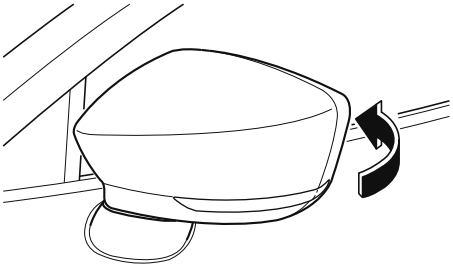
Folding outside mirror

⚠ WARNING

Always return the outside mirrors to the driving position before you start driving:
Driving with the outside mirrors folded in is dangerous. Your rear view will be restricted, and you could have an accident.

Manual folding outside mirror

Fold the outside mirror rearward until it is flush with the vehicle.



Power folding outside mirror

⚠ WARNING

Do not touch a power folding outside mirror while it is moving:
Touching the power folding outside mirror when it is moving is dangerous. Your hand could be pinched and injured or the mirror could be damaged.

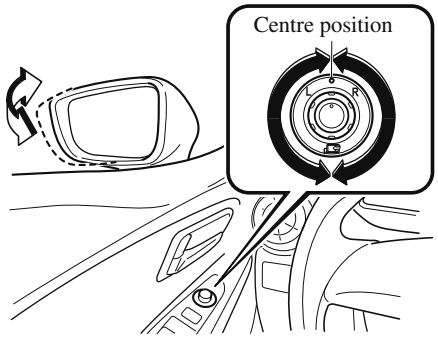
Use the switch to set the mirror to the on-road position:
Setting the power folding outside mirror to the on-road position by hand is dangerous. The mirror will not lock in position and will prevent effective rearview visibility.

Only operate the power folding outside mirror with the vehicle safely parked:
Operating the power folding outside mirror while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Wind blast on the mirror will cause them to collapse and you will be unable to return it to the on-road position, preventing rearview visibility.

The ignition must be switched to ACC or ON position.

Type A

To fold, rotate the outside mirror switch. To return the mirror to the driving position, rotate the switch to the centre position.

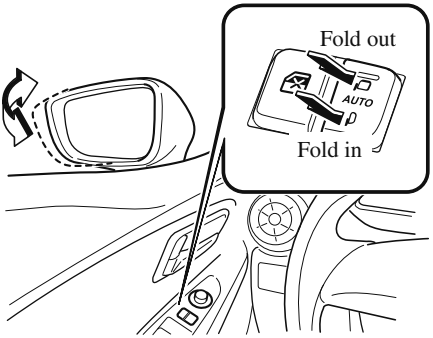


Type B

To fold the mirrors, press the ⫏ mark on the outside mirror folding switch.

OwnersManuals2.com

To return the mirrors to their on-road positions, press the mark on the outside mirror folding switch.



Automatic folding function*

The automatic folding function operates when the ignition is switched to ACC or OFF.
When the outside mirror automatic folding switch is pressed to the AUTO position (neutral position), the outside mirrors automatically fold in and out when the doors are locked and unlocked.
Also, when the ignition is switched ON or the engine is started, the outside mirrors fold out automatically.

NOTE
The outside mirrors may not fold in and out automatically under cold weather conditions.
If the outside mirrors do not fold in and out automatically, remove any ice or snow, and then press the upper or lower side of the outside mirror automatic folding switch to fold the outside mirrors in or out.

Engine-off outside mirror operation*

The outside mirrors can be operated for about 40 seconds after the ignition is switched from ON to off.

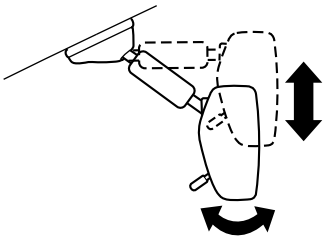
▼ Rearview Mirror

⚠ WARNING

Do not stack cargo or objects higher than the seatbacks:
Cargo stacked higher than the seatbacks is dangerous. It can block your view in the rearview mirror, which might cause you to hit another car when changing lanes.

Rearview mirror adjustment

Before driving, adjust the rearview mirror to centre on the scene through the rear window.



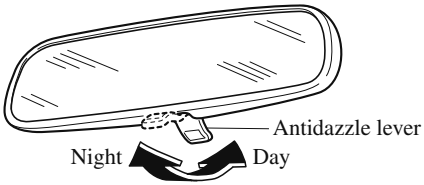
NOTE
For the manual antidazzle mirror, perform the adjustment with the antidazzle lever in the day position.

OwnersManuals2.com

Reducing glare from headlights

Manual antidazzle mirror

Push the antidazzle lever forward for day driving. Pull it back to reduce glare of headlights from vehicles at the rear.

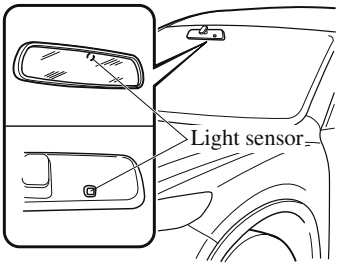


Auto-dimming mirror

The auto-dimming mirror automatically reduces the glare of headlights from vehicles at the rear when the ignition is switched ON.

NOTE

- *Do not use glass cleaner or suspend objects on or around the light sensor. Otherwise, light sensor sensitivity will be affected and may not operate normally.*



- *The auto-dimming function is cancelled when the ignition is switched ON and the shift/selector lever is in reverse (R).*

OwnersManuals2.com

Power Windows

The windows can be opened/closed by operating the power window switches.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the opening is clear before closing a window:
Closing a power window is dangerous. A person's hands, head, or even neck could be caught by the window and result in serious injury or even death. This warning applies especially to children.

Never allow children to play with power window switches:
Power window switches that are not locked with the power window lock switch would allow children to operate power windows unintentionally, which could result in serious injury if a child's hands, head or neck becomes caught by the window.

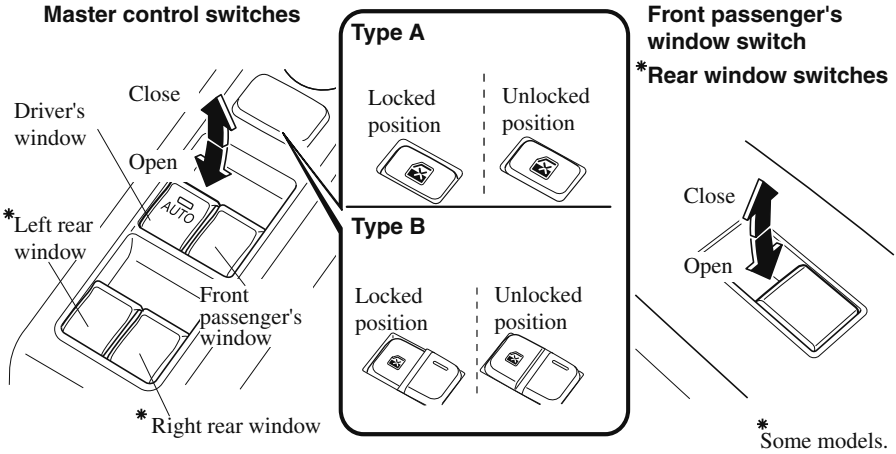
Make sure nothing blocks the window just before it reaches the fully closed position or while holding up the power window switch:
Blocking the power window just before it reaches the fully closed position or while holding up the power window switch is dangerous.
In this case, the jam-safe function cannot prevent the window from closing all the way. If fingers are caught, serious injuries could occur.

NOTE
When driving with only 1 of the rear windows open, your ears might experience a resonating sound. However, this does not indicate a problem. The sound can be reduced by slightly opening a front window or by changing the size of the rear window opening.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Opening/Closing Windows

The window opens while the switch is pressed and it closes while the switch is pulled up with the ignition switched ON. Do not open or close three or more windows at the same time.
The front passenger's side and rear windows can be opened/closed when the power window lock switch on the driver's door is in the unlock position. Keep this switch in the locked position while children are in the vehicle.



NOTE

- *A power window may no longer open/close if you continue to press the switch after fully opening/closing the power window. If the power window does not open/close, wait a moment and then operate the switch again.*
- *The passenger windows may be opened or closed using the master control switches on the driver's door.*
- *The power window can be operated for about 40 seconds after the ignition is switched from ON to ACC or off with all doors closed. If any door is opened, the power window will stop operating.*
  For engine-off operation of the power window, the switch must be held up firmly throughout window closure because the auto-closing function will be inoperable.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Auto-opening/Closing

To fully open the window automatically, press the switch completely down, then release. The window will fully open automatically.
To fully close the window automatically, pull the switch completely up, then release. The window will fully close automatically.

To stop the window partway, pull or press the switch in the opposite direction and then release it.
This function is only equipped on the driver's side.

NOTE

Power window system initialization procedure

If the lead-acid battery was disconnected during vehicle maintenance, or for other reasons (such as a switch continues to be operated after the window is fully open/closed), the window will not fully open and close automatically.
The power window auto function will only resume on a power window that has been reset.

1. *Switch the ignition ON.*
2. *Make sure that the power window lock switch located on the driver's door is not depressed.*
3. *Press the switch and fully open the window.*
4. *Pull up the switch to fully close the window and continue holding the switch for about 2 seconds after the window fully closed.*
5. *Make sure that the power windows operate correctly using the door switches.*

▼ Jam-safe Window

If foreign matter is detected between the window and the window frame while the window is closing automatically (refer to Auto-opening/Closing on page 3-35), the window stops closing and automatically opens partway.

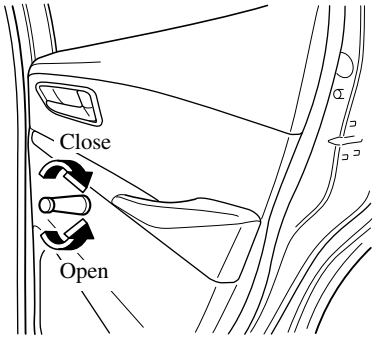
NOTE

- *The jam-safe function may operate under the following conditions:*
  - *A strong impact is detected while the window is closing automatically.*
  - *Window is closing automatically in very low temperatures.*
- *In the event the jam-safe function activates and the power window cannot be closed automatically, pull and hold the switch and the window will close.*
- *The jam-safe window function does not operate until the system has been reset.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Manual Windows*

To open and close the window turn the handle on the door.



NOTE

When driving with only one of the rear windows open, your ears might experience a resonating sound. However, this does not indicate a problem. The sound can be reduced by slightly opening a front window or by changing the size of the rear window opening.

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Modification and Add-On Equipment

Mazda cannot guarantee the immobilizer and the theft-deterrent systems' operation if the system has been modified or if any add-on equipment has been installed.

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid damage to the vehicle, do not modify the system or install any add-on equipment to the immobilizer and the theft-deterrent systems or the vehicle.

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system allows the engine to start only with a key the system recognises.

If someone attempts to start the engine with an unrecognised key, the engine will not start, thereby helping to prevent vehicle theft.
If you have a problem with the immobilizer system or the key, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

⚠ CAUTION

- *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*
- *To avoid damage to the key, do not:*
  - *Drop the key.*
  - *Get the key wet.*
  - *Expose the key to any kind of magnetic field.*
  - *Expose the key to high temperatures on places such as the instrument panel or bonnet, under direct sunlight.*
- *If the engine does not start with the correct key, and the security indicator light keeps illuminating or flashing, the system may have a malfunction. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

- *The keys carry a unique electronic code. For this reason, and to assure your safety, obtaining a replacement key requires some waiting time. They are only available through an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *Always keep a spare key in case one is lost. If a key is lost, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.*
- *If you lose a key, an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), will reset the electronic codes of your remaining keys and immobilizer system. Bring all the remaining keys to the expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to reset. Starting the vehicle with a key that has not been reset is not possible.*

▼ Operation

NOTE

- *The engine may not start and security indicator light may illuminate or flash if the key is placed in an area where it is difficult for the system to detect the signal, such as on the instrument panel or in the glove compartment. Move the key to a location within the signal range, switch the ignition off, and then restart the engine.*
- *Signals from a TV or radio station, or from a transceiver or mobile telephone could interfere with your immobilizer system. If you are using the proper key and the engine fails to start, check the security indicator light.*

Arming

The system is armed when the ignition is switched from ON to off.
The security indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes every 2 seconds until the system is disarmed.



Disarming

The system is disarmed when the ignition is switched ON with the correct programmed key. The security indicator light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then turns off. If the engine does not start with the correct key, and the security indicator light remains illuminated or flashing, try the following:
Make sure the key is within the operational range for signal transmission. Switch the ignition off, and then restart the engine. If the engine does not start after 3 or more tries, contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

NOTE

- *If the security indicator light flashes continuously while you are driving, do not shut off the engine. Go to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), and have it checked. If the engine is shut off while the indicator light is flashing, you will not be able to restart it.*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *Because the electronic codes are reset when the immobilizer system is repaired, the keys are needed. Make sure to bring all the keys to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), so that they can be programmed.*

Theft-Deterrent System*

If the theft-deterrent system detects an inappropriate entry into the vehicle or the intrusion sensor detects movement in the vehicle which could result in the vehicle (with the intrusion sensor) or its contents being stolen, the alarm alerts the surrounding area of an abnormality by sounding the siren/horn and flashing the hazard warning lights.

The system will not function unless it's properly armed. So when you leave the vehicle, follow the arming procedure correctly.

Intrusion sensor*

The intrusion sensor uses ultrasonic waves to detect movement inside the vehicle and to raise an alert of an intrusion into the vehicle.

The intrusion sensor detects certain kinds of movement inside the vehicle, however, it may also respond to phenomenon outside the vehicle such as vibrations, loud noise, wind, and air currents.

⚠ CAUTION

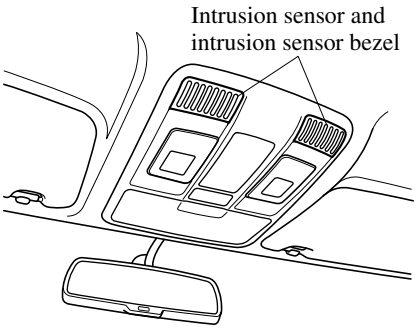
In order for the intrusion sensor to operate appropriately, be aware of the following:

- *Do not hang clothing or objects from a head restraint or a coat hook.*
- *Return the extension sunvisors to their original positions.*
- *Do not blind the intrusion sensor by covering it or placing objects over it.*
- *Do not allow the intrusion sensor to get soiled or wipe it with a liquid.*

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

- *Do not shock or cause an impact to the intrusion sensor or the intrusion sensor bezel.*
- *Do not install seats that are not Mazda genuine products.*
- *To prevent obstruction of intrusion sensor, do not place objects or cargo near the intrusion sensor that are higher than the head restraints.*



▼ Operation

Siren/Horn triggering conditions

The siren/horn sounds intermittently and the hazard warning lights flash for about 30 seconds when the system is triggered by any one of the following:

- Unlocking a door with an inside door-lock knob.
- Forcing open a door, the bonnet or the liftgate/boot lid.
- Opening the bonnet by operating the bonnet release handle.
- Switching the ignition ON without using the push button start.
- **(With the intrusion sensor)**
  The intrusion sensor detects a movement in the vehicle.

The system will be triggered again (up to 10 times) if one of the above conditions remains.

- **(With the intrusion sensor)**
  Disconnecting the lead-acid battery terminal (the hazard warning lights do not flash).

The system will be triggered about 10 times.

NOTE

- *The liftgate/boot lid does not open while the theft-deterrent system is operating.*
- *If the lead-acid battery goes dead while the theft-deterrent system is armed, the siren/horn will activate and the hazard warning lights will flash when the lead-acid battery is charged or replaced.*

▼ How to Arm the System

1. Close the windows securely.

   NOTE
   (With the intrusion sensor)
   Even with a window open, the system can be armed, however, leaving the windows even partially open can invite theft, and wind blowing into the vehicle could trigger the alarm.
   The intrusion sensor function can also be cancelled.
   Refer to Cancelling the Intrusion Sensor (With Intrusion Sensor) on page 3-41.
2. Switch the ignition OFF.
3. Make sure the bonnet, the doors, and the liftgate/boot lid are closed.
4. Press the lock button on the transmitter or lock the driver's door from the outside with the auxiliary key.

OwnersManuals2.com

The hazard warning lights will flash once.
(With the advanced keyless function)
Press a request switch.

The security indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes twice per second for 20 seconds.



5. After 20 seconds, the system is fully armed.

NOTE

- *The theft-deterrent system can also be armed by activating the auto relock function with all the doors, the liftgate/boot lid and the bonnet closed.*
  Refer to Transmitter on page 3-5.
- *The system will disarm if one of the following operations takes place within 20 seconds after pressing the lock button:*
  - *Unlocking any door.*
  - *Opening any door.*
  - *Opening the bonnet.*
  - *Switching the ignition ON.*

  To rearm the system, do the arming procedure again.
- *When the doors are locked by pressing the lock button on the transmitter or using the auxiliary key while the theft-deterrent system is armed, the hazard warning lights will flash once to indicate that the system is armed.*

▼ Cancelling the Intrusion Sensor (With Intrusion Sensor)

If the theft deterrent system has been armed while any of the following conditions are present, cancel the intrusion sensor to prevent the alarm from triggering unnecessarily.

- Leaving the vehicle with a movable object, passengers or pets remaining inside.
- Leaving an object inside the vehicle that can roll around, such as when the vehicle is placed on a tilting, unstable surface when being shipped.
- Hanging small objects/accessories in the vehicle, hanging clothing on a coat hook, or placing other items which can move easily inside the vehicle.
- Parking in an area where there is strong vibration or loud noise.
- When using a high pressure or automatic car wash.
- Continuous shock and vibration from hail or thunder and lightning is transmitted to the vehicle.
- Doors are locked with a window left open.
- An accessory heater or device that produces moving air and vibration operates while the theft deterrent system is armed.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE
If any door or the liftgate/boot lid remains closed for 30 seconds, all the doors and the liftgate/boot lid automatically re-lock and the theft deterrent system arms even if a window is left open.

To cancel the intrusion sensor, press the intrusion sensor cancel button on the transmitter within 20 seconds after pressing the lock button.
The hazard warning lights will flash 3 times.

NOTE

- *To reactivate the intrusion sensor, turn off the armed theft-deterrent system and then rearm it.*
- *The intrusion sensor is operational when the theft-deterrent system is armed. To cancel the intrusion sensor, press the intrusion sensor cancel button each time the theft-deterrent system is armed.*

▼ To Turn Off an Armed System

An armed system can be turned off using any one of the following methods:

- Pressing the unlock button on the transmitter.
- Starting the engine with the push button start.
- **(With the advanced keyless function)**
  - Pressing a request switch on the doors.

The hazard warning lights will flash twice.

NOTE
When the doors are unlocked by pressing the unlock button on the transmitter while the theft-deterrent system is turned off, the hazard warning lights will flash twice to indicate that the system is turned off.

▼ To Stop the Alarm

A triggered alarm can be turned off using any one of the following methods:

- Pressing the unlock button or the boot button (saloon) on the transmitter.
- Starting the engine with the push button start.
- **(With the advanced keyless function)**
  - Pressing a request switch on the doors.
  - Pressing the electric liftgate/boot lid opener while the key is being carried.

The hazard warning lights will flash twice.

OwnersManuals2.com

Running-In

No special running-in is necessary, but a few precautions in the first 1,000 km (600 miles) may add to the performance, economy, and life of the vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- Do not maintain one constant speed, either slow or fast, for a long period of time.
- Do not drive constantly at full-throttle or high engine rpm for extended periods of time.
- Avoid unnecessary hard stops.
- Avoid full-throttle starts.
- Do not tow a trailer.

Saving Fuel and Protection of the Environment

How you operate your Mazda determines how far it will travel on a tank of fuel. Use these suggestions to help save fuel and reduce CO_2.

- Avoid long warm-ups. Once the engine runs smoothly, begin driving.
- Avoid fast starts.
- Drive at lower speeds.
- Anticipate when to apply the brakes (avoid sudden braking).
- Follow the maintenance schedule (page 6-3) and have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) perform inspections and servicing.
- Use the air conditioner only when necessary.
- Slow down on rough roads.
- Keep the tyres properly inflated.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight.
- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Keep the wheels in correct alignment.
- Keep windows closed at high speeds.
- Slow down when driving in crosswinds and headwinds.

⚠ WARNING

Never stop the engine when going down a hill:

Stopping the engine when going down a hill is dangerous. This causes the loss of power steering and power brake control, and may cause damage to the drivetrain. Any loss of steering or braking control could cause an accident.

OwnersManuals2.com

Hazardous Driving

⚠ WARNING

Be extremely careful if it is necessary to downshift on slippery surfaces:
Downshifting into lower gear while driving on slippery surfaces is dangerous. The sudden change in tyre speed could cause the tyres to skid. This could lead to loss of vehicle control and an accident.

When driving on ice or in water, snow, mud, sand, or similar hazards:

- Be cautious and allow extra distance for braking.
- Avoid sudden braking and sudden manoeuvring.
- Do not pump the brakes. Continue to press down on the brake pedal.
  Refer to Antilock Brake System (ABS) on page 4-84.
- If you get stuck, select a lower gear and accelerate slowly. Do not spin the front wheels.
- For more traction in starting on slippery surfaces such as ice or packed snow, use sand, rock salt, chains, carpeting, or other nonslip material under the front wheels.

NOTE
Use snow chains only on the front wheels.

Floor Mat

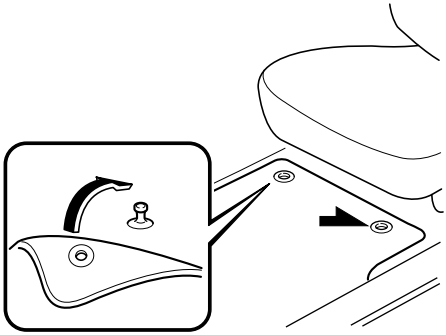
We recommend the use of Genuine Mazda floor mats.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the floor mats are secured with the grommets or the retainers to prevent them from bunching up under the foot pedals (Driver's side):
Using a floor mat that is not secured is dangerous as it will interfere with the accelerator and brake pedal operation (driver's side), which could result in an accident.
Only use a floor mat which conforms to the shape of the floor on the driver's side and make sure it is oriented correctly.
Secure the floor mat using the grommets or retainers.
There are various ways to secure floor mats depending on the type used, therefore secure the mat according to the type.
After installing the floor mat, make sure that it does not slide from side to side or back and forth, and that there is sufficient clearance with the accelerator and brake pedals on the driver's side.
After removing the floor mat for cleaning or some other reason, always securely reinstall it while paying attention to the precautions just mentioned.

OwnersManuals2.com

Do not install two floor mats, one on top of the other, on the driver's side:
Installing two floor mats, one on top of the other, on the driver's side is dangerous as the retention pins can only keep one floor mat from sliding forward.
Loose floor mat(s) will interfere with the foot pedals and could result in an accident.
If using an all-weather mat for winter use always remove the original floor mat.



When setting a floor mat, position the floor mat so that its grommets or retainers are inserted over the pointed end of the retention posts.

Rocking the Vehicle

⚠ WARNING

Do not spin the wheels at high speed, and do not allow anyone to stand behind a wheel when pushing the vehicle:
When the vehicle is stuck, spinning the wheels at high speed is dangerous. The spinning tyre could overheat and explode. This could cause serious injuries.

⚠ CAUTION

Too much rocking may cause engine overheating, transaxle failure, and tyre damage.

If you must rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand or mud, depress the accelerator slightly and slowly move the shift lever/ selector lever from 1 (D) to R position.

OwnersManuals2.com

Winter Driving

Carry emergency gear, including tyre chains, window scraper, flares, a small shovel, jumper leads, and a small bag of sand or salt.
Ask an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to check the following:

- Have the proper ratio of antifreeze in the radiator.
  Refer to Engine Coolant on page 6-27.
- Inspect the lead-acid battery and its leads. Cold reduces lead-acid battery capacity.
- Use an engine oil appropriate for the lowest ambient temperatures that the vehicle will be driven in (page 6-22).
- Inspect the ignition system for damage and loose connections.
- Use washer fluid made with antifreeze—but do not use engine coolant antifreeze for washer fluid (page 6-30).

NOTE

- *Do not use the parking brake in freezing weather as it may freeze. Instead, shift to P with an automatic transaxle and to 1 or R with a manual transaxle. Block the rear wheels.*
- *Remove snow before driving. Snow left on the windscreen is dangerous as it could obstruct vision.*
- *Do not apply excessive force to a window scraper when removing ice or frozen snow on the mirror glass and windscreen.*
- *Never use warm or hot water for removing snow or ice from windows and mirrors as it could result in the glass cracking.*
- *Drive slowly. Braking performance can be adversely affected if snow or ice adheres to the brake components. If this situation occurs, drive the vehicle slowly, releasing the accelerator pedal and lightly applying the brakes several times until the brake performance returns to normal.*

▼ Snow Tyres

⚠ WARNING

Use only the same size and type tyres (snow, radial, or non-radial) on all 4 wheels:
Using tyres different in size or type is dangerous. Your vehicle's handling could be greatly affected and result in an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

Check local regulations before using studded tyres.

Use snow tyres on all 4 wheels

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed for your snow tyres or legal speed limits.

Europe

When snow tyres are used, select the specified size and pressure (page 9-15).

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Tyre Chains

Check local regulations before using tyre chains.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Chains may affect handling.*
- *Do not go faster than 50 km/h (30 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended limit, whichever is lower.*
- *Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, and sharp turns.*
- *Avoid locked-wheel braking.*
- *Do not use chains on a temporary spare tyre; it may result in damage to the vehicle and to the tyre.*
  In some models, the vehicle is not equipped with a factory installed temporary spare tyre.
- *Do not use chains on roads that are free of snow or ice. The tyres and chains could be damaged.*
- *Chains may scratch or chip aluminium wheels.*

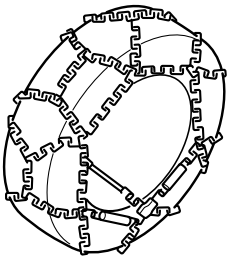
NOTE

- *If your vehicle is equipped with the tyre pressure monitoring system, the system may not function correctly when using tyre chains.*
- ***(Except SKYACTIV-G 1.5 for 6-speed manual transaxle (Europe))***
  Use of tyre chains on a vehicle equipped with 185/60R16 tyres could cause interference with the vehicle body and scratching. If tyre chains are to be used, replace both the front and rear tyres with 185/65R15 tyres and replace both the front and rear wheels with genuine Mazda 15-inch wheels of the same size, and use genuine Mazda tyre chains. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Install the chains on the front tyres only. Do not use chains on the rear tyres.

Tyre chain selection (Europe)

Mazda recommends hexagon type steel ring chains. Select the proper type according to your tyre size.



Tyre size	Tyre chain
185/65R15	Hexagon type
185/60R16*1	Hexagon type

*1 Only SKYACTIV-G 1.5 for 6-speed manual transaxle can be installed (Europe).

NOTE

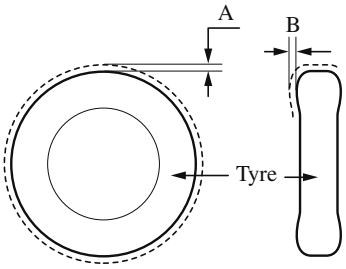
Although Mazda recommends hexagon type steel ring chains, all chains within the installation specifications may be used.

OwnersManuals2.com

Installation specification (Europe)

When installing tyre chains, the distance between the tyre tread and the chain must be within the prescribed limits in the following table.

Distance [Unit: mm (in)]	
A	B
MAX 11 (0.43)	MAX 11 (0.43)



Side view Cross section view

Installing the chains

1. If your vehicle is equipped with wheel covers remove them, otherwise the chain bands will scratch them.
2. Secure the chains on the front tyres as tightly as possible. Always follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.
3. Retighten the chains after driving 1/2—1 km (1/4—1/2 mile).

Driving In Flooded Area

⚠ WARNING

Dry off brakes that have become wet by driving slowly, releasing the accelerator pedal and lightly applying the brakes several times until the brake performance returns to normal:
Driving with wet brakes is dangerous. Increased stopping distance or the vehicle pulling to one side when braking could result in a serious accident. Light braking will indicate whether the brakes have been affected.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not drive the vehicle on flooded roads as it could cause short circuiting of electrical/electronic parts, or engine damage or stalling from water absorption. If the vehicle has been immersed in water, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

OwnersManuals2.com

Turbocharger Information (SKYACTIV-D 1.5)

⚠ CAUTION

- *After driving at freeway speeds or up a long hill, trailer towing for a long time, idle the engine at least 30 seconds before stopping it. Otherwise, the turbocharger could be damaged. However, when i-stop operates, idling is unnecessary.*
- *Racing or over-revving the engine, particularly after it's just been started, can damage the turbocharger.*
- *To protect the engine from damage, the engine is designed so that it cannot be raced just after starting it in extremely cold weather.*

The turbocharger greatly enhances engine power. Its advanced design provides improved operation and requires minimum maintenance.

To get the most from it, observe the following.
1. Change engine oil and filter according to Scheduled Maintenance (page 6-3).
2. Use only recommended engine oil (page 6-22). Extra additives are NOT recommended.

OwnersManuals2.com

Towing Caravans and Trailers (Europe/Turkey/Israel/ South Africa)

Your Mazda was designed and built primarily to carry passengers and cargo.
If you tow a trailer, follow these instructions because driver and passenger safety depends on proper equipment and safe driving habits. Towing a trailer will affect handling, braking, durability, performance, and economy.
Never overload vehicle or trailer. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) if you need further details.

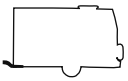
⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not tow a trailer during the first 1,000 km (600 miles) of your new Mazda. If you do, you may damage the engine, transaxle, differential, wheel bearings, and other power train components.*
- *Damage caused by towing a trailer/caravan is not covered by the vehicle's warranty for the following models and countries:*
  - *All models in Turkey*
  - *Saloon models*

▼ Weight Limits

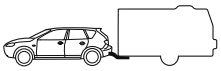
The total trailer weight, gross combination weight and trailer nose weight must be within the prescribed limits in the Trailer Towing-Load Table.

TOTAL TRAILER WEIGHT:



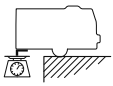
Sum of weights of the trailer and its load.

GROSS COMBINATION WEIGHT:



Sum of total trailer weight and towing vehicle weight; including trailer hitch, vehicle passengers, and vehicle load.

TRAILER NOSE WEIGHT:



OwnersManuals2.com

The weight exerted on the trailer tongue. It is varied by changing the weight distribution when loading the trailer.

⚠ CAUTION

Be aware of the towing load weight differences when towing at high altitudes. For altitudes exceeding 1,000 meter (3,280 ft 10 in), always reduce the towing load by 10% for every 1,000 meter (3,280 ft 10 in) increase in altitude from the load indicated under the gross combination weight heading in the maximum trailer towing-load table. If the determined maximum total towing load weight is exceeded, the engine and other power train parts may be damaged.

Maximum trailer towing-load table

Europe/Gradient up to 12%

MODEL				TOTAL TRAILER WEIGHT		GROSS COMBINATION WEIGHT
Body	Engine	Transaxle	Mazda M Hybrid	Trailer without brake	Trailer with brake	Trailer with brake
Hatchback	SKYACTIV-G 1.5	Manual transaxle	×	550 kg (1,212.5 lb)	900 kg (1,984.1 lb)	2,440 kg (5,379.2 lb)
Hatchback	SKYACTIV-G 1.5	Manual transaxle	—	545 kg (1,201.5 lb)	900 kg (1,984.1 lb)	2,432 kg (5,361.5 lb)
Hatchback	SKYACTIV-G 1.5	Automatic transaxle	—	550 kg (1,212.5 lb)	900 kg (1,984.1 lb)	2,449 kg (5,399.0 lb)

×: Available
—: Not available
TRAILER NOSE WEIGHT: 50 kg (110.2 lb)

Germany and Austria/Gradient up to 8%

MODEL				TOTAL TRAILER WEIGHT		GROSS COMBINATION WEIGHT
Body	Engine	Transaxle	Mazda M Hybrid	Trailer without brake	Trailer with brake	Trailer with brake
Hatchback	SKYACTIV-G 1.5	Manual transaxle	×	550 kg (1,212.5 lb)	1,100 kg (2,425.0 lb)	2,640 kg (5,820.1 lb)
Hatchback	SKYACTIV-G 1.5	Manual transaxle	—	545 kg (1,201.5 lb)	1,100 kg (2,425.0 lb)	2,632 kg (5,802.5 lb)
Hatchback	SKYACTIV-G 1.5	Automatic transaxle	—	550 kg (1,212.5 lb)	1,000 kg (2,204.6 lb)	2,549 kg (5,619.5 lb)

×: Available
—: Not available

OwnersManuals2.com

TRAILER NOSE WEIGHT: 50 kg (110.2 lb)

Israel/Gradient up to 12% (Hatchback only)

MODEL			TOTAL TRAILER WEIGHT		GROSS COMBINATION WEIGHT
Body	Engine	Transaxle	Trailer without brake	Trailer with brake	Trailer with brake
Hatchback	SKYACTIV-G 1.5	Automatic transaxle	540 kg (1,190.4 lb)	750 kg (1,653.4 lb)	2,274 kg (5,013.2 lb)
Hatchback	SKYACTIV-G 1.5	Manual transaxle	535 kg (1,179.4 lb)	750 kg (1,653.4 lb)	2,250 kg (4,960.3 lb)

×: Available
—: Not available
TRAILER NOSE WEIGHT: 50 kg (110.2 lb)

South Africa/Gradient up to 12%

MODEL			TOTAL TRAILER WEIGHT		GROSS COMBINATION WEIGHT
Body	Engine	Transaxle	Trailer without brake	Trailer with brake	Trailer with brake
Hatchback	SKYACTIV-G 1.5	Manual transaxle	450 kg (992.0 lb)	750 kg (1,653.4 lb)	2,250 kg (4,960.3 lb)
Hatchback	SKYACTIV-G 1.5	Automatic transaxle	250 kg (551.1 lb)	250 kg (551.1 lb)	1,766 kg (3,893.3 lb)

×: Available
—: Not available
TRAILER NOSE WEIGHT: 50 kg (110.2 lb)

⚠ WARNING

Always keep tow loads within specified limits as indicated in the Trailer Towing-Load Table:
Attempting to tow loads greater than those specified is dangerous as it may cause serious handling and performance problems that could result in personal injury or vehicle damage, or both.

Always keep the trailer nose weight within the specified limits in the Trailer Towing-Load Table:
Loading the trailer with more weight in the rear than in the front is dangerous. This could cause loss of vehicle control and an accident.

NOTE

- *The total trailer weight and nose weight can be determined by weighing the trailer on platform scales at a highway weighing station or a trucking company.*

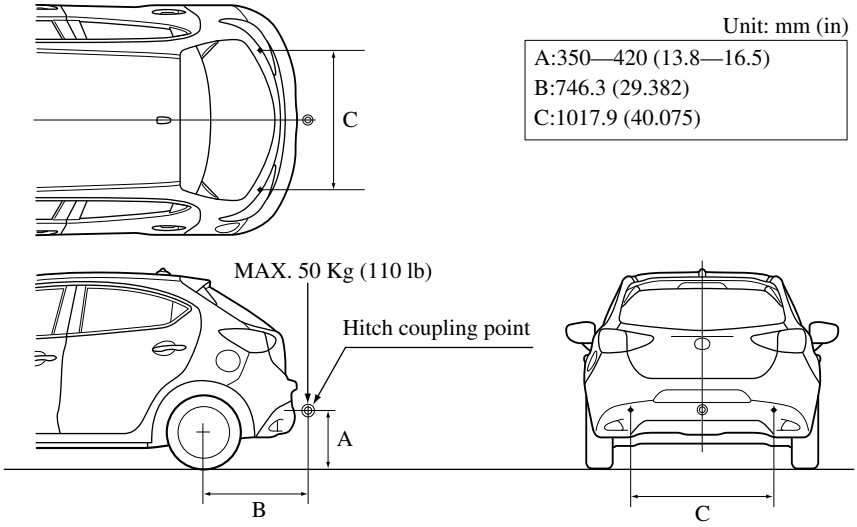
OwnersManuals2.com

・*Appropriate total trailer weight and nose weight may prevent the danger of trailer sway from crosswinds, rough roads, or other causes.*

▼ Trailer Hitch

When towing a trailer, use an appropriate trailer hitch. We recommend using a genuine Mazda trailer hitch. Use the original holes drilled by the vehicle manufacturer for securing the trailer hitch. Contact your expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), for more information.
Do not install a trailer hitch that is not easy to remove or reposition if there is the possibility that a part of the trailer hitch partially obscures the lighting system and/or rear number plate. If a trailer hitch that is easy to remove or reposition is installed, make sure to remove or reposition it when it is not in use.

Trailer hitch installation area



Unit: mm (in)

A:350—420 (13.8—16.5)
B:746.3 (29.382)
C:1017.9 (40.075)

▼ Tyres

When towing a trailer, make sure that the tyre pressures of the rear tyres are at 20 kPa (0.2 bar, 2.9 psi) higher than the recommended maximum tyre pressures indicated on the tyre pressure chart on the driver's door frame.
Trailer tyre size, load rating, and inflation pressures should conform to tyre manufacturer specifications.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ WARNING

Never use the temporary spare tyre when towing:
Using the temporary spare tyre on your vehicle when towing a trailer is dangerous as it could result in tyre failure, loss of control, and injury to vehicle occupants.

▼ Safety Chains

Safety chains must be used as a precautionary measure should the trailer become unintentionally unhitched. They should cross under the trailer tongue and attach to the hitch. Leave enough slack to allow full turns. Consult literature published by your trailer or hitch manufacturer for more details.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the safety chain is securely attached to both the trailer and the vehicle prior to departure:
Towing a trailer without using a safety chain securely attached to both the trailer and the vehicle is dangerous. If damage occurs to the coupling unit or hitch ball, the trailer could wander into another lane and cause a collision.

▼ Trailer Lights

⚠ CAUTION

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to the lighting system of your Mazda. This may damage your vehicle's electrical system and lighting systems. To connect the lighting system, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Trailer Brakes

Check the Maximum trailer towing-load table in Weight Limits (page 3-50), and if your trailer weight exceeds the value in the TOTAL TRAILER WEIGHT (Trailer without brake), trailer brakes are required.
If your trailer has brakes, make sure they meet regulations.

⚠ WARNING

Do not connect a hydraulic trailer-brake system to your vehicle's brake system:
Connecting a hydraulic trailer-brake system directly to the vehicle brake system is dangerous and will result in inadequate braking and possible injury.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Trailer Towing Tips

Before driving

- Verify that your Mazda maintains a near-normal attitude when a loaded or unloaded trailer is connected. Do not drive if it has an abnormal front-up or front-down position. Inspect for incorrect nose weight, worn suspension parts, and trailer overloading. Have the vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- Make sure the trailer cargo is secure to prevent it from shifting.
- Make sure the mirrors meet all government regulations. Inspect them.
- Before starting out, inspect the operation of all vehicle and trailer lights and all vehicle-to-trailer connections. Stop and re-inspect all lights and connections after driving a short distance.

Driving

- Your Mazda will handle differently with a trailer in tow, so practice turning, backing, and stopping in a traffic-free area.
- Take time to get accustomed to the extra weight and length.
- Do not exceed 100 km/h (62 mph) with a trailer in tow. If the local legal maximum speed with a trailer in tow is less than 100 km/h (62 mph), do not exceed the legal speed.

⚠ CAUTION

If the vehicle exceeds 100 km/h (62 mph) with a trailer in tow, the vehicle could be damaged.

- When ascending a hill, shift into a lower gear to reduce the possibility of overloading or overheating the engine, or both.
- When descending a hill, shift into a lower gear and use engine compression as a braking effect. Pay constant attention to speed and use the brakes only as needed. Holding the brake pedal down for a prolonged period may cause the brakes to overheat and lose power.

Parking

Avoid parking on an incline with a trailer. If this must be done, follow these instructions.

Parking on an Incline

1. Set the parking brake and the brakes.
2. Have someone block the wheels of the vehicle and trailer while you apply the brakes.
3. After the wheels are blocked, release the parking brake and the brakes slowly, allowing the blocks to bear the load.
4. Set the parking brake firmly.

OwnersManuals2.com

5. If the vehicle has an automatic transaxle, put the selector lever in P position. If it has a manual transaxle, place the gear shift in 1 or R position.

Starting on an Incline

1. Start the engine (page 4-5).
2. Release the parking brake and slowly pull away a short distance from the wheel blocks.
3. Stop on the nearest level ground, set the parking brake, and pick up the wheel blocks.

OwnersManuals2.com

4 When Driving

Information concerning safer driving and stopping.

Start/Stop Engine..... 4-4
Ignition Switch..... 4-4
Starting the Engine..... 4-5
Turning the Engine Off.....4-11
i-stop*..... 4-12

Instrument Cluster and Display..... 4-23
Meters and Gauges..... 4-23
Active Driving Display*.....4-36
Warning/Indicator Lights.....4-39

Manual Transaxle Operation..... 4-49
Manual Transaxle Shift Pattern.....4-49

Automatic Transaxle..... 4-52
Automatic Transaxle Controls..... 4-52
Shift-Lock System.....4-53
Transaxle Ranges.....4-54
Manual Shift Mode.....4-56
Direct Mode*..... 4-61
Driving Tips.....4-62

Switches and Controls.....4-63
Lighting Control..... 4-63
Rear Fog Light*..... 4-69
Turn and Lane-Change Signals..... 4-70
Windscreen Wipers and Washer..... 4-71
Rear Window Wiper and Washer* 4-75
Headlight Washer*.....4-75
Rear Window Defogger.....4-76
Horn.....4-77
Hazard Warning Flasher..... 4-78

Brake..... 4-79
Brake System.....4-79
Emergency Stop Signal System..... 4-82
Hill Launch Assist (HLA)*.....4-82

ABS/TCS/DSC..... 4-84
Antilock Brake System (ABS).....4-84
Traction Control System (TCS)* 4-85
Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)*..... 4-86

i-ELOOP..... 4-88
i-ELOOP*..... 4-88

Mazda M Hybrid..... 4-90
Mazda M Hybrid*.....4-90

Drive Selection..... 4-92
Drive Selection*.....4-92

Power Steering..... 4-93
Power Steering.....4-93

i-ACTIVSENSE..... 4-94
i-ACTIVSENSE*.....4-94

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

High Beam Control System (HBC)*.....4-98
Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)*.....4-101
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)*..... 4-103
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)* 4-109
Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR)*.....4-115
Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS)*.....4-121
Driver Attention Alert (DAA)*..... 4-123
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)* 4-125
Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)*..... 4-129
Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)*..... 4-140
Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL)*..... 4-153
Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)*.....4-160
Smart City Brake Support [Forward] (SCBS F)*.....4-164
Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R)*.....4-169
Smart Brake Support (SBS)*....4-174
360° View Monitor*.....4-177
Forward Sensing Camera (FSC)* 4-204
Radar Sensor (Front)*..... 4-210
Radar Sensors (Rear)*.....4-213
Ultrasonic Sensor (Rear)*.....4-215
Front Camera/Side Cameras/Rear Camera*.....4-216

Cruise Control.....4-217
Cruise Control*.....4-217

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.....4-223
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System*.....4-223

Diesel Particulate Filter.....4-226
Diesel Particulate Filter (SKYACTIV-D 1.5).....4-226

Rear View Monitor.....4-227
Rear View Monitor*.....4-227

Parking Sensor System.....4-235
Parking Sensor System*.....4-235

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

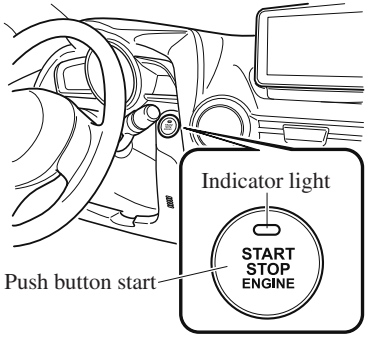
MEMO

OwnersManuals2.com

Ignition Switch

▼ Push Button Start Positions

The system operates only when the driver is in the vehicle or within operational range while the key is being carried.
Each time the push button start is pressed, the ignition switches in the order of off, ACC, and ON. Pressing the push button start again from ON switches the ignition off.



NOTE

- *The engine starts by pressing the push button start while depressing the clutch pedal (manual transaxle) or the brake pedal (automatic transaxle). To switch the ignition position, press the push button start without depressing the pedal.*
- *Do not leave the ignition switched ON while the engine is not running. Doing so could result in the battery going dead. If the ignition is left in ACC (For automatic transaxle, the selector lever is in the P position, and the ignition is in ACC), the ignition switches off automatically after about 25 minutes.*

Off

The power supply to electrical devices turns off and the push button start indicator light (amber) also turns off.
In this position the steering wheel is locked.

⚠ WARNING

Before leaving the driver's seat, always switch the ignition off, set the parking brake, and make sure the selector lever is in P (automatic transaxle) or in 1st gear or R (manual transaxle):
Leaving the driver's seat without switching the ignition off, setting the parking brake, and shifting the selector lever to P (automatic transaxle) or to 1st gear or R (manual transaxle) is dangerous. Unexpected vehicle movement could occur which could result in an accident.
In addition, if your intention is to leave the vehicle for even a short period, it is important to switch the ignition off, as leaving it in another position will disable some of the vehicle's security systems and run the battery down.

NOTE
(Locked steering wheel)
If the push button start indicator light (green) is flashing and the beep sound is heard, this indicates that the steering wheel is not unlocked. To unlock the steering wheel, press the push button start while moving the steering wheel left and right.

OwnersManuals2.com

ACC (Accessory)

Some electrical accessories will operate and the indicator light (amber) illuminates. In this position the steering wheel is unlocked.

NOTE
The keyless entry system does not function while the push button start has been pressed to ACC, and the doors will not lock/unlock even if they have been locked manually.

ON

This is the normal running position after the engine is started. The indicator light (amber) turns off. (The indicator light (amber) illuminates when the ignition is switched ON and the engine is not running.)
Some indicator lights/warning lights should be inspected before the engine is started (page 4-39).

NOTE
(SKYACTIV-G 1.3, SKYACTIV-G 1.5, SKYACTIV-G 2.0)
When the push button start is pressed to ON, the sound of the fuel pump motor operating near the fuel tank can be heard. This does not indicate an abnormality.

Starting the Engine

⚠ WARNING

Radio waves from the key may affect medical devices such as pacemakers:
Before using the key near people who use medical devices, ask the medical device manufacturer or your physician if radio waves from the key will affect the device.

NOTE

- *The key must be carried because the key carries an immobilizer chip that must communicate with the engine controls at short range.*
- *The engine can be started when the push button start is pressed from off, ACC, or ON.*
- *The push button start system functions (function which can start the engine by only carrying the key) can be deactivated to prevent any possible adverse effect on a user wearing a pacemaker or other medical device. If the system is deactivated, you will be unable to start the engine by carrying the key. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for details. If the push button start system functions have been deactivated, you can start the engine by following the procedure indicated when the key battery goes dead.*
  Refer to Engine Start Function When Key Battery is Dead on page 4-9.

OwnersManuals2.com

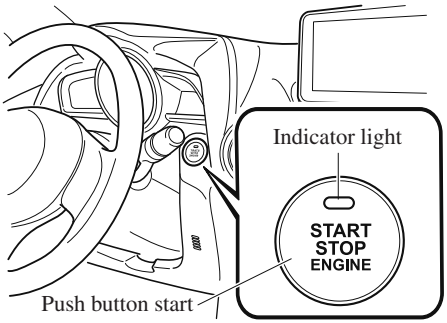
- *After starting a cold engine, the engine speed increases and a whining sound from the engine compartment can be heard.*
  This is for improved exhaust gas purification and does not indicate any parts defect.

1. Make sure you are carrying the key.
2. Occupants should fasten their seat belts.
3. Make sure the parking brake is on.
4. Continue to press the brake pedal firmly until the engine has completely started.
5. **(Manual transaxle)**
   Continue to press the clutch pedal firmly until the engine has completely started.
   (Automatic transaxle)
   Put the vehicle in park (P). If you must restart the engine while the vehicle is moving, shift into neutral (N).

NOTE
(Manual transaxle)
The starter will not operate if the clutch pedal is not depressed sufficiently.
(Automatic transaxle)
The starter will not operate if the selector lever is not in P or N and the brake pedal is not depressed sufficiently.

6. Verify that the KEY indicator light (green) in the instrument cluster and the push button start indicator light (green) illuminate.





NOTE

- *If the push button start indicator light (green) flashes, make sure that the key is being carried.*
- *If the push button start indicator light (green) flashes with the key being carried, touch the key to the push button start and start the engine. Refer to Engine Start Function When Key Battery is Dead on page 4-9.*

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ CAUTION

If the KEY warning light (red) illuminates, or the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes, this could indicate a problem with the engine starting system. This may prevent the engine from starting or from switching the ignition to ACC or ON. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.

NOTE

- *Under the following conditions, the KEY warning light (red) flashes after the push button start is pressed. This informs the driver that the push button start will not switch to ACC even if it is pressed from off.*
  - *The key battery is dead.*
  - *The key is out of operational range.*
  - *The key is placed in areas where it is difficult for the system to detect the signal (page 3-8).*
  - *A key from another manufacturer similar to the key is in the operational range.*
- ***(Forced engine starting method)***
  If the KEY warning light (red) illuminates, or the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes, this could indicate that the engine may not start using the usual starting method. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible. If this occurs, the engine can be force-started. Press and hold the push button start until the engine starts. Other procedures necessary for starting the engine, such as having the key in the cabin, and depressing the clutch pedal (manual transaxle) or the brake pedal (automatic transaxle) are required.
- *When the engine is force-started, the KEY warning light (red) remains illuminated and the push button start indicator light (amber) remains flashing.*
- ***(Automatic transaxle)***
  When the selector lever is in the neutral (N) position, the KEY indicator light (green) and the push button start indicator light (green) do not illuminate.

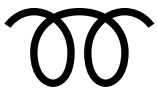
7. Press the push button start after both the KEY indicator light (green) in the instrument cluster and the push button start indicator light (green) illuminate.

   NOTE

   - *After starting the engine, the push button start indicator light (amber) turns off and the ignition switches to the ON position.*

OwnersManuals2.com

- ***(SKYACTIV-G 1.3, SKYACTIV-G 1.5, SKYACTIV-G 2.0)***
  After pressing the push button start and before the engine starts, the operation sound of the fuel pump motor from near the fuel tank can be heard, however, this does not indicate a malfunction.
- ***(SKYACTIV-D 1.5)***
  - *When starting the engine, do not release the brake pedal until the glow indicator light in the instrument cluster turns off and the engine starts, after pressing the push button start.*
  - *If the brake pedal is released before the engine starts, depress the brake pedal again and press the push button start to start the engine.*
  - *If the ignition is left switched ON for a long period of time without the engine running after the glow plugs are warmed up, the glow plugs may warm up again which will illuminate the glow indicator light.*
  - *The starter does not rotate until the glow indicator light turns off.*



8. After starting the engine, let it idle for about ten seconds (Prohibited in Germany).

NOTE

- *Do not use high engine speeds until reaching the operating temperature.*
- ***(Germany)***
  Drive immediately after start the engine.
- ***(SKYACTIV-G 1.3, SKYACTIV-G 1.5, SKYACTIV-G 2.0)***
  - *Whether the engine is cold or warm, it should be started without the use of the accelerator.*
  - *If the engine does not start the first time, refer to Starting a Flooded Engine under Emergency Starting. If the engine still does not start, have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) (page 7-27).*
- ***(SKYACTIV-D 1.5)***
  If the ambient temperature is lower than about − 10 °C (14 °F), the maximum engine speed may not be attained for about three minutes after the engine starts to protect the engine.
- ***(Manual transaxle vehicle with i-stop function)***
  If the engine has stopped due to stalling, it can be restarted by depressing the clutch pedal within 3 seconds of the engine stopping.
  The engine cannot be restarted even if the clutch pedal is depressed under the following conditions:
  - *The driver's door is open.*
  - *The driver's seat belt is unfastened.*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *The clutch pedal is not released completely after the engine stalled.*
- *The clutch pedal is depressed with the engine not stopped completely.*

▼ Engine Start Function When Key Battery is Dead

⚠ CAUTION

When starting the engine by holding the transmitter over the push button start due to a dead key battery or a malfunctioning key, be careful not to allow the following, otherwise the signal from the key will not be received correctly and the engine may not start.

- *Metal parts of other keys or metal objects touch the key.*



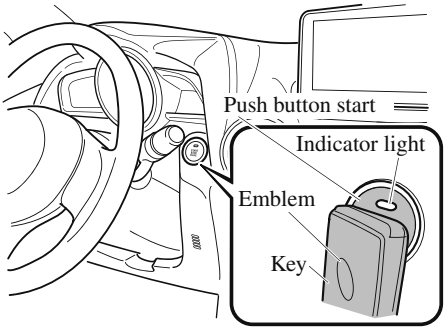
- *Spare keys or keys for other vehicles equipped with an immobilizer system touch or come near the key.*



- *Devices for electronic purchases, or security passage touch or come near the key.*

If the engine cannot be started due to a dead key battery, the engine can be started using the following procedure:

1. Continue to depress the brake pedal firmly until the engine has completely started.
2. **(Manual transaxle)**
   Continue to depress the clutch pedal firmly until the engine has completely started.
3. Make sure that the push button start indication light (green) flashes.
4. Align the centre area of the emblem on the transmitter with the centre area of the push button start while the push button start indicator light (green) flashes.



5. Make sure that the push button start indicator light (green) turns on.
6. Press the push button start to start the engine.

NOTE

- *The engine cannot be started unless the clutch pedal is fully depressed (manual transaxle) or the brake pedal is fully depressed (automatic transaxle).*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *If there is a malfunction with the push button start function, the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes. In this case, the engine may start, however, have the vehicle checked at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.*
- *If the push button start indicator light (green) does not illuminate, perform the operation from the beginning again. If it does not illuminate, have the vehicle checked at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *To switch the ignition position without starting the engine, perform the following operations after the push button start indicator light (green) turns on.*
  1. *Release the clutch pedal (manual transaxle) or brake pedal (automatic transaxle).*
  2. *Press the push button start to switch the ignition position. The ignition switches in the order of ACC, ON, and off each time the push button start is pressed. To switch the ignition position again, perform the operation from the beginning.*

▼ Emergency Operation for Starting the Engine

If the KEY warning light (red) illuminates, or the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes, this could indicate that the engine may not start using the usual starting method. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible. If this occurs, the engine can be force-started. Press and hold the push button start until the engine starts. Other procedures necessary for starting the engine such as having the key in the cabin, and depressing the clutch pedal (manual transaxle) or the brake pedal (automatic transaxle) are required.

OwnersManuals2.com

Turning the Engine Off

⚠ WARNING

Do not stop the engine while the vehicle is moving:

Stopping the engine while the vehicle is moving for any reason other than in an emergency is dangerous. Stopping the engine while the vehicle is moving will result in reduced braking ability due to the loss of power braking, which could cause an accident and serious injury.

1. Stop the vehicle completely.
2. **(Manual transaxle)**
   Shift into neutral and set the parking brake.
   (Automatic transaxle)
   Shift the selector lever to the P position and set the parking brake.
3. Press the push button start to turn off the engine. The ignition position is off.

⚠ CAUTION

- *When leaving the vehicle, make sure the push button start is off.*
- ***(SKYACTIV-D 1.5)***
  If the engine is started and stopped repeatedly before it warms up, the engine may speed up while the vehicle is stopped to clean the engine internally. Do not stop the engine until the engine returns to running at its normal speed.

NOTE

- ***(SKYACTIV-G 1.3, SKYACTIV-G 1.5, SKYACTIV-G 2.0)***
  The cooling fan in the engine compartment could turn on for a few minutes after the ignition is switched from ON to OFF, whether or not the A/C is on or off, to cool the engine compartment quickly.
- *When the push button start is pressed from ON to ACC or OFF, the KEY indicator light (green) may flash for approximately 30 seconds indicating that the remaining battery power of the key is low.*
  Replace with a new battery before the key becomes unusable.
  Refer to Key Battery Replacement on page 6-38.
- ***(Automatic transaxle)***
  If the engine is turned off while the selector lever is in a position other than P, the ignition switches to ACC.

▼ Emergency Engine Stop

Continuously pressing the push button start or quickly pressing it any number of times while the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven will turn the engine off immediately. The ignition switches to ACC.

OwnersManuals2.com

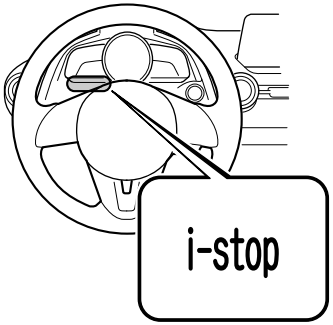
i-stop*

The i-stop function automatically stops the engine when the vehicle is stopped at a traffic light or stuck in traffic, and then restarts the engine automatically to resume driving. The system provides improved fuel economy, reduced exhaust gas emissions, and eliminates idling noise while the engine is stopped.

Engine idle stopping and restarting

NOTE

- *After parking the vehicle, make sure that the ignition is switched OFF. There is the possibility of the vehicle moving if the vehicle is parked while i-stop is operating.*
- *The i-stop indicator light (green) turns on under the following conditions:*
  - *When engine idling is stopped.*



- *The i-stop indicator light (green) turns off when the engine is restarted.*

Manual transaxle

1. Stop the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal and then the clutch pedal.
2. While depressing the clutch pedal, shift the shift lever to the neutral position. Engine idling stops after the clutch pedal is released.
3. **(Without Mazda M Hybrid)**
   The engine restarts automatically when the clutch pedal is depressed.
   (With Mazda M Hybrid)
   Depress the clutch pedal and shift the shift lever to a position other than neutral.
   The engine restarts automatically after releasing the brake pedal or starting to release the clutch pedal.

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Automatic transaxle

1. Engine idling stops when the brake pedal is depressed while the vehicle is driven (except for driving in the R or M position second gear fixed mode) and the vehicle is stopped.
2. The engine restarts automatically when the brake pedal is released with the selector lever in the D or M position (not in second gear fixed mode).
3. If the selector lever is in the N or P position, the engine does not restart when the brake pedal is released. The engine restarts when the brake pedal is depressed again or the selector lever is shifted to the D, M (not in second gear fixed mode) or the R position. (For the purposes of safety, always keep the brake pedal depressed when shifting the selector lever while engine idling is stopped.)

Operation conditions

When the system is operable

Under the following conditions, engine idling stops and the i-stop indicator light (green) turns on.

- **(SKYACTIV-G 1.3, SKYACTIV-G 1.5)**
  The engine is warmed up.
- **(SKYACTIV-D 1.5)**
  - The engine is not cold.
  - The fuel injection amount learning, which is performed periodically and automatically, is not being performed.
- The engine has been started and the vehicle is driven for a certain period.
- The engine is started with the bonnet closed.
- The battery is in good condition.
- All doors, liftgate/boot lid, and bonnet are closed.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The air conditioner is not operating with the airflow mode dial in the position.
- **(Automatic air-conditioning system)**
  - The temperature setting dial for the air conditioner is set to a position other than maximum heating/maximum cooling (A/C ON).
  - The vehicle's interior temperature and the set temperature for the air conditioner are nearly the same.
- The i-stop warning light (amber) is not turned on/flashing.
- The keyless entry & push button start system functions are normal.
- The brake vacuum is sufficiently high.
- The steering wheel is not being operated.

OwnersManuals2.com

- **(Manual transaxle)**
  - The vehicle speed is 3 km/h (1.8 mph) or less.
  - The shift lever is in the neutral position.
  - The clutch pedal is not depressed.

With Mazda M Hybrid

- The temperature and charge condition of the capacitor battery is good.
- The Integrated Starter-Generator (ISG) is in good condition.
- The vehicle is decelerated by depressing the brake pedal and reaches a vehicle speed of 10 km/h (6.2 mph) or less.
- **(Automatic transaxle)**
  - The vehicle is stopped.
  - The selector lever is in the D or M position (not in second gear fixed mode).
  - The automatic transaxle fluid has warmed up sufficiently.
  - The automatic transaxle fluid temperature is not abnormally high.
  - The steering wheel is almost in the straight-ahead position (idling may not stop even with the steering wheel in the straight-ahead position if force is applied to the steering wheel. Release the force applied to the steering wheel to stop engine idling).
  - The vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal.
  - Emergency braking is not applied.

NOTE
With Mazda M Hybrid
The gear shift indicator (GSI) displays N when the i-stop function becomes operable while driving.

When the system is not operable

Engine idling does not stop in the following conditions:

- The vehicle is stopped but the engine is kept idling.
- The air conditioner is operating with the airflow mode dial in the position.
- **(Automatic air-conditioning system)**
  - The temperature setting dial for the air conditioner is set to the maximum heating/ maximum cooling (A/C ON) position.
  - There is a large difference between the cabin temperature and the set temperature of the air conditioner.
- The ambient temperature is extremely high or low.
- The atmospheric pressure is low (when driving at high altitudes).
- **(Automatic transaxle)**
  - The vehicle is stopped on a steep incline.
  - The steering wheel is not in the straight-ahead position while the vehicle is stopped.

OwnersManuals2.com

- **(SKYACTIV-D 1.5)**
  - The particulate matter (PM) is being removed by the diesel particulate filter (DPF).
  - The fuel injection amount learning is being performed. (The i-stop indicator light (green) turns off when the vehicle speed before stopping is approx. 10 km/h (6.2 mph) or less and fuel injection amount learning is performed while the vehicle is stopped.)

NOTE

Under the following conditions, a period of time is required to stop engine idling

- *The battery power is depleted for some reasons such as the vehicle has not been driven for a long period.*
- *The ambient temperature is high or low.*
- *After the battery terminals are disconnected for some reasons such as for battery replacement.*
- ***(SKYACTIV-D 1.5)***
  After PM removal is performed by the diesel particulate filter (DPF).

Engine does not restart

If the following operations are performed while the idling is stopped, the engine will not restart for safety reasons. In such cases, start the engine using the normal method.

- ***(European model)***
  - *The bonnet is opened.*
  - ***(Without Mazda M Hybrid)***
    The driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
  - ***(With Mazda M Hybrid)***
    The driver's door is opened.

Engine-stop period is short or time until next engine idle stop is long

- *The ambient temperature is high or low.*
- *The battery power is depleted.*
- *Power consumption by the vehicle's electrical parts is high.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Engine restarts automatically while engine idling is stopped
Under the following conditions, the engine restarts automatically.

- *The i-stop OFF switch is pressed until the beep sounds.*
- *The air conditioner is operated with the airflow mode dial in the position.*
- ***(Automatic air-conditioning system)***
  - *The temperature setting dial of the air conditioner is set to the maximum heating/ maximum cooling (A/C ON).*
  - *The cabin temperature is largely different from the set temperature of the air conditioner.*
- *The brakes are released slightly on a slope and the vehicle begins to move.*
- *Two minutes have elapsed since the idling was stopped.*
- *The battery power is depleted.*
- ***(Manual transaxle (With Mazda M Hybrid))***
  - *The shift lever is shifted to the R position.*
  - *The brake pedal is depressed with the shift lever in the neutral position.*
  - *The accelerator pedal is depressed.*
  - *The shift lever is shifted to a position other than neutral with the brake pedal released and the clutch pedal depressed.*
  - *The driver's seat belt is unfastened.*
- ***(Automatic transaxle)***
  - *The accelerator pedal is depressed with the selector lever in the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position.*
  - *The selector lever is shifted to the R position.*
  - *The selector lever is shifted from N or P position to D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position.*
  - *The steering wheel is operated with the selector lever in the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position.*
  - *The selector lever is in the M position and the second gear fixed mode is selected.*
- ***(Except European model)***
  - *The bonnet is opened.*
  - *The driver's seat belt is unfastened.*
  - *The driver's door is opened.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Selector lever is operated while engine idling is stopped (automatic transaxle)
If the selector lever is shifted from D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position to N or P position while engine idling is stopped, the engine does not restart even when the brake pedal is released. The engine will restart if the brake pedal is depressed again or the selector lever is shifted to the D, M (not in second gear fixed mode), or R position. (For the purposes of safety, always keep the brake pedal depressed when shifting the selector lever while engine idling is stopped.)

- ***(European model)***
  If the selector lever is shifted from the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position to the N or P position, and the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened, the engine does not restart. Start the engine using the normal method.
- ***(Except European model)***
  If the selector lever is shifted from the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) to the N or P position, and the driver's seat belt is unfastened or the driver's door is opened, the engine restarts.

Battery terminals are disconnected
Engine idling may not stop right after the battery terminals are disconnected. In addition, if the battery is replaced, the i-stop functions must be verified. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ i-stop Warning Light (Amber)/i-stop Indicator Light (Green)



To ensure safe and comfortable use of the vehicle, the i-stop system constantly monitors the driver's operations, the vehicle's interior and exterior environment, and the operational status of the vehicle, and uses the i-stop warning light (amber) and i-stop indicator light (green) to inform the driver of various cautions and warnings.

NOTE
On vehicles equipped with the centre display, the i-stop operation status is displayed in the fuel monitor control status display.
Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

i-stop warning light (amber)

When the light is turned on

- The light turns on when the ignition is switched ON and turns off when the engine is started.
- The light turns on when the i-stop OFF switch is pressed and the system is turned off.
- The light turns on if the following operations are performed while engine idling is stopped. In such cases, the engine does not restart automatically to ensure safety. Start the engine using the normal method.
  - **(European model)**
    - The bonnet is opened.
    - The driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
  - **(Except European model)**
    - If the i-stop warning light (amber) remains on while the engine is running, the battery performance may have decreased. Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
  - **(Manual transaxle)**
    With Mazda M Hybrid
    A sound is activated when the door is opened while the engine idling is stopped with the shift lever in a position other than neutral. In this case, the engine does not restart automatically to ensure safety. Shift the shift lever to neutral and start the engine.

NOTE
A problem in the system may be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

OwnersManuals2.com

- *The light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON.*
- *The light continues to remain on even though the i-stop OFF switch has been pressed while the engine is running.*

When the light is flashing

The light continues to flash if the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

i-stop indicator light (green)

When the light is turned on

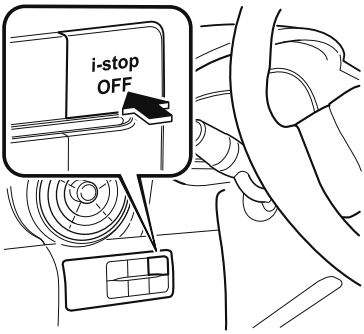
- The light turns on while engine idling is stopped and turns off when the engine is restarted.

When the light is flashing

- **(Manual transaxle)**
  The light flashes when the shift lever is shifted to a position other than the neutral while engine idling is stopped to notify the driver that engine idling is stopped.
  By depressing the clutch pedal, the engine restarts automatically and the light turns off.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ i-stop OFF Switch



By pressing the switch until a beep sounds, the i-stop function is turned off and the i-stop warning light (amber) in the instrument cluster turns on. By pressing the switch again until the beep sounds, the i-stop function becomes operational and the i-stop warning light (amber) turns off.

NOTE

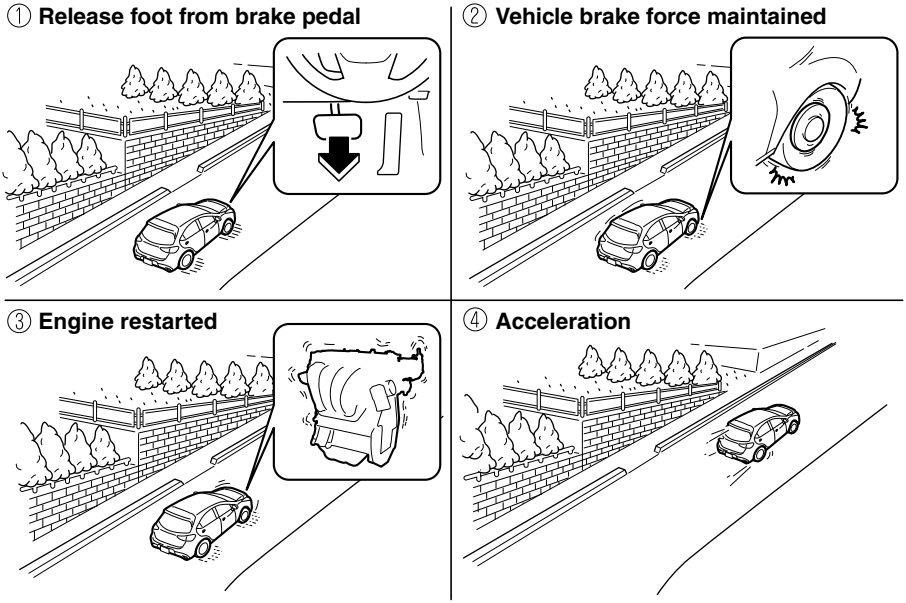
If the engine is stopped with the i-stop function cancelled, the i-stop function becomes operational when the engine is started the next time.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Vehicle Roll Prevention Function (Automatic transaxle)

Vehicles with the i-stop function are equipped with a vehicle roll prevention function. This function prevents the vehicle from rolling, such as when releasing the brake pedal while on a slope under the following conditions:

- While engine idling is stopped (prevents the vehicle from rolling back)
- When starting from a stop (prevents the vehicle's sudden movement due to vehicle creep) When the brake pedal is released, the braking force is maintained automatically depending on the grade of the road.



OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ WARNING

Do not rely completely on the vehicle roll prevention function.

- *The vehicle roll prevention function is a supplementary function which operates for a maximum of 2 seconds after releasing the brake pedal from an engine idling stop condition. Over reliance on the system may result in an unexpected accident if the vehicle were to suddenly accelerate. Before starting to drive the vehicle, always confirm the safety of the surroundings and operate the selector lever, brake pedal, and accelerator pedal appropriately. Note that the vehicle may move suddenly depending on the grade of the road, the vehicle's load, or if it is towing something.*
- *Note that the vehicle may move suddenly after the vehicle roll prevention function is released while the vehicle is under the following conditions:*
  - *The selector lever is in the N position.*
  - *If the selector lever is shifted to the N position and the brake pedal is released while the i-stop function is operating, the brake force is gradually released. To accelerate the vehicle, release the brake pedal after the engine restarts and shift the selector lever to a position other than the N position.*

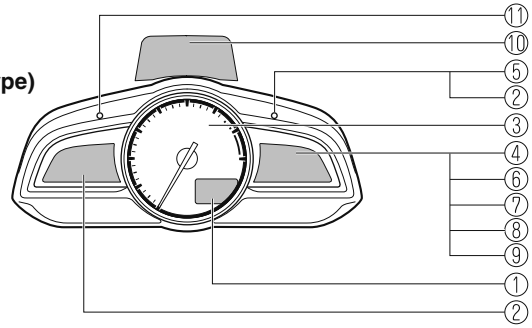
NOTE

- *When the vehicle is stopped on a steep grade, the vehicle roll prevention function does not operate because engine idling is not stopped.*
- *The brake pedal response may change, sound may occur from the brakes, or the brake pedal could vibrate from the operation of the vehicle roll prevention function. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.*

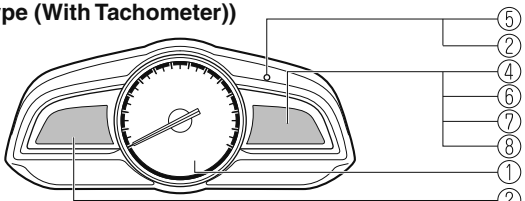
OwnersManuals2.com

Meters and Gauges

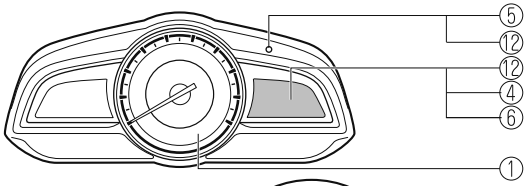
Instrument Cluster
Type A
(Digital Speed Meter Type)



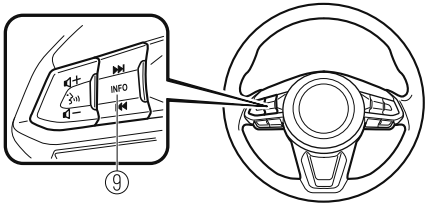
Type B
(Analog Speed Meter Type (With Tachometer))



Type C
(Analog Speed Meter Type (Without Tachometer))



Steering Switch *



*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Instrument Cluster and Display

① Speedometer.....page 4-25
② Odometer, Trip Meter and Trip Meter Selector..... page 4-25
③ Tachometer.....page 4-29
④ Fuel Gauge..... page 4-30
⑤ Instrument Panel Illumination.....page 4-30
⑥ Outside Temperature Display.....page 4-31
⑦ Cruise Control Set Vehicle Speed Display.....page 4-32
⑧ Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL) Display..... page 4-32
⑨ Trip Computer and INFO Switch.....page 4-32
⑩ Active Driving Display..... page 4-36
⑪ Speed Unit Selector.....page 4-25
⑫ Odometer, Trip Meter, Trip Computer and Trip Meter Selector.....page 4-27

OwnersManuals2.com

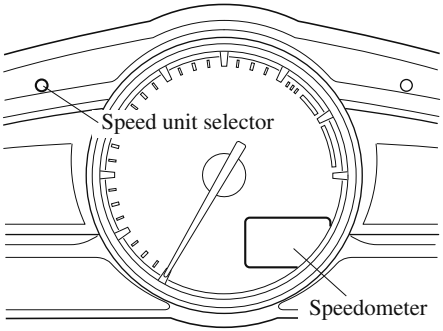
▼ Speedometer

The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle.

NOTE
(Analog speedometer type)
If a few seconds have elapsed after switching the ignition off, the needle may deviate. However, this does not indicate a problem.

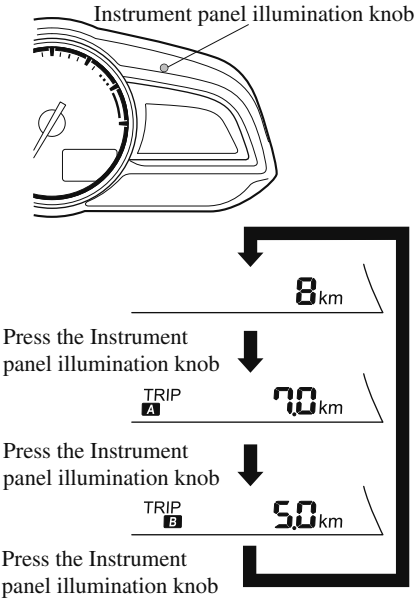
▼ Speed Unit Selector (Digital Speedometer Type)*

In some countries, you may have to change the speed units between km/h and mph.
Press the speed unit selector for 1.5 seconds or more.
The speed units for the speedometer will change between km/h and mph.



▼ Odometer, Trip Meter and Trip Meter Selector*

The display mode can be changed from odometer to trip meter A to trip meter B and then back to odometer by pressing the instrument panel illumination knob while one of them is displayed. The selected mode will be displayed.



*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE
When the ignition is switched to ACC or off, the odometer or trip meters cannot be displayed, however, pressing the instrument panel illumination knob can inadvertently switch the trip meters or reset them during an approximate ten-minute period in the following cases:

- *After the ignition is switched to off from ON.*
- *After the driver's door is opened.*

Odometer

The odometer records the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

Trip meter

The trip meter can record the total distance of two trips. One is recorded in trip meter A, and the other is recorded in trip meter B.

For instance, trip meter A can record the distance from the point of origin, and trip meter B can record the distance from where the fuel tank is filled.

When trip meter A is selected, pressing the instrument panel illumination knob again within one second will change to trip meter B mode.

When trip meter A is selected, TRIP A will be displayed. When trip meter B is selected, TRIP B will be displayed.

The trip meter records the total distance the vehicle is driven until the meter is again reset. Return it to “0.0” by depressing and holding the instrument panel illumination knob for one second or more. Use this meter to measure trip distances and to compute fuel consumption.

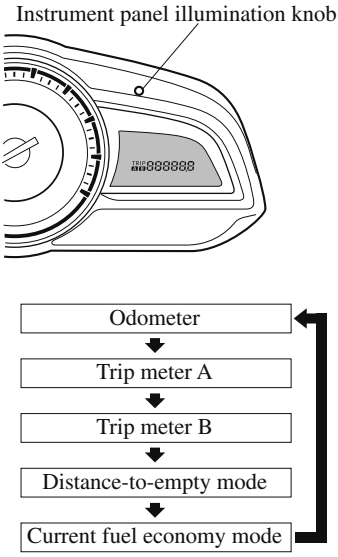
OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

- ***(Vehicles with Mazda Connect)***
  If TRIP A is reset using the trip meter when the function which synchronizes (resets) the fuel economy monitor and the trip meter (TRIP A) is on, the fuel economy data resets in conjunction with TRIP A.
  Refer to the Fuel Economy Monitor section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.
- *Only the trip meters record tenths of kilometres (miles).*
- *The trip record will be erased when:*
  - *The power supply is interrupted (blown fuse or the battery is disconnected).*
  - *The vehicle is driven over 9999.9 km (mile).*

▼ Odometer, Trip Meter, Trip Computer and Trip Meter Selector*

The display mode can be changed between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the instrument panel illumination knob while one of them is displayed. The selected mode will be displayed.



NOTE

When the ignition is switched to ACC or off, the odometer or trip meters cannot be displayed, however, pressing the instrument panel illumination knob can inadvertently switch the trip meters or reset them during an approximate ten-minute period in the following cases:

- *After the ignition is switched to off from ON.*
- *After the driver's door is opened.*

Odometer

The odometer records the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Trip meter

The trip meter can record the total distance of two trips. One is recorded in trip meter A, and the other is recorded in trip meter B.
For instance, trip meter A can record the distance from the point of origin, and trip meter B can record the distance from where the fuel tank is filled.
When trip meter A is selected, pressing the instrument panel illumination knob again within one second will change to trip meter B mode.
When trip meter A is selected, TRIP A will be displayed. When trip meter B is selected, TRIP B will be displayed.
The trip meter records the total distance the vehicle is driven until the meter is again reset. Return it to “0.0” by holding the instrument panel illumination knob depressed for one second or more. Use this meter to measure trip distances and to compute fuel consumption.

NOTE

- ***(Vehicles with Mazda Connect)***
  If TRIP A is reset using the trip meter when the function which synchronizes (resets) the fuel economy monitor and the trip meter (TRIP A) is on, the fuel economy data resets in conjunction with TRIP A.
  Refer to the Fuel Economy Monitor section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.
- *Only the trip meters record tenths of kilometres (miles).*
- *The trip record will be erased when:*
  - *The power supply is interrupted (blown fuse or the battery is disconnected).*
  - *The vehicle is driven over 9999.9 km (mile).*

Trip Computer

The following information can be selected by pressing the instrument panel illumination knob with the ignition switched ON.

- Approximate distance you can travel on the available fuel
- Current fuel economy

If you have any problems with your trip computer, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Distance-to-empty mode

This mode displays the approximate distance you can travel on the remaining fuel based on the fuel economy.

OwnersManuals2.com

The distance-to-empty will be calculated and displayed every second.

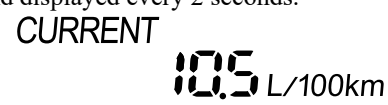


NOTE

- *Even though the distance-to-empty display may indicate a sufficient amount of remaining driving distance before refuelling is required, refuel as soon as possible if the fuel level is very low or the low fuel warning light illuminates.*
- *The display may not change unless you add more than approximately 9 L (2.3 US gal, 1.9 Imp gal) of fuel.*
- *The distance-to-empty is the approximate remaining distance the vehicle can be driven until all the graduation marks in the fuel gauge indicating the remaining fuel supply disappear.*
- *If there is no past fuel economy information such as after first purchasing your vehicle or the information is deleted when the battery leads are disconnected, the actual distance-to empty/range may differ from the amount indicated.*

Current fuel economy mode

This mode displays the current fuel economy by calculating the amount of fuel consumption and the distance travelled. Current fuel economy will be calculated and displayed every 2 seconds.



When you've slowed to about 5 km/h (3 mph), - - - L/100 km (- - - mpg) will be displayed.

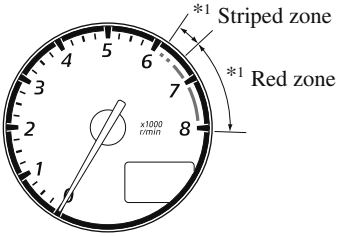
▼ Tachometer*

The tachometer shows engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).

⚠ CAUTION

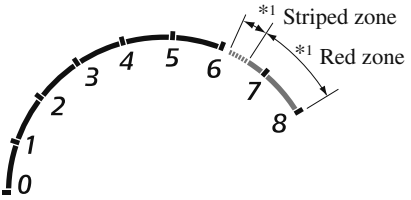
Do not run the engine with the tachometer needle in the RED ZONE.
This may cause severe engine damage.

Type A



*1 The range varies depending on the type of gauge.

Type B



*1 The range varies depending on the type of gauge.

NOTE

When the tachometer needle enters the STRIPED ZONE, this indicates to the driver that the gears should be shifted before entering the RED ZONE.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge shows approximately how much fuel is remaining in the tank when the ignition is switched ON. We recommend keeping the tank over 1/4 full.

Full



1/4 Full



Empty



If the low fuel warning light illuminates or the fuel level is very low, refuel as soon as possible.
If inconsistency in engine performance or stalling occurs due to low fuel level conditions, refuel the vehicle as soon as possible and add at least 10 L (2.7 US gal, 2.2 Imp gal) of fuel.
Refer to Taking Action on page 7-42.

NOTE

- *After refuelling, it may require some time for the indicator to stabilize. In addition, the indicator may deviate while driving on a slope or curve since the fuel moves in the tank.*
- *The display indicating a quarter or less remaining fuel has more segments to show the remaining fuel level in greater detail.*
- *The direction of the arrow (◂⛽) indicates that the fuel-filler flap is on the left side of the vehicle.*

▼ Instrument Panel Illumination

(Without auto-light control)
When the position lights are turned on with the ignition switched ON, the brightness of the instrument panel illumination is dimmed.
(With auto-light control)
When the position lights are turned on with the ignition switched ON, the brightness of the instrument panel illumination is dimmed. However, when the light sensor detects that the surrounding area is bright such as when the position lights are turned on in the daytime, the instrument panel illumination does not dim.

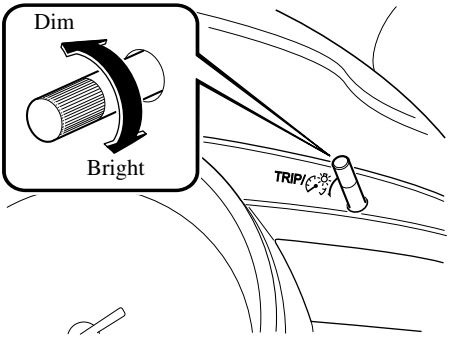
NOTE

- ***(With auto-light control)***
  When the ignition is switched ON in the early evening or at dusk, the instrument panel illumination is dimmed for several seconds until the light sensor detects the brightness of the surrounding area, however, the dimmer may cancel after the brightness is detected.
- *When the position lights are turned on, the position lights indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.*
  Refer to Headlights on page 4-63.

The brightness of the instrument cluster and instrument panel illuminations can be adjusted by rotating the knob.

OwnersManuals2.com

- The brightness decreases by rotating the knob to the left. A beep sound will be heard when the knob has been rotated to the maximum dim position.
- The brightness increases by rotating the knob to the right.



Function for cancelling illumination dimmer

The illumination dimmer can be cancelled by rotating the instrument panel illumination knob to the right until a beep sound is heard while the instrument cluster is dimmed with the ignition switched ON. If the instrument cluster's visibility is reduced due to glare from surrounding brightness, cancel the illumination dimmer.

NOTE

- *When the illumination dimmer is cancelled, the instrument cluster cannot be dimmed even if the position lights are turned on.*
- *When the illumination dimmer is cancelled, the screen in the centre display switches to constant display of the daytime screen.*

▼ Outside Temperature Display*

When the ignition is switched ON, the outside temperature is displayed.



NOTE

- *Under the following conditions, the outside temperature display may differ from the actual outside temperature depending on the surroundings and vehicle conditions:*
  - *Significantly cold or hot temperatures.*
  - *Sudden changes in outside temperature.*
  - *The vehicle is parked.*
  - *The vehicle is driven at low speeds.*

Changing the Temperature Unit of the Outside Temperature Display (Vehicles with Mazda Connect)

The outside temperature unit can be switched between Celsius and Fahrenheit. Settings can be changed by operating the centre display screen.
Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

NOTE

When the temperature unit indicated in the outside temperature display is changed, the temperature unit indicated in the engine coolant gauge display changes in conjunction with it.

OwnersManuals2.com

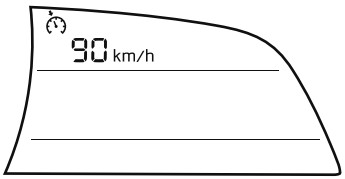
Outside Temperature Warning*

When the outside temperature is low, the indication flashes and a beep sound is heard to warn the driver of the possibility of icy roads.
If the outside temperature is lower than about 4 °C (39 °F), the outside temperature display and the ❄ mark flashes for about ten seconds and a beep sound is heard once.

NOTE
If the outside temperature is lower than −20 °C (−4 °F), the beep sound does not operate. However, the ❄ mark illuminates.

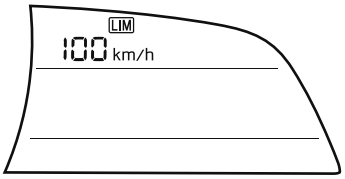
▼ Cruise Control Set Vehicle Speed Display*

The vehicle speed preset using the cruise control is displayed.



▼ Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL) Display*

The setting status of the adjustable speed limiter (ASL) is displayed.



▼ Trip Computer and INFO Switch*

The following information can be selected by pressing the INFO switch with the ignition switched ON.

- Distance-to-empty mode
- Average fuel economy mode
- Current fuel economy mode
- Average vehicle speed mode
- Vehicle speed alarm mode*

If you have any problems with your trip computer, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Distance-to-empty mode

This mode displays the approximate distance you can travel on the remaining fuel based on the fuel economy.

The distance-to-empty will be calculated and displayed every second.
(European model)



 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

(Except European model)



NOTE

- *Even though the distance-to-empty display may indicate a sufficient amount of remaining driving distance before refuelling is required, refuel as soon as possible if the fuel level is very low or the low fuel warning light illuminates.*
- *The display may not change unless you add more than approximately 9 L (2.3 US gal, 1.9 Imp gal) of fuel.*
- *The distance-to-empty is the approximate remaining distance the vehicle can be driven until all the graduation marks in the fuel gauge (indicating the remaining fuel supply) disappear.*
- *If there is no past fuel economy information such as after first purchasing your vehicle or the information is deleted when the battery leads are disconnected, the actual distance-to empty/range may differ from the amount indicated.*

Average fuel economy mode

This mode displays the average fuel economy by calculating the total travelled distance and the total fuel consumption since the vehicle was purchased or the past data was reset. The average fuel economy is calculated and displayed every minute.

(European model)



(Except European model)

Type A



Type B



To clear the data being displayed, press the INFO switch for more than 1.5 seconds or longer.

After resetting the data, - - - L/100 km (- - - mpg) or - - - km/L is displayed for one minute before the fuel economy is recalculated and displayed.

NOTE

(Vehicles with Mazda Connect)

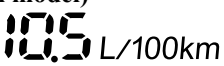
If TRIP A is reset using the trip meter when the function which synchronizes (resets) the fuel economy monitor and the trip meter (TRIP A) is on, the displayed past data is reset.

Current fuel economy mode

This mode displays the current fuel economy by calculating the amount of fuel consumption and the distance travelled.

Current fuel economy will be calculated and displayed every 2 seconds.

(European model)



OwnersManuals2.com

(Except European model)

Type A



Type B



When you have slowed the vehicle to about 5 km/h (3 mph), - - - L/100 km (- - - mpg) or - - - km/L will be displayed.

Average vehicle speed mode

This mode displays the average vehicle speed by calculating the distance and the time travelled since connecting the battery or resetting the data.
Average vehicle speed will be calculated and displayed every 10 seconds.

(European model)



(Except European model)



To clear the data being displayed, press the INFO switch for more than 1.5 seconds. After pressing the INFO switch, - - - km/h (- - - mpg) will be displayed for about 1 minute before the vehicle speed is recalculated and displayed.

Vehicle speed alarm mode*

In this mode, the current setting for the vehicle speed alarm is displayed. You can change the vehicle speed setting at which the warning is triggered.

NOTE

The vehicle speed alarm display is activated at the same time the beep sound is heard. The set vehicle speed flashes several times.



The vehicle speed alarm can be set using the centre display.

 *Some models.

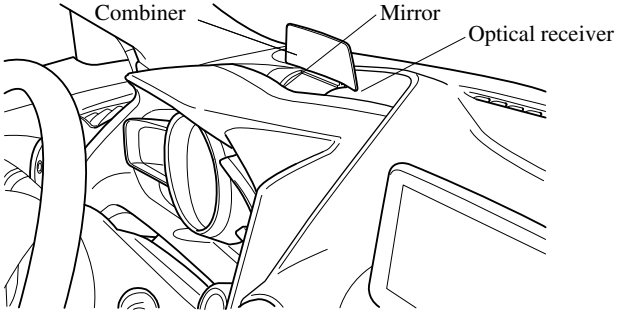
OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

- *Always set the vehicle speed according to the laws and regulations of the country/city in which the vehicle is driven. In addition, always verify the speed of the vehicle using the speedometer.*
- *The vehicle speed alarm function can be set between 30 and 250 km/h (20 and 150 mph).*

OwnersManuals2.com

Active Driving Display*



⚠ WARNING

Always adjust the display brightness and position with the vehicle stopped:
Adjusting the display brightness and position while driving the vehicle is dangerous as doing so could distract your attention from the road ahead and lead to an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not try to adjust the angle or open/close the active driving display manually. Fingerprints on the display will make it difficult to view and using excessive force when operating it could cause damage.*
- *Do not place objects in the vicinity of the active driving display. The active driving display may not operate or any interference with its operation could cause damage.*
- *Do not place beverages near the active driving display. If water or other liquids are splashed on the active driving display, it could cause damage.*
- *Do not place objects above the active driving display or apply stickers to the dust-proof sheet/optical receiver as they will cause interference.*
- *A sensor is integrated to control the display's luminosity. If the optical receiver is covered, the display's luminosity will lower making the display difficult to view.*
- *Do not allow intense light to hit the optical receiver. Otherwise, it could cause damage.*

NOTE

- *Wearing polarized sunglasses will reduce the visibility of the active driving display due to the characteristics of the display.*
- *If the battery has been removed and re-installed or the battery voltage is low, the adjusted position may deviate.*

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

- *The display may be difficult to view or temporarily affected by weather conditions such as rain, snow, light, and temperature.*
- *If the audio system is removed, the active driving display cannot be operated.*

The active driving display indicates the following information:

- Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Operation Conditions and Warnings
  Refer to Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) on page 4-109.
- Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) Warnings
  Refer to Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) on page 4-121.
- Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR) traffic signs and Warnings
  Refer to Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR) on page 4-115.
- Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) Operation Conditions and Warnings
  Refer to Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) on page 4-129.
- Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Operation Conditions and Warnings
  Refer to Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) on page 4-103.
- Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Operation Conditions and Warnings
  Refer to Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) on page 4-140.
- Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) Warnings
  Refer to Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) on page 4-160.
- Smart City Brake Support [Forward] (SCBS F) Warnings
  Refer to Smart City Brake Support [Forward] (SCBS F) on page 4-164.
- Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) Operation Conditions
  Refer to Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) on page 4-169.
- Smart Brake Support (SBS) Warnings
  Refer to Smart Brake Support (SBS) on page 4-174.
- Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL) Operation Conditions and Warnings
  Refer to Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL) on page 4-153.
- Driver Attention Alert (DAA) Warnings
  Refer to Driver Attention Alert (DAA) on page 4-123.
- Cruise Control Operation Conditions
  Refer to Cruise Control on page 4-217.
- Navigation Guidance (vehicles with navigation system)
- Speed limit indicator (vehicles with navigation system)

OwnersManuals2.com

・Vehicle Speed

The active driving display settings can be changed or adjusted.
Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

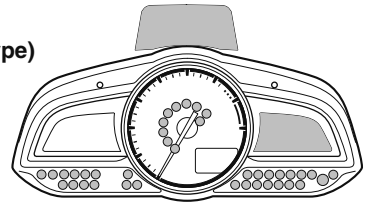
OwnersManuals2.com

Warning/Indicator Lights

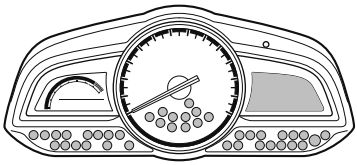
Instrument Cluster varies depending on model and specifications.

Instrument Cluster

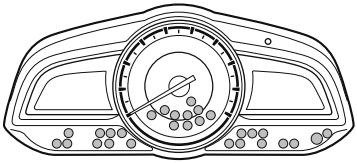
Type A
(Digital Speed Meter Type)



Type B
(Analog Speed Meter Type (With Tachometer))



Type C
(Analog Speed Meter Type (Without Tachometer))



OwnersManuals2.com

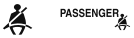
▼ Warning Lights

These lights turn on or flash to notify the user of the system operation status or a system malfunction.

Signal	Warning	Page
	Brake System Warning Light*1*2	7-34
	ABS Warning Light*1	Electronic Brake Force Distribution System Warning 7-34
		ABS warning 7-37
	Charging System Warning Light*1	7-34
	Engine Oil Warning Light*1	7-34
	*Mazda M Hybrid Warning Light*1	7-34
 (Red)	High Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light*1	7-34
	Power Steering Malfunction Indicator Light*1	7-34
	Master Warning Light*1	7-37
	Check Engine Light*1	7-37
i-stop (Amber)	*i-stop Warning Light*1	7-37
i-ELOOP (Amber)	*i-ELOOP Warning Light	7-37
AT	*Automatic Transaxle Warning Light*1	7-37
	Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Light*1	7-37
	*Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Warning Light*1	Flashing 7-37
		Turns on 7-42

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Signal	Warning	Page
 (Red)	KEY Warning Light*1	Turns on 7-37 Flashing 7-42
 (Amber)	*High Beam Control System (HBC) Warning Light*1	7-37
	*Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) Warning Light*1	7-37
	*Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Warning Light*1	Flashing 4-107 Turns on 7-37
	*Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Warning Light*1	Flashing 4-151 Turns on 7-37
	*Lane-keep Assist System(LAS) Warning Light*1	4-143
	*Lane-keep Assist System(LAS) Hands off Warning Light*1	4-143
 (Amber)	*Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) Warning Light	7-37
	LED Headlight Warning Light*1	7-37
	Low Fuel Warning Light	7-42
	Seat Belt Warning Light (Front seat)	7-42
 (Red)	*Seat Belt Warning Light (Rear seat)	7-42
	*Door-Ajar Warning Light	7-42
	*Low Washer Fluid Level Warning Light	7-42
	*120 km/h Warning Light*1	7-42
 (Amber)	*Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) Warning Light*1	7-42

OwnersManuals2.com

*1 The light turns on when the ignition is switched on for an operation check, and turns off a few seconds later or when the engine is started. If the light does not turn on or remains turned on, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
*2 The light turns on continuously when the parking brake is applied.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Indicator Lights

These lights turn on or flash to notify the user of the system operation status or a system malfunction.

Signal	Indicator Lights	Page
	*Passenger Air Bag Deactivation Indicator Light*1	2-52
 (Green)	*Seat Belt Indicator Light (Rear seat)	2-25
 (Green)	KEY Indicator Light	4-5
	Security Indicator Light*1	3-38
	*Glow Indicator Light*1	4-47
DPF	*Diesel Particulate Filter Indicator Light*1	4-226
	Wrench Indicator Light*1	4-47
 (Blue)	Low Engine Coolant Temperature Indicator Light	4-47
i-stop (Green)	*i-stop Indicator Light	4-18
i-ELOOP (Green)	*i-ELOOP Indicator Light	4-88
	*Vehicle Speed Alarm Indication	4-32
	Shift Position Indication	4-55
	Lights-On Indicator Light	4-63
	Headlight High-Beam Indicator Light	Headlight High-Low Beam 4-67 Flashing the Headlights 4-67

OwnersManuals2.com

Instrument Cluster and Display

Signal	Indicator Lights	Page
	Direction Indicator/Hazard Warning Indicator Lights	Turn and Lane-Change Signals 4-70
		Hazard Warning Flasher 4-78
	*Rear Fog Light Indicator Light	4-69
	*TCS/DSC Indicator Light*1	Traction Control System (TCS) 4-85
		Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) 4-86
		Turns on 7-37
	*DSC OFF Indicator Light*1	4-87
SPORT	*Select Mode Indicator Light	4-92
 (Green)	*High Beam Control System (HBC) Indicator Light	4-100
	*Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) Indicator Light	4-102
	*Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF Indicator Light*1	Malfunction 7-37
		Except malfunction 4-114
	*Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Indicator Light	4-143
	*Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) Indicator Light	4-143
	*Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) OFF Indicator Light*1	4-107
	*Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) OFF Indicator Light*1	4-107
	*Driver Attention Alert (DAA) Indication	4-124
 (Green)	*Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) Indicator Light	4-132

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Signal	Indicator Lights	Page
 (Red)	*Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) Indicator Light	Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) 4-162
		Smart City Brake Support [Forward] (SCBS F) 4-167
		Smart City Brake Support Reverse (SCBS R) 4-173
		Smart Brake Support (SBS) 4-175
	*Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) OFF Indicator Light	Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) 4-162
		Smart City Brake Support [Forward] (SCBS F) 4-167
		Smart City Brake Support Reverse (SCBS R) 4-173
		Smart Brake Support (SBS) 4-175
 (White)	*Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL) Main Indication	4-155
 (White/Green)	*Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL) Set Indication/Indicator Light	4-155

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Signal	Indicator Lights	Page
 (White)	*Cruise Main Indication	4-219
 (White/Green)	*Cruise Set Indication/Indicator Light	4-219

*1 The light turns on when the ignition is switched on for an operation check, and turns off a few seconds later or when the engine is started. If the light does not turn on or remains turned on, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Wrench Indicator Light



When the ignition is switched ON, the wrench indicator light turns on and then turns off after a few seconds.

The wrench indicator light turns on when the preset maintenance period arrives. Verify the content and perform maintenance.
Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

SKYACTIV-D 1.5

The wrench indicator light turns on under the following conditions:

- The engine oil is deteriorated or exceeds the specified amount.
- The engine oil level is around the MIN mark on the dipstick or it is less than the MIN mark.*
- The engine oil level is around the X mark on the dipstick or it exceeds the X mark.*

Check the engine oil. Refer to Inspecting Engine Oil Level on page 6-26.
Replace the engine oil if the wrench indicator light does not turn off even though the engine oil level is in the normal range.

NOTE

- *Depending on the vehicle use conditions, the wrench indicator light may turn on for reasons other than the preset maintenance period.*
- *Whenever the engine oil is replaced, a reset of the vehicle engine control unit is necessary.*
  An expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) will be able to reset the engine control unit or see page 6-25 for the Vehicle engine control unit reset procedure.

▼ Low Engine Coolant Temperature Indicator Light (Blue)



The light illuminates continuously when the engine coolant temperature is low and turns off after the engine is warm.
If the low engine coolant temperature indicator light remains illuminated after the engine has been sufficiently warmed up, the temperature sensor could have a malfunction. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Glow Indicator Light (SKYACTIV-D 1.5)



When the ignition is switched ON, the glow indicator light turns on. The glow indicator light turns off when preheating is finished.

OwnersManuals2.com

A problem in the system might be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

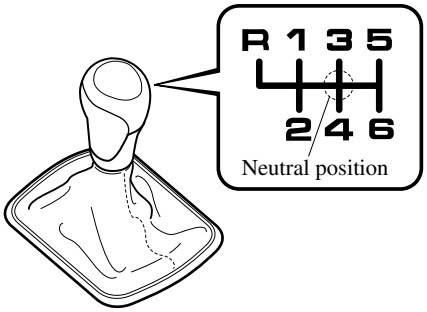
- The glow indicator light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON or it remains on.
- The glow indicator light is flashing.

NOTE

If the vehicle is left with the ignition switched ON without starting the engine and a long period of time has elapsed since preheating finished, the preheating may be performed again and the glow indicator light may turn on.

OwnersManuals2.com

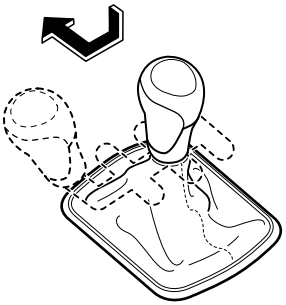
Manual Transaxle Shift Pattern



The shift pattern of the transaxle is conventional, as shown.

Depress the clutch pedal all the way down while shifting; then release it slowly.

Your vehicle is equipped with a device to prevent shifting to R (reverse) by mistake. Push the shift lever downward and shift to R.



⚠ WARNING

Do not use sudden engine braking on slippery road surfaces or at high speeds:
Shifting down while driving on wet, snowy, or frozen roads, or while driving at high speeds causes sudden engine braking, which is dangerous. The sudden change in tyre speed could cause the tyres to skid. This could lead to loss of vehicle control and an accident.

Always leave the shift lever in 1 or R position and set the parking brake when leaving the vehicle unattended:
Otherwise the vehicle could move and cause an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Keep your foot off the clutch pedal except when shifting gears. Also, do not use the clutch to hold the vehicle on an upgrade. Riding the clutch will cause needless clutch wear and damage.*
- *Do not apply any excessive lateral force to the shift lever when changing from 5th to 4th gear. This could lead to the accidental selection of 2nd gear, which could result in damage to the transaxle.*
- *Make sure the vehicle comes to a complete stop before shifting to R. Shifting to R while the vehicle is still moving may damage the transaxle.*

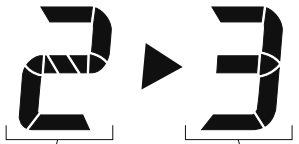
OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

- *If shifting to R is difficult, shift back into neutral, release the clutch pedal, and try again.*
- ***(With i-stop function)***
  If the engine has stopped due to stalling, it can be restarted by depressing the clutch pedal within 3 seconds of the engine stopping.
  The engine cannot be restarted even if the clutch pedal is depressed under the following conditions:
  - *The driver's door is open.*
  - *The driver's seat belt is unfastened.*
  - *The clutch pedal is not released completely after the engine stalled.*
  - *The clutch pedal is depressed with the engine not stopped completely.*
- ***(With parking sensor system)***
  When the shift lever is shifted to the R position with the ignition switched ON, the parking sensor system is activated and a beep sound is heard.
  Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-235.

▼ Gear Shift Indicator (GSI)

The GSI supports you to obtain optimum fuel economy and smooth driving. It displays the selected gear position in the instrument cluster as well as notifies the driver to change to the most suitable gear position corresponding to the actual driving condition.



Selected gear position Suitable gear position

Indication	Condition
Numeral	The selected gear position is displayed.
▶ and numeral	Shift up or down to the indicated gear position is recommended.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not rely solely on the shift-up/shift-down recommendations by indications. The actual driving situation might require shift operations different from indication. To avoid the risk of accidents, the road and traffic conditions have to be judged correctly by the driver before shifting.

OwnersManuals2.com

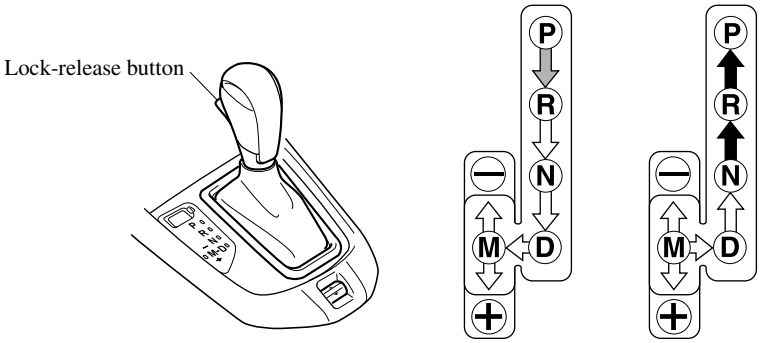
NOTE

The GSI turns off when the following operations are performed.

- *The vehicle is stopped.*
- *The vehicle is put in neutral.*
- *The vehicle is driven in reverse.*
- *The clutch is not fully engaged when accelerating from a stop.*
- *The clutch pedal remains depressed for 2 seconds or longer while driving.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Automatic Transaxle Controls



Various Lockouts:

Indicates that you must depress the brake pedal and hold in the lock-release button to shift (The ignition must be switched ON).

Indicates the selector lever can be shifted freely into any position.

Indicates that you must hold in the lock-release button to shift.

NOTE

The Sport AT has an option that is not included in the traditional automatic transaxle that gives the driver the option of selecting each gear instead of leaving it to the transaxle to shift gears. Even if you intend to use the automatic transaxle functions as a traditional automatic, you should also be aware that you can inadvertently shift into manual shift mode and an inappropriate gear may be retained as the vehicle speed increases. If you notice the engine speed going higher or hear the engine racing, confirm you have not accidentally slipped into manual shift mode (page 4-56).

OwnersManuals2.com

Shift-Lock System

The shift-lock system prevents shifting out of P unless the brake pedal is depressed.

To shift from P:
1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine.
3. Press and hold the lock-release button.
4. Move the selector lever.

NOTE

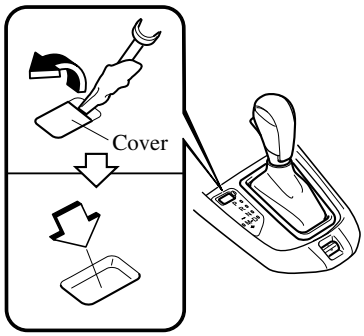
- *When the ignition is switched to ACC or the ignition is switched off, the selector lever cannot be shifted from P position.*
- *The ignition cannot be switched to OFF if the selector lever is not in P position.*

▼ Shift-Lock Override

If the selector lever will not move from P position using the proper shift procedure, continue to hold down the brake pedal.

Type A

1. Remove the shift-lock override cover using a cloth-wrapped flat head screwdriver.
2. Insert a screwdriver and push it down.

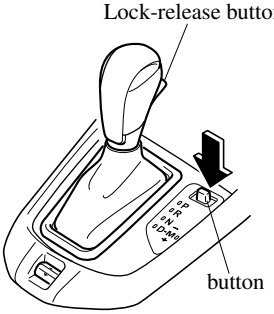


3. Press and hold the lock-release button.
4. Move the selector lever.

Take the vehicle to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have the system checked.

Type B

1. Press the lock-release button with the button pressed.



2. Move the selector lever.

Take the vehicle to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have the system checked.

OwnersManuals2.com

Transaxle Ranges

- The shift position indication in the instrument cluster illuminates. Refer to Warning/Indicator Lights on page 4-39.
- The selector lever must be in P or N position to operate the starter.

P (Park)

P locks the transaxle and prevents the front wheels from rotating.

⚠ WARNING

Always set the selector lever to P position and set the parking brake:
Only setting the selector lever to the P position without using the parking brake to hold the vehicle is dangerous. If P fails to hold, the vehicle could move and cause an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Shifting into P, N or R while the vehicle is moving can damage your transaxle.*
- *Shifting into a driving gear or reverse when the engine is running faster than idle can damage the transaxle.*

R (Reverse)

In position R, the vehicle moves only backward. You must be at a complete stop before shifting to or from R, except under rare circumstances as explained in Rocking the Vehicle (page 3-45).

NOTE
(With parking sensor system)
When the selector lever is shifted to the R position with the ignition switched ON, the parking sensor system is activated and a beep sound is heard.
Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-235.

N (Neutral)

In N, the wheels and transaxle are not locked. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or brakes are on.

⚠ WARNING

If the engine is running faster than idle, do not shift from N or P into a driving gear:
It's dangerous to shift from N or P into a driving gear when the engine is running faster than idle. If this is done, the vehicle could move suddenly, causing an accident or serious injury.

Do not shift into N when driving the vehicle:
Shifting into N while driving is dangerous. Engine braking cannot be applied when decelerating which could lead to an accident or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not shift into N when driving the vehicle. Doing so can cause transaxle damage.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE
Apply the parking brake or depress the brake pedal before moving the selector lever from N position to prevent the vehicle from moving unexpectedly.

D (Drive)

D is the normal driving position. From a stop, the transaxle will automatically shift through a 6-gear sequence.

M (Manual)

M is the manual shift mode position. Gears can be shifted up or down by operating the selector lever. Refer to Manual Shift Mode on page 4-56.

▼ Shift Position Indication



The selector position is indicated when the ignition is switched ON.

NOTE
(Some models)
If one of the following actions is performed, the selector position is displayed for 5 minutes even if the ignition switch is in a position other than ON.

- *The ignition is switched OFF.*
- *The driver's door is opened.*

Gear position indication

In manual shift mode, the “M” of the shift position indication illuminates and the numeral for the selected gear is displayed.

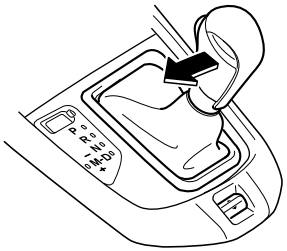
▼ Active Adaptive Shift (AAS)

Active Adaptive Shift (AAS) automatically controls the transaxle shift points to best suit the road conditions and driver input. This improves driving feel. The transaxle may switch to AAS mode when driving up and down slopes, cornering, driving at high elevations, or depressing the accelerator pedal quickly while the selector lever is in the D position. Depending on the road and driving conditions/vehicle operations, gear shifting could be delayed or not occur, however, this does not indicate a problem because the AAS mode will maintain the optimum gear position.

OwnersManuals2.com

Manual Shift Mode

The manual shift mode gives you the feel of driving a manual transaxle vehicle by allowing you to operate the selector lever manually. This allows you to control engine rpm and torque to the drive wheels much like a manual transaxle when more control is desired.
To change to manual shift mode, shift the lever from D to M.



NOTE
Changing to manual shift mode while driving will not damage the transaxle.

To return to automatic shift mode, shift the lever from M to D.

NOTE

- *If you change to manual shift mode when the vehicle is stopped, the gear will shift to M1.*
- *If you change to manual shift mode without depressing the accelerator pedal when driving in D range, 5th gear/6th gear, the gear will shift to M4/M5.*

▼ Indications

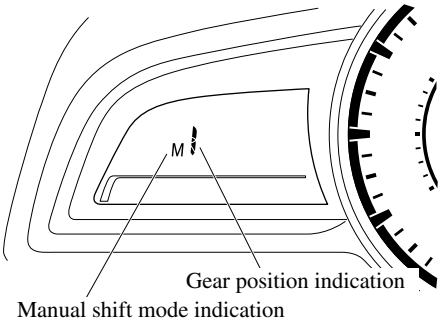
Manual shift mode indication

In manual shift mode, the “M” of the shift position indication in the instrument panel illuminates.

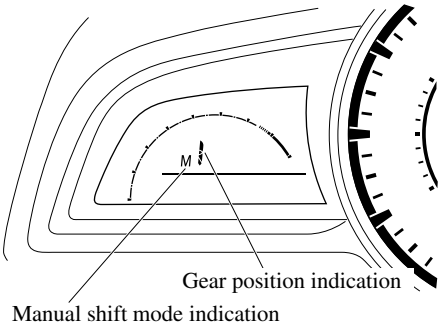
Gear position indication

The numeral for the selected gear illuminates.

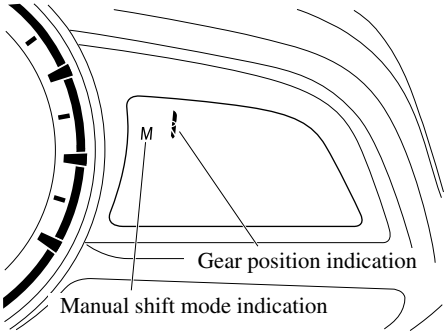
Type A



Type B



Type C



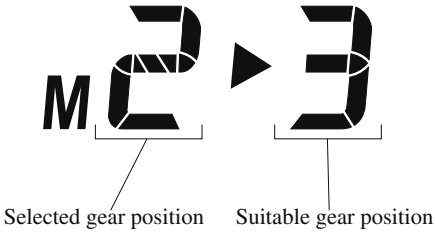
OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

- *If the gears cannot be shifted down when driving at higher speeds, the gear position indication will flash twice to signal that the gears cannot be shifted down (to protect the transaxle).*
- *If the automatic transaxle fluid (ATF) temperature becomes too high, there is the possibility that the transaxle will switch to automatic shift mode, cancelling manual shift mode and turning off the gear position indication illumination. This is a normal function to protect the AT. After the ATF temperature has decreased, the gear position indication illumination turns back on and driving in manual shift mode is restored.*

▼ Gear Shift Indicator (GSI)*

The GSI supports you to obtain optimum fuel economy and smooth driving. It displays the selected gear position in the instrument cluster as well as notifies the driver to change to the most suitable gear position corresponding to the actual driving condition.



Indication	Condition
Numeral	The selected gear position is displayed.
▶ and numeral	Shift up or down to the indicated gear position is recommended.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not rely solely on the shift-up/shift-down recommendations by indications. The actual driving situation might require shift operations different from indication. To avoid the risk of accidents, the road and traffic conditions have to be judged correctly by the driver before shifting.

NOTE

The GSI turns off when the following operations are performed.

- *The vehicle is stopped.*
- *Manual shift mode is cancelled.*

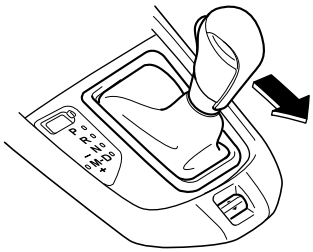
▼ Manually Shifting Up

You can shift gears up by operating the selector lever or the steering shift switches*.

M1 → M2 → M3 → M4 → M5 → M6

Using selector lever

To shift up to a higher gear, tap the selector lever back + once.

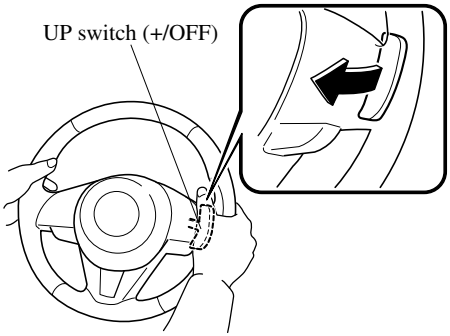


*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Using steering shift switch*

To shift up to a higher gear with the steering shift switches, pull the UP switch (**+/OFF**) toward you once with your fingers.



⚠ WARNING

Keep your hands on the steering wheel rim when using fingers on the steering shift switches:

Putting your hands inside the rim of the steering wheel when using the steering shift switches is dangerous. If the driver's air bag were to deploy in a collision, your hands could be impacted causing injury.

NOTE

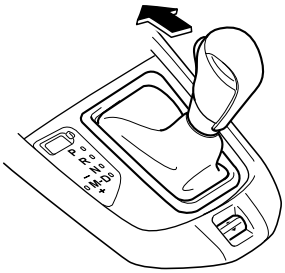
- *When driving slowly, the gears may not shift up.*
- *Do not drive the vehicle with the tachometer needle in the RED ZONE while in manual shift mode. In addition, manual shift mode switches to automatic shift mode while the accelerator pedal is completely depressed.*
  This function is cancelled while the DSC is turned off. However, if the vehicle is continuously driven at a high rpm, the gears may automatically shift up to protect the engine.
- *The steering shift switch can be used temporarily even if the selector lever is in the D position while driving. In addition, it returns to automatic shift mode when the UP switch (**+/OFF**) is pulled rearward for a sufficient amount of time.*

▼ Manually Shifting Down

You can shift gears down by operating the selector lever or the steering shift switches*.
M6 → M5 → M4 → M3 → M2→ M1

Using selector lever

To shift down to a lower gear, tap the selector lever forward **−** once.

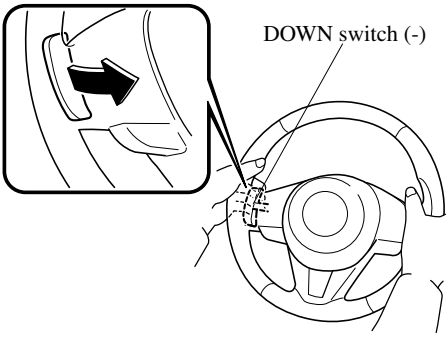


 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Using steering shift switch*

To shift down to a lower gear with the steering shift switches, pull the DOWN switch − toward you once with your fingers.



⚠ WARNING

Do not use engine braking on slippery road surfaces or at high speeds:
Shifting down while driving on wet, snowy, or frozen roads, or while driving at high speeds causes sudden engine braking, which is dangerous. The sudden change in tyre speed could cause the tyres to skid. This could lead to loss of vehicle control and an accident.

Keep your hands on the steering wheel rim when using fingers on the steering shift switches:
Putting your hands inside the rim of the steering wheel when using the steering shift switches is dangerous. If the driver's air bag were to deploy in a collision, your hands could be impacted causing injury.

NOTE

- *When driving at high speeds, the gear may not shift down.*
- *During deceleration, the gear may automatically shift down depending on vehicle speed.*
- *When depressing the accelerator fully, the transaxle will shift to a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed. However, the gears do not kickdown while the DSC is turned off.*

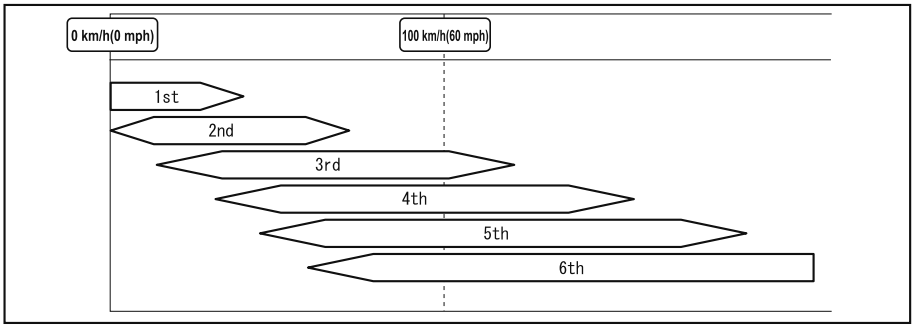
▼ Second Gear Fixed Mode

When the selector lever is moved back + while the vehicle speed is about 10 km/h (6.2 mph) or less, the transaxle is set in the second gear fixed mode. The gear is fixed in second while in this mode for easier acceleration from a stop and driving on slippery roads such as snow-covered roads.
If the selector lever is moved back + or forward − while in the second gear fixed mode, the mode will be cancelled.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Shift Gear (Shifting) Speed Limit

For each gear position while in the manual mode, the speed limit is set as follows: When the selector lever is operated within the range of the speed limit, the gear is shifted.



Shift up

The gear does not shift up while the vehicle speed is lower than the speed limit.

Shift down

The gear does not shift down while the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit.
If the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit and the gear does not shift down, the gear position indication flashes 2 times to notify the driver that the gear cannot be shifted.

Kickdown

When the accelerator pedal is depressed fully while driving, the gear shifts down.
However, the gears do not kickdown while the DSC is turned off.

NOTE
The gear also shifts down using kickdown while in the second gear fixed mode.

Auto-shift down

The gear shifts down automatically depending on the vehicle speed during deceleration.

NOTE
If the vehicle comes to a stop while in the second gear fixed mode, the gear remains in second.

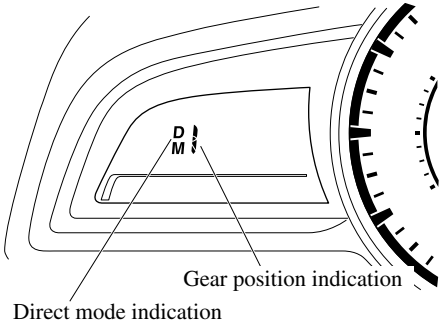
OwnersManuals2.com

Direct Mode*

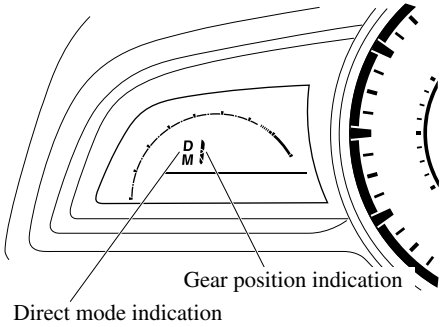
Direct mode can be used for temporarily switching gears by operating the steering shift switch while the vehicle is being driven with the selector lever in the D position.
While in direct mode, the D and M indication illuminate and the gear position in use is illuminated.
Direct mode is cancelled (released) under the following conditions.

- The UP switch (**+/OFF**) is pulled rearward for a certain amount of time or longer.
- The vehicle is driven for a certain amount of time or longer (time differs depending on the driving conditions while operating).
- The vehicle is stopped or moving at a slow speed.

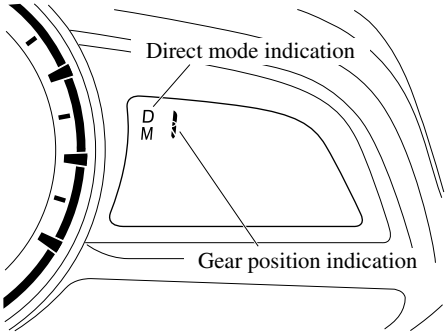
Type A



Type B



Type C



NOTE

Shifting up and down while in direct mode may not be possible depending on the vehicle speed. In addition, because direct mode is cancelled (released) depending on the rate of acceleration or if the accelerator is fully depressed, use of the manual shift mode is recommended if you need to drive the vehicle in a particular gear for long periods.

OwnersManuals2.com

Driving Tips

⚠ WARNING

Do not let the vehicle move in a direction opposite to the direction selected by the selector lever:
Do not let the vehicle move backward with the selector lever in a forward position, or do not let the vehicle move forward with the selector lever in the reverse position. Otherwise, the engine may stop, causing the loss of the power brake and power steering functions, and make it difficult to control the vehicle which could result in an accident.

Passing

For extra power when passing another vehicle or climbing steep grades, depress the accelerator fully. The transaxle will shift to a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed.

NOTE
The accelerator pedal may initially feel heavy as it is being depressed, then feel lighter as it is depressed further. This change in pedal force aids the engine control system in determining how much the accelerator pedal has been depressed for performing kickdown, and functions to control whether or not kickdown should be performed.

Climbing steep grades from a stop

To climb a steep grade from a stopped position:
1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Shift to D or M1, depending on the load weight and grade steepness.
3. Release the brake pedal while gradually accelerating.

Descending steep grades

When descending a steep grade, shift to lower gears, depending on load weight and grade steepness. Descend slowly, using the brakes only occasionally to prevent them from overheating.

OwnersManuals2.com

Lighting Control

▼ Headlights

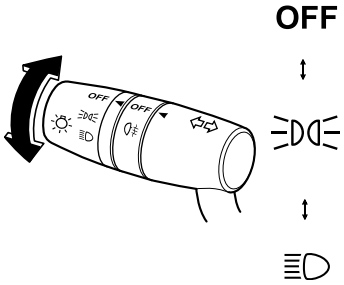
Turn the headlight switch to turn the headlights and other exterior lights on or off.
When the tail lights, position lights, and the number plate lights are turned on, the lights-on indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.



NOTE

- *To prevent discharging the battery, do not leave the lights on while the engine is off unless safety requires them.*
- *Headlights do not blind drivers approaching in the opposite direction no matter what side of the road you must drive your vehicle (left-hand or right-hand traffic). Therefore, it is not necessary to adjust the optical axis of the headlights when switching temporarily to driving on the opposite side of the road (left-hand or right-hand traffic).*

Without auto-light control



Switch Position	OFF					
Ignition Position	ON	ACC or OFF	ON	ACC or OFF	ON	ACC or OFF
Headlights	Off	Off	Off	Off	On	Off
Running lights*	On*1	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off
Tail lights Position lights Number plate lights	Off	Off	On	On	On	On*2

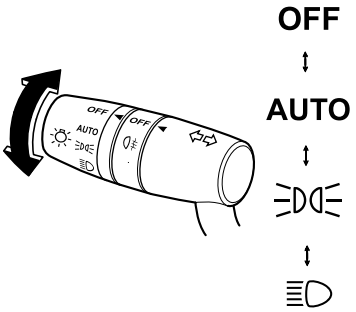
*1 The lights are turned on while the vehicle is driven.

OwnersManuals2.com

*2 The lights are turned on continuously if the ignition is switched from ON to any other position with the lights turned on. The lights are turned off when the driver's door is opened or 30 seconds have elapsed since the lights turned on.

With auto-light control

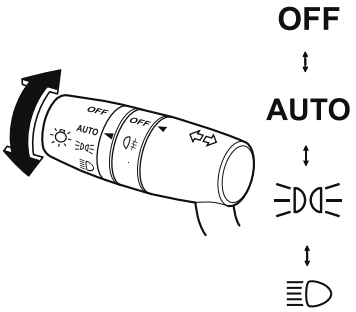
(Except Taiwan)



Switch Position	OFF		AUTO					
Ignition Position	ON	ACC or OFF	ON	ACC or OFF	ON	ACC or OFF	ON	ACC or OFF
Headlights	Off	Off	Auto*2	Off	Off	Off	On	Off
Running lights*	On*1	Off	On*3	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off
Tail lights Position lights Number plate lights	Off	Off	Auto*2	On*4	On	On	On	On*4

*1 The lights are turned on while the vehicle is driven.
*2 The lights are turned on by the auto light function.
*3 The lights are turned on while the vehicle is driven, and turned off when the headlights are turned on by the auto light function.
*4 The lights are turned on continuously if the ignition is switched from ON to any other position with the lights turned on. The lights are turned off when the driver's door is opened or 30 seconds have elapsed since the lights turned on.

(Taiwan)



OwnersManuals2.com

Ignition Position	ACC or OFF				ON			
Switch Position	OFF*1	AUTO	≡D◇	≡◇	OFF*1	AUTO	≡D◇	≡◇
Headlights	Off	Off	Off	Off	Auto*2*4		Auto*3*4	On
Running lights	Off	Off	Off	Off				Off
Tail lights Position lights Number plate lights	Off	On*5	On	On*5				On

*1 The light switch returns to the AUTO position automatically.

*2 During the daytime, the running lights turn on automatically. During the nighttime, the headlights, position lights, tail lights, and the number plate lights turn on automatically.

*3 During the daytime, the running lights, position lights, tail lights, and the number plate lights turn on automatically. During the nighttime, the headlights, position lights, tail lights, and the number plate lights turn on automatically.

*4 When the light switch is switched to the OFF position while the vehicle is stopped, all of the lights that are turned on turn off. When the light switch is switched from a position other than ≡D◇ to the ≡D◇ position while the vehicle is stopped, the running lights or the headlights turn off. When starting to drive the vehicle, the lights that are turned off turn on again.

*5 The lights are turned on continuously if the ignition is switched from ON to any other position with the lights turned on. The lights are turned off when the driver's door is opened or 30 seconds have elapsed since the lights turned on.

Auto-light control*

(Except Taiwan)

When the headlight switch is in the AUTO position and the ignition is switched ON, the light sensor senses the surrounding lightness or darkness and automatically turns the headlights and other exterior lights on or off.

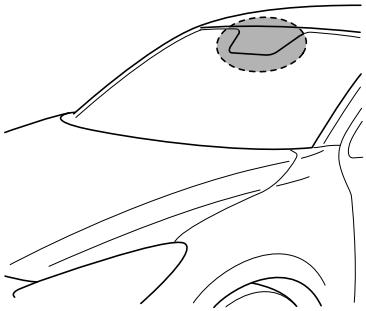
(Taiwan)

When the headlight switch is in a position other than ≡◇ and the ignition is switched ON, the light sensor senses the surrounding lightness or darkness and automatically turns the headlights and other exterior lights on or off.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not shade the light sensor by adhering a sticker or a label on the windscreen. Otherwise the light sensor will not operate correctly.*



- *The light sensor also works as a rain sensor for the auto-wiper control. Keep hands and scrapers clear of the windscreen when the wiper lever is in the AUTO position and the ignition is switched ON as fingers could be pinched or the wipers and wiper blades damaged when the wipers activate automatically. If you are going to clean the windscreen, be sure the wipers are turned off completely — this is particularly important when clearing ice and snow — when it is particularly tempting to leave the engine running.*

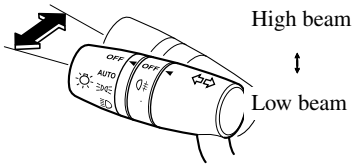
NOTE

- *The headlights, other exterior lights and instrument panel illumination may not turn off immediately even if the surrounding area becomes well-lit because the light sensor determines that it is night time if the surrounding area is continuously dark for several minutes such as inside long tunnels, traffic jams inside tunnels, or in indoor parking lots. In this case, the lights turn off if the light switch is turned to the OFF position.*
- *When the headlight switch is in the AUTO position and the ignition is switched to ACC or the ignition is switched off, the headlights and other exterior lights will turn off.*
- *The instrument panel illumination can be adjusted by rotating the knob in the instrument cluster. Also, the antidazzle mode can be changed by rotating the knob until a beep sound is heard. To adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination: Refer to Instrument Panel Illumination on page 4-30.*
- *The sensitivity of the auto-light control may be changed.*
  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Headlight High-Low Beam

The headlights switch between high and low beams by moving the lever forward or backward.

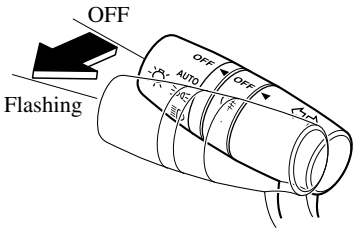


When the headlight high-beams are on, the headlight high-beam indicator light is turned on.



▼ Flashing the Headlights

Can be used when the ignition is switched ON.
To flash the headlights, pull the lever fully towards you (the headlight switch does not need to be on).



The headlight high-beam indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates simultaneously. The lever will return to the normal position when released.

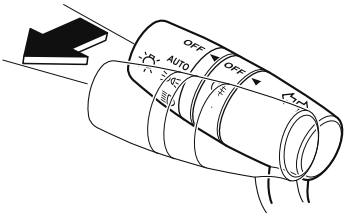


▼ Coming Home Light

The coming home light turns on the headlights (low beams) when the lever is operated.

To turn on the lights

When the lever is pulled with the ignition switched to ACC or OFF, the low beam headlights turn on.
The headlights turn off after a certain period of time has elapsed after all of the doors are closed.



NOTE

- *The time until the headlights turn off after all of the doors are closed can be changed.*
  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

OwnersManuals2.com

- *If no operations are done for 3 minutes after the lever is pulled, the headlights turn off.*
- *The headlights turn off if the lever is pulled again while the headlights are illuminated.*

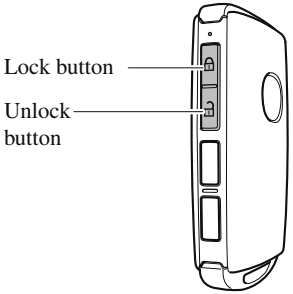
▼ Leaving Home Light

The leaving home light turns on the lights when the transmitter unlock button is pressed while away from the vehicle.
The following lights turn on when the leaving home light is operated.
Low beams, Position lights, Tail lights, Number plate lights.

To turn on the lights

When the ignition switch and the headlight switch are in the following conditions, the headlights will illuminate when the transmitter unlock button is pressed and the vehicle receives the transmitter signal. The headlights turn off after a certain period of time has elapsed (30 seconds).

- Ignition switch: off
- Headlight switch: AUTO, ≡D◐≡, or ≡D



NOTE

- *Operation of the leaving home light can be turned on or off.*

  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- *When the transmitter lock button is pressed and the vehicle receives the transmitter signal, the headlights turn off.*
- *When the headlight switch is turned to the OFF position, the headlights turn off.*

▼ Headlight Levelling

The number of passengers and weight of cargo in the luggage compartment/boot change the angle of the headlights.

The angle of the headlights will be automatically adjusted when turning on the headlights.

The warning/indicator light turns on when the system has a malfunction.
Refer to Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-37.

▼ Running Lights*

Some countries require moving vehicles to have their lights on (running lights) during the daytime.
(Except Taiwan)
The running lights turn off when the parking brake is operated or the selector lever is shifted to the P position (automatic transaxle vehicle).

NOTE
(Except countries prohibited by law)
The running lights can be deactivated.

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

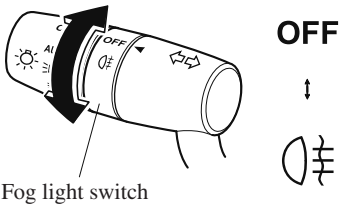
Rear Fog Light*

The rear fog light can be used when the ignition is switched ON.
The rear fog light helps your vehicle to be seen.
The headlights must be turned on to turn on the rear fog light.

To turn the rear fog light on, rotate the fog light switch to the position (the fog light switch returns to its original position automatically).



The rear fog light indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates while the rear fog light is on.



Fog light switch

To turn the rear fog light off, do any of the following:

- Rotate the fog light switch to the position again (the fog light switch returns to its original position automatically).
- Turn the headlight switch to the OFF position.

OwnersManuals2.com

The rear fog light indicator light in the instrument cluster goes off when the rear fog light is turned off.

NOTE
(With auto-light control)
When the headlight switch is in the AUTO position and the headlights, exterior lights and instrument panel illuminated, the rear fog light turns on when the rear fog light switch is turned on.

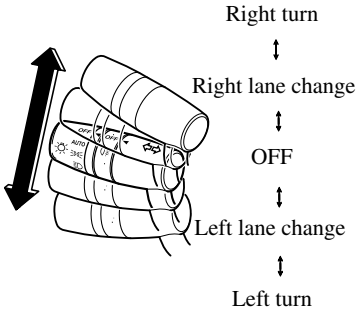
Turn and Lane-Change Signals

The ignition must be switched ON to use the turn and lane-change signals.

▼ Direction Indicators

Move the signal lever down (for a left turn) or up (for a right turn) to the stop position. The signal will self-cancel after the turn is completed.

If the indicator light continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to its original position.



The direction indicators in the instrument cluster flash according to the operation of the direction indicator lever to show which signal is working.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

- *If an indicator light stays on without flashing or if it flashes abnormally, one of the direction indicator bulbs may be burned out.*
- *A personalised function is available to change the turn indicator sound volume. Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*

▼ Lane-Change Signals

Move the lever halfway toward the direction of the lane change—until the indicator flashes— and hold it there. It will return to the off position when released.

▼ Three-Flash Turn Signal*

After releasing the direction indicator lever, the direction indicator flashes 3 times. The operation can be cancelled by moving the lever in the direction opposite to which it was operated.

NOTE

The three-flash turn signal function can be switched to operable/inoperable using the personalisation function.
Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Windscreen Wipers and Washer

The ignition must be switched ON to use the wipers.

⚠ WARNING

Use only windscreen washer fluid or plain water in the reservoir:
Using radiator antifreeze as washer fluid is dangerous. If sprayed on the windscreen, it will dirty the windscreen, affect your visibility, and could result in an accident.

Only use windscreen washer fluid mixed with anti-freeze protection in freezing weather conditions:
Using windscreen washer fluid without anti-freeze protection in freezing weather conditions is dangerous as it could freeze on the windscreen and block your vision which could cause an accident. In addition, make sure the windscreen is sufficiently warmed using the defroster before spraying the washer fluid.

⚠ CAUTION

- *When the wipers are not used during freezing temperatures or for a long time, the wiper rubber may adhere to the glass. If the wipers are operated while adhered to the glass, it could damage the wiper rubber and motor.*
- *If the wipers are operated while the glass is dry, the glass could be scratched and the wiper rubber damaged. When the glass is dry, spray washer fluid before operating the wipers.*

OwnersManuals2.com

➢ *If the amount of washer fluid spray is insufficient, do not use the washer switch. If the washer switch continues to be operated with no washer fluid being sprayed, it could lead to pump damage.*

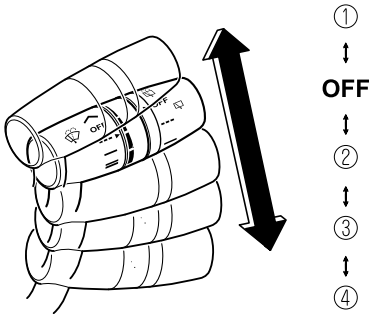
NOTE

If the windscreen wipers are operated under cold weather conditions or during snowfall, they could stop due to accumulated snow on the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers stop due to accumulated snow on the windscreen, park the vehicle in a safe place, turn the wiper switch off, and then remove the accumulated snow. If the wiper switch is turned to another position other than OFF, the wipers will operate. If the wipers do not operate even though the wiper switch is turned to a position other than OFF, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.

▼ Windscreen Wipers

Turn the wipers on by pressing the lever up or down.

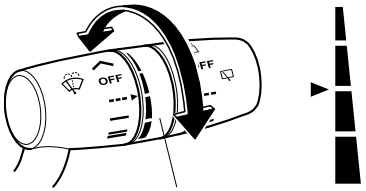
With intermittent wiper



Switch Position			Wiper operation
No.	Type A	Type B	
①	⌒	MIST	Operation while pulling up lever
OFF			Stop
②	⌒	INT	Intermittent
③	—	LO	Low speed
④	=	HI	High speed

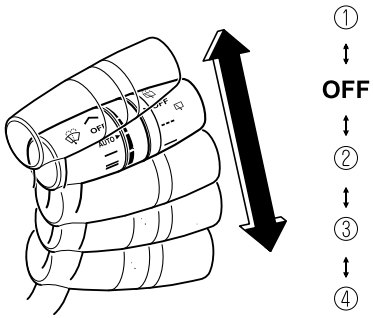
Variable-speed intermittent wipers

Set the lever to the intermittent position and choose the interval timing by rotating the ring.



INT ring

With auto-wiper control



Switch Position			Wiper operation
No.	Type A	Type B	
①	⌒	MIST	Operation while pulling up lever
OFF			Stop

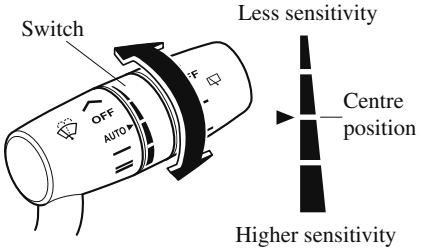
OwnersManuals2.com

Switch Position			Wiper operation
No.	Type A	Type B	
②	AU-TO	AU-TO	Auto control
③	—	LO	Low speed
④	=	HI	High speed

Auto-wiper control*

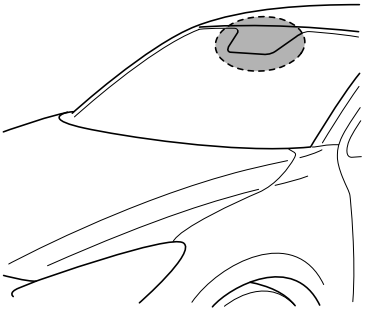
When the wiper lever is in the AUTO position, the rain sensor senses the amount of rainfall on the windscreen and turns the wipers on or off automatically (off—intermittent—low speed—high speed).

The sensitivity of the rain sensor can be adjusted by turning the switch on the wiper lever.
From the centre position (normal), rotate the switch upward for higher sensitivity (faster response) or rotate it downward for less sensitivity (slower response).



⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not shade the rain sensor by adhering a sticker or a label on the windscreen. Otherwise the rain sensor will not operate correctly.*



- *When the ignition is switched ON and the wiper lever is in the AUTO position, the windscreen wipers may operate automatically in the following cases:*
  - *The area of the windscreen above the rain sensor is touched or wiped with a cloth.*
  - *The windscreen or the rain sensor area in the cabin is hit.*

  When the ignition is switched ON and the wiper lever is in the AUTO position, do not touch the windscreen or the windscreen wipers Otherwise, the windscreen wipers will operate automatically which could catch your fingers or damage the windscreen wipers.
  When removing ice or snow, or cleaning the windscreen, always make sure the wiper lever is in the OFF position.

*Some models.

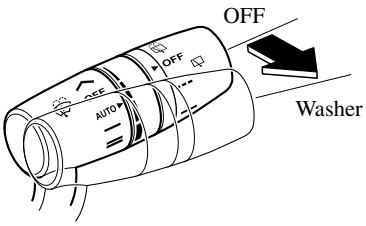
OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

- *Switching the auto-wiper lever from the OFF to the AUTO position while driving activates the windscreen wipers once, after which they operate according to the rainfall amount.*
- *The auto-wiper control may not operate when the rain sensor temperature is about –10 °C (14 °F) or lower, or about 85 °C (185 °F) or higher.*
- *If the windscreen is coated with water repellent, the rain sensor may not be able to sense the amount of rainfall correctly and auto-wiper control may not operate properly.*
- *If dirt or foreign matter (Such as ice or matter containing salt water) adheres to the windscreen above the rain sensor or if the windscreen is iced, it could cause the wipers to move automatically. However, if the wipers cannot remove this ice, dirt or foreign matter, the auto-wiper control will stop operation. In this case, set the wiper lever to the low speed position or high speed position for manual operation, or remove the ice, dirt or foreign matter by hand to restore the auto-wiper operation.*
- *If the auto-wiper lever is left in the AUTO position, the wipers could operate automatically from the effect of strong light sources, electromagnetic waves, or infrared light because the rain sensor uses an optical sensor. It is recommended that the auto-wiper lever be switched to the OFF position other than when driving the vehicle under rainy conditions.*
- *The auto-wiper control functions can be turned off.*
  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Windscreen Washer

Pull the lever toward you and hold it to spray washer fluid.



NOTE

If the windscreen washer is turned on when the windscreen wipers are not operating, the windscreen wipers operate a few times.

If the washer does not work, inspect the fluid level (page 6-30). If the fluid level is normal, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

NOTE

(With headlight washers)

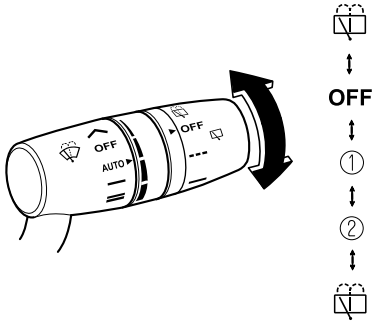
When the headlights are on, the headlight washers operate automatically once every fifth time the windscreen washer operates. Refer to Headlight Washer on page 4-75.

OwnersManuals2.com

Rear Window Wiper and Washer*

The ignition must be switched ON to use the wiper.

▼ Rear Window Wiper



Turn the wiper on by turning the rear wiper/washer switch.

Switch Position			Wiper operation
No.	Type A	Type B	
OFF			Stop
①	▬▬	INT	Intermittent
②	▬	ON	Normal

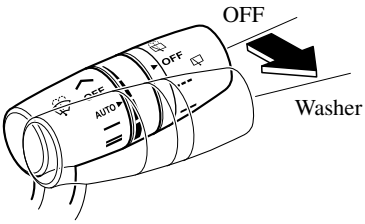
▼ Rear Window Washer

To spray washer fluid, turn the rear wiper/washer switch to either of the position. After the switch is released, the washer will stop.
If the washer does not work, inspect the fluid level (page 6-30). If the fluid level is normal and the washer still does not work, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Headlight Washer*

The engine must be started and the headlights must be turned on.

If you want to operate headlight washers, double flick the wiper lever.



NOTE

- *When the windscreen washer is operated for the first time after turning on the headlights, the headlight washers operate automatically.*
- *If air enters the headlight washer fluid pipe under conditions such as when the vehicle is brand-new or after an empty washer tank is replenished with washer fluid, washer fluid will not spray even when the wiper lever is operated. If this occurs, perform the following procedure:*
  1. *Start the engine.*
  2. *Turn on the headlights.*
  3. *Double flick the wiper lever several times until the washer fluid sprays.*

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Rear Window Defogger

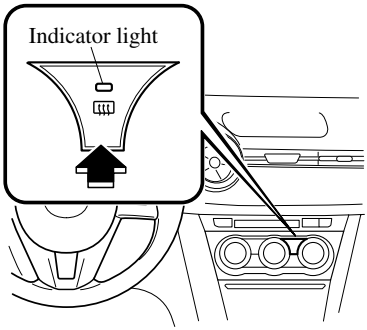
The rear window defogger clears fog from the rear window.

The ignition must be switched ON to use the defogger.

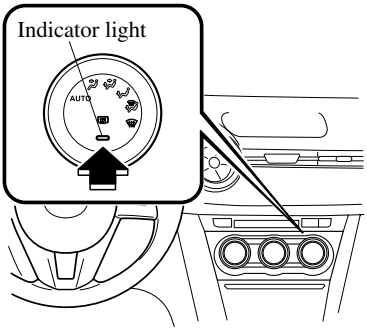
Press the switch to turn on the rear window defogger. The rear window defogger operates for about 15 minutes and then turns off automatically.
The indicator light illuminates when the defogger is operating.

To turn off the rear window defogger before the 15 minutes has elapsed, press the switch again.

Manual Air-Conditioning System



Fully Automatic Air-Conditioning System



⚠ CAUTION

➢ *Do not use sharp instruments or window cleaners with abrasives to clean the inside of the rear window surface. They may damage the defogger grid inside the window.*

NOTE

- *This defogger is not designed for melting snow. If there is an accumulation of snow on the rear window, remove it before using the defogger.*
- *The rear window defogger setting can be changed. After changing the setting, the rear window defogger stops automatically after 15 minutes have elapsed and when the ambient temperature is high. When the ambient temperature is low, it continues to operate until the switch is pressed again.*
  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

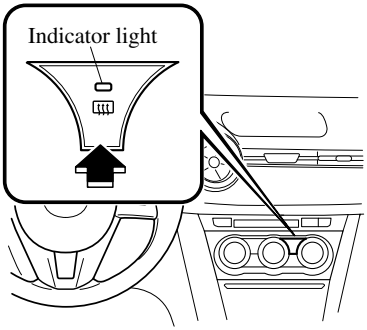
OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Mirror Defogger*

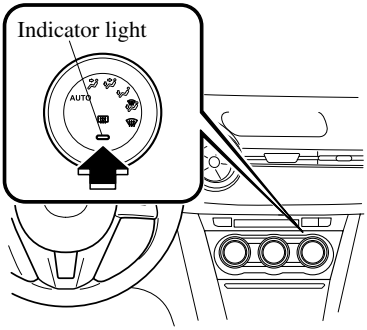
The mirror defoggers defrost the outside mirrors.

The mirror defoggers operate in conjunction with the rear window defogger.
To turn on the mirror defoggers, switch the ignition ON and press the rear window defogger switch (page 4-76).

Manual Air-Conditioning System



Fully Automatic Air-Conditioning System



Horn

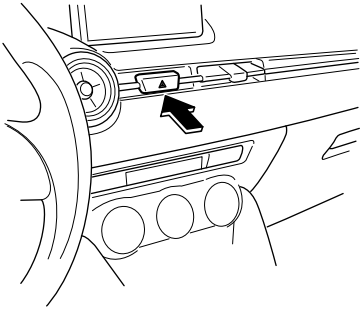
To sound the horn, press the mark on the steering wheel.

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Hazard Warning Flasher

The hazard warning lights should always be used when you stop on or near a roadway in an emergency.



The hazard warning lights warn other drivers that your vehicle is a traffic hazard and that they must take extreme caution when near it.



Depress the hazard warning flasher and all the direction indicators will flash. The hazard warning indicator lights in the instrument cluster flash simultaneously.

NOTE

- *The direction indicators do not work when the hazard warning lights are on.*
- *Check local regulations about the use of hazard warning lights while the vehicle is being towed to verify that it is not in violation of the law.*
- *If the brake pedal is depressed while driving on slippery roads, the emergency stop signal system could operate causing all the turn and lane change signals to flash. Refer to Emergency Stop Signal System on page 4-82.*
- *While the emergency stop signal system is operating, all the direction indicators automatically flash rapidly to caution the driver of a vehicle following behind your vehicle of a sudden braking situation. Refer to Emergency Stop Signal System on page 4-82.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Brake System

▼ Foot Brake

This vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal use.

Should power-assist fail, you can stop by applying greater force than normal to the brake pedal. But the distance required to stop will be greater than usual.

⚠ WARNING

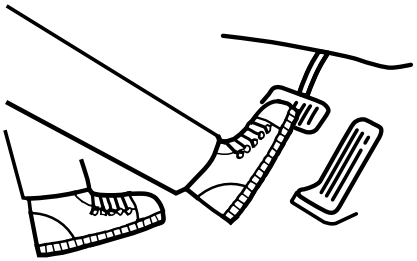
Do not coast with the engine stalled or turned off, find a safe place to stop:
Coasting with the engine stalled or turned off is dangerous. Braking will require more effort, and the brake's power-assist could be depleted if you pump the brake. This will cause longer stopping distances or even an accident.

Shift to a lower gear when going down steep hills:
Driving with your foot continuously on the brake pedal or steadily applying the brakes for long distances is dangerous. This causes overheated brakes, resulting in longer stopping distances or even total brake failure. This could cause loss of vehicle control and a serious accident. Avoid continuous application of the brakes.

Dry off brakes that have become wet by driving slowly, releasing the accelerator pedal and lightly applying the brakes several times until the brake performance returns to normal:
Driving with wet brakes is dangerous. Increased stopping distance or the vehicle pulling to one side when braking could result in a serious accident. Light braking will indicate whether the brakes have been affected.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not drive with your foot held on the clutch pedal or brake pedal, or hold the clutch pedal depressed halfway unnecessarily. Doing so could result in the following:*
  - *The clutch and brake parts will wear out more quickly.*
  - *The brakes can overheat and adversely affect brake performance.*
- *Always depress the brake pedal with the right foot. Applying the brakes with the unaccustomed left foot could slow your reaction time to an emergency situation resulting in insufficient braking operation.*



OwnersManuals2.com

➢ *Wear shoes appropriate for driving in order to avoid your shoe contacting the brake pedal when depressing the accelerator pedal.*

▼ Parking Brake

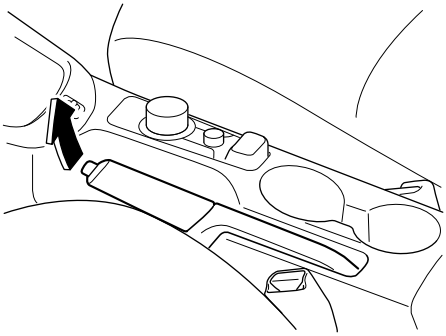
⚠ CAUTION

Driving with the parking brake on will cause excessive wear of the brake parts.

NOTE
For parking in snow, refer to Winter Driving (page 3-46) regarding parking brake use.

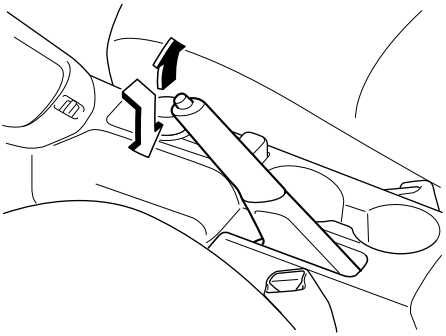
Setting the parking brake

Depress the brake pedal and then firmly pull the parking brake lever fully upwards with sufficient force to hold the vehicle in a stationary position.



Releasing the parking brake

Depress the brake pedal and pull the parking brake lever upwards, then press the release button. While holding the button, lower the parking brake lever all the way down to the released position.

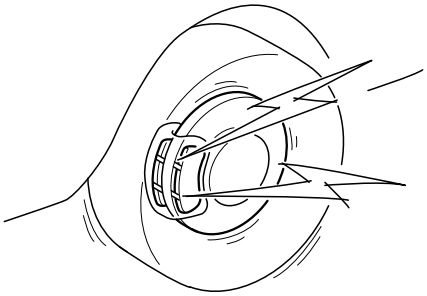


▼ Warning Light

The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction.
Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-37.

▼ Brake Pad Wear Indicator

When the disc brake pads become worn, the built-in wear indicators contact the disc plates. This causes a screeching noise to warn that the pads should be replaced.



OwnersManuals2.com

When you hear this noise, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive with worn disc pads:
Driving with worn disc pads is dangerous. The brakes could fail and cause a serious accident. As soon as you hear a screeching noise consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

NOTE
In high humidity weather conditions, brake noises, such as brake squeak or brake squeal can be heard. It does not indicate a malfunction.

▼ Brake Assist

During emergency braking situations when it is necessary to depress the brake pedal with greater force, the brake assist system provides braking assistance, thus enhancing braking performance.

When the brake pedal is depressed hard or depressed more quickly, the brakes apply more firmly.

NOTE

- *When the brake pedal is depressed hard or depressed more quickly, the pedal will feel softer but the brakes will apply more firmly. This is a normal effect of the brake assist operation and does not indicate a malfunction.*
- *When the brake pedal is depressed hard or depressed more quickly, a motor/pump operation noise may be heard. This is a normal effect of the brake assist and does not indicate a malfunction.*
- *The brake assist equipment does not supersede the functionality of the vehicle's main braking system.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Emergency Stop Signal System

If you apply the brakes suddenly while driving at a speed of about 55 km/h (34 mph) or faster, the emergency stop signal system automatically and rapidly flashes all the direction indicator lights to caution drivers behind your vehicle of the sudden braking situation.

NOTE

- ***Flashing***
  When you bring your vehicle to a complete stop while all the direction indicator lights are flashing rapidly, the rapid flashing of all the direction indicator lights changes back to the normal flashing pattern. When the hazard warning light switch is pressed, all of the direction indicator lights turn off.
- ***Operation***
  - *When the ABS operates, the emergency stop signal system is more likely to operate. Therefore, if the brake pedal is depressed on a slippery road, all of the direction indicator lights may flash.*
  - *The emergency stop signal system does not operate when the hazard warning light switch is pressed.*

Hill Launch Assist (HLA)*

HLA is a function which assists the driver in accelerating from a stop while on a slope. When the driver releases the brake pedal and depresses the accelerator pedal while on a slope, the function prevents the vehicle from rolling. The braking force is maintained automatically after the brake pedal is released on a steep grade.
For vehicles with a manual transaxle, HLA operates on a downward slope when the shift lever is in the reverse (R) position, and on an upward slope when the shift lever is in a position other than the reverse (R) position.
For vehicles with an automatic transaxle, HLA operates on a downward slope when the selector lever is in the reverse (R) position, and on an upward slope when the selector lever is in a forward gear.

⚠ WARNING

Do not rely completely on HLA:
HLA is an auxiliary device for accelerating from a stop on a slope. The system only operates for about 2 seconds and therefore, relying only on the system, when accelerating from a stop is dangerous because the vehicle may move (roll) unexpectedly and cause an accident.
The vehicle could roll depending on the vehicle's load or if it is towing something. In addition, for vehicles with a manual transaxle, the vehicle could still roll depending on how the clutch pedal or the accelerator pedal is operated.
Always confirm the safety around the vehicle before starting to drive the vehicle.

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

- *HLA does not operate on a gentle slope. In addition, the gradient of the slope on which the system will operate changes depending on the vehicle's load.*
- *HLA does not operate if the parking brake is applied, the vehicle has not stopped completely, or the clutch pedal is released.*
- *While HLA is operating, the brake pedal may feel stiff and vibrate, however, this does not indicate a malfunction.*
- *HLA does not operate while the TCS/DSC indicator light is illuminated. Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-37.*
- *HLA does not turn off even if the DSC OFF switch is pressed to turn off the TCS/DSC.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

The ABS control unit continuously monitors the speed of each wheel. If one wheel is about to lock up, the ABS responds by automatically releasing and reapplying that wheel's brake.

The driver will feel a slight vibration in the brake pedal and may hear a chattering noise from the brake system. This is normal ABS system operation. Continue to depress the brake pedal without pumping the brakes.

The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction.
Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-37.

⚠ WARNING

Do not rely on ABS as a substitute for safe driving:
The ABS cannot compensate for unsafe and reckless driving, excessive speed, tailgating (following another vehicle too closely), driving on ice and snow, and hydroplaning (reduced tyre friction and road contact because of water on the road surface). You can still have an accident.

NOTE

- *Braking distances may be longer on loose surfaces (snow or gravel, for example) which usually have a hard foundation. A vehicle with a normal braking system may require less distance to stop under these conditions because the tyres will build up a wedge of surface layer when the wheels skid.*
- *The sound of the ABS operating may be heard when starting the engine or immediately after starting the vehicle, however, it does not indicate a malfunction.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Traction Control System (TCS)*

The Traction Control System (TCS) enhances traction and safety by controlling engine torque and braking. When the TCS detects driving wheel slippage, it lowers engine torque and operates the brakes to prevent loss of traction.

This means that on a slick surface, the engine adjusts automatically to provide optimum power to the drive wheels, limiting wheel spin and loss of traction.

The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction.
Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-37.

⚠ WARNING

Do not rely on the Traction Control System (TCS) as a substitute for safe driving:
The Traction Control System (TCS) cannot compensate for unsafe and reckless driving, excessive speed, tailgating (following another vehicle too closely), and hydroplaning (reduced tyre friction and road contact because of water on the road surface). You can still have an accident.

Use snow tyres or tyre chains and drive at reduced speeds when roads are covered with ice and/or snow:
Driving without proper traction devices on snow and/or ice-covered roads is dangerous. The Traction Control System (TCS) alone cannot provide adequate traction and you could still have an accident.

NOTE
To turn off the TCS, press the DSC OFF switch (page 4-87).

▼ TCS/DSC Indicator Light



This indicator light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched ON. If the TCS or DSC is operating, the indicator light flashes.

If the light stays on, the TCS, DSC or the brake assist system may have a malfunction and they may not operate correctly. Take your vehicle to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

NOTE

- *In addition to the indicator light flashing, a slight labouring sound will come from the engine. This indicates that the TCS/DSC is operating properly.*
- *On slippery surfaces, such as fresh snow, it will be impossible to achieve high rpm when the TCS is on.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)*

The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) automatically controls braking and engine torque in conjunction with systems such as ABS and TCS to help control side slip when driving on slippery surfaces, or during sudden or evasive manoeuvring, enhancing vehicle safety.

Refer to ABS (page 4-84) and TCS (page 4-85).

DSC operation is possible at speeds greater than 20 km/h (12 mph).

The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction.
Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-37.

⚠ WARNING

Do not rely on the Dynamic Stability Control as a substitute for safe driving:
The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) cannot compensate for unsafe and reckless driving, excessive speed, tailgating (following another vehicle too closely), and hydroplaning (reduced tyre friction and road contact because of water on the road surface). You can still have an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- *The DSC may not operate correctly unless the following are observed:*
  - *Use tyres of the correct size specified for your Mazda on all 4 wheels.*
  - *Use tyres of the same manufacturer, brand and tread pattern on all 4 wheels.*
  - *Do not mix worn tyres.*
- *The DSC may not operate correctly when tyre chains are used or a temporary spare tyre is installed because the tyre diameter changes.*

▼ TCS/DSC Indicator Light



This indicator light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched ON. If the TCS or DSC is operating, the indicator light flashes.

If the light stays on, the TCS, DSC or the brake assist system may have a malfunction and they may not operate correctly. Take your vehicle to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ DSC OFF Indicator Light

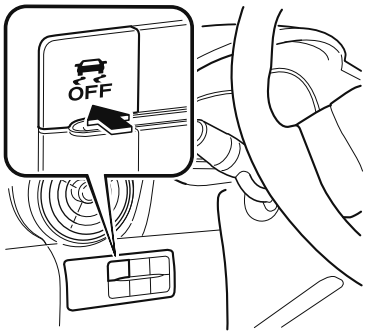


This indicator light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched ON. It also illuminates when the DSC OFF switch is pressed and TCS/DSC is switched off.
Refer to DSC OFF Switch on page 4-87.

If the light remains illuminated and the TCS/DSC is not switched off, take your vehicle to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). The DSC may have a malfunction.

▼ DSC OFF Switch

Press the DSC OFF switch to turn off the TCS/DSC. The DSC OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate.



Press the switch again to turn the TCS/DSC back on. The DSC OFF indicator light will turn off.

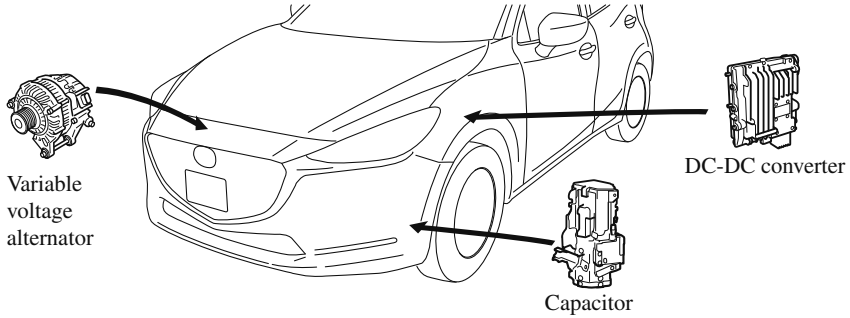
NOTE

- *When the TCS/DSC is on and you attempt to free the vehicle from being stuck, the TCS/DSC will activate. Depressing the accelerator will not increase engine power and freeing the vehicle from being stuck might be difficult. When this happens, turn off the TCS/DSC.*
- *If the TCS/DSC is off when the engine is turned off, it automatically activates when the ignition is switched ON.*
- *Leaving the TCS/DSC on will provide the best traction.*
- *If the DSC OFF switch is pressed and held for 10 seconds or more, the DSC OFF switch malfunction detection function operates and the TCS/DSC system activates automatically. The DSC OFF indicator light turns off while the TCS/DSC system is operative.*
- ***(Vehicles with Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) or Smart City Brake Support (SCBS))***
  If the Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) or Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) operates with the TCS/DSC turned off, the TCS/DSC becomes operational automatically.

OwnersManuals2.com

i-ELOOP*

The i-ELOOP system suppresses engine load used for generating power and improves driveability and fuel economy by generating electricity with the kinetic energy that is generated when the vehicle slows down by applying the brakes or during engine braking. Stores large amounts of electricity instantly and efficiently uses the electricity for electrical devices and accessories.



⚠ CAUTION

- *High-current electricity flows through the following parts, therefore do not touch them.*
  - *Variable voltage alternator*
  - *DC-DC converter*
  - *Capacitor*
- *If the capacitor is to be disposed of, always consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
  For details, go to the following URL.
  http://www.mazda.com/csr/environment/recycling

▼ i-ELOOP Indicator Light/Control Status Display

The driver is notified of the i-ELOOP power generating status and the vehicle conditions by the i-ELOOP indicator light (green) and the control status display.

i-ELOOP indicator light (green) (vehicle without type B audio)

i-ELOOP

The light turns on during power generation.

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

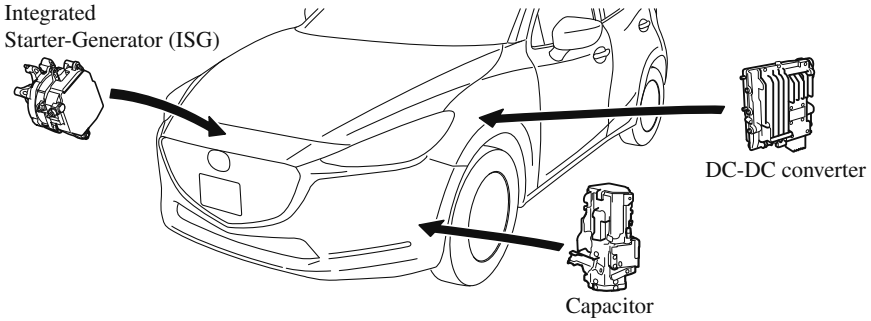
Control status display (vehicles with type B audio)

The i-ELOOP power generating status is displayed in the centre display.
Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

OwnersManuals2.com

Mazda M Hybrid*

Mazda M Hybrid uses the Integrated Starter-Generator (ISG) with excellent power generation efficiency to generate electricity from the kinetic energy generated when the vehicle decelerates. The system uses the electrical power stored in the Capacitor, which is a battery to improve driveability and fuel economy by reducing engine load and providing motor assist. In addition, the ISG provides quiet engine restarting after the engine is stopped by after the i-stop function (idling stop).



⚠ CAUTION

- *The following parts are extremely hot and have high-current electricity flowing through them, therefore do not touch them.*
  - *ISG*
  - *DC-DC converter*
  - *Capacitor*
- *If the capacitor is to be disposed of, always consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
  For details, go to the following URL.
  http://www.mazda.com/csr/environment/recycling

▼ Mazda M Hybrid Control Status Display

The driver is notified of the Mazda M Hybrid operation status by the control status display.
The Mazda M Hybrid operation status is displayed in the centre display.
Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Unique Mazda M Hybrid Handling

Mazda M Hybrid vehicles have a unique sound. The following may occur, however, this is unique to Mazda M Hybrid and it does not indicate a problem.

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Characteristics	Occurrence status/location
Operation sound of deceleration regeneration	An operational sound can be heard from the engine compartment during deceleration.

OwnersManuals2.com

Drive Selection*

Drive selection is a system to switch the vehicle's drive mode. When the sport mode is selected, the vehicle's response against accelerator operation is enhanced. Use the sport mode when higher vehicle response is required such as merging onto expressway or accelerating to overtake.

⚠ CAUTION

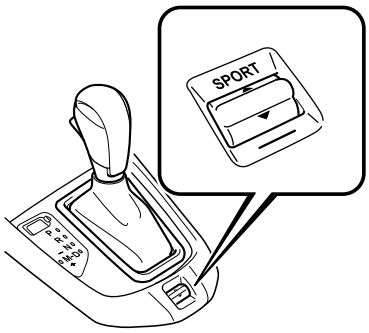
Do not use the sport mode when driving on slippery roads such as wet or snow-covered roads. It may cause tyre slipping.

NOTE

- *When sport mode is selected, driving at higher engine speeds may increase fuel consumption. Mazda recommends that you cancel sport mode for normal driving.*
- *Drive mode cannot be switched in the following conditions:*
  - *ABS/TCS/DSC is operating*
  - *Steering wheel is being operated abruptly*
  - *The ignition is switched OFF.*
  - *Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) system/cruise control is set.*
- *Depending on the driving conditions when sport mode is selected, the vehicle may perform shift-down or slightly accelerate.*

▼ Drive Selection Switch

Press the drive selection switch forward ("SPORT") to select the sport mode. Pull the drive selection switch back ("—") to cancel the sport mode.



NOTE

- *In the following cases, the drive selection is cancelled.*

▼ Select Mode Indicator Light

When the sport mode is selected, the select mode indicator light turns on in the instrument cluster.

SPORT

NOTE

If the drive selection cannot be switched to sport mode, the select mode indicator light flashes to notify the driver.

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Power Steering

- Power steering is only operable when the engine is running. If the engine is off or if the power steering system is inoperable, you can still steer, but it requires more physical effort.
  If the steering feels stiffer than usual during normal driving or the steering vibrates, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- The warning light notifies the driver of system abnormalities and operation conditions.
  In addition, the buzzer may also activate depending on the system abnormality or operation condition.
  Refer to Stop Vehicle in Safe Place Immediately on page 7-34.
  Refer to Power Steering Warning Buzzer on page 7-52.

⚠ CAUTION

Never hold the steering wheel to the extreme left or right for more than 5 seconds with the engine running. This could damage the power steering system.

OwnersManuals2.com

i-ACTIVSENSE*

i-ACTIVSENSE is a collective term covering a series of advanced safety and driver support systems which make use of a Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) and radar sensors. These systems consist of active safety and pre-crash safety systems.
These systems are designed to assist the driver in safer driving by reducing the load on the driver and helping to avert collisions or reduce their severity. However, because each system has its limitations, always drive carefully and do not rely solely on the systems.

▼ Active Safety Technology

Active Safety Technology supports safer driving by helping the driver to recognise potential hazards and avert accidents.

Driver awareness support systems

Nighttime visibility

Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH).....page 4-101
High Beam Control System (HBC).....page 4-98

Left/right side and rear side detection

Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS).....page 4-103
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM).....page 4-109

Road sign recognition

Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR).....page 4-115

Inter-vehicle distance recognition

Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS).....page 4-121

Driver fatigue detection

Driver Attention Alert (DAA)..... page 4-123

Rear obstruction detection when leaving a parking space

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA).....page 4-125

Full-surround recognition

360°View Monitor..... page 4-177

Driver support systems

Inter-vehicle distance

Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC).....page 4-129

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Lane departure

Lane-keep Assist System (LAS).....page 4-140

Speed control

Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL).....page 4-153

▼ Pre-Crash Safety Technology

Pre-crash safety technology is designed to assist the driver in averting collisions or reduce their severity in situations where they cannot be avoided.

Collision damage reduction in low vehicle speed range

Forward driving

Smart City Brake Support [Forward] (SCBS F).....page 4-164
Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS).....page 4-160

Reverse driving

Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R).....page 4-169

Collision damage reduction in medium/high speed range

Smart Brake Support (SBS).....page 4-174

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Camera and Sensors

Forward Sensing Camera (FSC)

The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) detects lane indications and recognises headlights, tail lights and city lights during nighttime driving. In addition, it also detects the vehicle ahead, pedestrians, or obstructions. The following systems also use the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).

- High Beam Control System (HBC)
- Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)
- Driver Attention Alert (DAA)
- Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)
- Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)
- Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR)
- Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)
- Smart Brake Support (SBS)

The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is installed at the top of the windscreen near the rearview mirror.
Refer to Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) on page 4-204.

Radar sensor (front)

The radar sensor (front) functions by detecting the radio waves reflected off a vehicle ahead sent from the radar sensor. The following systems also use the radar sensor (front).

- Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)
- Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS)
- Smart Brake Support (SBS)

The radar sensor (front) is mounted behind the radiator grille.
Refer to Radar Sensor (Front) on page 4-210.

Radar sensors (rear)

The radar sensors (rear) function by detecting the radio waves reflected off a vehicle approaching from the rear or an obstruction sent from the radar sensors. The following systems also use the radar sensors (rear).

- Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

The radar sensors (rear) are installed inside the rear bumper, one each on the left and right sides.
Refer to Radar Sensors (Rear) on page 4-213.

OwnersManuals2.com

Ultrasonic sensors (rear)

The ultrasonic sensors (rear) function by detecting the ultrasonic waves reflected off obstructions at the rear sent from the ultrasonic sensors. The following systems also use the ultrasonic sensors (rear).

・Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R)

The ultrasonic sensors (rear) are mounted in the rear bumper.
Refer to Ultrasonic Sensors (Rear) on page 4-215.

Front camera/side cameras/rear view camera

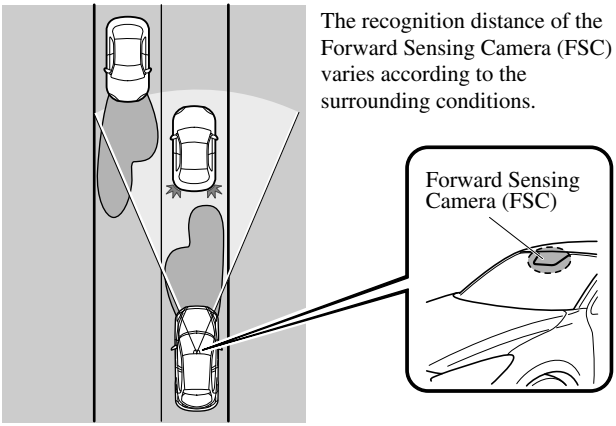
The front camera, side cameras, and rear camera shoot images of the area surrounding the vehicle. The 360° View Monitor uses each camera.
Cameras are installed to the front bumper, door mirrors, and rear bumper.
Refer to Front Camera/Side Cameras/Rear Camera on page 4-216.

OwnersManuals2.com

High Beam Control System (HBC)*

The HBC determines the conditions in front of the vehicle using the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) while driving in darkness to automatically switch the headlights between high and low beams.
Refer to Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) on page 4-204.
While driving the vehicle at a speed of about 30 km/h (19 mph) or more, the headlights are switched to high beams when there are no vehicles ahead or approaching in the opposite direction.
The system switches the headlights to low beams when one of the following occurs:

- The system detects a vehicle or the headlights/lights of a vehicle approaching in the opposite direction.
- The vehicle is driven on roads lined with streetlamps or on roads in well-lit cities and towns.
- The vehicle is driven at less than about 20 km/h (12 mph).



The recognition distance of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) varies according to the surrounding conditions.

The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction.
Refer to Contact expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-37.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not adjust the vehicle height, modify the headlight units, or remove the camera, otherwise the system will not operate normally.*
- *Do not rely excessively on the HBC and drive the vehicle while paying sufficient attention to safety. Switch the headlights between the high beams and low beams manually if necessary.*

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

The timing in which the system switches the headlights changes under the following conditions. If the system does not switch the headlights appropriately, manually switch between high and low beams according to the visibility as well as road and traffic conditions.

- *When there are sources of light in the area such as streetlamps, illuminated signboards, and traffic signals.*
- *When there are reflective objects in the surrounding area such as reflective plates and signs.*
- *When visibility is reduced under rain, snow and foggy conditions.*
- *When driving on roads with sharp turn or hilly terrain.*
- *When the headlights/rear lamps of vehicles in front of you or in the opposite lane are dim or not illuminated.*
- *When there is sufficient darkness such as at dawn or dusk.*
- *When the luggage compartment is loaded with heavy objects or the rear passenger seats are occupied.*
- *When visibility is reduced due to a vehicle in front of you spraying water from its tyres onto your windscreen.*

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ To Operate the System

The HBC operates to switch the headlights automatically between high and low beams after the ignition is switched ON and the headlight switch is in the AUTO and high beam position.
The HBC determines that it is dark based on the brightness of the surrounding area. At the same time, the HBC indicator light (green) in the instrument cluster illuminates.



NOTE

- *When the vehicle speed is about 30 km/h (19 mph) or more, the headlights automatically switch to high beams when there are no vehicles ahead or approaching in the opposite direction. When the vehicle speed is less than about 20 km/h (12 mph), the HBC switches the headlights to low beams.*
- *The low beams may not switch to high beams when cornering.*
- *Operation of the HBC function can be disabled. Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*

▼ Manual Switching

Switching to low beams

Shift the lever to the low beam position.
The HBC indicator light (green) turns off.

Switching to high beams

Turn the headlight switch to the ≣D position.
The HBC indicator light (green) turns off and the ≣D is illuminated.

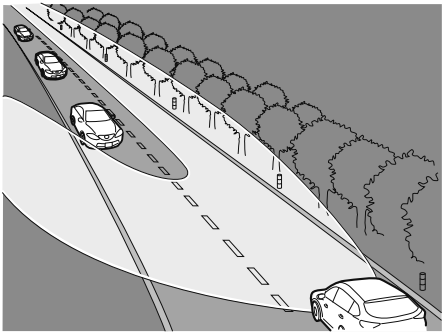
OwnersManuals2.com

Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)*

The ALH are a system which uses the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) to determine the situation of a vehicle ahead or a vehicle approaching in the opposite direction while driving at night to automatically switch the illumination range of the headlights, the illuminated area, or the illumination brightness.
Refer to Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) on page 4-204.
The ALH are controlled between high and low beams as follows to assure the driver's visibility without dazzling a vehicle ahead or a vehicle approaching in the opposite direction.

Glare-Free High Beam

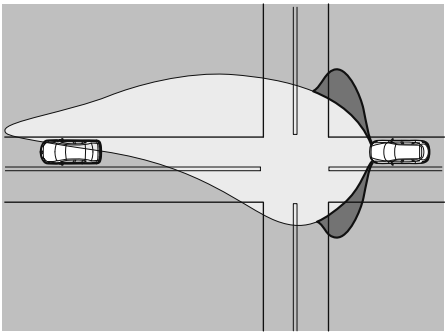
This feature dims only the high-beam light shone on the vehicle ahead.
The high beams will dim while driving at a speed of about 40 km/h (25 mph) or faster. When the vehicle speed is less than about 30 km/h (19 mph), the beams switch to the low beams.



NOTE
The headlight high-beam indicator light turns on while the high beams are on.

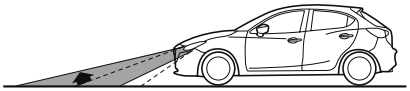
Wide-Range Low Beam

This feature extends the illumination range of the light cast by the low beams while driving at a speed less than about 40 km/h (25 mph).



Highway Mode

This feature shifts the illumination angle of the light cast by the headlights upward while driving on highways.



The distance in which the ALH can detect objects varies depending on the surrounding conditions.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not modify the suspensions or headlight units, or remove the camera. Otherwise, the ALH may not operate normally.*
- *Do not rely excessively on the ALH and drive the vehicle while paying sufficient attention to safety. Switch the headlights between the high beams and low beams manually if necessary.*

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE
Under the following conditions, the ALH may not operate normally. Manually switch between the high and low beams according to the visibility, and the road and traffic conditions.

- *When there are other sources of light in the area such as streetlamps, illuminated signboards, and traffic signals.*
- *When there are reflective objects in the surrounding area such as reflective plates and signs.*
- *When visibility is reduced under rain, snow and foggy conditions.*
- *When driving on roads with sharp curves or undulations.*
- *When the headlights/rear lamps of vehicles ahead or in the opposite lane are dim or not illuminated.*
- *When there is insufficient darkness such as at dawn or dusk.*
- *When the luggage compartment is loaded with heavy objects or the rear passenger seats are occupied.*
- *When visibility is reduced due to a vehicle ahead spraying water from its tyres onto your windscreen.*

▼ To Operate the System

The system switches the headlights to the high beams after the ignition is switched ON and the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position. The ALH indicator light (green) in the instrument cluster turns on simultaneously.



The ALH determine that it is nighttime based on the brightness of the surrounding area.
The system cancels operation when the headlight switch is turned to a position other than **AUTO**, the headlights are manually switched to low beams, or the high beams are flashed on and off.

NOTE
The system can be changed so that the ALH do not operate.
Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Manual Switching

Switching to low beams

Shift the lever to the low beam position.
The ALH indicator light (green) turns off.

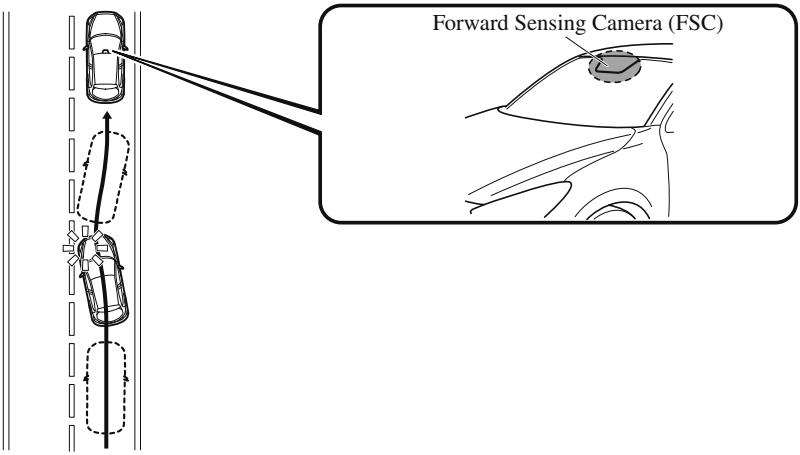
Switching to high beams

Turn the headlight switch to the ≣D position.
The ALH indicator light (green) turns off and the ≣D is illuminated.

OwnersManuals2.com

Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)*

The LDWS notifies the driver that the vehicle may be deviating from its lane.
The system detects the white or yellow lines on the traffic lane using the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) and if it determines that the vehicle may be deviating from its lane, it notifies the driver using the active driving display (vehicles with active driving display), and by flashing the LDWS warning light and activating the LDWS warning beep.
Use the LDWS when you drive the vehicle on roads with white or yellow lines.
Refer to Forward Sensing Camera on page 4-204.



The warning light illuminates when the system has a malfunction.
Refer to Warning Lights on page 4-40.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the LDWS under the following conditions:
The system may not operate adequately according to the actual driving conditions, resulting in an accident.

- *Driving on roads with tight curves.*
- *Driving under bad weather conditions (rain, fog, and snow).*

The functions of the LDWS have limitations:
Always stay on course using the steering wheel and drive with care. The system is not designed to compensate for a driver's lack of caution and if you rely too much on the LDWS it could lead to an accident. The driver is responsible for assuring lane changes and other manoeuvres. Always pay attention to the direction in which the vehicle is travelling and the vehicle's surroundings.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not modify the suspension. If the vehicle height or the damping force of the suspensions is changed, the LDWS may not operate correctly.

NOTE

- *If your vehicle deviates from its traffic lane, the LDWS operates (warning sound and indicator light). Steer the vehicle adequately to drive the vehicle to the centre of the lane.*
- *When the direction indicator lever is operated for a lane change, the LDWS warning is automatically cancelled. The LDWS warning becomes operable when the direction indicator lever is returned and the system detects the white or yellow lines.*
- *If the steering wheel, accelerator pedal, or brake pedal is operated abruptly and the vehicle moves close to a white or yellow line, the system determines that the driver is making a lane change and the LDWS warning is automatically cancelled.*
- *The LDWS may not operate during the period immediately after the vehicle has deviated from its lane and the LDWS has operated, or the vehicle deviates from its lane repeatedly within a short period of time.*
- *The LDWS does not operate if it does not detect the white or yellow lines of the traffic lane.*

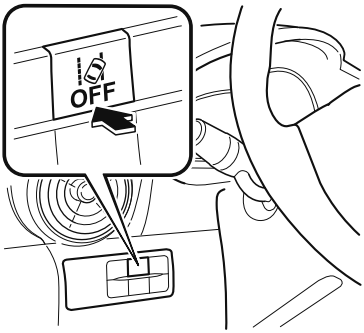
OwnersManuals2.com

- *Under the following conditions, the LDWS may not be able to detect white or yellow lines correctly and the LDWS may not operate correctly.*
  - *If an object placed on the instrument panel is reflected in the windscreen and picked up by the camera.*
  - *Heavy luggage is loaded in the luggage compartment or on the rear seat and the vehicle is inclined.*
  - *The tyre pressures are not adjusted to the specified pressure.*
  - *When the vehicle is driven on the entry and exit to or from the rest area or tollgate of a highway.*
  - *The white or yellow lines are less visible because of dirt or paint flaking.*
  - *The vehicle ahead is running near a white or yellow line and the line is less visible.*
  - *A white or yellow line is less visible because of bad weather (rain, fog, or snow).*
  - *The vehicle is driven on a temporary lane or section with a closed lane due to construction.*
  - *A misleading line is picked up on the road such as a temporary line for construction, or because of shade, lingering snow, or grooves filled with water.*
  - *The surrounding brightness suddenly changes such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.*
  - *The illumination of the headlights is weakened because of dirt or the optical axis is deviated.*
  - *The windscreen is dirty or foggy.*
  - *Back-light is reflecting from the road surface.*
  - *The road surface is wet and shiny after rain, or there are puddles on the road.*
  - *The shade of a guardrail parallel to a white or yellow line is on the road.*
  - *The width of a lane is excessively narrow or wide.*
  - *The road is excessively uneven.*
  - *The vehicle is shaken after hitting a road bump.*
  - *There are two or more adjacent white or yellow lines.*
  - *There are various road markings or lane markings of various shapes near an intersection.*

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ When The System Operates

1. The system goes on operation standby when the LDWS OFF switch is pressed and the LDWS OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster turns off.



2. Drive the vehicle in the centre of the driving lane while the LDWS OFF indicator light is turned off. The system becomes operational when all of the following conditions are met.

   · The vehicle is driven in the centre of the driving lane with the white or yellow lines on the left and right sides, or on either side.
   · The vehicle speed is about 70 km/h (44 mph) or faster.
   · The vehicle is driven on a straight road or road with gentle curves.

   The LDWS does not operate in the following cases:

   · The system cannot detect white or yellow lines.
   · The vehicle speed is less than about 65 km/h (40 mph).
   · The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
   · The vehicle is making a curve at an inadequate speed.

NOTE

- *The LDWS does not operate until the system detects a white or yellow line on either the left or right.*
- *When the system detects a white or yellow line on one side only, the system will activate the warning only when the vehicle deviates on the side where the white or yellow line is being detected.*
- *The distance and warning sensitivity (likelihood of a warning) which the system uses to determine the possibility of a lane departure can be changed. Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*

Auto cancel

In the following cases, the LDWS cancels automatically and the LDWS warning light in the instrument cluster turns on.

· The temperature inside the camera is high or low.
· The windscreen around the camera is foggy.
· The windscreen around the camera is blocked by an obstruction, causing poor forward visibility.

The LDWS is enabled automatically when the operation conditions are met, and the LDWS warning light turns off.

OwnersManuals2.com

Auto cancel warning

When the following operations are performed, the LDWS determines that the driver intends to make a lane change and the LDWS warning is cancelled automatically. The LDWS is enabled automatically after the driver performs the operation.

- The steering wheel is operated abruptly.
- The brake pedal is depressed abruptly.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed abruptly.
- The direction indicator lever is operated (after the direction indicator lever is returned, the LDWS may not operate for about 3 seconds which is the period of time required to make a lane correction).

NOTE

After about 60 seconds have elapsed with the direction indicator lever left operating, the LDWS warning may operate if the vehicle is close to a white or yellow line.

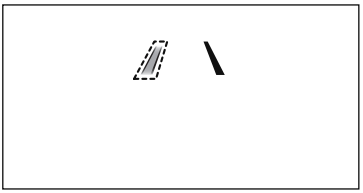
▼ Cancelling The System

Press the LDWS OFF switch to cancel the LDWS. The LDWS OFF indicator light turns on.



▼ Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Warning

If the system determines that there is the possibility of a lane departure, the LDWS warning beep activates and the LDWS warning light flashes. Operate the steering wheel appropriately and steer the vehicle to the centre of the lane.
For vehicles equipped with the active driving display, if there is the possibility of a lane departure, the system indicates the direction it determines that the vehicle is deviating in the active driving display.
Indication on display



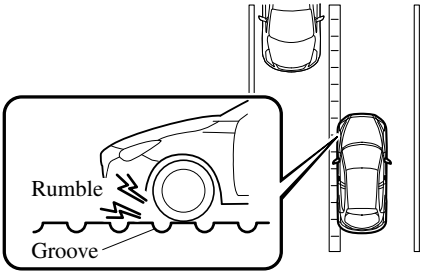
NOTE

- *If the LDWS warning sound is set to rumble*1, the sound will be heard from the vehicle speaker on the side which the system determined the vehicle may be deviating from its lane.*
- *It may be difficult to hear the LDWS warning beep depending on the surrounding conditions such as outside noise.*
- *The volume of the LDWS warning sound can be changed.*
  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- *The type of warning sound (rumble*1/ beep) on the LDWS can be changed.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

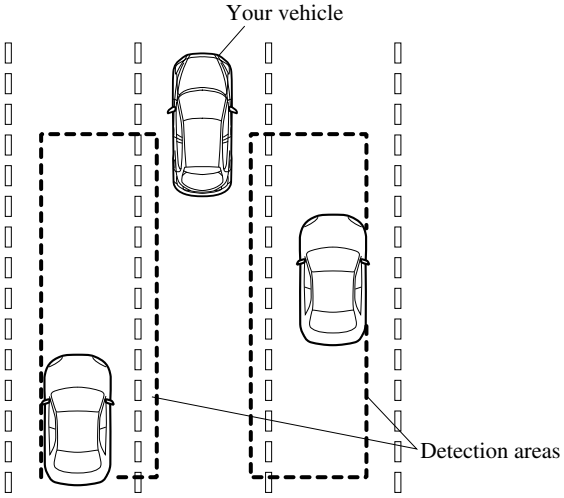
**1 A rumble strip is a series of grooves in the road pavement surface positioned at specific intervals, and when the vehicle passes over it a vibration and rumble sound is produced which alerts the driver that the vehicle is departing from the lane.*
The rumble sound is a reproduction of the sound which occurs when a vehicle passes over a rumble strip.



OwnersManuals2.com

Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)*

The BSM is designed to assist the driver in checking the area to the rear of the vehicle on both sides during lane changes by notifying the driver of the presence of vehicles approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane.
The BSM detects vehicles approaching from the rear while travelling in the forward direction at a speed of 30 km/h (19 mph) or faster and notifies the driver by turning on the BSM warning indicator light and displaying the vehicle detection screen (vehicles with active driving display).
If the direction indicator lever is operated to signal a turn in the direction in which the BSM warning indicator light is illuminated while the approaching vehicle is detected, the BSM notifies the driver of possible danger by turning on the BSM warning indicator light, and by activating the warning sound and the warning screen indicator display (vehicles with active driving display).
The detection area on this system covers the driving lanes on both sides of the vehicle and from the rear part of the front doors to about 50 m (164 ft) behind the vehicle.



⚠ WARNING

Always check the surrounding area visually before making an actual lane change:
The system is only designed to assist you in checking for vehicles at your rear when making a lane change. Due to certain limitations with the operation of this system, the BSM warning indicator light, the warning sound and the warning screen indicator display may not activate or they might be delayed even though a vehicle is in an adjacent driving lane. Always make it your responsibility as a driver to check the rear.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

· The BSM will operate when all of the following conditions are met:

· The ignition is switched ON.
· The BSM OFF switch is pressed and the BSM OFF switch indicator light is turned off.
· The vehicle speed is about 30 km/h (19 mph) or faster.

· The BSM will not operate under the following circumstances.

· The vehicle speed falls below about 25 km/h (15 mph) even though the BSM OFF switch indicator light is turned off.
· The shift lever (manual transaxle)/selector lever (automatic transaxle) is shifted to R position and the vehicle is reversing.
· The turning radius is small (making a sharp turn, turning at intersections).

· In the following cases, the BSM OFF indicator light turns on and operation of the system is stopped. If the BSM OFF indicator light remains illuminated, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.

· Some problem with the system including the BSM warning indicator lights is detected.
· A large deviation in the installation position of a radar sensor (rear) on the vehicle has occurred.
· There is a large accumulation of snow or ice on the rear bumper near a radar sensor (rear). Remove any snow, ice or mud on the rear bumper.
· Driving on snow-covered roads for long periods.
· The temperature near the radar sensors (rear) becomes extremely hot due to driving for long periods on slopes during the summer.
· The lead-acid battery voltage has decreased.

· Under the following conditions, the radar sensors (rear) cannot detect target objects or it may be difficult to detect them.

· A vehicle is in the detection area at the rear in an adjacent driving lane but it does not approach. The BSM determines the condition based on radar detection data.
· A vehicle is travelling alongside your vehicle at nearly the same speed for an extended period of time.
· Vehicles approaching in the opposite direction.
· A vehicle in an adjacent driving lane is attempting to pass your vehicle.
· A vehicle is in an adjacent lane on a road with extremely wide driving lanes. The detection area of the radar sensors (rear) is set at the road width of expressways.

· In the following case, the flashing of the BSM warning indicator light, and the activation of the warning sound and the warning screen indicator display may not occur or they may be delayed.

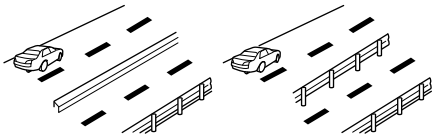
· A vehicle makes a lane change from a driving lane 2 lanes over to an adjacent lane.
· Driving on steep slopes.
· Crossing the summit of a hill or mountain pass.

OwnersManuals2.com

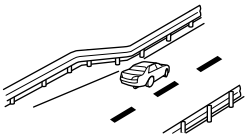
- *When there is a difference in the height between your driving lane and the adjacent lane.*
- *Directly after the BSM system becomes operable by changing the setting.*

- *If the road width is extremely narrow, vehicles 2 lanes over may be detected. The detection area of the radar sensors (rear) is set according to the road width of expressways.*
- *The BSM warning indicator light may turn on and the vehicle detection screen may be displayed in the display in reaction to stationary objects (guardrails, tunnels, sidewalls, and parked vehicles) on the road or the roadside.*

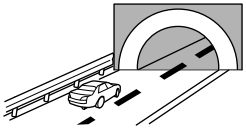
Objects such as guardrails and concrete walls running alongside the vehicle.

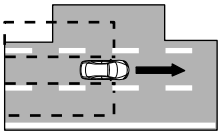


Places where the width between guardrails or walls on each side of the vehicle narrows.



The walls at the entrance and exits of tunnels, turnouts.





- *A BSM warning indicator light may flash or the warning beep and the warning screen indicator display may be activated several times when making a turn at a city intersection.*
- *Turn off the BSM while pulling a trailer or while an accessory such as a bicycle carrier is installed to the rear of the vehicle. Otherwise, the radar's radio waves will be blocked causing the system to not operate normally.*
- *In the following cases, it may be difficult to view the illumination/flashing of the BSM warning indicator lights equipped on the door mirrors.*
  - *Snow or ice is adhering to the door mirrors.*
  - *The front door glass is fogged or covered in snow, frost or dirt.*
- *The system switches to the Rear Cross Traffic Alert function when the shift lever (manual transaxle) or the selector lever (automatic transaxle) is shifted to the reverse (R) position. Refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) on page 4-125.*

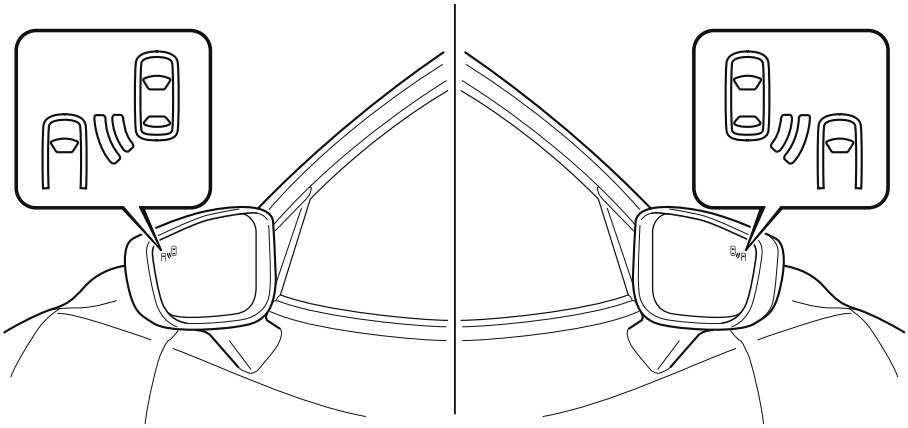
OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning Indicator Lights/Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning Beep

The BSM or Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system notifies the driver of the presence of vehicles in adjacent lanes or at the rear of the vehicle using the BSM warning indicator light, the warning sound and the display indicator (vehicles with active driving display) (BSM) while the systems are operational.

BSM warning indicator lights

The BSM warning indicator lights are equipped on the left and right door mirrors. The warning indicator lights turn on when a vehicle approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane is detected.



When the ignition is switched ON, the warning indicator light turns on momentarily and then turns off after a few seconds.

Forward driving (BSM operation)

The BSM detects vehicles approaching from the rear and turns on the BSM warning indicator lights equipped on the door mirrors according to the conditions. Additionally, while a BSM warning indicator light is illuminated, if the direction indicator lever is operated to signal a turn in the direction in which the BSM warning indicator light is illuminated, the BSM warning indicator light flashes.

Reverse driving (Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system operation)

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system detects vehicles approaching from the left and right of your vehicle and flashes the BSM warning indicator lights.

OwnersManuals2.com

Function for cancelling illumination dimmer

If the BSM warning indicator lights turn on when the position lights are turned on, the brightness of the BSM warning indicator lights is dimmed.
If the BSM warning indicator lights are difficult to see due to glare from surrounding brightness when travelling on snow-covered roads or under foggy conditions, press the dimmer cancellation button to cancel the dimmer and increase the brightness of BSM warning indicator lights when they turn on.
Refer to Instrument Panel Illumination on page 4-30.

Display indicator (Vehicles with active driving display)

The detected approaching vehicle and warning are displayed in the active driving display when the vehicle is moving forward (BSM operational).



The detected direction is displayed with a detection indicator (white) when an approaching vehicle is detected. In addition, if the direction indicator lever is operated to signal a lane change while the vehicle is detected, the display changes the colour (amber) of the warning indicator.

BSM warning beep

The BSM warning beep is activated simultaneously with the flashing of a BSM warning indicator light.

OwnersManuals2.com

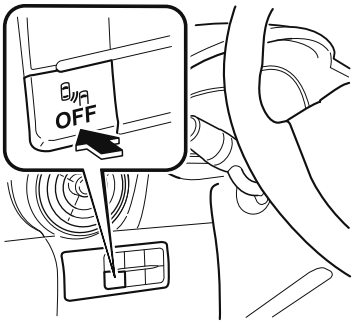
▼ Cancelling Operation of Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)

The BSM and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems are turned off and the BSM OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.



Vehicles with BSM OFF switch

When the BSM OFF switch is pressed, the BSM and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems are turned off and the BSM OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.



If the switch is pressed again, the BSM and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems become operable and the BSM OFF indicator light turns off.

NOTE

When the ignition is switched OFF, the system status before it was turned off is maintained. For example, if the ignition is switched OFF while the BSM and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems are operable, the BSM and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems remain operable the next time the ignition is switched ON.

Vehicles without BSM OFF switch

The BSM system can be set to inoperable. Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
When the BSM is set to inoperable, the BSM and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems are turned off and the BSM OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.

NOTE

When the ignition is switched OFF, the system status before it was turned off is maintained. For example, if the ignition is switched OFF while the BSM and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems are operational, the BSM and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems remain operational the next time the ignition is switched ON.

OwnersManuals2.com

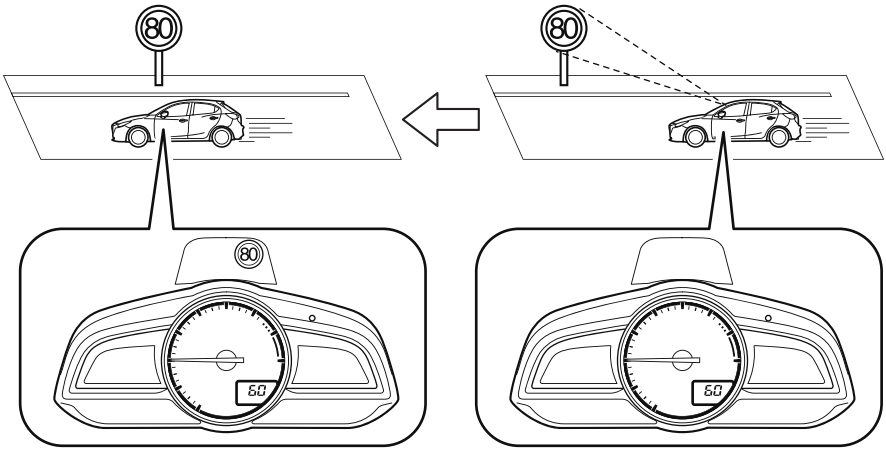
Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR)*

The TSR helps prevent the driver from overlooking traffic signs, and provides support for safer driving by displaying traffic signs on the active driving display which are recognised by the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) or recorded in the navigation system while the vehicle is driven.
The TSR displays the speed limit (including auxiliary signs), do not enter, and traffic stop signs.
If the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit sign indicated in the active driving display while the vehicle is driven, the system notifies the driver using the indication in the active driving display and a warning sound.

NOTE

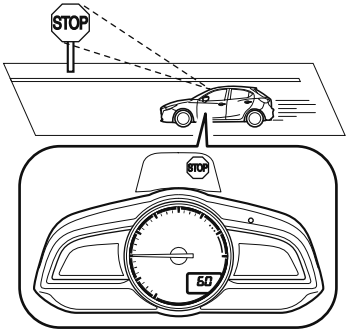
- *The TSR is not supported in some countries or regions. For information concerning the supported countries or regions, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *The TSR operates only if the navigation system SD card (Mazda genuine) is inserted in the SD card slot. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for details.*

Speed limit signs (including auxiliary signs) and do not enter signs



OwnersManuals2.com

Stop sign



⚠ WARNING

Always check the traffic signs visually while driving.

The TSR helps prevent the driver from overlooking traffic signs and provides support for safer driving. Depending on the weather conditions or problems with traffic signs, a traffic sign may not be recognised or a traffic sign different from the actual traffic sign may be displayed. Always make it your responsibility as a driver to check the actual traffic signs. Otherwise, it could result in an accident.

NOTE

- *The TSR does not operate if there is a malfunction in the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*
- *Under the following conditions, the TSR may not operate normally.*
  - *An object placed on the instrument panel is reflected in the windscreen and picked up by the camera.*
  - *Heavy luggage is loaded in the luggage compartment or on the rear seat and the vehicle is tilted.*
  - *The tyre pressures are not adjusted to the specified pressure.*
  - *Tyres other than standard tyres are equipped.*
  - *The vehicle is driven on the ramp and surrounding area to or from a rest area or a tollgate on a highway.*
  - *When surrounding brightness suddenly changes such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.*
  - *The illumination of the headlights is weakened because of dirt or the optical axis is deviated.*
  - *The windscreen is dirty or foggy.*
  - *The windscreen and camera are fogged (water droplets).*

OwnersManuals2.com

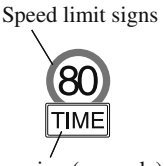
- *Strong light is directed at the front of the vehicle (such as backlight or high-beam headlights of on-coming vehicles).*
- *The vehicle is making a sharp turn.*
- *Strong light reflects off the road.*
- *A traffic sign is in a position which makes it difficult to reflect the light from the vehicle's headlights, such as when the vehicle is driven at night or in a tunnel.*
- *The vehicle is driven under weather conditions such as rain, fog, or snow.*
- *The stored map data for the navigation system is not current.*
- *A traffic sign is obscured by mud or snow.*
- *A traffic sign is concealed by trees or a vehicle.*
- *A traffic sign is partially shaded.*
- *A traffic sign is bent or warped.*
- *A traffic sign is too low or too high.*
- *A traffic sign is too bright or too dark (including electronic traffic signs).*
- *A traffic sign is too big or too small.*
- *There is an object similar to the traffic sign being read (such as another traffic sign or other signs resembling it).*

- *The TSR does not operate if the active driving display is set to non-display.*

▼ Traffic Sign Display Indication

The following traffic signs are displayed on the active driving display.

Speed limit signs (including auxiliary signs)



If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) cannot classify an auxiliary sign (such as time restrictions, turning restrictions, end of section) correctly, the following screen is displayed.



Inclement weather speed limit sign



Do not enter signs



Stop signs



NOTE

Speed limit signs (including auxiliary signs)

- *When the vehicle speed is about 1 km/h (0.6 mph) or faster, the speed limit sign is displayed when any one of the following conditions are met.*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) recognises a speed limit sign as a sign targeted for your vehicle and the vehicle passes it.*
- *The speed limit sign stored in the navigation system is read.*

- *Inclement weather speed limit signs are displayed when all of the following conditions are met.*
  - *The vehicle speed is about 1 km/h (0.6 mph) or more.*
  - *The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) recognises an inclement weather speed limit sign as a sign targeted for your vehicle and the vehicle passes it.*
  - *The inclement weather speed limit sign is lower than the currently displayed speed limit sign.*
  - *The windscreen wipers are operated.*
- *In the following cases, display of the speed limit sign stops.*
  - *The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) recognises a new speed limit sign which differs from the previous one (displays the new speed limit sign).*

Do not enter signs

- *A do not enter sign is displayed when all of the following conditions are met.*
  - *The vehicle speed is about 80 km/h (50 mph) or slower.*
  - *The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) recognises a do not enter sign as a sign targeted for your vehicle and the vehicle passes it.*
  - *A speed limit sign with an auxiliary sign is not recognised.*
- *When the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) recognises the do not enter sign and a certain period of time has elapsed since the vehicle passed the sign, display of the do not enter sign stops.*

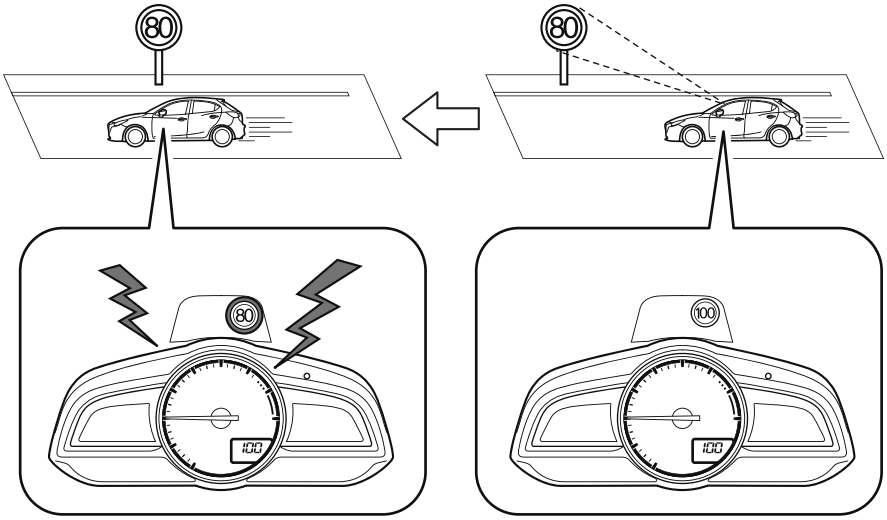
Stop sign

- *A stop sign is displayed when all of the following conditions are met:*
  - *The vehicle speed is about 30 km/h (19 mph) or slower.*
  - *The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) recognises a stop sign as a sign targeted for your vehicle.*
- *When a certain period of time has elapsed since the stop sign was displayed, display of the stop sign stops.*
- *A speed limit sign with an auxiliary sign is not recognised.*

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Excessive Speed Warning

If the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit sign displayed in the active driving display, the area around the speed limit sign flashes 10 times in amber and the warning sound is activated 3 times at the same time. If the vehicle speed continues to exceed the displayed speed limit sign, the indication stops flashing and remains on. Check the surrounding conditions and adjust the vehicle speed to the legal speed using the appropriate operation such as depressing the brake pedal.



The warning pattern and the warning activation timing differ depending on the setting contents.
Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Warning pattern

- Off: The excessive speed warning is not activated.
- Visual: The area around the speed limit sign displayed in the display flashes 10 times in amber, and if the vehicle speed continues to exceed the displayed speed limit sign, the indication stops flashing and remains on.
- Audio & Visual: The area around the speed limit sign displayed in the display flashes 10 times in amber and the warning sound is activated 3 times at the same time. If the vehicle speed continues to exceed the displayed speed limit sign, the indication stops flashing and remains on.

OwnersManuals2.com

Warning activation timing

- + 0: If the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit sign displayed in the display, the excessive speed warning is activated.
- + 5: If the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit sign displayed in the display by 5 km/h (3 mph), the excessive speed warning is activated.
- + 10: If the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit sign displayed in the display by 10 km/h (5 mph), the excessive speed warning is activated.

NOTE

- *In the following cases, the excessive speed warning stops operating.*
  - *The vehicle speed is less than the speed of the displayed speed limit sign. (If the activation timing for the excessive speed warning is changed in the personalisation features, the excessive speed warning stops operating when the vehicle speed is less than the changed vehicle speed.*
  - *A speed limit sign indication has been updated and the vehicle speed is lower than the updated indication.*
  - *Display of the speed limit sign stops.*
- *The warning indication is displayed at the same time the excessive speed warning sound is activated if the vehicle speed exceeds the speed indicated on the speed limit sign. Refer to Warning Sound is Activated on page 7-49.*
- *The TSR can recognise a speed limit sign with an auxiliary sign and display it, but it cannot determine the indication on the auxiliary sign (such as time restrictions, turning restrictions, end of section). Therefore, the excessive speed warning is activated when the vehicle speed exceeds the displayed speed limit sign even if the conditions indicated on the auxiliary sign do not apply to the vehicle.*
- *If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) incorrectly recognises the actual speed limit sign at a lower speed, the excessive speed alarm is activated even if the vehicle is driven at the legal speed.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS)*

The DRSS measures the distance between your vehicle and a vehicle ahead using a radar sensor (front) while the vehicle speed is about 30 km/h (19 mph) or faster, and if your vehicle approaches a vehicle ahead more closely than what is appropriate for maintaining distance between the vehicles according to the vehicle speed, a notification in the active driving display is indicated to advise you to keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

⚠ WARNING

Do not rely completely on the DRSS and always drive carefully:
The ability to detect a vehicle ahead is limited depending on the type of vehicle ahead, the weather conditions, and the traffic conditions. Therefore, if the accelerator and brake pedals are not operated correctly it could lead to an accident. Always verify the safety of the surrounding area and depress the brake pedal or accelerator pedal while keeping a safer distance from vehicles ahead or on-coming vehicles.

NOTE

- *The DRSS operates when all of the following conditions are met:*
  - *The ignition is switched ON.*
  - *The DRSS is on.*
  - *The selector lever is in a position other than reverse (R).*
  - *The vehicle speed is 30 km/h or faster (19 mph or faster).*
- *The objects which activate the system are 4-wheeled vehicles.*
- *The DRSS may also operate in the presence of motorcycles and bicycles.*
- *The DRSS may not operate normally under the following conditions:*
  - *The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) has a malfunction.*
  - *The vehicle ahead is travelling at an extremely slow speed.*
- *The system does not operate with the following objects:*
  - *Vehicles approaching in the opposite direction.*
  - *Stationary objects (stopped vehicles, obstructions)*

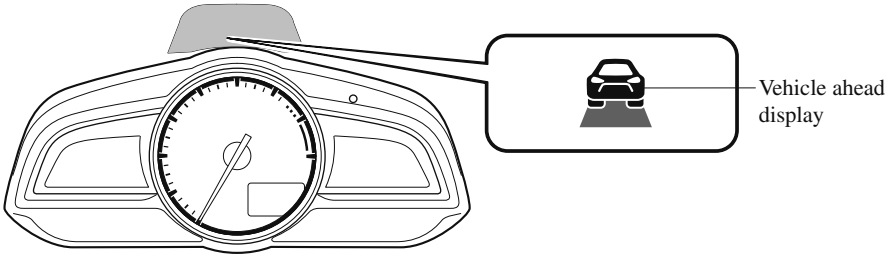
OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Indication on Display

The DRSS operation status is indicated in the active driving display. Regarding malfunctions, check the vehicle conditions or have it inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) according to the content of the displayed message.
Refer to Warning/Indicator Lights on page 4-39.

NOTE

- *When the ignition is switched off, the operation status before the system was turned off is maintained. For example, if the ignition is switched off with the DRSS operable, the system will be operable when the ignition is switched ON the next time.*
- *The DRSS can be turned on/off and the system's sensitivity can be changed. Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*



Distance-between-vehicles guide lines*1

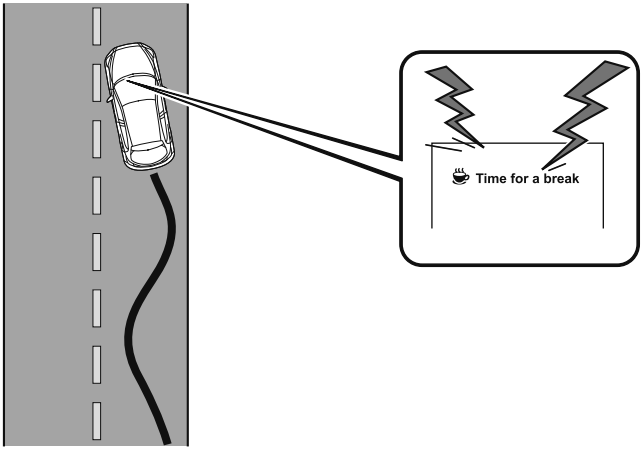
Display	Distance between vehicles guide lines (During travel at about 40 km/h (25 mph)	Distance between vehicles guide lines (During travel at about 80 km/h (50 mph)
Illuminated in amber	About 10 m (32 ft) or less	About 20 m (65 ft) or less

*1 The distance between vehicles differs depending on vehicle speed.

OwnersManuals2.com

Driver Attention Alert (DAA)*

The DAA is a system which detects driver fatigue and decreased attentiveness, and encourages the driver to take a rest.
When the vehicle is driven inside traffic lane lines at about 65 to 140 km/h (40 to 87 mph), the DAA estimates the amount of accumulated fatigue and decreased attentiveness of the driver based on the information from the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) and other vehicle information, and encourages the driver to take a rest using an indication on the active driving display and a warning sound.
Use the DAA on expressways or highways.
Refer to Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) on page 4-204.



⚠ WARNING

Do not rely completely on DAA and always drive carefully:
The DAA detects driver fatigue and decreased attentiveness and encourages the driver to take a rest, however, it is not designed to prevent the vehicle from straying. If you rely too much on the DAA it could lead to an accident. Drive carefully and operate the steering wheel appropriately.
In addition, the system may not be able to detect driver fatigue and decreased attentiveness correctly depending on the traffic and driving conditions. The driver must take sufficient rest in consideration of safer driving.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

· The DAA operates when all of the following conditions are met.

· The vehicle speed is about 65 to 140 km/h (40 to 87 mph).
· The system detects white (yellow) lane lines.
· The system has completed learning of the driver's driving data.

· The DAA does not operate under the following conditions.

· The vehicle speed is less than about 65 km/h (40 mph).
· The vehicle speed exceeds about 140 km/h (87 mph)
· The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
· The vehicle is changing lanes.
· The system cannot detect white (yellow) lane lines.

· The DAA may not operate normally under the following conditions.

· White (yellow) lane lines are less visible because of dirt or fading/patchiness.
· The vehicle is jolted or swayed continuously by strong winds or rough roads.
· The vehicle is driven aggressively.
· When making frequent lane changes.

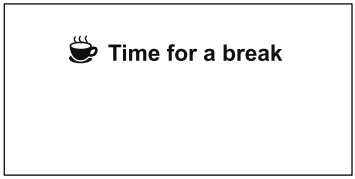
· The DAA detects driver fatigue and decreased attentiveness based on the driving data when the vehicle is driven at about 65 to 140 km/h (40 to 87 mph) for about 20 minutes. The driving data will be reset under the following conditions.

· The vehicle is stopped for 15 minutes or longer.
· The vehicle is driven at less than about 65 km/h (40 mph) for about 30 minutes.
· The ignition is switched off.

· After the DAA has displayed the first message encouraging rest, it does not display the next one until 45 minutes have passed.

▼ Driver Attention Alert (DAA) Display (White)

When the system detects driver fatigue or decreased attentiveness, it activates the warning sound and displays an alert in the active driving display.



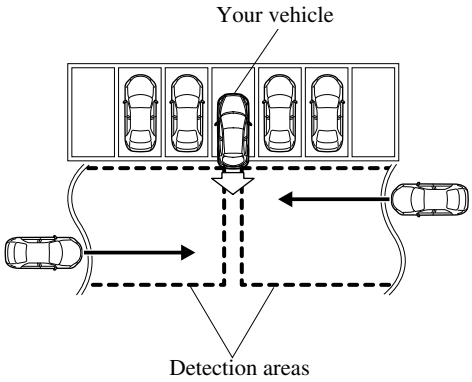
▼ Cancelling Driver Attention Alert (DAA)

The DAA can be set to not activate. Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

OwnersManuals2.com

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)*

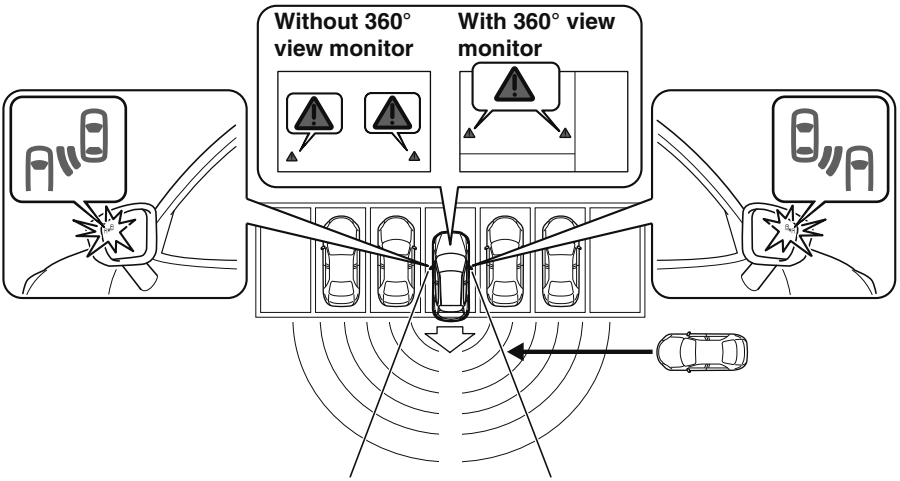
The RCTA system is designed to assist the driver in checking the area to the rear of the vehicle on both sides while the vehicle is reversing by alerting the driver to the presence of vehicles approaching the rear of the vehicle.
The RCTA system detects vehicles approaching from the left and right sides of the vehicle while the vehicle is being reversed out of a parking space, and notifies the driver of possible danger using the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator lights and the warning buzzer.



OwnersManuals2.com

RCTA operation

1. The RCTA system operates when the shift lever (manual transaxle) or the selector lever (automatic transaxle) is shifted to the reverse (R) position.
2. If there is the possibility of a collision with an approaching vehicle, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator lights flashes and the warning beep is activated simultaneously.
   (With rear view monitor)
   The RCTA warning indication in the rearview monitor also synchronizes with the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator light on the door mirrors.
   (With 360° view monitor)
   The RCTA warning indication in the 360° view monitor also synchronizes with the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator light on the door mirrors.



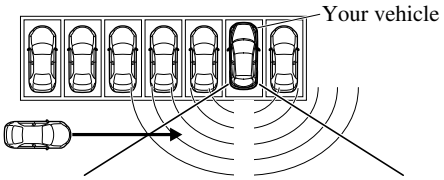
⚠ WARNING

Always check the surrounding area visually before actually putting the vehicle in reverse:
The system is only designed to assist you in checking for vehicles at the rear when putting the vehicle in reverse. Due to certain limitations with the operation of this system, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator lights may not flash or it might be delayed even though a vehicle is behind your vehicle. Always make it your responsibility as a driver to check the rear.

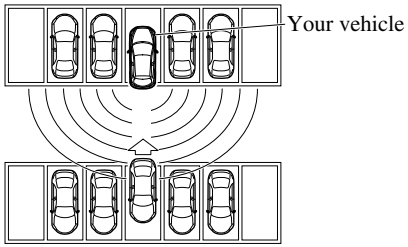
OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

- *In the following cases, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indication/warning light turns on and operation of the system is stopped. If the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indication/warning light remains illuminated, have the vehicle inspected at an Authorised Mazda Dealer as soon as possible.*
  - *Some problem with the system including the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator lights has occurred.*
  - *A large deviation in the installation position of a radar sensor (rear) on the vehicle has occurred.*
  - *There is a large accumulation of snow or ice on the rear bumper near a radar sensor (rear).*
  - *Driving on snow-covered roads for long periods.*
  - *The temperature near the radar sensors becomes extremely hot due to driving for long periods on slopes during the summer.*
  - *The battery voltage has decreased.*
- *Under the following conditions, the radar sensors (rear) cannot detect target objects or it may be difficult to detect them.*
  - *The vehicle speed when reversing is about 10 km/h (6 mph) or faster.*
  - *The radar sensor (rear) detection area is obstructed by a nearby wall or parked vehicle. (Reverse the vehicle to a position where the radar sensor detection area is no longer obstructed.)*

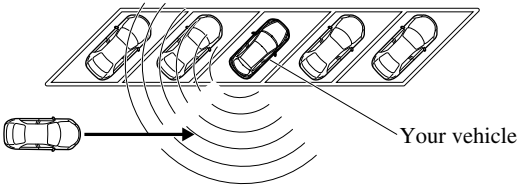


  - *A vehicle is approaching directly from the rear of your vehicle.*



OwnersManuals2.com

・The vehicle is parked at an angle.



*・**(With Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF switch)***
Directly after pressing the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF switch and the system becomes operable.
(Without Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF switch)
Directly after the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) system becomes operable using the personalisation feature.

・In the following cases, it may be difficult to view the illumination/flashing of the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator lights equipped on the door mirrors.

・Snow or ice adheres to the door mirrors.
・The front door glass is fogged or covered in snow, frost or dirt.

・Turn off the RCTA system while pulling a trailer or while an accessory such as a bicycle carrier is installed to the rear of the vehicle. Otherwise, the radio waves emitted by the radar will be blocked causing the system to not operate normally.

OwnersManuals2.com

Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)*

The MRCC system is designed to maintain headway control*1 according to the vehicle speed using a radar sensor (front) to detect the distance to a vehicle ahead, which frees the driver from having to constantly use the accelerator or brake pedals.

*1 Headway Control: Control of the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead detected by the MRCC system.

Additionally, if your vehicle starts closing in on the vehicle ahead because, for example, the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, a warning sound and a warning indication in the display are activated simultaneously to alert you to maintain a sufficient distance between the vehicles.
The possible vehicle speed setting ranges are as follows:

- **(European models)**
  About 30 km/h (19 mph) to 200 km/h (124 mph)
- **(Except European models)**
  About 30 km/h (19 mph) to 145 km/h (90 mph)

Use the MRCC system on expressways and other highways which do not require a lot of repeated acceleration and deceleration.

⚠ WARNING

Do not rely completely on the MRCC system and always drive carefully:
The MRCC system is designed to reduce load on the driver, and although it maintains a constant vehicle speed, or specifically, it maintains a constant distance between your vehicle and the detected vehicle ahead according to the vehicle speed, the system has detection limitations depending on the type of vehicle ahead and its conditions, the weather conditions, and the road conditions. Additionally, the system may be unable to decelerate sufficiently to avoid hitting the vehicle ahead if the vehicle ahead applies the brakes suddenly or another vehicle cuts into the driving lane, which could result in an accident. Always verify the safety of the surrounding area and depress the brake pedal or accelerator pedal while keeping a safer distance from vehicles ahead or on-coming vehicles.

Do not use the MRCC system in the following locations. Otherwise, it could lead to an accident:

- *Roads with sharp curves and where vehicle traffic is heavy and there is insufficient space between vehicles. Roads where frequent and repetitive acceleration and deceleration occur (Driving under these conditions using the MRCC system is not possible).*
- *When entering and exiting interchanges, service areas, and parking areas of highways (If you exit a highway while headway control is in use, the vehicle ahead will no longer be tracked and your vehicle may accelerate to the set speed).*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *Slippery roads such as ice or snow-bound roads (The tyres could spin causing you to lose vehicle control).*
- *Long descending slopes (to maintain distance between vehicles, the system automatically and continuously applies the brakes which could result in the loss of brake power).*

For the purposes of safety, switch the MRCC system off when it is not being used.

⚠ CAUTION

If the vehicle is towed or you are towing something, switch the MRCC system off to prevent an incorrect operation.

NOTE

- *The MRCC system operates when all of the following conditions are met.*
  - *The vehicle speed is as follows:*
    - ***(European models)***
      About 30 km/h (19 mph) to 200 km/h (124 mph)
    - ***(Except European models)***
      About 30 km/h (19 mph) to 145 km/h (90 mph)
  - *The MRCC system is turned on.*
  - *The parking brake is not applied.*
  - *The Smart Brake Support (SBS) is not malfunctioning.*
  - *The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is operating normally.*
  - *All doors are closed.*
  - *The driver's seat belt is fastened.*

(Manual transaxle)

  - *The shift lever is in a position other than reverse (R) or neutral (N).*
  - *The clutch pedal is not depressed.*

(Automatic transaxle)

  - *The selector lever is in the drive (D) position or manual (M) position (manual mode).*
- *In the following cases, the warnings may not activate even if your vehicle starts closing in on the vehicle ahead.*
  - *You are driving at the same speed as the vehicle ahead.*
  - *Directly after the MRCC system has been set.*
  - *When the accelerator pedal is depressed or directly after the accelerator pedal is released.*
  - *Another vehicle cuts into the driving lane.*

OwnersManuals2.com

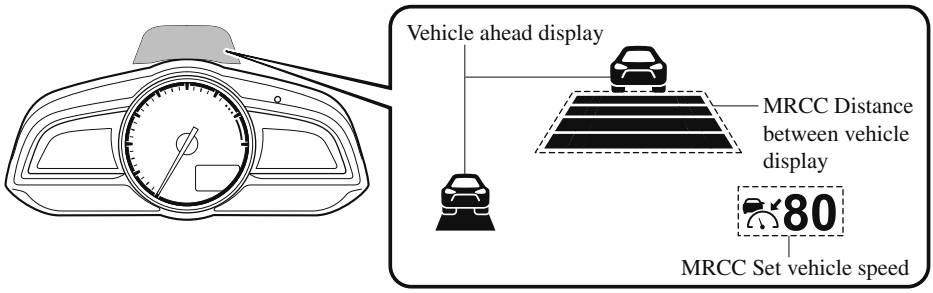
・The following are not detected as physical objects.

・Vehicles approaching in the opposite direction
・Pedestrians
・Stationary objects (stopped vehicles, obstructions)

・If a vehicle ahead is travelling at an extremely low speed, the system may not detect it correctly.
・During headway control travel, do not set the system on two-wheeled vehicles such as motorcycles and bicycles.
・Do not use the MRCC system under conditions in which the close proximity warnings are frequently activated.
・During headway control travel, the system accelerates and decelerates your vehicle in conjunction with the speed of the vehicle ahead. However, if it is necessary to accelerate for a lane change or if the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly causing you to close in on the vehicle rapidly, accelerate using the accelerator pedal or decelerate using the brake pedal depending on the conditions.
・While the MRCC system is in use, it does not cancel even if the selector lever (automatic transaxle)/shift lever (manual transaxle) is operated and any intended engine braking will not occur. If deceleration is required, lower the vehicle speed setting or depress the brake pedal.
・The brake lights are illuminated while the MRCC automatic braking is operating, however, they may not be illuminated while the vehicle is on a down slope at the set vehicle speed or travelling at a constant speed and following a vehicle ahead.
・The MRCC warning light (amber) illuminates when the system has a malfunction.
Refer to Warning Lights on page 4-40.
・The headway control operation can be cancelled and the system can be switched to only cruise control.
Refer to Cruise Control Function on page 4-138.

▼ Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) Display Indication

The setting status and operation conditions of the MRCC system are indicated in the active driving display.



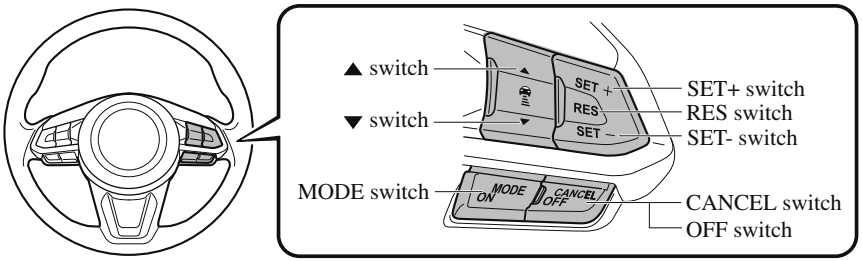
OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Close Proximity Warning

If your vehicle rapidly closes in on the vehicle ahead because the vehicle applies the brakes suddenly while you are travelling in headway control, the warning sound activates and the brake warning is indicated in the display. Always verify the safety of the surrounding area and depress the brake pedal while keeping a safer distance from the vehicle ahead. Additionally, always keep a safer distance from the vehicles behind you.



▼ Setting the System



When the MODE switch is pressed, the MRCC main indication (white) turns on and the vehicle speed and the distance between vehicles while in headway control can be set.

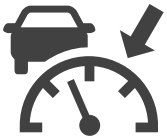
NOTE

- *When the ignition is switched to ACC or OFF while the MRCC is ON, the MRCC remains ON automatically.*
- *When the MODE switch is pressed while the MRCC system is turned on, the system switches to the cruise control function.*

OwnersManuals2.com

How to Set the Speed

1. Adjust the vehicle speed to the desired setting using the accelerator pedal.
2. Headway control begins when the SET+ or SET− switch is pressed. The set speed and the inter-vehicle distance display filled with white lines are displayed. The MRCC set indication (green) is indicated simultaneously.



Travel status	Display
During travel at constant speed	80
During travel under headway control	80

NOTE

- *If a vehicle ahead is detected while travelling at a constant speed, the vehicle-ahead indication is displayed and headway control is performed. Additionally, when a vehicle ahead is no longer detected, the vehicle-ahead indication turns off and the system switches back to travel at constant speed.*
- *Headway control is not possible if the vehicle ahead is driving faster than the set speed. Adjust the system to the desired vehicle speed using the accelerator pedal.*
- ***(European models)***
  When switching to a passing lane and operating the direction indicator, the system provides more acceleration automatically if it determines that more acceleration is required. Drive while being careful of the road ahead because you could approach the vehicle ahead too closely.

OwnersManuals2.com

How to Set the Distance Between Vehicles During Headway Control

The distance between vehicles is set to a shorter distance each time the ▼ switch is pressed. The distance between vehicles is set to a longer distance by pressing the ▲ switch. The distance-between-vehicles can be set to 4 levels; Long, medium, short, and extremely short distance.

Distance-between-vehicles guideline (at 80 km/h (50 mph) vehicle speed)	Display
Long (about 50 m (164 ft))	
Medium (about 40 m (131 ft))	
Short (about 30 m (98 ft))	
Extremely short (about 25 m (82 ft))	

NOTE

- *The distance between vehicles differs depending on the vehicle speed, and the slower the vehicle speed, the shorter the distance.*
- *When the ignition is switched to ACC or OFF and then the engine is started again, the system automatically sets the distance between vehicles to the previous setting.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Changing the Set Vehicle Speed

Changing the set vehicle speed using the SET switch

Press the SET+ switch to accelerate.
Press the SET− switch to decelerate.
The set vehicle speed changes as follows each time the SET switch is pressed.

	European models	Except European models
Short press	1 km/h (1 mph)	5 km/h (5 mph)
Long press	10 km/h (5 mph)	

NOTE
For example, the set vehicle speed is changed by pressing the SET switch four times as follows:
(European models)
The vehicle speed accelerates or decelerates by 4 km/h (4 mph).
(Except European models)
The vehicle speed accelerates or decelerates by 20 km/h (20 mph).

To accelerate using the accelerator pedal

Depress the accelerator pedal and press and release the SET+ or SET− switch at the desired speed. If a switch cannot be operated, the system returns to the set speed when you release your foot from the accelerator pedal.

⚠ CAUTION

The warnings and brake control do not operate while the accelerator pedal is depressed.

NOTE

- *When accelerating using the SET+ switch while in headway control, the set vehicle speed can be adjusted but acceleration is not possible. If there is no longer a vehicle ahead, acceleration continues until reaching the set vehicle speed. Check the set vehicle speed by viewing the set vehicle speed display in the active driving display.*
- *While depressing the accelerator pedal, the colour of the MRCC indication changes from green to white.*
- *The minimum settable speed is 30 km/h (19 mph). If the set vehicle speed reaches 30 km/h (19 mph) using the switch operation, constant speed travel is maintained at about 30 km/h (19 mph) even if the SET− switch is pressed. The MRCC system is not cancelled.*

To Deactivate

The MRCC is deactivated when the CANCEL switch is pressed twice.

OwnersManuals2.com

When the system is temporarily cancelled

In the following cases, the MRCC is temporarily cancelled, the MRCC set indication (green) is turned off, and the MRCC main indication (white) is turned on.

- The CANCEL switch is pressed once.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The parking brake is applied.
- **(Automatic transaxle)**
  The selector lever is shifted to park (P), neutral (N) or reverse (R).
- **(Manual transaxle)**
  The shift lever is in the reverse (R) position.
- In the following cases, the “MRCC cancelled” indication is displayed and the beep sounds one time.
  - The vehicle speed decreases to less than 25 km (16 mph).
  - The DSC has operated.
  - The TCS has operated for a certain period of time.
  - The Smart City Brake Support [Forward] (SCBS F) or Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) has operated.
  - The Smart Brake Support (SBS) has operated.
  - When travelling on a down slope for a long period of time.
  - There is a problem with the system.
  - Any door is opened.
  - The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
  - **(Manual transaxle)**
    - The shift lever is shifted to neutral (N) for a certain period of time.
    - The clutch is depressed for a certain period of time.
    - The engine stalls.

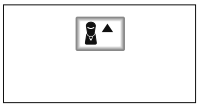
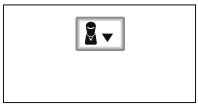
NOTE

- *The MRCC system may be cancelled during rain, fog, snow or other inclement weather conditions, or the front surface of the radiator grille is dirty.*
- *If you have temporarily cancelled the MRCC, you can return to your previously set speed by pressing the RES switch and after all of the operation conditions have been met.*
- *If the MRCC system is deactivated, the system does not return to the previously set speed even if the RES switch is pressed.*

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Shift-up/Shift-down Request Display (Manual Transaxle)

The shift-up or shift-down request display in the active driving display may be indicated while the MRCC is operating. When this occurs, shift gears because the gear position is not appropriate.

Request	Display
Shift up	
Shift down	

NOTE

If the gears are not shifted up even though the shift-up request indication is displayed, load will be applied to the engine and the MRCC system may be automatically cancelled or engine damage could occur.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Cruise Control Function

While this function is operating, the headway control operation is cancelled and only the cruise control function operates.
The vehicle speed can be set more than about 25 km/h (16 mph).
Use the cruise control function on expressways and other highways which do not require a lot of repeated acceleration and deceleration.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the cruise control function in the following locations:
Otherwise, it could lead to an accident.

- *Roads with sharp curves and where vehicle traffic is heavy and there is insufficient space between vehicles. (Driving under these conditions using the cruise control function is not possible)*
- *Steep down slopes (Set speed may be exceeded because sufficient engine braking cannot be applied)*
- *Slippery roads such as ice or snow-bound roads (Tyres could spin causing you to lose vehicle control)*

Always drive carefully:
The warnings and brake control will not operate after the headway control function is cancelled and the system is switched to only the cruise control function. Depress the brake pedal to decelerate according to the surrounding conditions while keeping a safer distance from the vehicle ahead and always driving carefully.

Switching to cruise control function

When the MODE switch is pressed until the system switches to the cruise main indication (white) while the MRCC system is turned on, the system switches to the cruise control function.
When the system switches to the cruise control function, the cruise main indication (white) is displayed in the instrument cluster and the active driving display to notify the driver as follows:

- The MRCC set indication (green) or the MRCC main indication (white) is turned off, and the cruise main indication (white) is turned on.

⚠ WARNING

Always turn off the cruise control function when it is not in use:
Leaving the cruise control function turned on when it is not in use is dangerous as it could operate unexpectedly, resulting in an accident.

How to set the speed

Adjust the system to the desired vehicle speed using the accelerator pedal.
When the SET+ or SET− switch is pressed, the cruise set indication (green) is turned on and headway control begins.

NOTE

- *The system may not be able to maintain the set speed constantly depending on driving conditions such as steep up or down slopes.*

OwnersManuals2.com

· *The speed will continue increasing while the SET+ switch is pressed and held. The speed will continue decreasing while the SET− switch is pressed and held.*

How to increase the set speed

The set speed can be increased using the following operations:

To increase speed using the SET+ switch

Press and hold the SET+ switch and release the switch at the desired speed. The set speed can be adjusted incrementally (1 km/h (1 mph) increments) by pressing the switch and releasing it immediately. For example, if the switch is pressed 4 times, the set speed increases by about 4 km/h (4 mph).

To increase speed using accelerator pedal

Depress the accelerator pedal and press the SET+ or SET− switch at the desired speed.
If the switch is not operated, the system returns to the set speed after you release your foot from the accelerator pedal.

How to Decrease the Set Speed

Press the SET− switch continuously and release the switch at the desired speed. The set speed can be adjusted incrementally (1 km/h (1 mph) increments) by pressing the switch and releasing it immediately. For example, if the switch is pressed 4 times, the set vehicle speed decreases by about 4 km/h (4 mph).

Cancelling the function

When the cruise control function is cancelled and the RES switch is pressed while the vehicle speed is 25 km/h (16 mph) or faster, the speed returns to the original set speed.

Cancelling using OFF/CANCEL switch

When the OFF/CANCEL switch is pressed once, the cruise control function is cancelled.

Automatically cancel

The cruise control function is cancelled automatically in the following cases.

· The brake pedal is depressed.
· The parking brake is applied.

(Manual transaxle)

· The clutch pedal is depressed.
· The shift lever is shifted to neutral position.

(Automatic transaxle)

· The selector lever is shifted to P or N position.

NOTE

· *If the vehicle speed decreases by about 15 km/h (9.4 mph) or more than the set speed, the cruise control function may be cancelled.*
· *When the vehicle speed is less than 21 km/h (13 mph), the cruise control function is cancelled. In this case, the vehicle speed will not return to the original set speed even if the vehicle is accelerated to 25 km/h (16 mph) or faster and the RES switch is pressed. Reset the cruise control function.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)*

The LAS & LDWS alerts the driver that the vehicle may be deviating from its lane and it provides steering assistance to help the driver stay within the vehicle lanes.
The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) detects the white lines (yellow lines) of the vehicle lane in which the vehicle is travelling and if the system determines that the vehicle may deviate from its lane, it operates the electric power steering to assist the driver's steering operation. The system also alerts the driver by activating a lane departure warning sound, vibrating the steering wheel, and indicating an alert in the display. Use the system when you drive the vehicle on roads with white (yellow) lines such as expressways and highways.
Refer to Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) on page 4-204.

The steering wheel operation of the LAS & LDWS has “Late” and “Early” steering assist timing settings.
For the “Late” setting, the system assists the driver's steering operation if there is the possibility of the vehicle deviating from its lane.
For the “Early” setting, the system assists the driver's steering operation constantly so that the vehicle stays near the centre of the vehicle lane.

Vehicles without Mazda Connect

Operates only under the “Late” condition.
“Late” and “Early” cannot be switched (timing at which steering operation assist is provided).

Vehicles with Mazda Connect

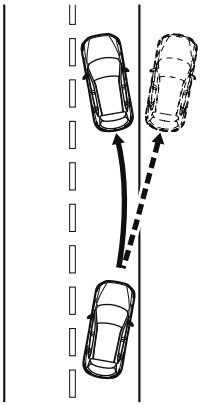
“Late” and “Early” timing can be changed (timing at which steering operation assist is provided) by changing the setting.
Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

 *Some models.

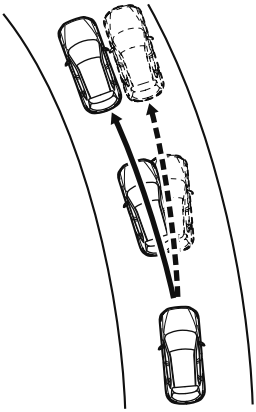
OwnersManuals2.com

The LDWS specification differs depending on whether the LAS is equipped or not. If your vehicle is not equipped with the LAS, refer to the Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) on page 4-103.

"Late" function



"Early" function



⚠ WARNING

Do not rely completely on the LAS & LDWS:

- *The LAS & LDWS is not an automatic driving system. In addition, the system is not designed to compensate for a driver's lack of caution, and over-reliance on the system could lead to an accident.*
- *The detection ability of the LAS & LDWS is limited. Always stay on course using the steering wheel and drive with care.*

Do not use the LAS & LDWS in the following cases:

The system may not operate adequately according to the actual driving conditions, resulting in an accident.

- *Driving on roads with tight curves.*
- *Driving under bad weather conditions (rain, fog, and snow).*
- *Slippery roads such as ice or snow-bound roads.*
- *Roads with heavy traffic and insufficient distance between vehicles.*
- *Roads with no white (yellow) lane lines.*
- *Narrow roads resulting from road construction or lane closures.*
- *The vehicle is driven on a temporary lane or section with a closed lane resulting from road construction where there may be multiple white (yellow) lane lines or they are interrupted.*
- *Vehicle is driven on roads other than expressways and highways.*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *The tyre pressures are not adjusted to the specified pressure.*
- *The vehicle is being used to tow a camper or boat trailer.*
- *Tyres of a different specified size are used, such as an emergency spare tyre.*

⚠ CAUTION

Heed the following cautions so that the LAS & LDWS can operate normally.

- *Do not modify the suspensions.*
- *Always use wheels of the specified type and size for the front and rear wheels. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for tyre replacement.*

NOTE

- *When the direction indicator lever is operated for a lane change, the LAS & LDWS is automatically disabled. The LAS & LDWS becomes operational again when the direction indicator lever is returned and the system detects white (yellow) lane lines while the vehicle is being driven normally within its vehicle lane.*
- *If the steering wheel, accelerator pedal, or brake pedal is operated abruptly and the vehicle moves close to a white (yellow) line, the system determines that the driver is making a lane change and the LAS & LDWS operation is temporarily cancelled. The LAS & LDWS becomes operational again when the system detects white (yellow) lane lines while the vehicle is being driven normally within its vehicle lane.*
- *If the vehicle deviates from its lane repeatedly within a short period of time, the LAS & LDWS may not operate.*
- *When white (yellow) lane lines are not detected, the LAS & LDWS does not operate.*
- *Under the following conditions, the LAS & LDWS may not be able to detect white (yellow) lane lines correctly and it may not operate normally.*
  - *If an object placed on the instrument panel is reflected in the windscreen and picked up by the camera.*
  - *Heavy luggage is loaded in the luggage compartment or on the rear seat and the vehicle is tilted.*
  - *The tyre pressures are not adjusted to the specified pressure.*
  - *Tyres other than conventional tyres are equipped.*
  - *Vehicle is driven on an intersection or junction, or on a forked road.*
  - *The white (yellow) lane lines are less visible because of dirt or fading/patchiness.*
  - *A vehicle in front of your vehicle is running near a white (yellow) lane line making it less visible.*
  - *A white (yellow) lane line is less visible because of bad weather (rain, fog, or snow).*
  - *The vehicle is driven on a temporary lane or section with a closed lane resulting from construction where there may be multiple white (yellow) lane lines or they are interrupted.*

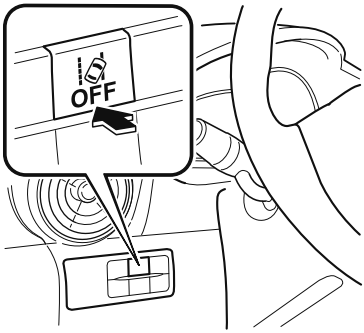
OwnersManuals2.com

- *A misleading line is picked up on the road such as a temporary line for construction, or because of shade, lingering snow, or grooves filled with water.*
- *The surrounding brightness suddenly changes such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.*
- *The illumination of the headlights is weakened because of dirt or the optical axis is deviated.*
- *The windscreen is dirty or foggy.*
- *The windscreen, camera is fogged (water droplets).*
- *Back-light is reflected off the road surface.*
- *The road surface is wet and shiny after rain, or there are puddles on the road.*
- *The shade of a guardrail parallel to a white (yellow) lane line is cast on the road.*
- *The width of the driving lane is narrow or wide.*
- *Driving on roads with tight curves.*
- *The road is excessively uneven.*
- *The vehicle is shaken after hitting a road bump.*
- *There are 2 or more adjacent white (yellow) lane lines.*
- *There are various road markings or lane markings of various shapes near an intersection.*

▼ System Operation

If the LAS&LDWS OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster turns off when the ignition is switched ON, the system goes on standby.

If the LAS&LDWS OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on when the ignition is switched ON, press the LAS&LDWS OFF switch so that the system goes on standby.



Drive the vehicle in the centre of the vehicle lane while the system is on standby. The system becomes operational when all of the following conditions are met.

- The engine is running.
- The vehicle speed is about 60 km/h (37 mph) or faster.

OwnersManuals2.com

- The system detects white (yellow) lane lines. (When the timing of the steering assist is set to “Late”)
- The system detects white (yellow) lane lines on both the right and left sides. (When the timing of the steering assist is set to “Early”)
- The driving lane is neither narrow nor wide.

The LAS&LDWS goes on stand-by status in the following cases:

- The system cannot detect white (yellow) lane lines.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The ABS/TCS/DSC is operating.
- The DSC is turned off.
  (If the DSC is turned off while the system is operational, a warning beep is heard and the system goes on standby.)
- The vehicle is making a sharp curve.
- The steering wheel is operated abruptly.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The width of a lane is excessively narrow or wide.

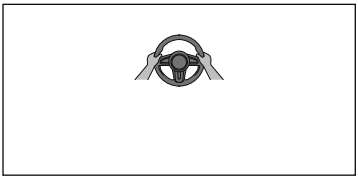
NOTE

- ***(When the timing of the steering assist is set to “Late”)***
  - *The LAS&LDWS does not operate until the system detects white (yellow) lane lines on either the left or right.*
  - *When the system detects a white (yellow) lane line on one side only, the system will not activate warnings for the lane line on the side that is not being detected. The warning is only for a lane deviation on the side that is being detected.*
- ***(When the timing of the steering assist is set to “Early”)***
  - *When the steering assist timing is set to “Early”, the LAS&LDWS does not operate until the system detects white (yellow) lane lines on the left and right.*
  - *The steering wheel operation assist is performed so that the vehicle remains near the centre of the driving lane, however, depending on conditions such as the road curvature, road slope and undulations, and vehicle speed, the system may not be able to keep the vehicle near the centre of the driving lane.*

OwnersManuals2.com

・*If you take your hands off the steering wheel (not holding the steering wheel), the warning sound is activated and an alert is indicated in the active driving display or the warning light turns on in the instrument cluster.*

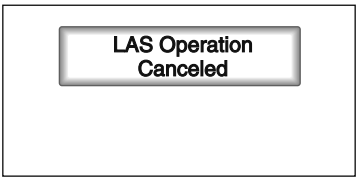
Active Driving Display



Instrument Cluster



If the condition in which your hands are off the steering wheel continues for a certain period of time after the warning sound is activated, the LAS operation stops automatically and a message is indicated on the active driving display.



If the steering wheel is held lightly, or depending on the road conditions, the system may detect that you have released the steering wheel (not holding the steering wheel) even if you are holding it, and display a message in the active driving display.

・*The timing at which the lane departure warning is activated and the steering wheel operation assist is performed varies.*

・*The following settings for the LAS&LDWS can be changed.*
Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

- *Steering operation assist operational/non-operational*
- *Cancel sensitivity (likelihood of steering assist)*

Vehicle lane line display

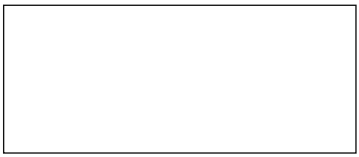
When the LAS&LDWS detects white (yellow) lines on both the left and right sides and becomes operational, the active driving display and the instrument cluster display as follows.

OwnersManuals2.com

(Stand-by status)
When the timing of the steering assist is set to “Late”

Active Driving Display	Instrument Cluster
	Indicator light OFF

When the timing of the steering assist is set to “Early”

Active Driving Display	Instrument Cluster
	

Auto cancel

In the following cases, the LAS&LDWS is automatically cancelled and the vehicle lane lines (stand-by) are indicated in the active driving display. In addition, when the LAS&LDWS becomes operational, the system turns back on automatically and the vehicle lane lines (operational) are indicated in the active driving display.

- The temperature inside the camera is high or low.
- The windscreen around the camera is foggy.
- The windscreen around the camera is blocked by an obstruction, causing poor forward visibility.

Auto cancel of warning/steering assist

When the following operations are performed, the LAS&LDWS operation is automatically cancelled. The LAS&LDWS is automatically re-enabled after the operation.

- The driver takes his or her hands off the steering wheel[*1] (The LAS&LDWS is designed to assist the driver’s steering operation and it will resume operation automatically when the driver holds the steering wheel.)
- The steering wheel is operated abruptly.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The accelerator pedal is suddenly depressed.
  (To cancel the automatic sensitivity cancel function, deselect “Cancel sensitivity” in the personalisation features setting.)
- The direction indicator lever is operated.
- The vehicle crosses a lane line.

OwnersManuals2.com

*1 Only when the timing of the steering operation assist is set to “Early”.

NOTE

- *After the operation, the LAS&LDWS operation may not operate for a period of 5 seconds at the most until the lane lines are detected.*
- *Under the following conditions, the LAS&LDWS cancels the warning/steering assist automatically.*
  - *The DSC OFF switch is pressed to cancel the DSC.*

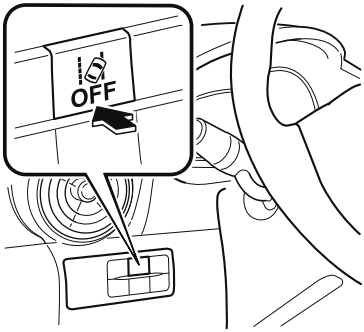
Steering operation assist OFF (non-operational)

The steering operation assist for the LAS&LDWS can be changed to non-operational (OFF). Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
When the steering operation assist has been changed to inoperable (OFF), operate the LAS&LDWS as follows:

System operation

If the LAS&LDWS OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster turns off when the ignition is switched ON, the system goes on standby.

If the LAS&LDWS OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on when the ignition is switched ON, press the LAS&LDWS OFF switch so that the system goes on standby.



Drive the vehicle in the centre of the vehicle lane while the system is on standby. The system becomes operational when all of the following conditions are met.

- The system detects white (yellow) lane lines on both the right and left sides, or on either side.
- The vehicle speed is about 60 km/h (37 mph) or faster.
- The vehicle is driven on a straight road or road with gentle curves.
- The engine is running.

OwnersManuals2.com

The LAS&LDWS goes on stand-by status in the following cases:

- The system cannot detect white (yellow) lane lines.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The vehicle is making a sharp curve.
- The vehicle is making a curve at an inappropriate speed.

NOTE

- *The LAS&LDWS remains on stand-by until it detects white (yellow) lines on both the left and right sides, or on either side.*
- *When the system detects a white (yellow) lane line on one side only, the system will not activate warnings for the lane line on the side that is not being detected.*
- *The distance and warning sensitivity (likelihood of a warning) which the system uses to determine the possibility of a lane departure can be changed.*
  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Auto cancel

Under the following conditions, the LAS&LDWS is automatically cancelled. The LAS&LDWS is automatically re-enabled when it becomes operational.

- The temperature inside the camera is high or low.
- The windscreen around the camera is foggy.
- The windscreen around the camera is blocked by an obstruction, causing poor forward visibility.

(Auto cancel of warnings)

When the following operations are performed, the LAS&LDWS determines that the driver intends to make a lane change and the system operation is cancelled automatically. The LAS&LDWS resumes automatically after the operation.

- The steering wheel is operated abruptly.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
  (To cancel the automatic sensitivity cancel function, deselect “Warning sensitivity” in the personalisation features setting.)
- The direction indicator lever is operated.
- The vehicle crosses a lane line.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Steering Wheel Operation Assist

When the system determines that the vehicle might be deviating from its lane, the steering wheel operation assist operates.
The system notifies the driver that it provided steering wheel operation assistance on the active driving display and in the instrument cluster.

When the timing of the steering assist is set to "Late"

Active Driving Display **Instrument Cluster**

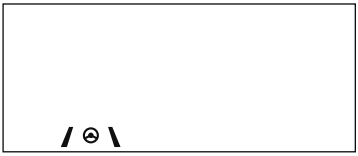




When the timing of the steering assist is set to "Early"

When only the steering assist function operates

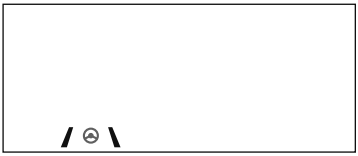
Active Driving Display **Instrument Cluster**





When the steering assist function operates and the lane departure warning is activated

Active Driving Display **Instrument Cluster**





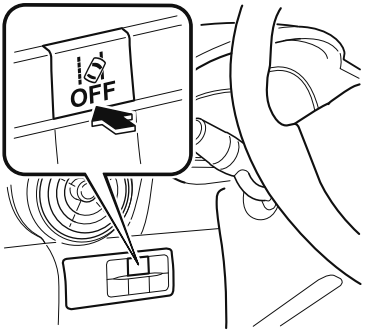
NOTE

When the driver operates the steering wheel while the steering wheel operation assist is operating, the steering wheel operation assistance is cancelled.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ System Cancelling

When the Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) is turned off, press the Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) OFF switch.



The Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) OFF switch indicator light turns on.

NOTE

- *In the following cases, the Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) is cancelled automatically and the Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) OFF indicator light turns on. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
  - *There is a malfunction in the power steering.*
  - *There is a malfunction in the DSC.*
  - *There is a malfunction in the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*
- *When the ignition is switched OFF, the system status before it was turned off is maintained. For example, if the ignition is switched OFF with the lane-keep system operable, the system will be operable when the ignition is switched ON the next time.*

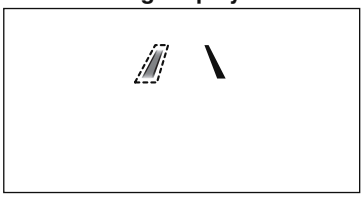
When the Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) is cancelled, the vehicle lane lines are no longer indicated in the active driving display.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Lane Departure Warning

If the system determines that the vehicle may deviate from its lane, the lane departure warning (beep sound, rumble sound*1, or steering wheel vibration) is activated and the direction in which the system determines that the vehicle may deviate is indicated in the active driving display.
If the system determines that the vehicle may deviate from its lane, the colour of the lane line on the side being detected by the system changes from white to amber, and flashes.

Active Driving Display



Warning light (Flashes)



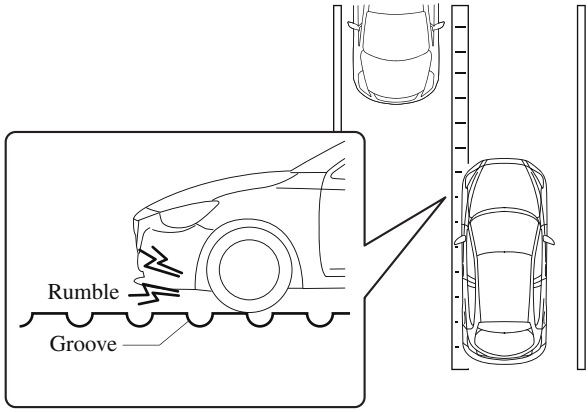
NOTE

- *If you have set the lane departure warning sound to the beep sound/rumble sound*1 setting, the warning sound may not be heard depending on the surrounding noise conditions.*
- *If you have set the lane departure warning system to the steering wheel vibrations setting, the vibration may not be felt depending on the road surface conditions.*
- *When the setting for the steering operation assist is changed to operational, the warnings can be set to activate/not activate. (When the setting for the steering operation assist is changed to non-operational, or the timing of the steering operation assist is set to "Early", the warnings cannot be set to not activate.)*
  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- *The LAS & LDWS can be changed to the following settings regardless of whether the steering operation assist has been set to operational/non-operational. Always check the setting status when driving the vehicle and make setting changes if necessary.*
  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
  - *Steering wheel vibration: Strong/weak*
  - *Warning sound volume*
  - *Types of warnings (steering wheel vibration/beep sound/rumble sound*1)*

*1 *A rumble strip is a series of grooves in the road pavement surface positioned at specific intervals, and when the vehicle passes over it a vibration and rumble sound is produced which alerts the driver that the vehicle is departing from the lane.*

OwnersManuals2.com

The rumble sound is a reproduction of the sound which occurs when a vehicle passes over a rumble strip.



OwnersManuals2.com

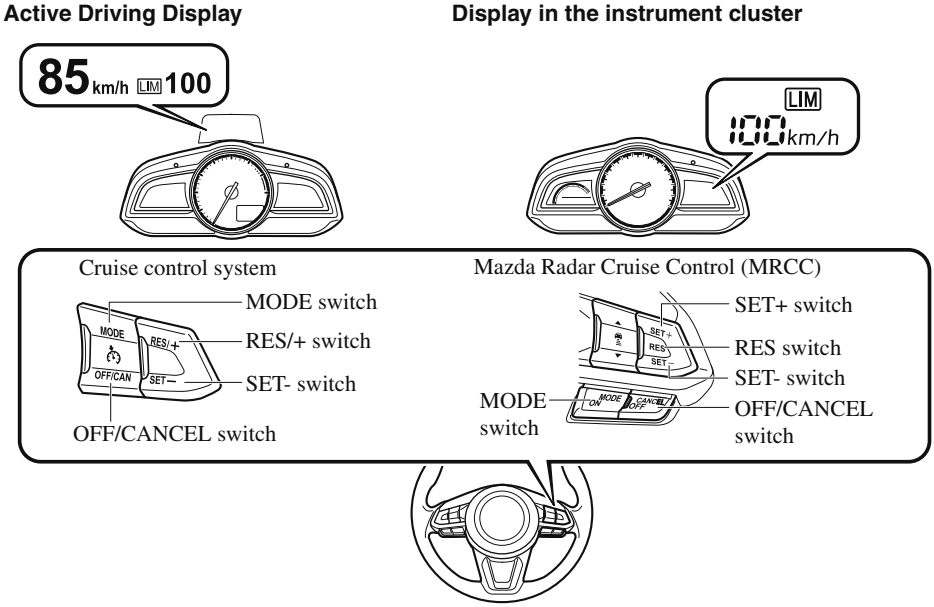
Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL)*

The ASL is a function to prevent the vehicle from being driven at a vehicle speed faster than a set speed. The vehicle speed is controlled to kept it below the set speed even if the accelerator pedal is depressed.
The ASL can be set between 30 km/h (20 mph) and 200 km/h (125 mph). The vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when the vehicle is driven on a down slope, however, the system notifies the driver by flashing the display and operating a warning sound.

⚠ WARNING

Always turn off the system when changing drivers:
If the driver is changed and the new driver is unaware of the ASL function, the vehicle may not accelerate when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal, leading to an accident.

The system consists of the ASL display and the speed limiter switch on the steering wheel.



OwnersManuals2.com

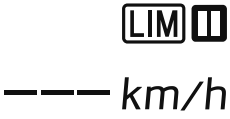
▼ Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL) Display

The setting status of the ASL is displayed in the active driving display (Type A instrument cluster*1) or the display in the instrument cluster (Type B instrument cluster*1).

*1 To determine which instrument cluster is equipped on your Mazda, Refer to Meters and Gauges on page 4-23.

Stand-by display

Displays when the speed limiter switch is operated and the system is turned on.
Turns off when the system is turned off.

Active Driving Display	Display in the instrument cluster
	

Setting display

With cruise control
Displays when the SET/− switch is operated and the speed is set.
With Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)
Displays when the SET− or SET+ switch is operated and the speed is set.

Active Driving Display	Display in the instrument cluster
	

OwnersManuals2.com

Cancel display

Displays when any of the following operations is done and the system is temporarily cancelled.

- OFF/CANCEL switch is operated
- Accelerator pedal is strongly depressed

Active Driving Display	Display in the instrument cluster
	

▼ Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL) Main Indication (White), Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL) Set Indication (White)/Indicator Light (Green)

ASL main indication (white)

The ASL main indication (white) is displayed in the instrument cluster when the ASL is activated.



ASL set indication (white)/indicator light (green)

The ASL set indication (white) is displayed in the instrument cluster and the ASL set indicator light (green) turns on when a speed has been set.



OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Speed Limiter Warning Beep

Indicated in instrument cluster
If the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by about 3 km/h (2 mph) or more, a warning sound operates continuously and the ASL display flashes at the same time. The warning sound operates and the display flashes until the vehicle speed decreases to the set speed or less.
Indicated in active driving display
If the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by about 3 km/h (2 mph) or faster, the background of the ASL set speed indication turns amber and flashes 3 times. In addition, a warning sound is activated at the same time. The indication stops flashing and remains on if the vehicle speed continues to exceed the set speed by about 3 km/h (2 mph) or faster, and the indication and warning sound remain on until the vehicle is driven at the set speed or slower. Verify the safety of the surrounding area and adjust the vehicle speed by applying the brakes. Additionally, keep a safer distance from the vehicles behind you.

Active Driving Display



Display in the instrument cluster



⚠ CAUTION

(With cruise control)
If the set speed is set lower than the current vehicle speed by pressing the SET/- or RES/+ switch, the warning beep is not activated for about 30 seconds even if the vehicle speed is faster than the newly set speed by 3 km/h (2 mph). Be careful not to drive over the set speed.
(With Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC))
If the set speed is set lower than the current vehicle speed by pressing the SET- or RES switch, the warning beep is not activated for about 30 seconds even if the vehicle speed is faster than the newly set speed by 3 km/h (2 mph). Be careful not to drive over the set speed.

NOTE
When the system is temporarily cancelled by depressing the accelerator pedal fully, the ASL display shows the cancel display. Even if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by about 3 km/h (2 mph) or more while the cancel display is displayed, the warning sound is not operated.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Activation/Deactivation

NOTE
When the ignition is switched off, the system status before it was turned off is maintained. For example, if the ignition is switched off while the ASL is operating, the system will be operable when the ignition is switched ON the next time.

Activation

Press the MODE switch to operate the system. The ASL screen is displayed, and the ASL main indication (white) turns on.

NOTE
When the cruise control or Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) system becomes operable after pressing the MODE switch, press the mode switch again to switch to the ASL.

Deactivation

To deactivate the system, do the following operations:

When a cruising speed has been set (ASL set indication (white)/indicator light (green) turns on)

Long-press the OFF/CANCEL switch or press the OFF/CANCEL switch 2 times. The ASL screen is no longer displayed and the ASL set indication (white)/indicator light (green) turns off.

When a cruising speed has not been set (ASL main indication (white) turns on)

Press the OFF/CANCEL switch. The ASL screen is no longer displayed and the ASL main indication (white) turns off.

NOTE
When the MODE switch is pressed while the ASL is operating, the system switches to the cruise control or Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) system.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Setting the System

⚠ WARNING

Always verify the safety of the surrounding area when setting the ASL:
If the speed is set lower than the current vehicle speed, the vehicle speed is decreased to the set speed. Verify the safety of the surrounding area and keep a safer distance between vehicles ahead and behind you.

1. Press the MODE switch to turn the system on.
2. **(With cruise control)**
   Press the SET/− to set the speed. When the current vehicle speed is 30 km/h (20 mph) or more, the speed is set to the current vehicle speed. When the current vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (20 mph), the speed is set to 30 km/h (20 mph).
   (With Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC))
   Press the SET+ or SET− to set the speed. When the current vehicle speed is 30 km/h (20 mph) or more, the speed is set to the current vehicle speed. When the current vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (20 mph), the speed is set to 30 km/h (20 mph).
3. **(With cruise control)**
   To increase the set speed, press the RES/+ switch continuously. The set speed can be adjusted in 10 km/h (5 mph) increments. The set speed can also be adjusted in about 1 km/h (1 mph) increments by momentarily pressing the RES/+ switch. For example, the set speed increases about 4 km/h (4 mph) by pressing the RES/+ switch 4 times.
   (With Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC))
   To increase the set speed, press the SET+ switch continuously. The set speed can be adjusted in 10 km/h (5 mph) increments. The set speed can also be adjusted in about 1 km/h (1 mph) increments by momentarily pressing the SET+ switch. For example, the set speed increases about 4 km/h (4 mph) by pressing the SET+ switch 4 times.
4. **(With cruise control)**
   To decrease the set speed, press the SET/− switch continuously. The set speed can be adjusted in 10 km/h (5 mph) increments. The set speed can also be adjusted in about 1 km/h (1 mph) increments by momentarily pressing the SET/− switch. For example, the set speed decreases about 4 km/h (4 mph) by pressing the SET/− switch 4 times.

OwnersManuals2.com

(With Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC))
To decrease the set speed, press the SET− switch continuously. The set speed can be adjusted in 10 km/h (5 mph) increments. The set speed can also be adjusted in about 1 km/h (1 mph) increments by momentarily pressing the SET− switch. For example, the set speed decreases about 4 km/h (4 mph) by pressing the SET− switch 4 times.

NOTE

- ***(With cruise control)***
  When the vehicle set speed is displayed in the instrument cluster, press the RES/+ switch to set the displayed vehicle speed.
  (With Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC))
  When the vehicle set speed is displayed in the instrument cluster, press the RES switch to set the displayed vehicle speed.
- *The system is temporarily cancelled when the vehicle is accelerated by depressing the accelerator pedal strongly, however, it resumes when the vehicle speed decreases to the set speed or less.*
- *The vehicle speed may exceed the set speed on a down slope.*

▼ Temporarily Cancelling the System

The system is temporarily cancelled (stand-by status) when any of the following operations is done while the ASL is displayed.

- OFF/CANCEL switch is pressed
- Accelerator pedal is strongly depressed

With cruise control
Press the RES/+ switch to resume the operation at the previous set speed. The ASL display remains displayed.
With Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)
Press the RES switch to resume the operation at the previous set speed. The ASL display remains displayed.

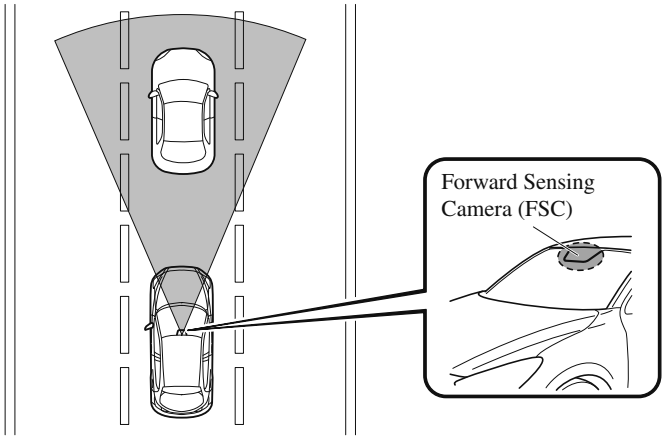
NOTE

- ***(With cruise control)***
  The set speed can be set by pressing the SET/− switch while the system is in stand-by status.
  (With Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC))
  The set speed can be set by pressing the SET+ or SET− switch while the system is in stand-by status.
- *The ASL is not cancelled by depressing the brake pedal.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)*

The Advanced SCBS alerts the driver of a possible collision using the display and a warning sound when the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) detects a vehicle ahead or pedestrian and determines that a collision with the object is unavoidable while the vehicle is driven at a vehicle speed of about 4 to 80 km/h (2 to 50 mph) if the object is a vehicle ahead and about 10 to 80 km/h (6.2 to 50 mph) if the object is a pedestrian. In addition, the system reduces damage in the event of a collision by operating the brake control (Advanced SCBS brake) when the system determines that a collision is unavoidable. In addition, when the driver depresses the brake pedal, the brakes are applied firmly and quickly to assist. (Brake Assist (Advanced SCBS brake assist))



⚠ WARNING

Do not rely completely on the Advanced SCBS system:

- *The Advanced SCBS system is only designed to reduce damage in the event of a collision. Over reliance on the system leading to the accelerator pedal or brake pedal being mistakenly operated could result in an accident.*
- *The Advanced SCBS system operates in response to a vehicle ahead or a pedestrian. The system does not operate in response to obstructions such as a wall, 2-wheeled vehicles, or animals.*

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ CAUTION

In the following cases, turn the system off to prevent a mis-operation:

- *The vehicle is being towed or when towing another vehicle.*
- *The vehicle is on a chassis roller.*
- *When driving on rough roads such as in areas of dense grass or off-road.*

Refer to Stopping the Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) System Operation on page 4-162 on how to turn off the Advanced SCBS system.

NOTE

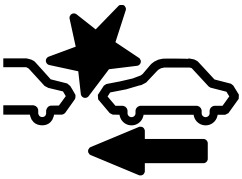
- *The Advanced SCBS system will operate under the following conditions.*
  - *The engine is running.*
  - *The Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) warning light (amber) does not illuminate.*
  - ***(Object is vehicle ahead)***
    The vehicle speed is between about 4 to 80 km/h (2 to 50 mph).
  - ***(Object is a pedestrian)***
    The vehicle speed is between about 10 to 80 km/h (6.2 to 50 mph).
  - *The Advanced SCBS system is not turned off.*
- *Under the following conditions, the Advanced SCBS system may not operate normally:*
  - *The Advanced SCBS system will not operate if the driver is deliberately performing driving operations (accelerator pedal and steering wheel).*
  - *If there is the possibility of partial contact with a vehicle ahead.*
  - *The vehicle is driven on a slippery road surface such as wet roads or icy or snow-bound roads.*
  - *The braking performance is adversely affected due to cold temperatures or wet brakes.*
  - *The vehicle is driven at the same speed as the vehicle ahead.*
  - *The accelerator pedal is depressed.*
  - *The brake pedal is depressed.*
  - *The steering wheel is being operated.*
  - *The selector lever is being operated.*
- *In the following cases, the Advanced SCBS may operate.*
  - *Objects on the road at the entrance to a curve.*
  - *Vehicles passing in the opposite lane while making a curve.*
  - *When passing through a toll gate.*
  - *When passing through low gates, narrow gates, car washing machines, or tunnels.*
  - *If you suddenly come close to a vehicle ahead.*
  - *2-wheeled vehicles, animals, or standing trees.*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *During the Advanced SCBS brake control, the brake pedal may move rearward or become stiff. The brakes are operating, but continue to depress the brake pedal.*
- ***(Manual transaxle)***
  If the vehicle is stopped by the SCBS operation and the clutch pedal is not depressed, the engine stops.

▼ Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) Indicator Light (Red)

If the Advanced SCBS is operating, the indicator light (red) flashes.



▼ Collision Warning

If there is the possibility of a collision with a vehicle ahead, the beep sounds continuously and a warning is indicated in the active driving display.



NOTE

- ***(Without SCBS OFF switch)***
  The operation distance and volume of the collision warning can be changed. Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- ***(With SCBS OFF switch)***
  The operation distance and volume of the collision warning can be changed. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Automatic Brake Operation Display

The automatic brake operation display is indicated on the active driving display after the Advanced SCBS is operated.



NOTE

- *The collision warning beep sounds intermittently while the Advanced SCBS brake or brake assist (Advanced SCBS brake assist) is operating.*
- *If the vehicle is stopped by the Advanced SCBS operation and the brake pedal is not depressed, the warning beep sounds 1 time after about 2 seconds and the Advanced SCBS brake is automatically released.*

▼ Stopping the Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) System Operation

The Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) system can be temporarily deactivated.
When the Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) system is turned off, the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) OFF indicator light turns on.



OwnersManuals2.com

When the engine is restarted, the system becomes operational.

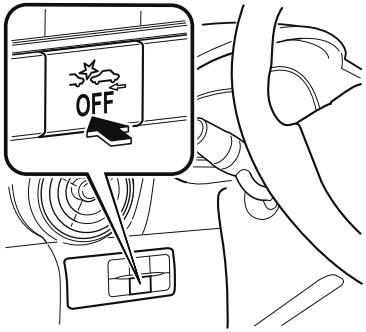
Without SCBS OFF switch

Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

NOTE
When the Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) system is set to inoperable, the Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) system and the Smart Brake Support (SBS) are also set to inoperable.

With SCBS OFF switch

Press the SCBS OFF switch to turn off the system. The Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate.

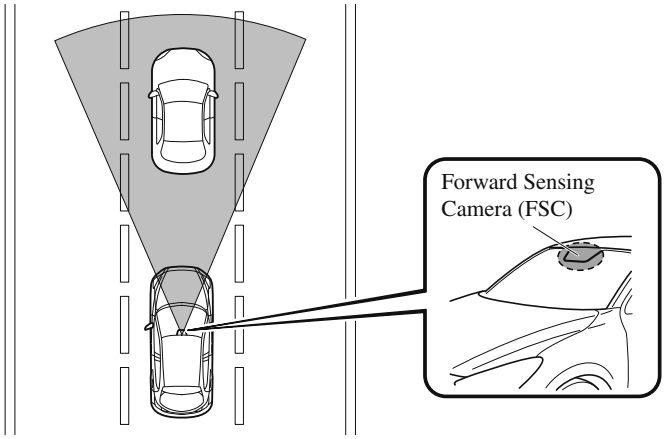


Press the switch again to turn the system back on. The Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) OFF indicator light will turn off.

OwnersManuals2.com

Smart City Brake Support [Forward] (SCBS F)*

The SCBS F system alerts the driver of a possible collision using an indication in the display and a warning sound when the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) detects a vehicle ahead and determines that a collision with a vehicle ahead is unavoidable while the vehicle is being driven at a vehicle speed of about 4 to 80 km/h (2 to 50 mph). In addition, the system reduces damage in the event of a collision by operating the brake control (Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) brake) when the system determines that a collision is unavoidable while the vehicle is being driven at a vehicle speed of about 4 to 30 km/h (2 to 18 mph). It may also be possible to avoid a collision if the relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you is less than about 20 km/h (12 mph). In addition, when the driver depresses the brake pedal while the system is in the operation range at about 4 to 30 km/h (2 to 18 mph), the brakes are applied firmly and quickly to assist. (Brake Assist (Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) brake assist))



⚠ WARNING

Do not rely completely on the SCBS F system:

- *The SCBS F system is only designed to reduce damage in the event of a collision. Over reliance on the system leading to the accelerator pedal or brake pedal being mistakenly operated could result in an accident.*
- *The SCBS F is a system which operates in response to a vehicle ahead. The system may not be able to detect or react to 2-wheeled vehicles or pedestrians.*

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ CAUTION

In the following cases, turn the system off to prevent a mis-operation:

- *The vehicle is being towed or when towing another vehicle.*
- *The vehicle is on a chassis roller.*
- *When driving on rough roads such as in areas of dense grass or off-road.*

Refer to Stopping the Smart City Brake Support [Forward] (SCBS F) system Operation on page 4-167 on how to turn off the SCBS F system.

NOTE

- *The SCBS F system will operate under the following conditions.*
  - *The engine is running.*
  - *The Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) system warning light (amber) does not illuminate.*
  - ***(Rear-end collision warning)***
    The vehicle speed is about 4 to 80 km/h (2 to 50 mph).
  - ***(Brake control (Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) brake))***
    The vehicle speed is about 4 to 30 km/h (2 to 18 mph).
  - *The SCBS F system is not turned off.*
- *Under the following conditions, the SCBS F system may not operate normally:*
  - *The SCBS F system will not operate if the driver is deliberately performing driving operations (accelerator pedal and steering wheel).*
  - *If there is the possibility of partial contact with a vehicle ahead.*
  - *The vehicle is driven on a slippery road surface such as wet roads or icy or snow-bound roads.*
  - *The braking performance is adversely affected due to cold temperatures or wet brakes.*
  - *The vehicle is driven at the same speed as the vehicle ahead.*
  - *The accelerator pedal is depressed.*
  - *The brake pedal is depressed.*
  - *The steering wheel is being operated.*
  - *The selector lever is being operated.*
- *In the following cases, the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) determines that there is a vehicle ahead and the SCBS F may operate.*
  - *Objects on the road at the entrance to a curve.*
  - *Vehicles passing in the opposite lane while making a curve.*
  - *Metal objects, bumps, or protruding objects on the road.*
  - *When passing through a toll gate.*
  - *When passing through low gates, narrow gates, car washing machines, or tunnels.*

OwnersManuals2.com

・If you suddenly come close to a vehicle ahead.
・2-wheeled vehicles, pedestrians, animals or standing trees.
・Vehicle is driven with some of the tyres having significant wear.

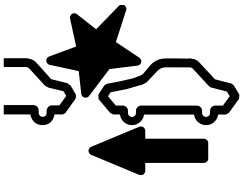
・During the SCBS F brake control, the brake pedal may move rearward or become stiff. The brakes are operating, but continue to depress the brake pedal.

*・**(Manual transaxle)***
If the vehicle is stopped by the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) operation and the clutch pedal is not depressed, the engine stops.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) Indicator Light (Red)

If the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) is operating, the indicator light (red) flashes.



▼ Collision Warning

If there is the possibility of a collision with a vehicle ahead, the beep sounds continuously and a warning is indicated in the active driving display.



NOTE

- ***(Without SCBS OFF switch)***
  The operation distance and volume of the collision warning can be changed. Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- ***(With SCBS OFF switch)***
  The operation distance and volume of the collision warning can be changed. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Automatic Brake Operation Display

The automatic brake operation display is indicated on the active driving display after the SCBS F is operated.



NOTE

- *The collision warning beep sounds intermittently while the SCBS F brake or brake assist (SCBS F brake assist) is operating.*
- *If the vehicle is stopped by the SCBS F operation and the brake pedal is not depressed, the warning beep sounds 1 time after about 2 seconds and the SCBS F brake is automatically released.*

▼ Stopping the Smart City Brake Support [Forward] (SCBS F) System Operation

The SCBS F system can be temporarily deactivated.
When the SCBS F system is turned off, the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) OFF indicator light turns on.



When the engine is restarted, the system becomes operational.

Without SCBS OFF switch

Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

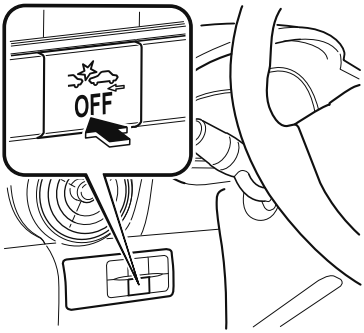
NOTE

When the SCBS F system is set to inoperable, the Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) system and the Smart Brake Support (SBS) are also set to inoperable.

OwnersManuals2.com

With SCBS OFF switch

Press the SCBS OFF switch to turn off the system. The Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate.

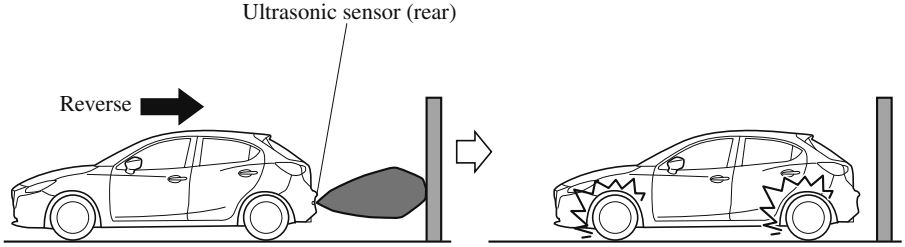


Press the switch again to turn the system back on. The Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) OFF indicator light will turn off.

OwnersManuals2.com

Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R)*

The SCBS R is a system which is designed to reduce damage in the event of a collision by operating the brake control (SCBS brake) when the system's ultrasonic sensors detect an obstruction at the rear of the vehicle while driving at a speed of about 2 to 8 km/h (2 to 4 mph) and the system determines that a collision is unavoidable.



⚠ WARNING

Do not rely completely on the SCBS R system:

- *The SCBS R system is only designed to reduce damage in the event of a collision. Over reliance on the system leading to the accelerator pedal or brake pedal being mistakenly operated could result in an accident.*
- *To assure the correct operation of the SCBS R, heed the following cautions.*
  - *Do not apply a sticker to an ultrasonic sensor (rear) (including transparent stickers). Otherwise, the ultrasonic sensor (rear) may not be able to detect vehicles or obstructions which could result in an accident.*
  - *Do not disassemble an ultrasonic sensor (rear).*
  - *If cracks or damage caused by flying gravel or debris is visible around an ultrasonic sensor (rear), stop using the SCBS R system immediately and have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). If the vehicle continues to be driven with cracks or scratch marks left around an ultrasonic sensor, the system may operate unnecessarily and cause an unexpected accident.*
    Refer to Stopping the Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) System Operation on page 4-173.
  - *Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for rear bumper replacement.*

Do not modify the suspension:

If the vehicle height or inclination is changed, the SCBS R system may not operate correctly because it cannot detect obstructions correctly.

OwnersManuals2.com

Do not apply a strong force to an ultrasonic sensor (rear):
When washing the vehicle, do not spray highly pressurised water against an ultrasonic sensor (rear), or rub it strongly. In addition, do not hit the rear bumper forcefully when loading and unloading cargo Otherwise, the sensors may not detect obstructions correctly which could cause the SCBS R system to not operate normally, or it could operate unnecessarily.

⚠ CAUTION

- *When driving off-road in areas where there is grass or foliage, it is recommended that the SCBS R system be turned off.*
- *Always use tyres of the specified size and the same manufacturer, brand, and tread pattern on all 4 wheels. In addition, do not use tyres with significantly different wear patterns on the same vehicle. Otherwise, the SCBS R system may not operate normally.*
- *If ice or snow is stuck on the ultrasonic sensors (rear) they may not be able to detect obstructions correctly depending on the conditions. In such cases, the system may not be able to perform controls correctly. Always drive carefully and pay attention to the rear of the vehicle.*

NOTE

- *The vehicle posture changes depending on the accelerator pedal, brake pedal and steering wheel operations, which could make it difficult for the system to recognise an obstruction, or it could facilitate unnecessary detection. In such cases, the SCBS R may or may not operate.*
- *The SCBS R system will operate under the following conditions.*
  - *The Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) warning light (amber) does not illuminate.*
  - *The engine is running.*
  - *The change lever (manual transaxle vehicle) or the selector lever (automatic transaxle vehicle) is in the R (reverse) position.*
  - *The vehicle speed is between about 2 to 8 km/h (2 to 4 mph).*
  - *The SCBS R is not turned off.*
  - *The DSC is not malfunctioning.*
- *The SCBS R operates using ultrasonic sensors (rear) which detect obstructions at the rear by emitting ultrasonic waves and then receiving the returning waves reflected off the obstructions.*
- *In the following cases, the ultrasonic sensors (rear) cannot detect obstructions and the SCBS R may not operate.*
  - *The height of the obstruction is low such as low walls or trucks with low loading platforms.*
  - *The height of the obstruction is high such as trucks with high loading platforms.*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *The obstruction is small.*
- *The obstruction is thin such as a signpost.*
- *The obstruction is positioned away from the centre of the vehicle.*
- *The surface of the obstruction is not pointed vertically relative to the vehicle.*
- *The obstruction is soft such as a hanging curtain or snow stuck to a vehicle.*
- *The obstruction is shaped irregularly.*
- *The obstruction is extremely close.*

- *In the following cases, the ultrasonic sensors (rear) cannot detect obstructions correctly and the SCBS R may not operate.*

  - *Something is stuck on the bumper near an ultrasonic sensor (rear).*
  - *The steering wheel is turned sharply, or the brake or accelerator pedal is operated.*
  - *There is another obstruction near one obstruction.*
  - *During inclement weather such as rain, fog and snow.*
  - *High or low humidity.*
  - *High or low temperatures*
  - *Strong winds.*
  - *The path of travel is not flat.*
  - *Heavy luggage is loaded in the luggage compartment or on the rear seat.*
  - *Objects such as a wireless aerial, fog light, or illuminated number plate is installed near an ultrasonic sensor (rear).*
  - *The orientation of an ultrasonic sensor (rear) has deviated for reasons such as a collision.*
  - *The vehicle is affected by other sound waves such as the horn, engine noise, ultrasonic sensor of another vehicle.*

- *In the following cases, an ultrasonic sensor (rear) may detect something as a target obstruction which could cause the SCBS R system to operate.*

  - *Driving on a steep slope.*
  - *Wheel blocks.*
  - *Hanging curtains, gate poles such as at toll gates and railroad crossing.*
  - *When travelling near objects such as foliage, barriers, vehicles, walls, and fences along a road.*
  - *When driving off-road in areas where there is grass and forage.*
  - *When passing through low gates, narrow gates, car washing machines, and tunnels.*
  - *A towing bar is installed or a trailer is connected.*

- *During the SCBS R brake control, the brake pedal may move rearward or become stiff. The brakes are operating, but continue to depress the brake pedal.*
- ***(Manual transaxle)***
  If the vehicle is stopped by the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) operation and the clutch pedal is not depressed, the engine stops.

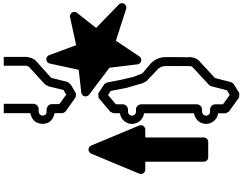
OwnersManuals2.com

・ *The Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) warning indication (amber) turns on when the system has a malfunction.*
Refer to Warning Lights on page 4-40.

OwnersManuals2.com

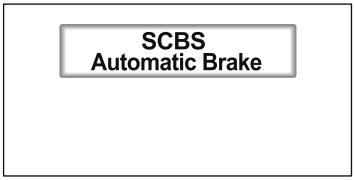
▼ Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) Indicator Light (Red)

If the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) is operating, the indicator light (red) flashes.



▼ Automatic Brake Operation Display

The automatic brake operation display is indicated on the active driving display after the SCBS R is operated.



NOTE

- *The collision warning beep sounds intermittently while the SCBS R brake is operating.*
- *If the vehicle is stopped by the SCBS R operation and the brake pedal is not depressed, the warning beep sounds 1 time after about 2 seconds and the SCBS R brake is automatically released.*

▼ Stopping the Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) System Operation

The SCBS R system can be temporarily deactivated.
When the SCBS R system is turned off, the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) OFF indicator light turns on.



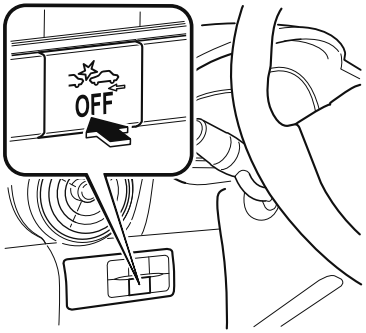
When the engine is restarted, the system becomes operational.

Without SCBS OFF switch

Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

With SCBS OFF switch

Press the SCBS OFF switch to turn off the system. The Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate.



Press the switch again to turn the system back on. The Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) OFF indicator light will turn off.

OwnersManuals2.com

Smart Brake Support (SBS)*

The SBS system alerts the driver of a possible collision using a display and warning sound if the radar sensor (front) and the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) determine that there is the possibility of a collision with a vehicle ahead while the vehicle is being driven at about 15 km/h or faster (10 mph or faster). Furthermore, if the radar sensor (front) and the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) determines that a collision is unavoidable, the automatic brake control is performed to reduce damage in the event of a collision.
In addition, when the driver depresses the brake pedal, the brakes are applied firmly and quickly to assist. (Brake Assist (SBS brake assist))

⚠ WARNING

Do not rely completely on the SBS system and always drive carefully:
The SBS is designed to reduce damage in the event of a collision, not avoid an accident. The ability to detect an obstruction is limited depending on the obstruction, weather conditions, or traffic conditions. Therefore, if the accelerator pedal or brake pedal is mistakenly operated it could result in an accident. Always verify the safety of the surrounding area and depress the brake pedal or accelerator pedal while keeping a safer distance from vehicles ahead or on-coming vehicles.

⚠ CAUTION

In the following cases, turn the system off to prevent a mis-operation:

- *The vehicle is being towed or when towing another vehicle.*
- *The vehicle is on a chassis roller.*
- *When driving on rough roads such as in areas of dense grass or off-road.*

NOTE

- *The SBS system operates when all of the following conditions are met:*
  - *The ignition is switched ON.*
  - *The SBS system is on.*
  - *The vehicle speed is about 15 km/h or faster (10 mph or faster).*
  - *The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is about 15 km/h or faster (10 mph or faster).*
  - *The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is not operating.*
- *The SBS system may not operate under the following conditions:*
  - *If the vehicle is accelerated rapidly and it comes close to a vehicle ahead.*
  - *The vehicle is driven at the same speed as the vehicle ahead.*
  - *The accelerator pedal is depressed.*
  - *The brake pedal is depressed.*
  - *The steering wheel is being operated.*
  - *The selector lever is being operated.*
  - *The direction indicator is being used.*
  - *When the vehicle ahead is not equipped with tail lights or the tail lights are turned off.*

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

· When warnings and messages, such as a dirty windscreen, related to the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) are being displayed in the centre display.

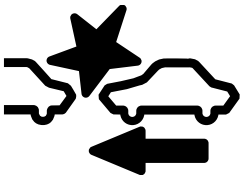
· Although the objects which activate the system are four-wheeled vehicles, the radar sensor (front) could detect the following objects, determine them to be an obstruction, and operate the SBS system.

· Objects on the road at the entrance to a curve (including guardrails and snow banks).
· A vehicle appears in the opposite lane while cornering or rounding a curve.
· When crossing a narrow bridge.
· When passing under a low gate or through a tunnel or narrow gate.
· When entering an underground parking area.
· Metal objects, bumps, or protruding objects on the road.
· If you suddenly come close to a vehicle ahead.
· When driving in areas where there is high grass or forage.
· Two-wheeled vehicles such as motorbikes or bicycles.
· Pedestrians or non-metallic objects such as standing trees.

· During the SBS brake control, the brake pedal may move rearward or become stiff. The brakes are operating, but continue to depress the brake pedal.
· When the system operates, the user is notified by the active driving display.
· The SBS warning indication (amber) turns on when the system has a malfunction.
Refer to Taking Action on page 7-42.

▼ Smart Brake Support (SBS) Indicator Light (Red)

If the SBS is operating, the indicator light (red) flashes.



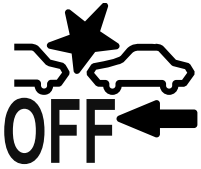
▼ Collision Warning

If there is the possibility of a collision with a vehicle ahead, the beep sounds continuously and a warning is indicated in the active driving display.



▼ Stopping The Smart Brake Support (SBS) System Operation

The SBS system can be temporarily deactivated.
Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
When the SBS system is turned off, the SBS OFF indicator light turns on.



When the engine is restarted, the system becomes operational.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE
If the SBS system operation is turned off, the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) system operation is turned off simultaneously.

OwnersManuals2.com

360° View Monitor*

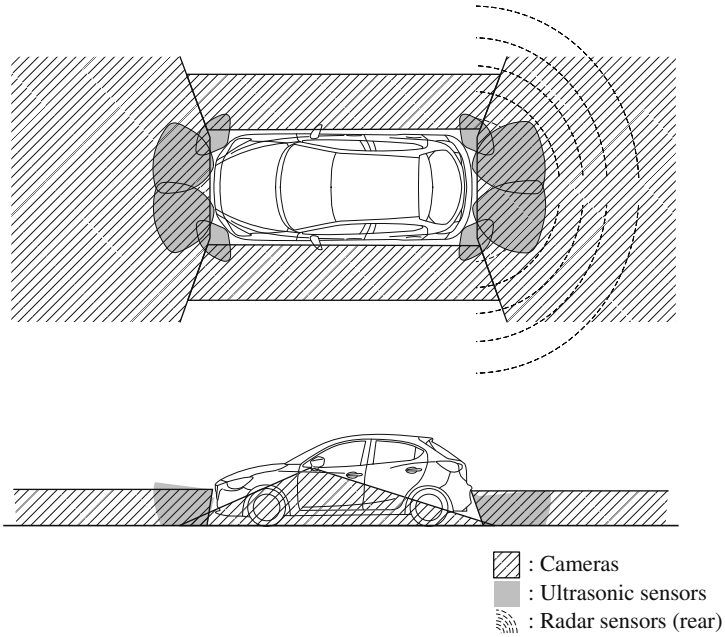
The 360° View Monitor consists of the following functions which assist the driver in checking the area surrounding the vehicle using various indications in the centre display and a warning sound while the vehicle is being driven at low speeds or while parking.

- **Top view**
  The top view displays an image of the vehicle from directly above on the centre display by combining the images taken from the 4 cameras set on all sides of the vehicle. The top view displays on the right side (left-hand drive)/left side (right-hand drive) of the screen when the front view or rear view screen is being displayed. The top view assists the driver in checking the area surrounding the vehicle when the vehicle is moving forward or in reverse.
- **Front view/front wide view**
  The image from the front of the vehicle is displayed on the centre display.
  The view from the front assists the driver in checking the front of the vehicle by displaying guide lines on the displayed image taken from the front of the vehicle.
- **Side view**
  The images taken from the front left and right sides of the vehicle are displayed on the centre display.
  The side view assists the driver in checking the front sides of the vehicle by displaying guide lines on the displayed image taken from the front left and right sides of the vehicle.
- **Rear view/rear wide view**
  The image from the rear of the vehicle is displayed on the centre display.
  The image from the rear assists the driver in checking the rear of the vehicle by displaying guide lines on the displayed image taken from the rear of the vehicle.
- **Parking sensor**
  If there are any obstructions near the vehicle while the top view/side view is displayed, an obstruction detection indication on the centre display turns on.
  The parking sensors use ultrasonic sensors to detect obstructions around the vehicle when the vehicle is driven at low speeds, such as during garage or parallel parking, and notifies the driver of the approximate distance from the vehicle to the surrounding obstruction using sound and an obstruction detection indication.
  Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-235.
- **Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)**
  If there is the possibility of a collision with an approaching vehicle while the rear view/rear wide view is displayed, a warning is displayed on the centre display.
  The Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) uses radar sensors (rear) to detect vehicles approaching from the rear left and right sides of the vehicle, and it assists the driver in checking the rear of the vehicle while reversing by flashing the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights and activating the warning sound.
  Refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) on page 4-125.

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

360°View Monitor Range



⚠ WARNING

Always confirm the safety of the area around the vehicle with the mirrors and directly with your eyes when driving.

The 360°View Monitor is an auxiliary device which assists the driver in checking the safety of the area around the vehicle.

The shooting range of the cameras and detection range of the sensors are limited. For example, the areas in black at the front and rear of the vehicle image and the seams where each of the camera images merge are blind spots where an obstruction may not be visible. In addition, the extended vehicle width lines and projected vehicle path lines are only to be used as references, and the images on the screen may differ from the actual conditions.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not use the 360°View Monitor under any of the following conditions.*
  - *Icy or snow-covered roads.*
  - *Tyre chains or a temporary spare tyre is installed.*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *The front doors or the liftgate/boot is not fully closed.*
- *The vehicle is on a road incline.*
- *The door mirrors are retracted.*

- *Do not hit the front/rear camera, front bumper, and door mirrors forcefully. The camera position or installation angle may shift.*
- *The cameras are of a waterproof structure. Do not disassemble, modify, or remove a camera.*
- *The camera cover is made of hard plastic, therefore do not apply oil film remover, organic solvents, wax, or coating agents. If any such agent gets on the camera cover, wipe it off using a soft cloth immediately.*
- *Do not rub the camera lens forcefully, or clean it with an abrasive or hard brush. Otherwise, it could scratch the camera lens and negatively affect the images.*
- *Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for repair, painting, or replacement of the front/rear camera, front bumper and door mirrors.*
- *Heed the following cautions to assure that the 360°View Monitor operates normally.*
  - *Do not modify the vehicle suspensions or lower/raise the vehicle body, or both.*
  - *Always use wheels of the specified type and size for the front and rear wheels. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for tyre replacement.*
- *When the display is cold, images may leave trails or the screen might be darker than usual, making it difficult to check the vehicle surroundings. Always confirm the safety at the front and around the vehicle visually when driving.*
- *The method for parking/stopping the vehicle using the 360°View Monitor differs depending on the road circumstances/conditions and the vehicle conditions. When and how much you turn the steering wheel will differ depending on the situation, therefore always check the vehicle surroundings directly with your eyes while using the system.*
  Also, before using the system, always make sure that the vehicle can be parked/stopped in the parking/stopping space.

NOTE

- *If there are water droplets, snow, or mud on the camera lens, wipe it off using a soft cloth. If the camera lens is especially dirty, wash it off with mild detergent.*
- *If the area where the camera is installed, such as the boot (Saloon)/rear bumper (Hatchback) or door mirrors, has been damaged in a vehicle accident, the camera (position, installation angle) may have shifted. Always consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have the vehicle inspected.*
- *If the camera is subjected to excessive changes in temperature such as by pouring hot water on the camera during cold weather, the 360°View Monitor may not operate normally.*
- *If the lead-acid battery voltage is low, the screen might be temporarily difficult to view, however, this does not indicate a problem.*

OwnersManuals2.com

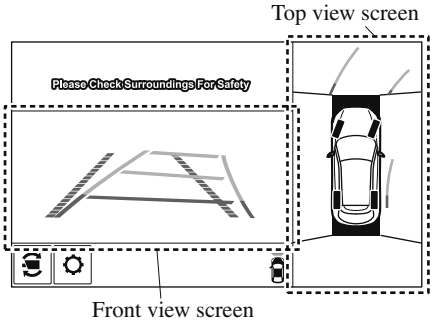
- *The 360°View Monitor has limitations. Objects under the bumper or near both ends of the bumper cannot be displayed.*
- *Obstructions above the upper image range of the camera are not displayed.*
- *Under the following conditions, the screen might be difficult to view, however this does not indicate a problem.*
  - *The temperature near the lens is high/low.*
  - *Rainy conditions, water droplets on the camera, or high humidity.*
  - *Mud or foreign matter near the camera.*
  - *Extremely bright light such as sunlight or headlights hitting the camera lens directly.*
- *Because the 360°View Monitor camera uses a special lens, the distance displayed on the screen differs from the actual distance.*
- *Obstructions displayed on the screen may appear differently than in actuality. (Obstructions may appear fallen, larger, or longer than they actually are.)*
- *Do not apply stickers to a camera or the area around it. In addition, do not install accessories or an illuminated number/character number plate to the area around a camera. Otherwise, the camera may not correctly display the surrounding conditions.*

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Types of Images Displayed on the Screen

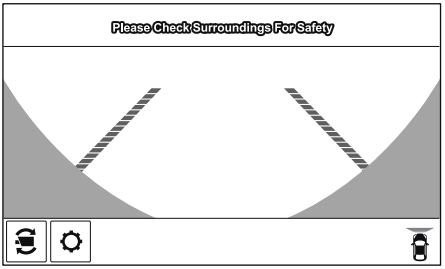
Top view/Front view

Displays the image of the area around the vehicle and the vehicle front.



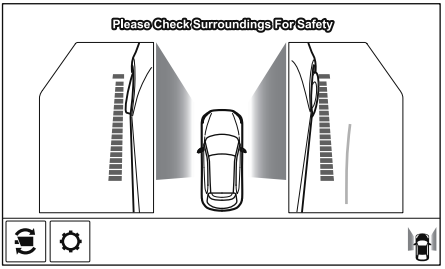
Front wide view

Displays the image of the front of the vehicle (wide-area).



Side view

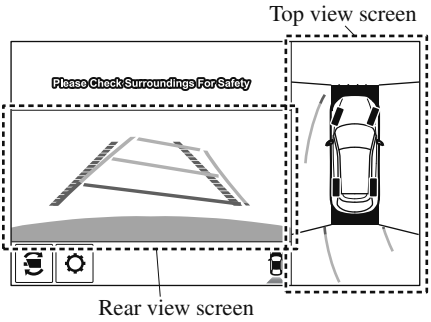
Displays the image of the left and right sides of the vehicle.



OwnersManuals2.com

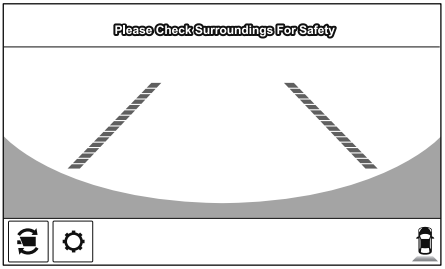
Top view/Rear view

Displays the image of the area around the vehicle and the rear of the vehicle.



Rear wide view

Displays the image of the rear of the vehicle (wide-area).



OwnersManuals2.com

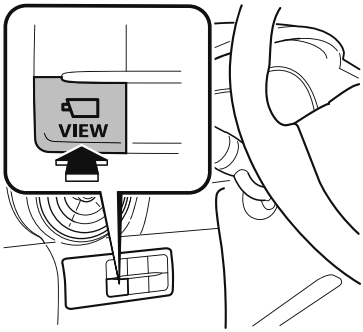
▼ How to Use the System

Top view/Front view, Front wide view, Side view

Indication

Images are displayed on the screen when the 360°View Monitor switch is pressed with all of the following conditions met.

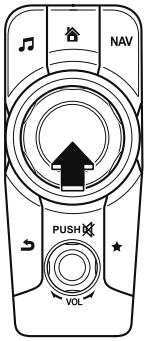
- The ignition is switched ON.
- The shift lever/selector lever is in a position other than R.

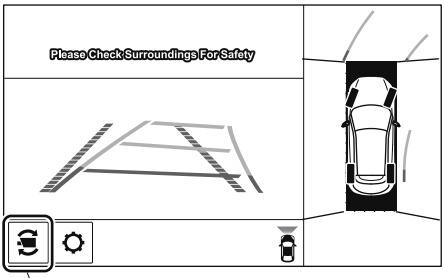


OwnersManuals2.com

Display switching

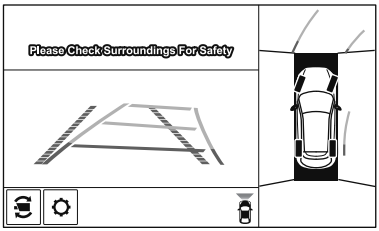
You can change the displayed screen by pressing the commander knob or by touching the switch camera icon on the screen while the top view/front view, front wide view, or the side view is displayed.



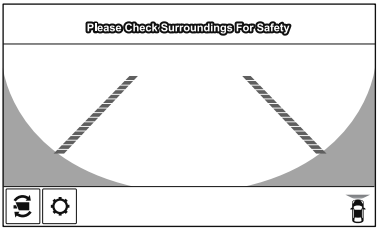


Switch camera icon

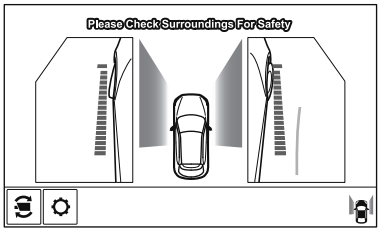
Top view/Front view



Front wide view



Side view



NOTE

- *When the shift lever/selector lever is in R position, the displayed screen does not switch to the top view/front view, front wide view, or the side view.*
- *Display of the top view/front view, front wide view, or the side view stops even with the display conditions met if any of the following conditions occurs.*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *When a switch around the commander knob is pressed.*
- ***(Manual transaxle)***
  The parking brake is applied.
- ***(Automatic transaxle)***
  The selector lever is shifted to P position (displayed when the selector lever is in a position other than P).
- ***(Displayed when vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h (9.3 mph))***
  - *4 minutes and 30 seconds have passed.*
  - *The vehicle speed is about 15 km/h (9.3 mph) or faster.*
- ***(Displayed when the vehicle speed is about 15 km/h (9.3 mph) or faster)***
  - *The vehicle speed is about 15 km/h (9.3 mph) or faster after 8 seconds have passed since pressing the 360°View Monitor switch.*
  - *4 minutes and 22 seconds have passed from the point when the vehicle speed was less than 15 km/h (9.3 mph) after 8 seconds have passed since pressing the 360° View Monitor switch.*

- *The 360°View Monitor displays the previously displayed screen.*
- *The 360° View Monitor settings can be changed as follows.*
  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
  - *Automatic display of the 360°View Monitor when the ultrasonic sensor detects an obstruction.*
  - *Automatic display of the 360°View Monitor when the ignition is switched ON.*

Top view/Rear view, Rear wide view

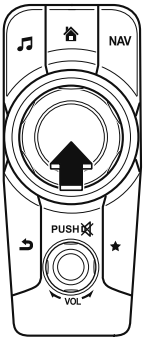
The top view/rear view, rear wide view displays when all of the following conditions are met.

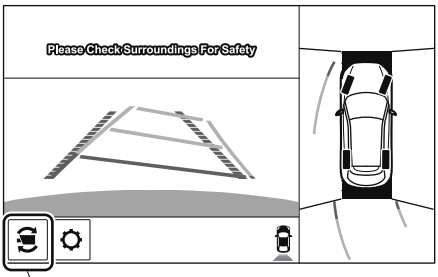
- The ignition is switched ON.
- Shift lever/selector lever is in R position.

OwnersManuals2.com

Display switching

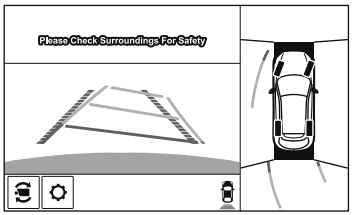
The displayed screen can be switched by pressing the commander knob or by touching the switch camera icon on the screen while the top view/rear view, rear wide view is displayed.

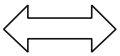




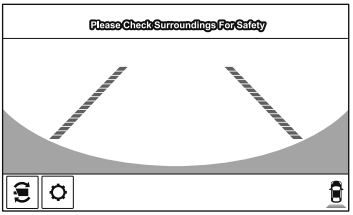
Switch camera icon

Top view/Rear view





Rear wide view



NOTE

- *The top view/rear view and rear wide view automatically display whether or not the 360° View Monitor switch is turned on or off when shifting the shift lever/selector lever to R position.*
- *The setting can be changed to display the top view/front view when shifting from reverse to a forward gear without operating the 360°View Monitor switch to check the front of the vehicle while parallel parking.*
  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

OwnersManuals2.com

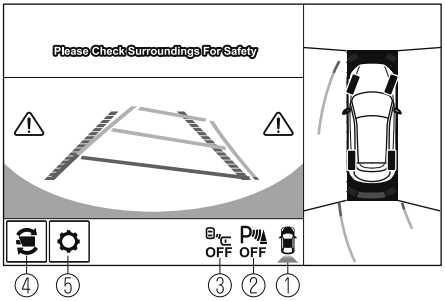
Screen operation/icon

⚠ WARNING

Always stop the vehicle when adjusting the 360°View Monitor image quality.

Do not adjust the 360°View Monitor image quality while driving. If you adjust the 360° View Monitor image quality (such as brightness, contrast, tone, and colour density) while driving, it could lead to an unexpected accident.

(Display example)



	Display/Icon	Content
①	View status icon	Indicates which image is displayed among the front view/front wide view/side view/rear view/rear wide view.
②	Parking sensor status icon	Indicates that the parking sensor has a problem or it is switched off.
③	Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) status icon	Indicates that the radar sensor (rear) has a problem or it is turned off.
④	Switch camera icon	Each time the screen is touched, the display screen switches.
⑤	Setting icon	The image quality for the 360°View Monitor can be adjusted.

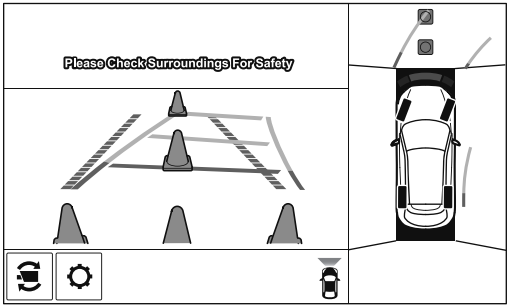
▼ Top View/Front View

Use the top view/front view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop, parking, or stopping the vehicle.

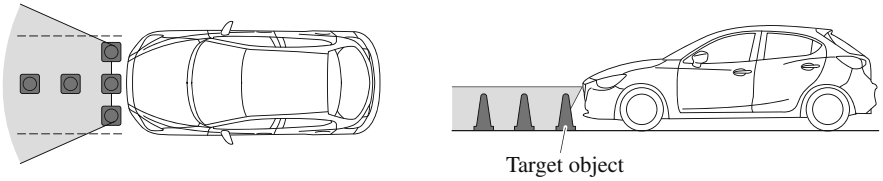
OwnersManuals2.com

Display range

(Screen display)



(Actual condition)

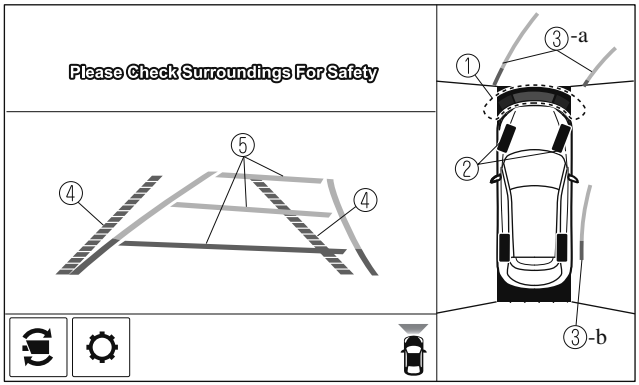


NOTE

- *In the top view screen, the areas in black at the front and rear of the vehicle image and the seams where each of the camera images merge are blind spots.*
- *Because images displayed in the top view screen are processed from each camera, the top view screen may display in the following ways.*
  - *If an image containing an object with a conspicuous colour is picked up by any of the cameras, the whole screen may be affected and it may display in that colour.*
  - *Obstructions displayed in the front view may not display on the top view screen.*
  - *If the position or angle of each camera changes due to tilting of the vehicle, the image may appear distorted.*
  - *Lines on the road may appear distorted at the seams where each of the camera images merge.*
  - *The entire screen may appear bright/dark depending on the illumination level around any of the cameras.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Viewing the screen



	Display/Icon	Content
①	Parking sensor view	Displays the parking sensor detection condition when the parking sensor is activated. For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-235.
②	Tyre icon	Indicates the tyre direction. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation.
③	Projected vehicle path lines (yellow)	Indicates the approximate projected path of the vehicle. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation. a) Indicates the path where the edge of the front bumper is expected to travel. b) Indicates the path where the inner side of the vehicle is expected to travel.
④	Extended vehicle width lines and distance guide lines (red/blue)	Indicates the approximate width of the vehicle and the distance (from front end of bumper) in front of the vehicle. ・ The red lines indicate the points up to about 0.5 m (20 in) from the front end of the bumper. ・ The blue lines indicate the points from about 0.5 m (20 in) and up to 2 m (79 in) from the front end of the bumper.
⑤	Projected vehicle path distance guide lines (red/yellow)	Indicates the distance (from front end of bumper) in front of the vehicle. ・ The red line indicates the point about 0.5 m (20 in) from the front end of the bumper. ・ The yellow lines indicate the points about 1 m (39 in) and 2 m (79 in) from the front end of the bumper.

OwnersManuals2.com

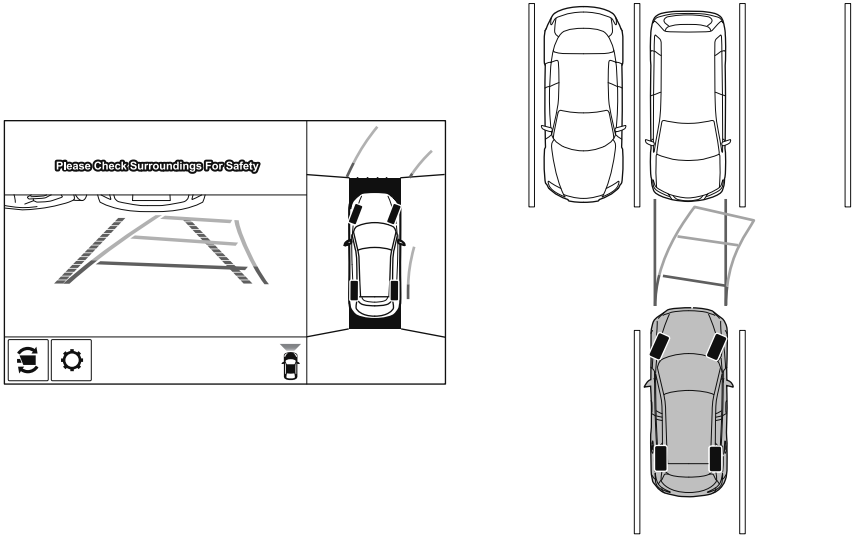
⚠ CAUTION

The parking sensor detection range has limitations. For example, obstructions closing in from the side and objects short in height may not be detected. Always confirm the safety around the vehicle visually when driving.
For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-235.

NOTE
The setting can be changed so that the projected vehicle path lines are not displayed. Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

How to use the projected vehicle path line function

(Screen display) **(Actual condition)**



Make sure that there are no obstructions within the projected vehicle path lines.
Drive the vehicle forward while turning the steering wheel so that no obstructions come within the projected vehicle path lines.

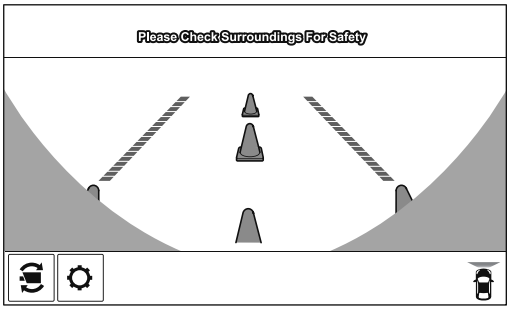
▼ Front Wide View

Use the front wide view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop or entering a T-shaped intersection and intersection.

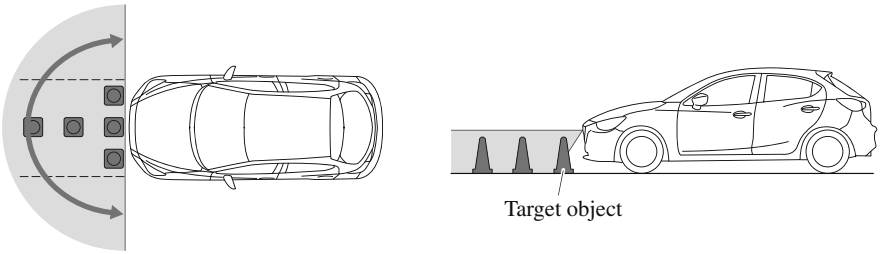
OwnersManuals2.com

Display range

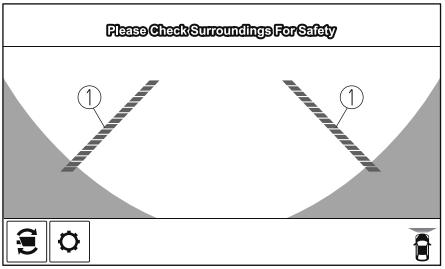
(Screen display)



(Actual condition)



Viewing the screen



	Display/Icon	Content
①	Extended vehicle width lines and distance guide lines (red/blue)	Indicates the approximate width of the vehicle and the distance (from front end of bumper) in front of the vehicle. ・ The red lines indicate the points up to about 0.5 m (20 in) from the front end of the bumper. ・ The blue lines indicate the points from about 0.5 m (20 in) and up to 2 m (79 in) from the front end of the bumper.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

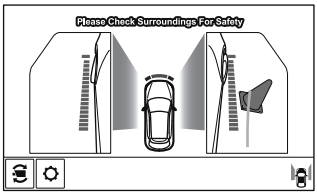
- *The parking sensor obstruction detection indication does not display. Switch the screen display to the top view/front view or side view display if the parking sensor warning sound is activated.*
- *The front wide view screen displays the image in front of the vehicle at a wide angle and corrects the image to help detect approaching obstructions from the side. Therefore, it differs from the actual view.*

▼ Side View

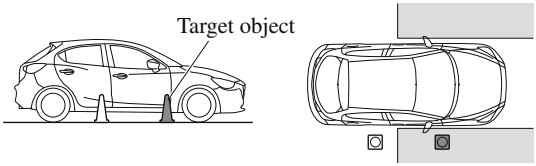
Use the side view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop, parking, or stopping the vehicle.

Display range

(Screen display)

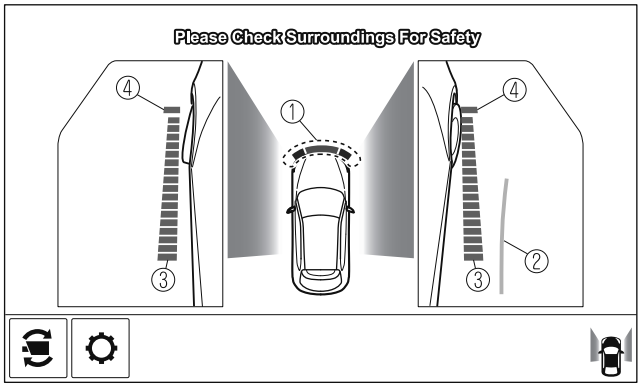


(Actual condition)



OwnersManuals2.com

Viewing the screen



	Display/Icon	Content
①	Parking sensor view	Displays the parking sensor detection condition when the parking sensor is activated. For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-235.
②	Projected vehicle path lines (yellow)	Indicates the approximate projected path of the vehicle. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation. The projected vehicle path lines (yellow) indicate the path the inner side of the vehicle is expected to travel.
③	Vehicle parallel guide lines (blue)	Indicates the approximate vehicle width including the door mirrors.
④	Vehicle front end guide lines (blue)	Indicates the point about 0.25 m (9.8 in) from the front edge of the vehicle (front edge of the bumper).

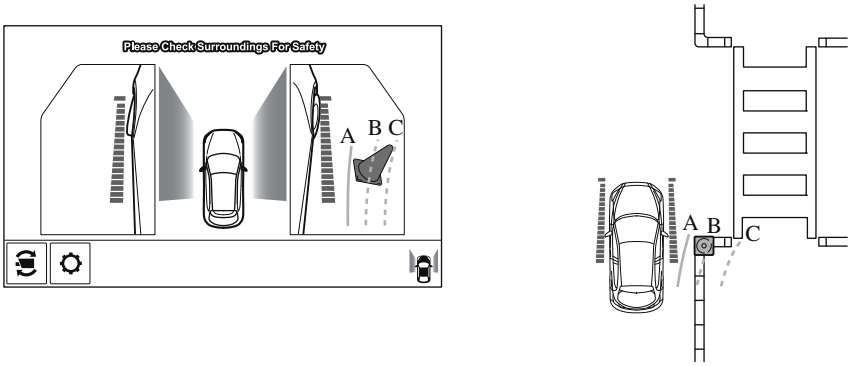
NOTE

The setting can be changed so that the projected vehicle path lines are not displayed. Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

OwnersManuals2.com

How to use the projected vehicle path line function

(Screen display) (Actual condition)



Make sure that there are no obstructions within the projected vehicle path lines.
Turn the steering wheel so that the projected vehicle path lines travel inside of the obstruction (A), and drive the vehicle forward until it passes the obstruction.
If the projected vehicle path lines are on an obstruction (B) or outside of the obstruction (C), the vehicle may contact the obstruction when turning the vehicle sharply.

⚠ CAUTION

- *The parking sensor detection range has limitations. For example, obstructions closing in from the side and objects short in height may not be detected. Always confirm the safety around the vehicle visually when driving.*
  For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-235.
- *Do not turn the steering wheel any more until the vehicle has passed the obstruction, even if the obstruction is not visible on the side view image. If the steering wheel is turned even more, the vehicle may contact the obstruction if it is turned sharply.*

NOTE

- *Because there might be a difference between the image displayed on the screen and the actual conditions, always check the safety of the surrounding area using the mirrors and directly with your eyes when driving.*
- *Even though the object displayed on the screen, such as a road curb or a division line of a parking space, and the vehicle parallel guide lines appear parallel, they may not actually be parallel.*

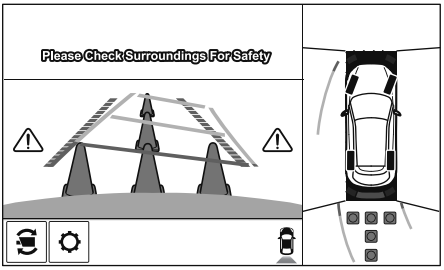
OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Top View/Rear View

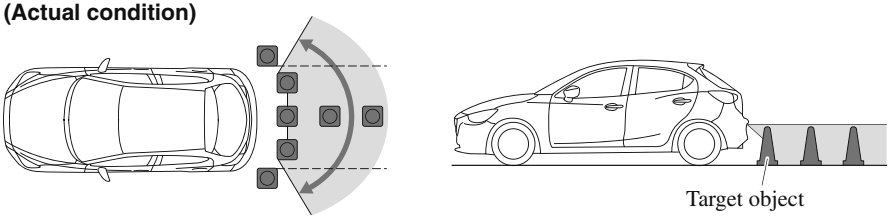
Use the top view/rear view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop, parking, or stopping the vehicle.

Range of displayed screen image

(Screen display)



(Actual condition)

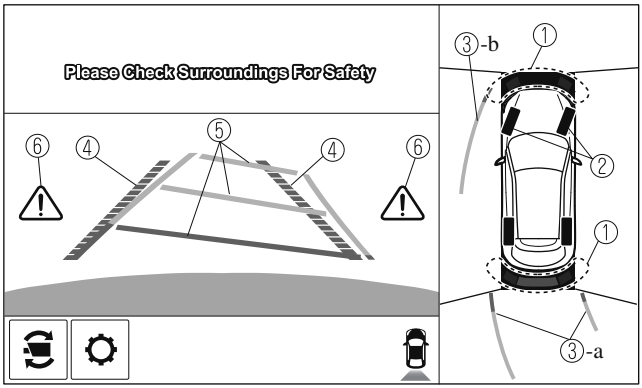


NOTE

- *In the top view screen, the areas in black at the front and rear of the vehicle image and the seams where each of the camera images merge are blind spots.*
- *Because images displayed in the top view screen are processed from each camera, the top view screen may display in the following ways.*
  - *If an image containing an object with a conspicuous colour is picked up by any of the cameras, the whole screen may be affected and it may display in that colour.*
  - *Obstructions displayed in the rear view may not display on the top view screen.*
  - *If the position or angle of each camera changes due to tilting of the vehicle, the image may appear distorted.*
  - *Lines on the road may appear distorted at the seams where each of the camera images merge.*
  - *The entire screen may appear bright/dark depending on the illumination level around any of the cameras.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Viewing the screen



	Display/Icon	Content
①	Parking sensor view	Displays the parking sensor detection condition when the parking sensor is activated. For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-235.
②	Tyre icon	Indicates the tyre direction. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation.
③	Projected vehicle path lines (yellow)	Indicates the approximate projected path of the vehicle. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation. a) Indicates the path where the rear wheels are expected to travel. b) Indicates the path where the outer side of the vehicle is expected to travel.
④	Extended vehicle width lines and distance guide lines (red/blue)	These guide lines indicate the approximate width of the vehicle and distance to a point measured from the rear of the vehicle (from the end of the bumper). ・ The red lines indicate the points up to about 0.5 m (20 in) from the rear end of the bumper. ・ The blue lines indicate the points from about 0.5 m (20 in) and up to 2 m (79 in) from the rear end of the bumper.
⑤	Projected vehicle path distance guide lines (red/yellow)	These guide lines indicate the approximate distance to a point measured from the rear of the vehicle (from the end of the bumper). ・ The red line indicates the point about 0.5 m (20 in) from the rear end of the bumper. ・ The yellow lines indicate the points about 1 m (39 in) and 2 m (79 in) from the rear end of the bumper.

OwnersManuals2.com

	Display/Icon	Content
⑥	Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights	Indicates when the Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) has operated. For details, refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA). Refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) on page 4-125.

NOTE

The setting can be changed so that the projected vehicle path lines are not displayed. Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

How to use the projected vehicle path line function

⚠ CAUTION

- *The front of the vehicle swings out wide when turning the steering wheel while reversing. Maintain sufficient distance between the vehicle and an obstruction.*
- *The parking sensor detection range has limitations. For example, obstructions closing in from the side and objects short in height may not be detected. Always confirm the safety around the vehicle visually when driving.*
  For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-235.

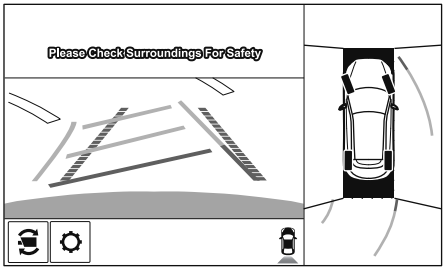
NOTE

- *Because there might be a difference between the image displayed on the screen, such as indicated in the following, and the actual conditions when parking, always check the safety at the rear of the vehicle and the surrounding area directly with your eyes.*
  - *Even though the back end of the parking space (or garage) displayed on the screen and distance guide lines appear parallel, they may not actually be parallel.*
  - *When parking in a space with a division line on only one side of the parking space, even though the division line and the vehicle width guide line appear parallel, they may not actually be parallel.*
- *The following shows an example of vehicle parking with the steering wheel turned to the right while backing up the vehicle. When backing into a parking space from the opposite direction, the steering operation is reversed.*

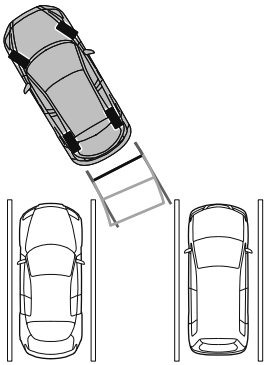
OwnersManuals2.com

1. Back the vehicle into the parking space by turning the steering wheel so that the vehicle enters the centre of the parking space.

(Screen display)

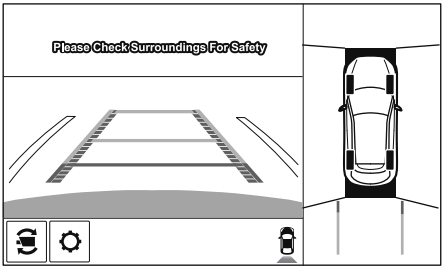


(Actual condition)

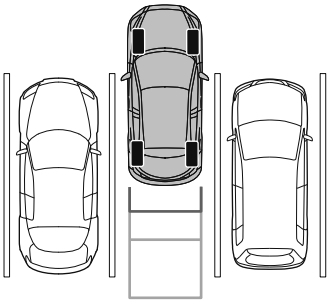


2. After the vehicle starts entering the parking space, stop and adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the vehicle width lines and the sides of the parking space on the left and right are roughly equal, and then continue backing up slowly.
3. Once the vehicle width lines and the sides of the parking space on the left and right are parallel, straighten the wheels and back the vehicle slowly into the parking space. Continue checking the vehicle's surroundings and then stop the vehicle in the best possible position. (If the parking space has division lines, check whether the vehicle width guide lines are parallel to them.)

(Screen display)



(Actual condition)



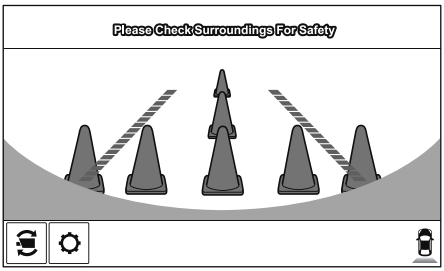
▼ Rear Wide View

Use the rear wide view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop, parking, or stopping the vehicle.

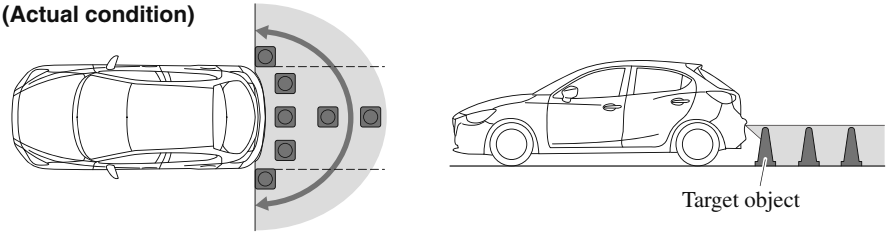
OwnersManuals2.com

Range of displayed screen image

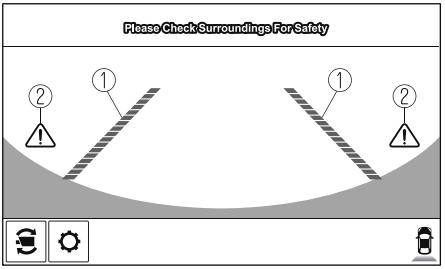
(Screen display)



(Actual condition)



Viewing the screen



	Display/Icon	Content
①	Extended vehicle width lines and distance guide lines (red/blue)	These guide lines indicate the approximate width of the vehicle and distance to a point measured from the rear of the vehicle (from the end of the bumper). • The red lines indicate the points up to about 0.5 m (20 in) from the rear end of the bumper. • The blue lines indicate the points from about 0.5 m (20 in) and up to 2 m (79 in) from the rear end of the bumper.

OwnersManuals2.com

	Display/Icon	Content
②	Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights	Indicates when the Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) has operated. For details, refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA). Refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) on page 4-125.

NOTE

- *The parking sensor obstruction detection indication does not display. Switch the screen display to the top view/rear view display if the parking sensor warning sound is activated.*
- *The rear wide view screen displays the image at the rear of the vehicle at a wide angle and corrects the image to help detect approaching obstructions from the side. Therefore, it differs from the actual view.*

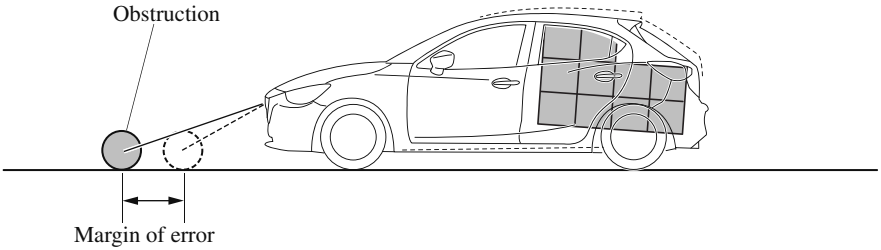
▼ Margin of Error Between Road Surface on Screen and Actual Road Surface

There might be some margin of error between the road surface appearing on the screen and the actual road surface. A margin of error in the perceived distance could lead to an accident, therefore be aware of the following conditions which can more easily produce errors in the perceived distance.

The vehicle tilts due to weight of passengers and cargo.

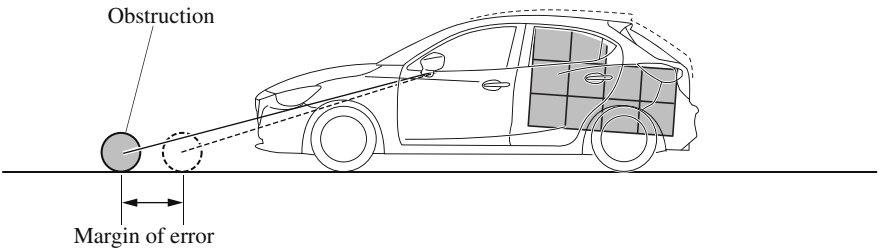
If the vehicle is tilted, obstructions picked up by a camera can appear farther or closer than the actual distance from the vehicle.

Front camera

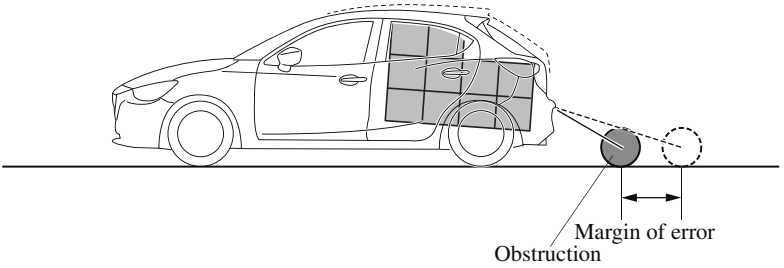


OwnersManuals2.com

Side camera



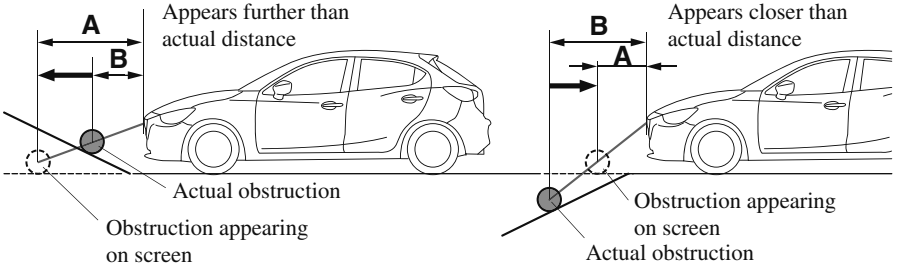
Rear camera



There is a steep up or down grade in the road at the front or rear of the vehicle

If there is a steep up or down grade in the road at the front or rear of the vehicle, obstructions picked up by the camera can appear farther or closer than the actual distance from the vehicle.

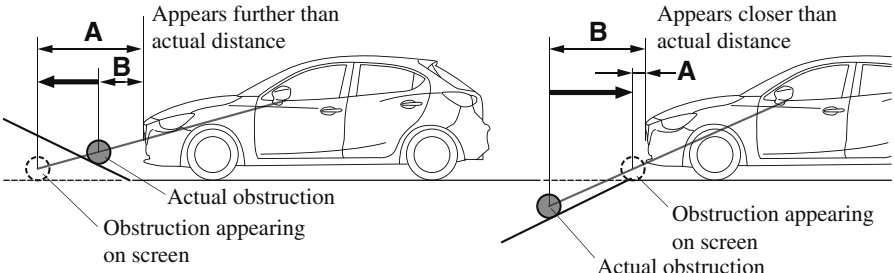
Front camera



A: Distance of obstruction being viewed on screen
B: Actual distance of obstruction from vehicle

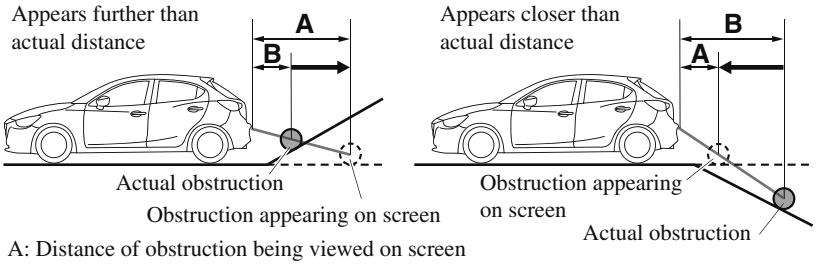
OwnersManuals2.com

Side camera



A: Distance of obstruction being viewed on screen
B: Actual distance of obstruction from vehicle

Rear camera



A: Distance of obstruction being viewed on screen
B: Actual distance of obstruction from vehicle

NOTE
If the vehicle is on a slope, obstructions taken by the camera can appear farther or closer than the actual distance from the vehicle.

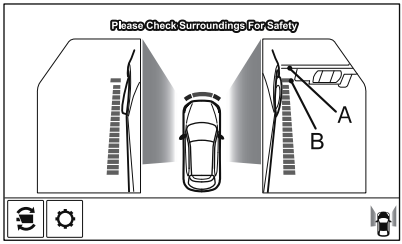
Three-dimensional object at vehicle front or rear

Because the vehicle front end guide lines (side camera) or the distance guide lines (rear camera) are displayed based on a flat surface, the distance to the three-dimensional object displayed on the screen is different from the actual distance.

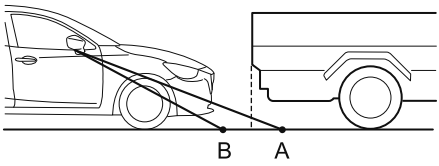
OwnersManuals2.com

Side camera

(Screen display)

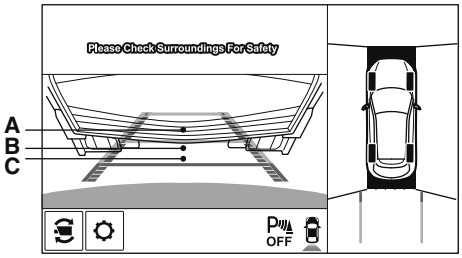


(Actual condition)



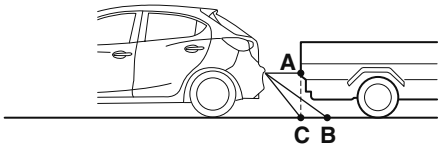
Rear camera

(Screen display)



Sensed distance on screen A > B > C

(Actual condition)



Actual distance B > C = A

▼ System Problem Indication

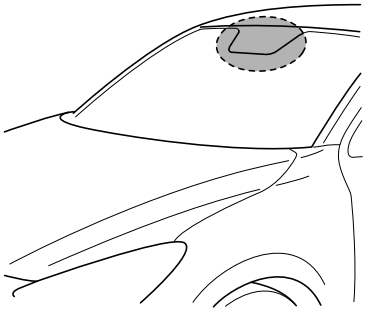
Centre display indication	Cause	Action to be taken
“No image signal reception” is displayed	The control unit might be damaged.	Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
Screen is pitch-black and blank	The camera might be damaged.	

OwnersManuals2.com

Forward Sensing Camera (FSC)*

Your vehicle is equipped with a Forward Sensing Camera (FSC). The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is positioned near the rearview mirror and used by the following systems.

- High Beam Control System (HBC)
- Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)
- Driver Attention Alert (DAA)
- Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)
- Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)
- Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR)
- Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)
- Smart City Brake Support [Forward] (SCBS F)
- Smart Brake Support (SBS)



The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) determines the conditions ahead of the vehicle while travelling at night and detects traffic lanes. The distance in which the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) can detect objects varies depending on the surrounding conditions.

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ WARNING

Do not modify the suspension:
If the vehicle height or inclination is changed, the system will not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead. This will result in the system not operating normally or mistakenly operating, which could cause a serious accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not apply accessories, stickers or film to the windscreen near the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*
  If the area in front of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) lens is obstructed, it will cause the system to not operate correctly. Consequently, each system may not operate normally which could lead to an unexpected accident.
- *Do not disassemble or modify the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*
  Disassembly or modification of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) will cause a malfunction or mistaken operation. Consequently, each system may not operate normally which could lead to an unexpected accident.
- *Heed the following cautions to assure the correct operation of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*
  - *Be careful not to scratch the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) lens or allow it to get dirty.*
  - *Do not remove the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) cover.*
  - *Do not place objects on the instrument panel which reflect light.*
  - *Always keep the windscreen glass around the camera clean by removing dirt or fogging. Use the windscreen defroster to remove fogging on the windscreen.*
  - *Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) regarding cleaning the interior side of the windscreen around the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*
  - *Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) before performing repairs around the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*
  - *The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is installed to the windscreen. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for windscreen repair and replacement.*
  - *When cleaning the windscreen, do not allow glass cleaners or similar cleaning fluids to get on the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) lens. In addition, do not touch the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) lens.*
  - *When performing repairs around the rearview mirror, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
  - *Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) regarding cleaning of the camera lens.*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *Do not hit or apply strong force to the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) or the area around it. If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is severely hit or if there are cracks or damage caused by flying gravel or debris in the area around it, stop using the following systems and consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
  - *High Beam Control System (HBC)*
  - *Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)*
  - *Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)*
  - *Driver Attention Alert (DAA)*
  - *Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)*
  - *Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR)*
  - *Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)*
  - *Smart City Brake Support [Forward] (SCBS F)*
  - *Smart Brake Support (SBS)*
- *The direction in which the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is pointed has been finely adjusted. Do not change the installation position of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) or remove it. Otherwise, it could result in damage or malfunction.*
- *Always use tyres for all wheels that are of the specified size, and the same manufacturer, brand, and tread pattern. In addition, do not use tyres with significantly different wear patterns on the same vehicle as the system may not operate normally.*
- *The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) includes a function for detecting a soiled windscreen and informing the driver, however, depending on the conditions, it may not detect plastic shopping bags, ice or snow on the windscreen. In such cases, the system cannot accurately determine a vehicle ahead and may not be able to operate normally. Always drive carefully and pay attention to the road ahead.*

NOTE

- *In the following cases, the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) cannot detect target objects correctly, and each system may be unable to operate normally.*
  - *The height of the vehicle ahead is low.*
  - *You drive your vehicle at the same speed as the vehicle ahead.*
  - *Headlights are not turned on during the night or when going through a tunnel.*
- *In the following cases, the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) may not be able to detect target objects correctly.*
  - *Under bad weather condition, such as rain, fog and snow.*
  - *The window washer is being used or the windscreen wipers are not used when it's raining.*
  - *Ice, fog, snow, frost, rainfall, dirt, or foreign matter such as a plastic bag is stuck on the windscreen.*
  - *Trucks with low loading platforms and vehicles with an extremely low or high profile.*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *When driving next to walls with no patterning (including fences and longitudinally striped walls).*
- *The tail lights of the vehicle ahead are turned off.*
- *A vehicle is outside the illumination range of the headlights.*
- *The vehicle is making a sharp turn, or ascending or descending a steep slope.*
- *Entering or exiting a tunnel.*
- *Heavy luggage is loaded causing the vehicle to tilt.*
- *Strong light is shone at the front of the vehicle (back light or high-beam light from on-coming vehicles).*
- *There are many light emitters on the vehicle ahead.*
- *When the vehicle ahead is not equipped with tail lights or the tail lights are turned off at nighttime.*
- *Elongated luggage or cargo is loaded onto installed roof rails and covers the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*
- *Exhaust gas from the vehicle in front, sand, snow, and water vapour rising from manholes and grating, and water splashed into the air.*
- *When towing a malfunctioning vehicle.*
- *The vehicle is driven with tyres having significantly different wear.*
- *The vehicle is driven on down slopes or bumpy roads.*
- *There are water puddles on the road.*
- *The surroundings are dark such as during the night, early evening, or early morning, or in a tunnel or indoor parking lot.*
- *The illumination brightness of the headlights is reduced or the headlight illumination is weakened due to dirt or a deviated optical axis.*
- *The target object enters the blind spot of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*
- *A person or object bursts onto the road from the shoulder or cuts right in front of you.*
- *You change lanes and approach a vehicle ahead.*
- *When driving extremely close to the target object.*
- *Tyre chains or a temporary spare tyre is installed.*
- *The vehicle ahead has a special shape. For example, a vehicle towing a trailer house or a boat, or a vehicle carrier carrying a vehicle with its front pointed rearward.*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) cannot operate normally due to backlight or fog, the system functions related to the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) are temporarily stopped and the following warning lights turn on. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.*
  - *High Beam Control System (HBC) warning light (amber)*
  - *Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) warning light (amber)*
  - *Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) warning light*
  - *Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) warning light*
  - *Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) warning light (amber)*
- *If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) cannot operate normally due to high temperatures, the system functions related to the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) are temporarily stopped and the following warning lights turn on. However, this does not indicate a malfunction. Cool down the area around the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) such as by turning on the air conditioner.*
  - *High Beam Control System (HBC) warning light (amber)*
  - *Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) warning light (amber)*
  - *Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) warning light*
  - *Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) warning light*
  - *Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) warning light (amber)*
- *If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) detects that the windscreen is dirty or foggy, the system functions related to the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) are temporarily stopped and the following warning lights turn on. However, this does not indicate a problem. Remove the dirt from the windscreen or press the defroster switch and defog the windscreen.*
  - *High Beam Control System (HBC) warning light (amber)*
  - *Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) warning light (amber)*
  - *Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) warning light*
  - *Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) warning light*
  - *Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) warning light (amber)*
- *If there are recognizable cracks or damage caused by flying gravel or debris on the windscreen, always have the windscreen replaced. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for replacement.*

OwnersManuals2.com

- ***(With Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS))***
  - *The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) recognises pedestrians when all of the following conditions are met:*
    - *The height of a pedestrian is about 1 to 2 meters.*
    - *An outline such as the head, both shoulders, or the legs can be determined.*
  - *In the following cases, the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) may not be able to detect target objects correctly:*
    - *Multiple pedestrians are walking, or there are groups of people.*
    - *A pedestrian is close to a separate object.*
    - *A pedestrian is crouching, lying, or slouching.*
    - *A pedestrian suddenly jumps into the road right in front of the vehicle.*
    - *A pedestrian opens an umbrella, or is carrying large baggage or articles.*
    - *A pedestrian is in a dark location such as during the night, or blends into the background by wearing clothes matching the background colour.*

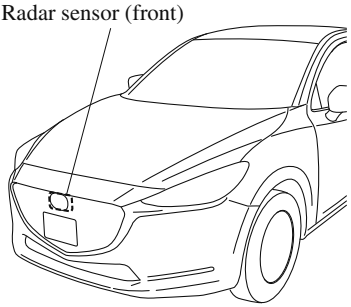
OwnersManuals2.com

Radar Sensor (Front)*

Your vehicle is equipped with a radar sensor (front).
The following systems also use the radar sensor (front).

- Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)
- Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS)
- Smart Brake Support (SBS)

The radar sensor (front) functions by detecting the radio waves reflected off a vehicle ahead or an obstruction sent from the radar sensor.
The radar sensor (front) is mounted behind the front emblem.



If the Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) Warning Light (amber) is illuminated, the area around the radar sensor may be dirty. Refer to “Warning Guidance” in the centre display (Type B audio).
Refer to If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes on page 7-34.

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ CAUTION

Heed the following precautions to assure correct operation of each system.

- *Do not adhere stickers (including transparent stickers) to the surface of the radiator grille and front emblem in and around the radar sensor (front), and do not replace the radiator grille and front emblem with any product that is not a genuine product designed for use with the radar sensor (front).*
- *The radar sensor (front) includes a function for detecting soiling of the radar sensor's front surface and informing the driver, however, depending on the conditions, it may require time to detect or it may not detect plastic shopping bags, ice or snow. If this occurs, the system may not operate correctly, therefore always keep the radar sensor (front) clean.*
- *Do not install a grille guard.*
- *If the front part of the vehicle has been damaged in a vehicle accident, the position of the radar sensor (front) may have moved. Stop the system immediately and always have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *Do not use the front bumper to push other vehicles or obstructions such as when pulling out of a parking space. Otherwise, the radar sensor (front) could be hit and its position deviated.*
- *Do not remove, disassemble, or modify the radar sensor (front).*
- *For repairs, replacement or paint work around the radar sensor (front), consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *Do not modify the suspension. If the suspension are modified, the vehicle's posture could change and the radar sensor (front) may not be able to correctly detect a vehicle ahead or an obstruction.*

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

- *Under the following conditions, the radar sensor (front) may not be able to detect vehicles ahead or obstructions correctly and each system may not operate normally.*
  - *The rear surface of a vehicle ahead does not reflect radio waves effectively, such as an unloaded trailer or an automobile with a loading platform covered by a soft top, vehicles with a hard plastic tailgate, and round-shaped vehicles.*
  - *Vehicles ahead with low vehicle height and thus less area for reflecting radio waves.*
  - *Visibility is reduced due to a vehicle ahead casting off water, snow, or sand from its tyres and onto your windscreen.*
  - *The boot/luggage compartment is loaded with heavy objects or the rear passenger seats are occupied.*
  - *Ice, snow, or soiling is on the front surface of the front emblem.*
  - *During inclement weather such as rain, snow, or sand storms.*
  - *When driving near facilities or objects emitting strong radio waves.*
- *Under the following conditions, the radar sensor (front) may not be able to detect vehicles ahead or obstructions.*
  - *The beginning and end of a curve.*
  - *Roads with continuous curves.*
  - *Narrow lane roads due to road construction or lane closures.*
  - *The vehicle ahead enters the radar sensor's blind spot.*
  - *The vehicle ahead is running abnormally due to accident or vehicle damage.*
  - *Roads with repeated up and down slopes*
  - *Driving on poor roads or unpaved roads.*
  - *The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is extremely short.*
  - *A vehicle suddenly comes close such as by cutting into the lane.*
- *To prevent incorrect operation of the system, use tyres of the same specified size, manufacturer, brand, and tread pattern on all 4 wheels. In addition, do not use tyres with significantly different wear patterns or tyre pressures on the same vehicle (Including the temporary spare tyre).*
- *If the battery power is weak, the system may not operate correctly.*
- *If the vehicle is driven on a road with little traffic and few vehicles ahead or obstructions for the radar sensor (front) to detect, the sensor detects that the radar sensor (front) is dirty and the Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) Warning Light (amber) may be temporarily turned on. However, it does not indicate a malfunction.*
- *The radar sensors are regulated by the relevant radio wave laws of the country in which the vehicle is driven. If the vehicle is driven abroad, authorization from the country in which the vehicle is driven may be required.*

OwnersManuals2.com

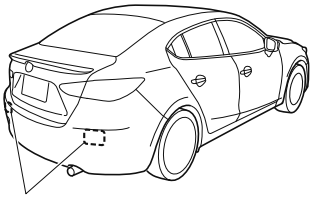
Radar Sensors (Rear)*

Your vehicle is equipped with radar sensors (rear). The following systems also use the radar sensors (rear).

- Blind Spot Monitoring system (BSM)
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

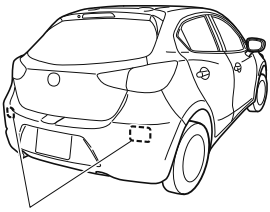
The radar sensors (rear) function by detecting the radio waves reflected off a vehicle approaching from the rear or an obstruction sent from the radar sensor.

Saloon



Radar sensors (rear)

Hatchback



Radar sensors (rear)

The radar sensors (rear) are installed inside the rear bumper, one each on the left and right sides.
Always keep the surface of the rear bumper near the radar sensors (rear) clean so that the radar sensors (rear) operate normally. Also, do not apply items such as stickers.
Refer to Exterior Care on page 6-59.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ CAUTION

If the rear bumper receives a severe impact, the system may no longer operate normally. Stop the system immediately and have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

NOTE

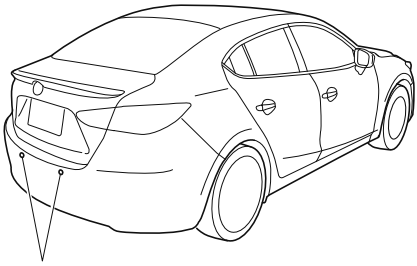
- *The detection ability of the radar sensors (rear) has limitations. In the following cases, the detection ability may lower and the system may not operate normally.*
  - *The rear bumper near the radar sensors (rear) has become deformed.*
  - *Snow, ice or mud adheres to the radar sensors (rear) on the rear bumper.*
  - *Under bad weather conditions such as rain, snow and fog.*
- *Under the following conditions, the radar sensors (rear) cannot detect target objects or it may be difficult to detect them.*
  - *Stationary objects on a road or a road side such as small, two-wheeled vehicles, bicycles, pedestrians, animals, and shopping carts.*
  - *Vehicle shapes which do not reflect radar waves well such as empty trailers with a low vehicle height and sports cars.*
- *Vehicles are shipped with the direction of the radar sensors (rear) adjusted for each vehicle to a loaded vehicle condition so that the radar sensors (rear) detect approaching vehicles correctly. If the direction of the radar sensors (rear) has deviated for some reason, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *For repairs or replacement of the radar sensors (rear), or bumper repairs, paintwork, and replacement near the radar sensors, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *Turn off the system while pulling a trailer or while an accessory such as a bicycle carrier is installed to the rear of the vehicle. Otherwise, the radio waves emitted by the radar will be blocked causing the system to not operate normally.*
- *The radar sensors are regulated by the relevant radio wave laws of the country in which the vehicle is driven. If the vehicle is driven abroad, authorization from the country in which the vehicle is driven may be required.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Ultrasonic Sensor (Rear)*

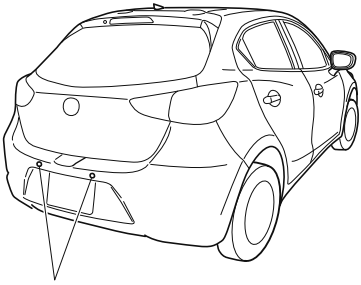
The ultrasonic sensors (rear) function by emitting ultrasonic waves which are reflected off obstructions at the rear and the returning ultrasonic waves are picked up by the ultrasonic sensors (rear).

Saloon



Ultrasonic sensor (rear)

Hatchback



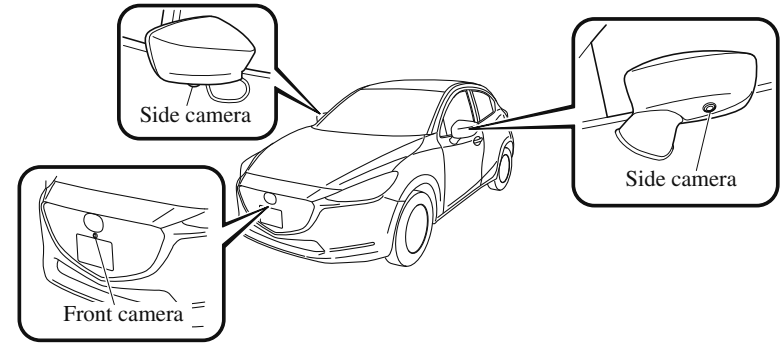
Ultrasonic sensor (rear)

The ultrasonic sensors (rear) are mounted in the rear bumper.

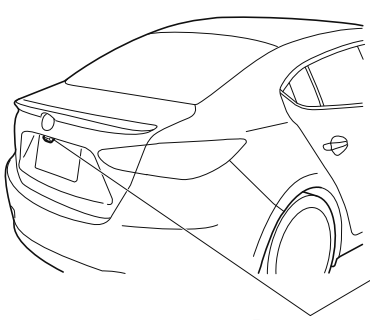
OwnersManuals2.com

Front Camera/Side Cameras/Rear Camera*

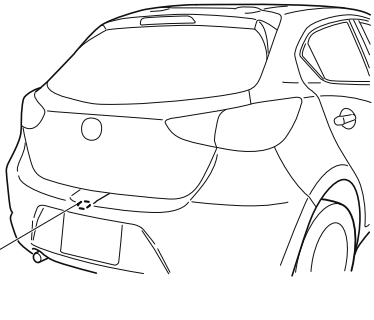
Your vehicle is equipped with a front camera, side cameras, and a rear camera. The 360° View Monitor uses each camera.
The front camera, side cameras, and rear camera shoot images of the area surrounding the vehicle.
Each camera is installed to the following positions.



Saloon



Hatchback



 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Cruise Control*

With cruise control, you can set and automatically maintain any speed of more than about 25 km/h (16 mph).

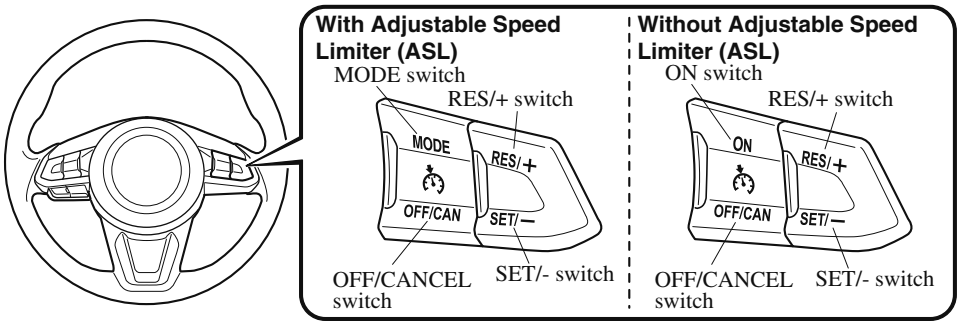
⚠ WARNING

Do not use the cruise control under the following conditions:
Using the cruise control under the following conditions is dangerous and could result in loss of vehicle control.

- *Hilly terrain*
- *Steep inclines*
- *Heavy or unsteady traffic*
- *Slippery or winding roads*
- *Similar restrictions that require inconsistent speed*

OwnersManuals2.com

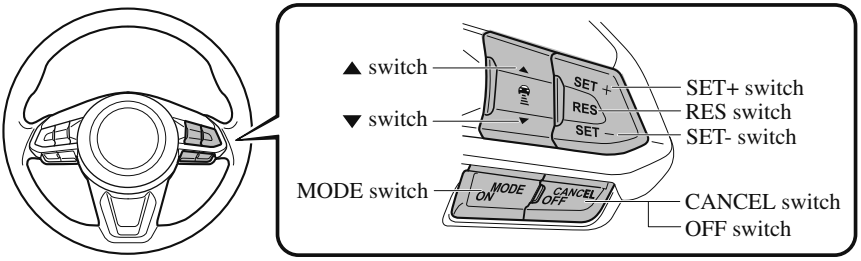
▼ Cruise Control Switch



NOTE

If your Mazda has the following steering switch, your Mazda is equipped with the Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) system.

Refer to Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) on page 4-129.



OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Cruise Main Indication (White), Cruise Set Indication (White)/ Indicator Light (Green)

Cruise main indication (white)

The cruise main indication (white) is displayed in the instrument cluster when the cruise control system is activated.



Cruise set indication (white)/indicator light (green)

The cruise set indication (white) is displayed in the instrument cluster and the cruise set indicator light (green) turns on when a cruising speed has been set.



▼ Activation/Deactivation

With Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL)

To activate the system, press the MODE switch. The cruise main indication (white) is displayed.
To deactivate the system, press the OFF/ CANCEL switch.
The cruise main indication (white) turns off.

NOTE
When the MODE switch is pressed while the cruise control system is operating, the cruise control system switches to the Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL).

Without Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL)

To activate the system, press the ON switch. The cruise main indication (white) is displayed.
To deactivate the system, press the OFF/ CANCEL switch.
The cruise main indication (white) turns off.

⚠ WARNING

Always turn off the cruise control system when it is not in use:
Leaving the cruise control system in an activation-ready state while the cruise control is not in use is dangerous as the cruise control could unexpectedly activate if the activation button is accidentally pressed, and result in loss of vehicle control and an accident.

NOTE
When the ignition is switched OFF, the system status before it was turned off is maintained. For example, if the ignition is switched OFF with the cruise control system operable, the system will be operable when the ignition is switched ON the next time.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ To Set Speed

1. **(With Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL))**
   Activate the cruise control system by pressing the MODE switch. The cruise main indication (white) is displayed.
   (Without Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL))
   Activate the cruise control system by pressing the ON switch. The cruise main indication (white) is displayed.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 25 km/h (16 mph).
3. Set the cruise control by pressing the SET/− switch at the desired speed. The cruise control is set at the moment the SET/− switch is pressed. Release the accelerator pedal simultaneously. The cruise set indication (white) is displayed and the cruise set indicator light (green) turns on.

NOTE

- *The cruise control speed setting cannot be performed under the following conditions:*
  - ***(Automatic transaxle)***
    The selector lever is in the P or N position.
  - ***(Manual transaxle)***
    The shift lever is in the neutral position.
  - *The parking brake is applied.*
  - ***(Vehicles with Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL))***
    The MODE switch for the Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL) is pressed.
- *Release the SET/− or RES/+ switch at the desired speed, otherwise the speed will continue increasing while the RES/+ switch is pressed and held, and continue decreasing while the SET/− switch is pressed and held (except when the accelerator pedal is depressed).*
- *On a steep grade, the vehicle may momentarily slow down while ascending, or speed up while descending.*
- *The cruise control will cancel if the vehicle speed decreases below 21 km/h (13 mph) when climbing a steep grade.*
- *The cruise control may cancel at about 15 km/h (9 mph) below the preset speed such as when climbing a long, steep grade.*

▼ To Increase Cruising Speed

Follow either of these procedures.

To increase speed using cruise control switch

Press the RES/+ switch and hold it. Your vehicle will accelerate. Release the switch at the desired speed.

Press the RES/+ switch and release it immediately to adjust the preset speed. Multiple operations will increase the preset speed according to the number of times it is operated.

Increasing speed with a single RES/+ switch operation

Instrument cluster display for vehicle speed indicated in km/h: 1 km/h (0.6 mph)
Instrument cluster display for vehicle speed indicated in mph: 1 mph (1.6 km/h)

OwnersManuals2.com

To increase speed using accelerator pedal

Depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate to the desired speed. Press the SET/− switch and release it immediately.

NOTE
Accelerate if you want to speed up temporarily when the cruise control is on. Greater speed will not interfere with or change the set speed. Take your foot off the accelerator to return to the set speed.

▼ To Decrease Cruising Speed

Press the SET/− switch and hold it. The vehicle will gradually slow.
Release the switch at the desired speed.

Press the SET/− switch and release it immediately to adjust the preset speed. Multiple operations will decrease the preset speed according to the number of times it is operated.

Decreasing speed with a single SET/− switch operation

Instrument cluster display for vehicle speed indicated in km/h: 1 km/h (0.6 mph)
Instrument cluster display for vehicle speed indicated in mph: 1 mph (1.6 km/h)

▼ To Resume Cruising Speed at More Than 25 km/h (16 mph)

If the cruise control system temporarily cancelled (such as applying the brake pedal) and the system is still activated, the most recent set speed will automatically resume when the RES/+ switch is pressed. If vehicle speed is below 25 km/h (16 mph), increase the vehicle speed up to 25 km/h (16 mph) or more and press the RES/+ switch.

▼ To Temporarily Cancel

To temporarily cancel the system, use one of these methods:

- Slightly depress the brake pedal.
- **(Manual transaxle)**
  Depress the clutch pedal.
- Press the OFF/CANCEL switch.

If the RES/+ switch is pressed when the vehicle speed is 25 km/h (16 mph) or higher, the system reverts to the previously set speed.

NOTE

- *If any of the following conditions occur, the cruise control system is temporarily cancelled.*
  - *The parking brake is applied.*
  - ***(Vehicles with Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL))***
    The MODE switch for the Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL) is pressed.
  - ***(Automatic transaxle)***
    The selector lever is in the P or N position.
  - ***(Manual transaxle)***
    The shift lever is in the neutral position.

OwnersManuals2.com

- *When the cruise control system is temporarily cancelled by even one of the applicable cancel conditions, the speed cannot be re-set.*
- ***(Automatic transaxle)***
  The cruise control cannot be cancelled while driving in manual mode (selector lever shifted from D to M position). Therefore, engine braking will not be applied even if the transaxle is shifted down to a lower gear. If deceleration is required, lower the set speed or depress the brake pedal.

▼ To Deactivate

When a cruising speed has been set (cruise set indication (white) is displayed/cruise set indicator light (green) turns on)

Long-press the OFF/CANCEL switch or press the OFF/CANCEL switch 2 times.

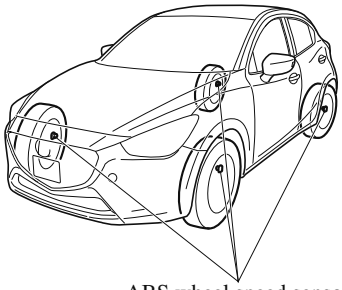
When a cruising speed has not been set (cruise main indication (white) is displayed)

Press the OFF/CANCEL switch.

OwnersManuals2.com

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System*

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) monitors the air pressure of all four tyres. If the air pressure of one or more tyres is too low, the system warns the driver by indicating the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light in the instrument cluster and operating a beep sound. The system monitors the tyre pressures indirectly using the data sent from the ABS wheel speed sensors.
To allow the system to operate correctly, the system needs to be initialized with the specified tyre pressure (value on the tyre pressure label). Follow the procedure and perform the initialization.
Refer to Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Initialization on page 4-225.
The warning light flashes when the system has a malfunction.
Refer to Warning Lights on page 4-40.



ABS wheel speed sensor

⚠ CAUTION

- *Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)*
  As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

OwnersManuals2.com

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.
Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly.
The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

➢ *To avoid false readings, the system samples for a little while before indicating a problem. As a result it will not instantaneously register a rapid tyre deflation or blow out.*

NOTE

Because this system detects slight changes in tyre conditions, the timing of the warning may be faster or slower in the following cases:

- *The size, manufacturer, or the type of tyres is different from the specification.*
- *The size, manufacturer, or the type of a tyre is different from the others, or the level of tyre wear is excessively different between them.*
- *A run-flat tyre, studless tyre, snow tyre, or tyre chains are used.*
- *An emergency tyre is used (The tyre pressure monitoring system warning light may flash and then continue illuminating).*
- *A tyre is repaired using the emergency flat tyre repair kit.*
- *The tyre pressure is excessively higher than the specified pressure, or the tyre pressure is suddenly lowered for some reason such as a tyre burst during driving.*
- *The vehicle speed is lower than about 15 km/h (9.3 mph) (including when the vehicle is stopped), or the drive period is shorter than 5 minutes.*
- *The vehicle is driven on an extremely rough road or a slippery, icy road.*
- *Hard steering and rapid acceleration/deceleration are repeated such as during aggressive driving on a winding road.*
- *Load on the vehicle is applied to a tyre such as by loading heavy luggage to one side of the vehicle.*
- *System initialization has not been implemented with the specified tyre pressure.*

OwnersManuals2.com

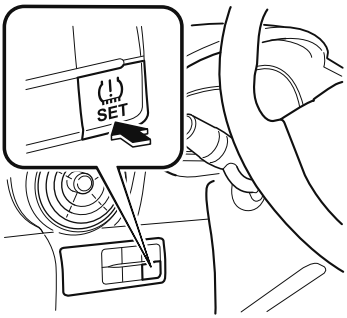
▼ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Initialization

In the following cases, system initialization must be performed so that the system operates normally.

- A tyre pressure is adjusted.
- Tyre rotation is performed.
- A tyre or wheel is replaced.
- The battery is replaced or completely drained.
- The tyre pressure monitoring system warning light is illuminated.

Initialization method

1. Park the car in a safe place and firmly apply the parking brake.
2. Let the tyres cool, then adjust the tyre pressure of all four (4) tyres to the specified pressure indicated on the tyre pressure label located on the driver's door frame (door open).
   Refer to Tyres on page 9-15.
3. Switch the ignition ON.
4. Press and hold the tyre pressure monitoring system set switch and verify that the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light in the instrument cluster flashes twice and a beep sound is heard once.



⚠ CAUTION

If the system initialization is performed without adjusting the tyre pressure, the system cannot detect the normal tyre pressure and it may not illuminate the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light even if a tyre pressure is low, or it may illuminate the light even if the pressures are normal.
Adjust the tyre pressure on all four tyres and initialize the system when the warning light is turned on. If the warning light turns on for a reason other than a flat tyre, the tyre pressure of all four tyres may have decreased naturally.
The system initialization will not be performed if the switch is pressed while the vehicle is being driven.

OwnersManuals2.com

Diesel Particulate Filter (SKYACTIV-D 1.5)

The diesel particulate filter collects and removes most of the particulate matter (PM) in the exhaust gas of a diesel engine. PM collected by the diesel particulate filter is cleared during normal driving, however, PM may not be removed and the diesel particulate filter indicator light may illuminate under the following conditions:

- If the vehicle is driven at 15 km/h (9 mph) or less continuously.
- If the vehicle is repeatedly driven for a short period of time (10 minute or less) or driven while the engine is cold.
- If the vehicle is idled for a long time.

NOTE

The engine sound and exhaust gas smell may change when PM is being removed while driving.

Diesel Particulate Filter Indicator Light

DPF

When illuminated

The particulate matter (PM) cannot be removed automatically and the amount of collected PM reaches a specified amount. After the engine has sufficiently warmed up (engine coolant temperature of 80 °C or more), depress the accelerator pedal and drive the vehicle at a speed of 20 km/h or more for about 15 to 20 minutes to eliminate the PM.

When flashing

Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

⚠ CAUTION

If the vehicle is continually driven as usual with the diesel particulate filter indicator light illuminated, PM increases and the indicator light may start flashing. If the diesel particulate filter indicator light starts flashing, have the vehicle inspected immediately at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). If the vehicle is not inspected and continues to be driven, the engine may malfunction.

NOTE

When the diesel particulate filter indicator light flashes, the engine output is restricted to protect the diesel particulate filter.

OwnersManuals2.com

Rear View Monitor*

The rear view monitor provides visual images of the rear of the vehicle when reversing.

⚠ WARNING

Always drive carefully confirming the safety of the rear and the surrounding conditions by looking directly with your eyes:

Reversing the vehicle by only looking at the screen is dangerous as it may cause an accident or a collision with an object. The rear view monitor is only a visual assist device when reversing the vehicle. The images on the screen may be different from the actual conditions.

⚠ CAUTION

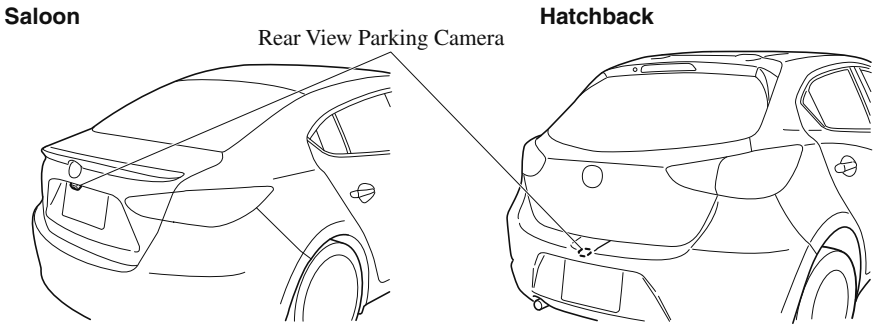
- *Do not use the rear view monitor under the following conditions: Using the rear view monitor under the following conditions is dangerous and could result in injury or vehicle damage or both.*
  - *Icy or snow-covered roads.*
  - *Tyre chains or a temporary spare tyre is installed.*
  - *The liftgate/boot lid is not fully closed.*
  - *The vehicle is on a road incline.*
- *When the display is cold, images may course across the monitor or the screen and may be dimmer than usual, which could cause difficulty in confirming the surrounding conditions of the vehicle. Always drive carefully confirming the safety of the rear and the surrounding conditions by looking directly with your eyes.*
- *Do not apply excessive force to the camera. The camera position and angle may deviate.*
- *Do not disassemble, modify, or remove it as it may no longer be waterproof.*
- *The camera cover is made of plastic. Do not apply degreasing agents, organic solvents, wax, or glass coating agents to the camera cover. If any are spilled on the cover, wipe off with a soft cloth immediately.*
- *Do not rub the camera cover forcefully with an abrasive or hard brush. The camera cover or lens may be scratched which might affect the images.*

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

- *If water, snow, or mud is stuck on the camera lens, wipe it off using a soft cloth. If it cannot be wiped off, use a mild detergent.*
- *If the camera temperature changes rapidly (Hot to cold, cold to hot), the rear view monitor may not operate correctly.*
- *When replacing the tyres, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). Replacing the tyres could result in deviation of the guide lines which appear on the display.*
- *If the vehicle's front, side, or rear has been involved in a collision, the alignment of the rear view parking camera (location, installation angle) may have deviated. Always consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have the vehicle inspected.*
- *If "No camera signal." is indicated in the display, there could be a problem with the camera. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*

▼ Rear View Parking Camera Location



▼ Switching to the Rear View Monitor Display

Shift the shift lever/selector lever to R with the ignition switched ON to switch the display to the rear view monitor display.

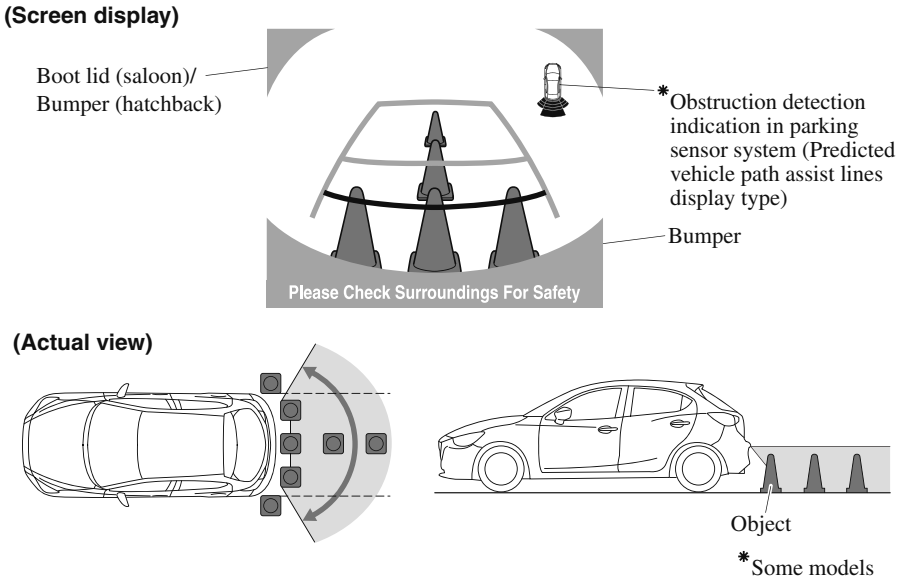
NOTE

When the shift lever/selector lever is shifted from R to another shift lever/selector lever position, the screen returns to the previous display.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Displayable Range on the Screen

The images on the screen may be different from the actual conditions.



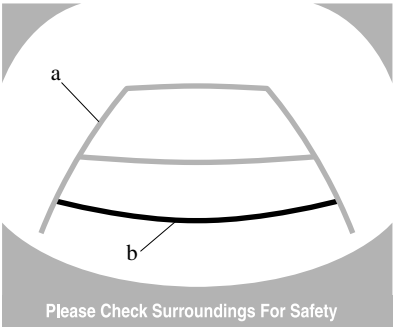
NOTE

- *The displayable range varies depending on the vehicle and road conditions.*
- *The displayable range is limited. Objects under the bumper or around the bumper ends cannot be displayed.*
- *The distance appearing in the displayed image is different from the actual distance because the rear view parking camera is equipped with a specific lens.*
- *Some optionally installed vehicle accessories may be picked up by the camera. Do not install any optional parts that can interfere with the camera view, such as illuminating parts or parts made of reflective material.*
- *It may be difficult to see the display under the following conditions, however, it does not indicate a malfunction.*
  - *In darkened areas.*
  - *When the temperature around the lens is high/low.*
  - *When the camera is wet such as on a rainy day or during periods of high humidity.*
  - *When foreign material such as mud is stuck around the camera.*
  - *When the camera lens reflects sunlight or headlight beams.*
- *Image display may be delayed if the temperature around the camera is low.*

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Viewing the Display

Guide lines which indicate the width of the vehicle (yellow) are displayed on the screen as a reference to the approximate width of the vehicle in comparison to the width of the parking space you are about to back into.
Use this display view for parking your vehicle in a parking space or garage.



a) Vehicle width guide lines (yellow)
These guide lines serve as a reference to the approximate width of the vehicle.
b) Distance guide lines.
These guide lines indicate the approximate distance to a point measured from the vehicle's rear (from the end of the bumper).

- The red and yellow lines indicate the points about 0.5 m (20 in) for the red line and 1.0 m (39 in) for the yellow lines from the rear bumper (at the centre point of each of the lines).

⚠ CAUTION

The guide lines on the screen are fixed lines. They are not synced to the driver's turning of the steering wheel. Always be careful and check the area to the vehicle's rear and the surrounding area directly with your eyes while backing up.

▼ Rear View Monitor Operation

The operation of the rear view monitor when reversing the vehicle varies depending on the traffic, road, and vehicle conditions. The amount of steering and the timing also varies depending on conditions, so confirm the surrounding conditions directly with your eyes and steer the vehicle in accordance with the conditions.
Be well aware of the above cautions prior to using the rear view monitor.

NOTE
Images displayed on the monitor from the rear view parking camera are reversed images (mirror images).

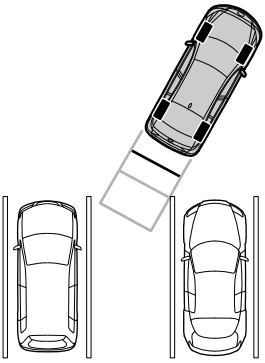
OwnersManuals2.com

1. Shift the shift lever/selector lever to R to switch the display to the rear view monitor display.
2. Confirming the surrounding conditions, reverse the vehicle.

(Display condition)

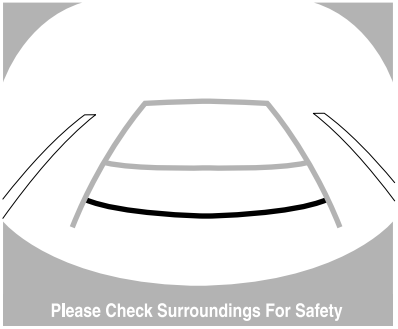


(Vehicle condition)

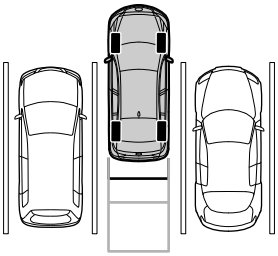


3. After your vehicle begins entering the parking space, continue backing up slowly so that the distance between the vehicle width lines and the sides of the parking space on the left and right are roughly equal.
4. Continue to adjust the steering wheel until the vehicle width guide lines are parallel to the left and right sides of the parking space.
5. Once they are parallel, straighten the wheels and back your vehicle slowly into the parking space. Continue checking the vehicle's surroundings and then stop the vehicle in the best possible position.

(Display condition)



(Vehicle condition)



6. When the shift lever/selector lever is shifted from R to another shift lever/selector lever position, the screen returns to the previous display.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

- *If the parking space has division lines, straighten the wheels when the vehicle width guide lines are parallel to them.*
- *Because there may be a difference between the displayed image, such as indicated below, and the actual conditions when parking, always verify the safety at the rear of the vehicle and the surrounding area directly with your eyes.*
  - *In the image of the parking space (or garage) displayed on the screen, the back end and distance guide lines may appear aligned in the monitor, but they may not actually be aligned on the ground.*
  - *When parking in a space with a division line on only one side of the parking space, the division line and the vehicle width guide line appear aligned in the monitor, but they may not actually be aligned on the ground.*



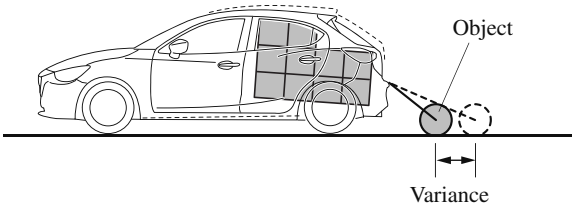
OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Variance Between Actual Road Conditions and Displayed Image

Some variance occurs between the actual road and the displayed road. Such variance in distance perspective could lead to an accident. Note the following conditions that may cause a variance in distance perspective.

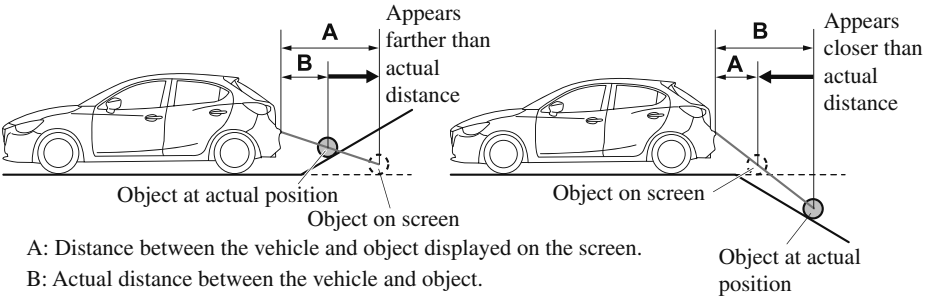
When the vehicle is tilted due to the weight of passengers and load

When the vehicle rear is lowered, the object displayed on the screen appears farther than the actual distance.



When there is a steep grade behind the vehicle

When there is a steep upgrade (downgrade) behind the vehicle, the object displayed on the screen appears farther (downgrade: closer) than the actual distance.



A: Distance between the vehicle and object displayed on the screen.

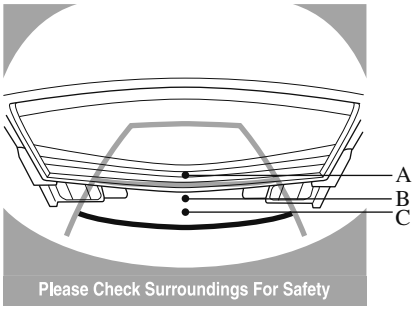
B: Actual distance between the vehicle and object.

OwnersManuals2.com

Three-dimensional object on vehicle rear

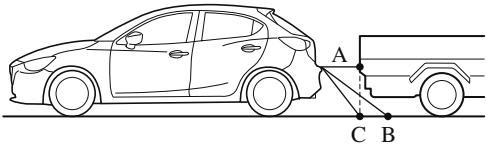
Because the distance guide lines are displayed based on a flat surface, the distance to the three-dimensional object displayed on the screen is different from the actual distance.

(Screen display)



Sensed distance on screen A>B>C

(Actual condition)



(Actual distance) B>C=A

▼ Picture Quality Adjustment

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust the picture quality of the rear view monitor while the vehicle is stopped:
Do not adjust the picture quality of the rear view monitor while driving the vehicle. Adjusting the picture quality of the rear view monitor such as brightness, contrast, colour, and tint while driving the vehicle is dangerous as it could distract your attention from the vehicle operation which could lead to an accident.

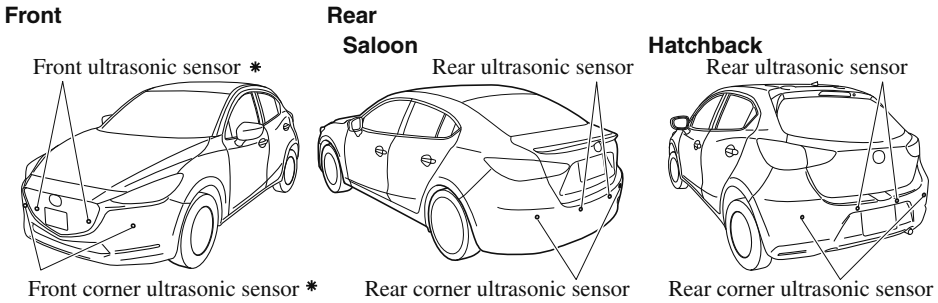
Picture quality adjustment must be done while the shift lever/selector lever is in reverse (R). There are four settings which can be adjusted including, brightness, contrast, tint, and colour. When adjusting, pay sufficient attention to the vehicle surroundings.

1. Select the ⚙ icon on the screen to display the tabs.
2. Select the desired tab item.
3. Adjust the brightness, contrast, tint, and colour using the slider.
   If you need to reset, press the reset button.
4. Select the ⚙ icon on the screen to close the tab.

OwnersManuals2.com

Parking Sensor System*

The parking sensors use ultrasonic sensors which detect obstructions around the vehicle when the vehicle is driven at low speeds, such as during garage or parallel parking, and a buzzer sound and detection indicator* notify the driver of the approximate distance from the vehicle to the surrounding obstruction.



*Some models.

⚠ WARNING

Do not rely completely on the parking sensor system and be sure to confirm the safety around your vehicle visually when driving:

This system can assist the driver in operating the vehicle in the forward and backward directions while parking. The detection ranges of the sensors are limited, therefore, driving the vehicle while relying only on the system may cause an accident. Always confirm the safety around your vehicle visually when driving.

NOTE

- *Do not install any accessories within the detection ranges of the sensors. It may affect the system operation.*
- *Depending on the type of obstruction and the surrounding conditions, the detection range of a sensor may narrow, or the sensors may not be able to detect obstructions.*
- *The system may not operate normally under the following conditions:*
  - *Mud, ice, or snow is adhering to the sensor area (Returns to normal operation when removed).*
  - *The sensor area is frozen (Returns to normal operation when the ice is thawed).*
  - *The sensor is covered by a hand.*
  - *The sensor is excessively shocked.*
  - *The vehicle is excessively tilted.*

OwnersManuals2.com

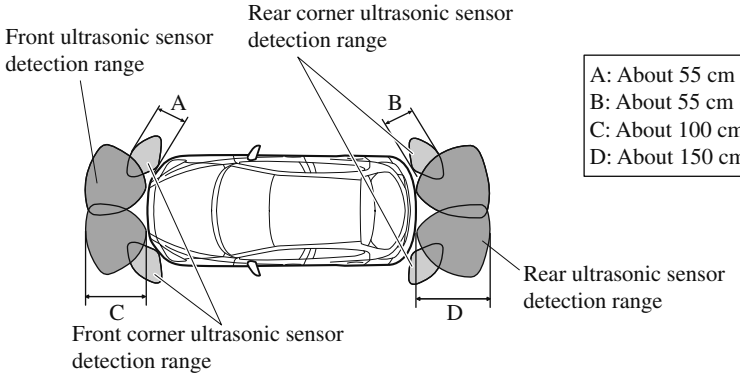
- *Under extremely hot or cold weather conditions.*
- *The vehicle is driven on bumps, inclines, gravel, or grass covered roads.*
- *Anything which generates ultrasound is near the vehicle, such as another vehicle's horn, the engine sound of a motorcycle, the air brake sound of a large-sized vehicle, or another vehicle's sensors.*
- *The vehicle is driven in heavy rain or in road conditions causing water-splash.*
- *A commercially-available wing pole or an aerial for a radio transmitter is installed to the vehicle.*
- *The vehicle is moving towards a tall or square curbstone.*
- *An obstruction is too close to the sensor.*

- *Obstructions under the bumper may not be detected. Obstructions that are lower than the bumper or thin which may have been initially detected may no longer be detected as the vehicle approaches more closely to the obstruction.*
- *The following types of obstructions may not be detected:*
  - *Thin objects such as wire or rope*
  - *Things which absorb sonic waves easily such as cotton or snow*
  - *Angular shaped objects*
  - *Very tall objects, and those which are wide at the top*
  - *Small, short objects*
- *Always have the system inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) if any shock is applied to the bumpers, even in a minor accident. If the sensors are deviated, they cannot detect obstructions.*
- ***(With front ultrasonic sensor and front ultrasonic corner sensor)***
  The system may have a malfunction if the beep does not operate or the indicator light does not illuminate when the parking sensor switch is turned on. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- ***(Without front ultrasonic sensor and front ultrasonic corner sensor)***
  The system may have a malfunction if the beep does not operate. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- ***(With front ultrasonic sensor and front ultrasonic corner sensor)***
  The system may have a malfunction if the beep sound which indicates a system malfunction is heard and the indicator light flashes. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- *The beeper which indicates a system malfunction may not be heard if the ambient temperature is extremely cold, or mud, ice, or snow adheres to the sensor area. Remove any foreign material from the sensor area.*

OwnersManuals2.com

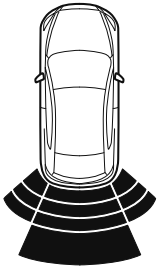
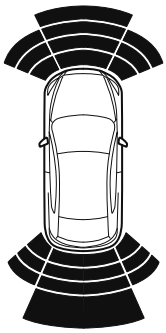
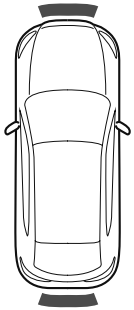
▼ Sensor Detection Range

The sensors detect obstructions within the following range.



A: About 55 cm (About 21.7 in)
B: About 55 cm (About 21.7 in)
C: About 100 cm (About 39.4 in)
D: About 150 cm (About 59.1 in)

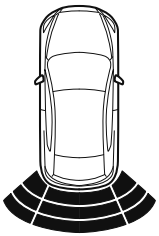
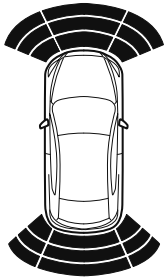
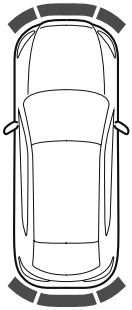
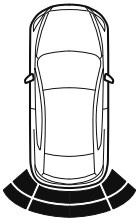
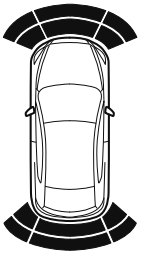
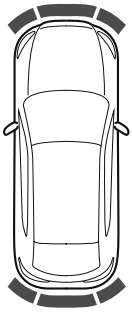
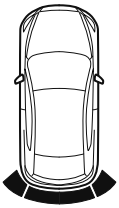
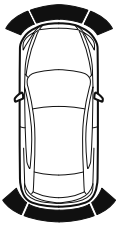
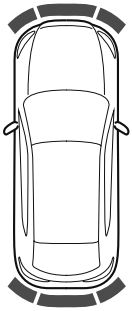
Viewing distance display

Display			Distance between vehicle and obstruction	
Without 360° view monitor		With 360° view monitor	Front ultrasonic sensor*/Front corner ultrasonic sensor*	Rear ultrasonic sensor/Rear Corner ultrasonic sensor
Without front ultrasonic sensor and front corner ultrasonic sensor	With front ultrasonic sensor and front corner ultrasonic sensor			
		Green 	Front ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 100—60 cm (39.4—23.6 in)	Rear ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 150—60 cm (59.1—23.6 in)

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Parking Sensor System

Display			Distance between vehicle and obstruction	
Without 360° view monitor		With 360° view monitor	Front ultrasonic sensor*/Front corner ultrasonic sensor*	Rear ultrasonic sensor/Rear Corner ultrasonic sensor
Without front ultrasonic sensor and front corner ultrasonic sensor	With front ultrasonic sensor and front corner ultrasonic sensor			
		Yellow 	Front ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 60—45 cm (23.6—17.7 in) Front corner ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 55—38 cm (21.7—14.9 in)	Rear ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 60—45 cm (23.6—17.7 in) Rear corner ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 55—38 cm (21.7—14.9 in)
		Amber 	Front ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 45—35 cm (17.7—13.8 in) Front corner ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 38—25 cm (15—9.8 in)	Rear ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 45—35 cm (17.7—13.8 in) Rear corner ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 38—25 cm (15—9.8 in)
		Red 	Front ultrasonic sensor: Within approx. 35 cm (13.8 in) Front corner ultrasonic sensor: Within approx. 25 cm (9.8 in)	Rear ultrasonic sensor: Within approx. 35 cm (13.8 in) Rear corner ultrasonic sensor: Within approx. 25 cm (9.8 in)

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

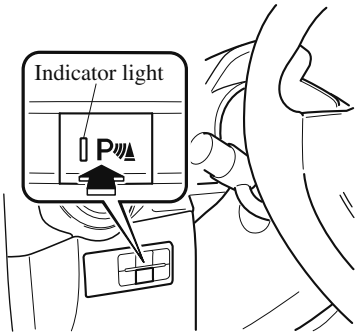
▼ Parking Sensor System Operation

Vehicles without front ultrasonic sensor/front corner ultrasonic sensor

The parking sensors can be used when the shift lever/selector lever is shifted to the R position with the ignition switched ON.

Vehicles with front ultrasonic sensor/front corner ultrasonic sensor

When the parking sensor switch is pressed with the ignition switched ON, the buzzer sounds and the indicator light turns on.
When the ignition is switched ON with the parking sensor activated, the indicator light turns on.
Press the switch again to stop the operation.



Operation conditions

The parking sensor system can be used when all of the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is switched ON.
- The parking sensor switch is turned on.

NOTE

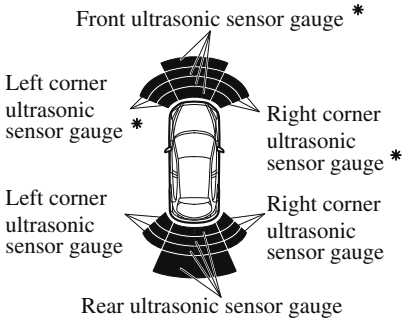
- ***(Automatic transaxle vehicle)***
  The detection indicator and buzzer of the front ultrasonic sensors/front corner ultrasonic sensors do not operate when the selector lever is in the P position.
- *The detection indicator and buzzer sound do not activate when the parking brake is applied.*

OwnersManuals2.com

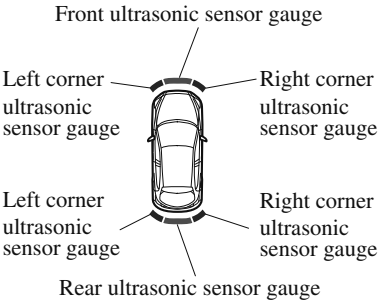
▼ Obstruction Detection Indication

The position of a sensor which has detected an obstruction is indicated. The gauge illuminates in different areas depending on the distance to an obstruction detected by the sensor.
As the vehicle approaches closer to an obstruction, the zone in the gauge closer to the vehicle illuminates.

Without 360° view monitor



With 360° view monitor



*Some models.

NOTE

The detection indicator can switch between display and non-display.
Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

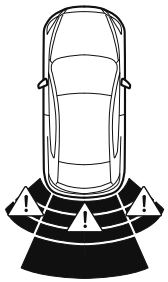
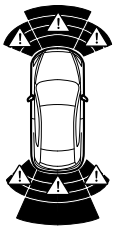
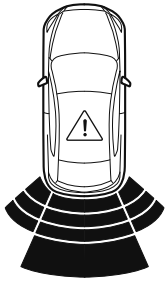
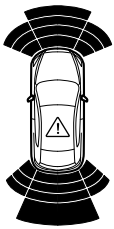
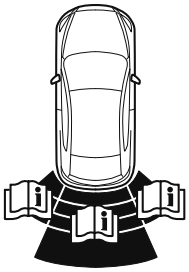
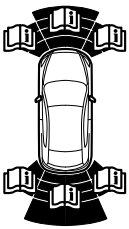
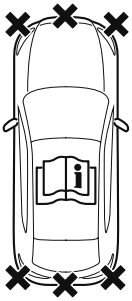
(Vehicles with 360° View Monitor)

When the detection indicator is set to "Display", even with the 360° view monitor not displayed, if a front ultrasonic sensor or a front corner ultrasonic sensor detects an obstruction, the 360° view monitor switches automatically to display. When an obstruction is no longer detected, the display switches to the display before the obstruction was detected. However, while the 360° view monitor is displayed, it continues to display no matter if an obstruction is detected or not.

OwnersManuals2.com

System problem notification

If a problem occurs, the driver is notified of the problem by the following indications.

	Detection Indicator			Solution
	Without 360° view monitor		With 360° view monitor	
	Without front ultrasonic sensor and front corner ultrasonic sensor	With front ultrasonic sensor and front corner ultrasonic sensor		
Disconnection				The system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.
System malfunction				The system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.
Frost/ soiling				Foreign matter may be on the sensor area corresponding to the obstruction detection indication shown. If the system does not recover, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

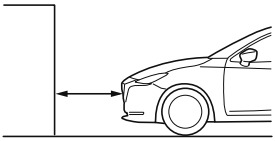
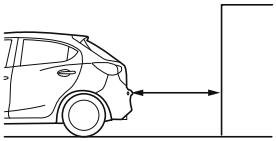
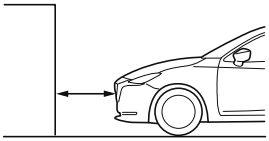
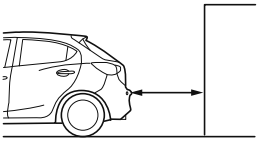
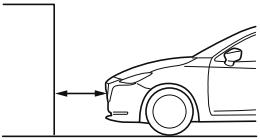
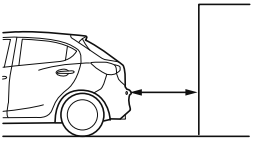
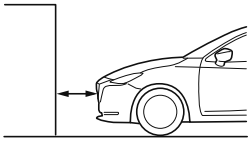
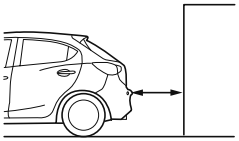
OwnersManuals2.com

Parking Sensor System

▼ Parking Sensor Warning Beep

The beeper sounds as follows while the system is operating.

Front Ultrasonic Sensor*, Rear Ultrasonic Sensor

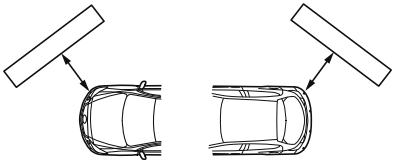
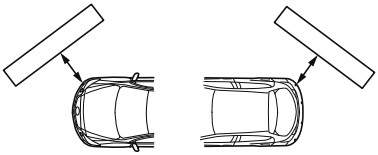
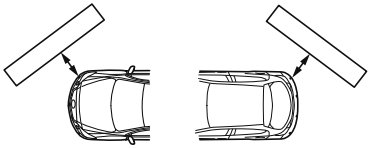
Distance detection area	Distance between vehicle and obstruction		Beeper sound*1
	Front ultrasonic sensor*	Rear ultrasonic sensor	
Farthest distance	Approx. 100—60 cm (39.3—23.6 in) 	Approx. 150—60 cm (59.0—23.6 in) 	Slow intermittent sound
Far distance	Approx. 60—45 cm (23.6—17.7 in) 	Approx. 60—45 cm (23.6—17.7 in) 	Medium intermittent sound
Middle distance	Approx. 45—35 cm (17.7—13.7 in) 	Approx. 45—35 cm (17.7—13.7 in) 	Fast intermittent sound
Close distance	Within approx. 35 cm (13.7 in) 	Within approx. 35 cm (13.7 in) 	Continuous sound

*1 The rate at which the intermittent sound beeps increases as the vehicle approaches the obstruction.

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Front Corner Ultrasonic Sensor*, Rear Corner Ultrasonic Sensor

Distance detection area	Distance between vehicle and obstruction Front corner ultrasonic*/Rear corner ultrasonic sensor	Beeper sound*1
Far distance	Approx. 55—38 cm (21.6—14.9 in) 	Medium intermittent sound
Middle distance	Approx. 38—25 cm (14.9—9.8 in) 	Fast intermittent sound
Close distance	Within approx. 25 cm (9.8 in) 	Continuous sound

*1 The rate at which the intermittent sound beeps increases as the vehicle approaches the obstruction.

NOTE

If an obstruction is detected in a zone for 6 seconds or more, the beep sound is stopped (except for the close-distance zone). If the same obstruction is detected in another zone, the corresponding beep sound is heard.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ When Warning Beep is Activated

The system notifies the driver of an abnormality by activating the beep sound and the indicator light.

Indicator/Beep	How to check
The indicator light flashes when the parking sensor switch is pressed at a vehicle speed of 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.	The system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.
The beep sound is not heard.	The system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.
The intermittent sound of the buzzer is heard 5 times.	Remove any foreign material from the sensor area. If the system does not recover, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
A certain obstruction detection indicator is continuously displayed.	Refer to Obstruction Detection Indication on page 4-240.

OwnersManuals2.com

5 Interior Features

Use of various features for ride comfort, including air-conditioning and audio system.

Air-Conditioning System..... 5-2
- Operating Tips..... 5-2
- Vent Operation..... 5-3
- Manual Type..... 5-5
- Fully Automatic Type..... 5-11

Before Using the Audio System..... 5-15
- Audio Control Switch*..... 5-15
- AUX/USB mode..... 5-17
- Aerial..... 5-19

Audio Set..... 5-21
- Power/Volume/Sound Controls..... 5-21
- Clock..... 5-23
- Operating the Radio..... 5-24
- How to use AUX mode..... 5-27
- How to use USB mode..... 5-28
- How to use iPod mode..... 5-31
- Error Indications..... 5-33
- Bluetooth®*..... 5-34
- Bluetooth® Preparation*..... 5-37
- Available Language*..... 5-47
- Security Setting*..... 5-49
- Bluetooth® Audio*..... 5-50
- Bluetooth® Hands-Free*..... 5-53
- Voice Recognition*..... 5-60
- Voice Recognition Learning Function (Speaker Enrolment)*..... 5-61
- Troubleshooting*..... 5-64
- Appendix..... 5-68

Mazda Connect..... 5-73
- What is Mazda Connect ?..... 5-73
- Mazda Connect Basic Operations..... 5-76

Interior Equipment..... 5-91
- Sunvisors..... 5-91
- Interior Lights..... 5-91
- Accessory Socket..... 5-93
- Wireless Charger (Qi)*..... 5-94
- Cup Holder..... 5-98
- Bottle Holder..... 5-99
- Storage Compartments..... 5-99
- Removable Ashtray*..... 5-102

OwnersManuals2.com

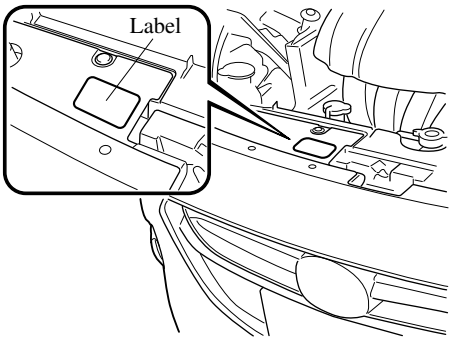
Operating Tips

- Operate the air-conditioning system with the engine running.
- To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the fan control dial on for a long period of time with the ignition switched ON when the engine is not running.
- **(With i-stop)**
  The airflow amount may decrease slightly while the i-stop function is operating.
- Clear all obstructions such as leaves, snow and ice from the bonnet and the air inlet in the cowl grille to improve the system efficiency.
- Use the air-conditioning system to defog the windows and dehumidify the air.
- The recirculate mode should be used when driving through tunnels or while in a traffic jam, or when you would like to shut off outside air for quick cooling of the interior.
- Use the outside air position for ventilation or windscreen defrosting.
- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows to let warm air escape, then run the air-conditioning system.

(With A/C switch)

- Run the air conditioner about 10 minutes at least once a month to keep internal parts lubricated.
- Have the air conditioner checked before the weather gets hot. Lack of refrigerant may make the air conditioner less efficient.

The refrigerant specifications are indicated on a label attached to the inside of the engine compartment. If the wrong type of refrigerant is used, it could result in a serious malfunction of the air conditioner. Consult a professional, government certified repairer for the inspection or repair because a special device is required for the air conditioner maintenance.
For details, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).



OwnersManuals2.com

Vent Operation

▼ Adjusting the Vents

Directing airflow

To adjust the direction of airflow, move the adjustment knob.

NOTE

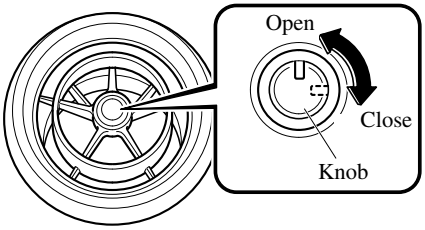
- *When using the air conditioner under humid ambient temperature conditions, the system may blow fog from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.*

Centre vents (driver) and Side vents

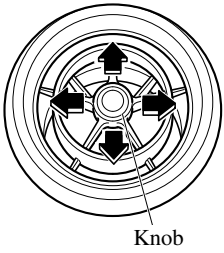
Air vent open/close

NOTE

The air vents can be fully opened and closed by operating the knob.

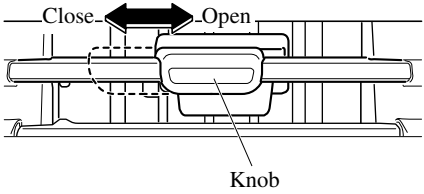


Airflow direction adjustment

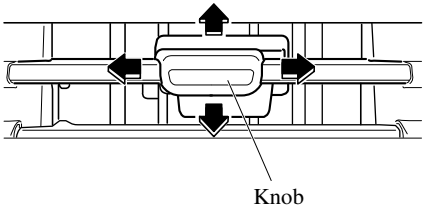


Centre vents (front passenger)

Air vent open/close



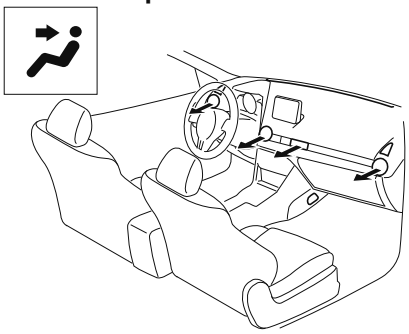
Airflow direction adjustment



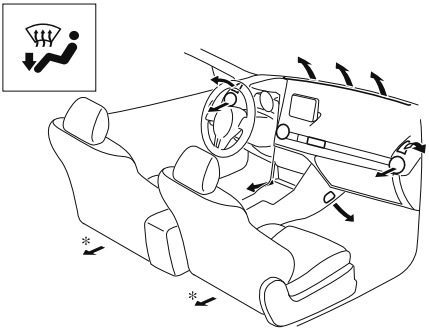
OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Selecting the Airflow Mode

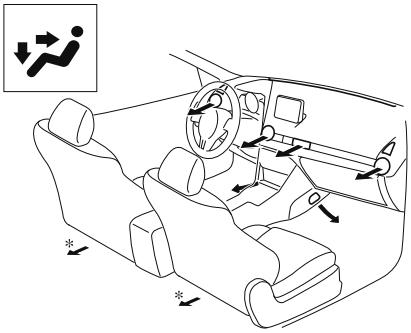
Instrument panel Vents



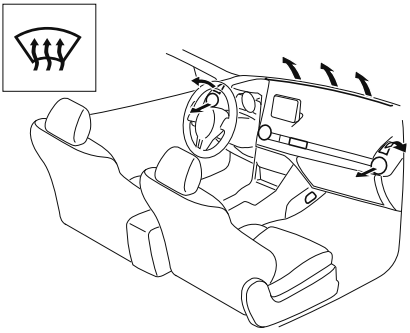
Defroster and Floor Vents



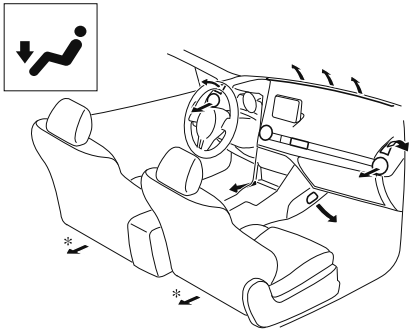
Instrument panel and Floor Vents



Defroster Vents



Floor Vents



* With rear vents

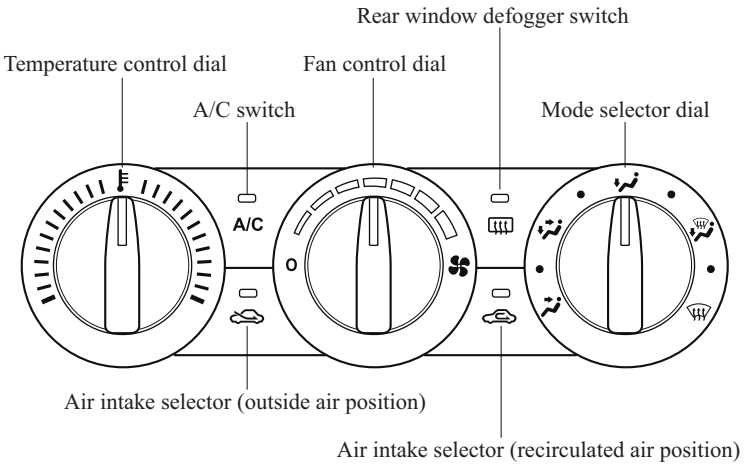
NOTE

The location airflow exits the air vents and the airflow amount may change depending on the open or close status of the air vents.

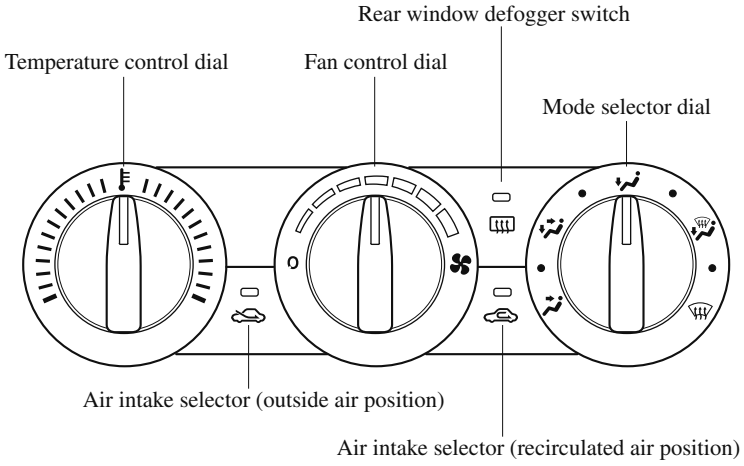
OwnersManuals2.com

Manual Type

Type A

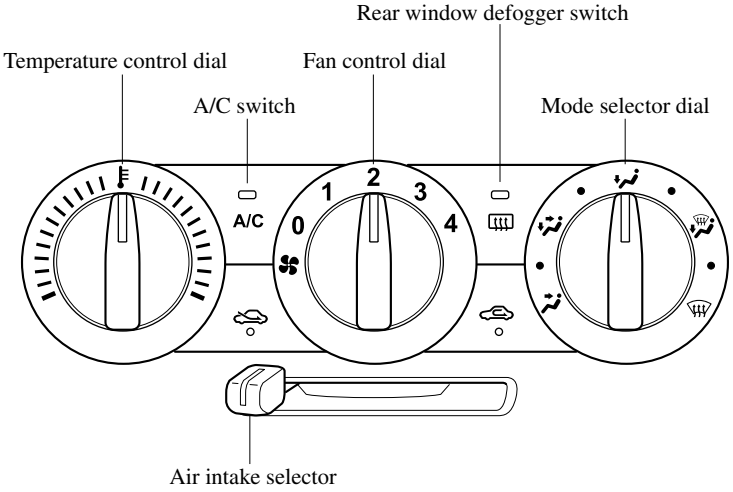


Type B

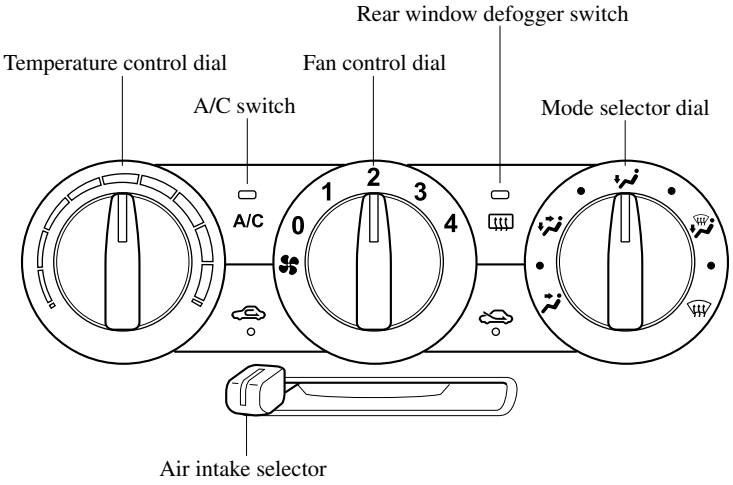


OwnersManuals2.com

Type C



Type D



OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Control Switches

Temperature control dial

(Type A/Type B/Type C)
This dial controls temperature. Turn it clockwise for hot and anticlockwise for cold.
(Type D)
This dial controls the air temperature when using the air conditioner. Turn it clockwise for cold.

Fan control dial

This dial allows variable fan speeds.
(Type A/Type B)
This fan has seven speeds.
(Type C/Type D)
0—Fan off
1—Low speed
2—Medium low speed
3—Medium high speed
4—High speed

Mode selector dial

Turn the mode selector dial to select airflow mode (page 5-4).

NOTE

- *The mode selector dial can be set at the intermediate positions (●) between each mode. Set the dial to an intermediate position if you want to split the airflow between the two modes.*
- *For example, when the mode selector dial is at the ● position between the and positions, airflow from the floor vent is less than that of the position.*

A/C switch (Type A/Type C/Type D)

(Type A)
Press the A/C switch to turn the air conditioner on. The indicator light on the switch will illuminate when the fan control dial is in any position except OFF.
(Type C/Type D)
Press the A/C switch to turn the air conditioner on. The indicator light on the switch will illuminate when the fan control dial is set at position 1, 2, 3, or 4.
Press the switch once again to turn the air conditioner off.

NOTE
The air conditioner may not function when the outside temperature approaches 0 °C (32 °F).

Air intake selector (Type A/Type B)

This switch controls the source of air entering the vehicle.
Press the air intake selector switch to alternate between the outside air and recirculated air positions.

Recirculated air position ( )

Outside air is shut off. Air within the vehicle is recirculated.

Outside air position ( )

Outside air is allowed to enter the cabin. Use this mode for ventilation or windscreen defrosting.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the recirculated air position in cold or rainy weather:
Using the recirculated air position in cold or rainy weather is dangerous as it will cause the windows to fog up. Your vision will be hampered, which could lead to a serious accident.

Air intake selector (Type C/Type D)

This lever controls the source of air entering the vehicle.

It is recommended that under normal conditions the switch be kept in the outside air position.

Recirculated air position ( )

Outside air is shut off. Air within the vehicle is recirculated.

Outside air position ( )

(Type C)
Outside air is taken into the vehicle. Use this position for normal ventilation and heating.
(Type D)
Outside air is taken into the vehicle. Use this position for normal ventilation.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the position in cold or rainy weather:
Using the position in cold or rainy weather is dangerous as it will cause the windows to fog up. Your vision will be hampered, which could lead to a serious accident.

Rear window defogger switch

Press the rear window defogger switch to defrost the rear window.
Refer to Rear Window Defogger on page 4-76.

▼ Heating*

1. Set the mode selector dial to the position.
2. **(Type A/Type B)**
   Set the air intake selector to the outside air position.
   (Type C)
   Set the air intake selector to the position.
3. Set the temperature control dial to the hot position.
4. Set the fan control dial to the desired speed.
5. **(Type A/Type C)**
   If dehumidified heating is desired, turn on the air conditioner.

NOTE

- *If the windscreen fogs up easily, set the mode selector dial to the position.*
- ***(Type A/Type C)***
  If cooler air is desired at face level, set the mode selector dial to the position and adjust the temperature control dial to maintain maximum comfort.
- *The air to the floor is warmer than air to the face (except when the temperature control dial is set at the extreme hot or cold position).*

▼ Cooling (With air conditioner)

1. Set the mode selector dial to the position.
2. Set the temperature control dial to the cold position.

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

3. Set the fan control dial to the desired speed.
4. Turn on the air conditioner by pressing the A/C switch.
5. After cooling begins, adjust the fan control dial and temperature control dial as needed to maintain maximum comfort.

⚠ CAUTION

If the air conditioner is used while driving up long hills or in heavy traffic, monitor the high engine coolant temperature warning light to see if it is illuminated or flashing (page 4-39).
The air conditioner may cause engine overheating. If the warning light is illuminated or flashing, turn the air conditioner off (page 7-29).

NOTE

- ***(Type A)***
  When maximum cooling is desired, set the temperature control dial to the extreme cold position and set the air intake selector to the recirculated air position, then turn the fan control dial fully clockwise.
- ***(Type C/Type D)***
  When maximum cooling is desired, set the temperature control dial to the extreme cold position and set the air intake selector to the recirculated air position, then set the fan control dial to position 4.
- ***(Type A/Type C)***
  If warmer air is desired at floor level, set the mode selector dial to the position and adjust the temperature control dial to maintain maximum comfort.
- *The air to the floor is warmer than air to the face (except when the temperature control dial is set at the extreme hot or cold position).*

▼ Ventilation

1. Set the mode selector dial to the position.
2. **(Type A/Type B)**
   Set the air intake selector to the outside air position.
   (Type C/Type D)
   Set the air intake selector to the position.
3. Set the temperature control dial to the desired position.
4. Set the fan control dial to the desired speed.

▼ Windscreen Defrosting and Defogging

1. Set the mode selector dial to the position.
2. **(Type C/Type D)**
   Set the air intake selector to the position.
3. Set the temperature control dial to the desired position.
4. Set the fan control dial to the desired speed.
5. **(Type A/Type C)**
   If dehumidified heating is desired, turn on the air conditioner.
   (Type D)
   Press the A/C switch to turn on the air conditioner.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ WARNING

Do not defog the windscreen using the position with the temperature control set to the cold position (Type A/Type B/Type C):
Using the position with the temperature control set to the cold position is dangerous as it will cause the outside of the windscreen to fog up. Your vision will be hampered, which could lead to a serious accident. Set the temperature control to the hot or warm position when using the position.

Do not leave the air conditioner in the position with the temperature control set to cold after the windscreen has defogged (Type D):
Leaving the air conditioner in the position with the temperature control set to cold after the windscreen has defogged is dangerous as the outside of the windscreen will fog up. Your vision will be hampered, which could lead to a serious accident.
Set the mode selector dial except the position and turn on the windscreen wipers to clear the window.

NOTE

- ***(Type A)***
  For maximum defrosting, turn on the air conditioner, set the temperature control dial to the extreme hot position, and turn the fan control dial fully clockwise.
- ***(Type C)***
  For maximum defrosting, turn on the air conditioner, set the temperature control dial to the extreme hot position, and the fan control dial to position 4.
- ***(Type A/Type C)***
  If warm air is desired at the floor, set the mode selector dial to the position.
- ***(Type A/Type B)***
  In the position, the outside air position is automatically selected. The air intake selector cannot be changed to the recirculated air position.

▼ Dehumidifying (With air conditioner)

Operate the air conditioner in cool or cold weather to help defog the windscreen and side windows.

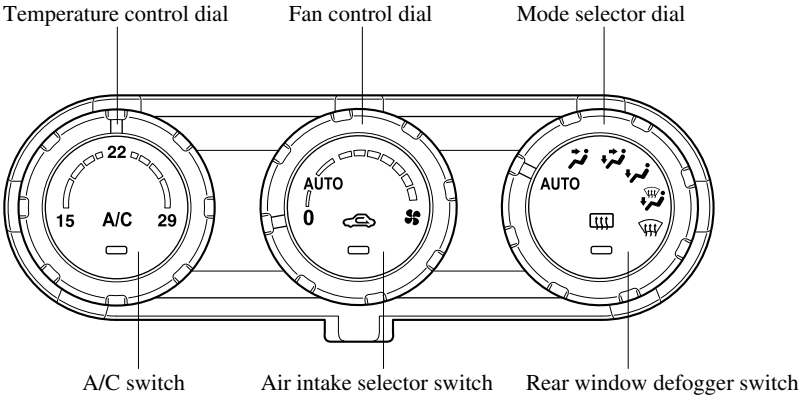
1. Set the mode selector dial to the desired position.
2. **(Type A)**
   Set the air intake selector to the outside air position.
   (Type C/Type D)
   Set the air intake selector to the position.
3. Set the temperature control dial to the desired position.
4. Set the fan control dial to the desired speed.
5. Turn on the air conditioner by pressing the A/C switch.

NOTE
(Type A/Type C)
One of the functions of the air conditioner is dehumidifying the air and, to use this function, the temperature does not have to be set to cold. Therefore, set the temperature control dial to the desired position (hot or cold) and turn on the air conditioner when you want to dehumidify the cabin air.

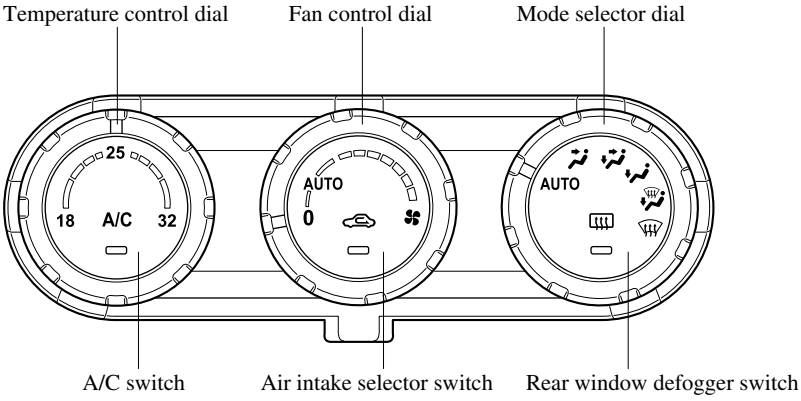
OwnersManuals2.com

Fully Automatic Type

European model



Except European model



OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Control Switches

Temperature control dial

This dial controls temperature. Turn it clockwise for hot and anticlockwise for cold.

Fan control dial

The fan has seven speeds.

AUTO position

The amount of airflow will be automatically controlled in accordance with the set temperature.

Except AUTO position

The airflow amount can be adjusted to the desired level by turning the dial.

0 position

To turn off the system, set the dial to 0 position.

Mode selector dial

Turn the mode selector dial to select airflow mode (page 5-4).

AUTO position

The airflow mode automatically adjusts to the selected temperature.

Except AUTO position

The desired airflow position can be selected by turning the dial.

NOTE

- *With the airflow mode set to the position and the temperature control dial set at a medium temperature, heated air is directed to the feet and air at a comparably lower temperature will flow through the central, left and right vents.*
- *When the fan control dial is ON, and the mode selector dial is in the position, the air conditioner is automatically turned on and the outside air position is automatically selected to defrost the windscreen.*

A/C switch

The air conditioner (cooling/dehumidifying functions) can be turned on or off by pressing the switch while the fan control dial is at a position other than 0. The indicator light turns on while the air conditioner is operating.

NOTE

The air conditioner may not function when the outside temperature approaches 0 °C (32 °F).

Air intake selector

Outside or recirculated air positions can be selected. Press the switch to select outside/recirculated air positions.

Recirculated air position (indicator light illuminated)

Outside air is shut off. Use this position when going through tunnels, driving in congested traffic (high engine exhaust areas) or when quick cooling is desired.

OwnersManuals2.com

Outside air position (indicator light turned off)

Outside air is allowed to enter the cabin. Use this mode for ventilation or windscreen defrosting.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the position in cold or rainy weather:

Using the position in cold or rainy weather is dangerous as it will cause the windows to fog up. Your vision will be hampered, which could lead to a serious accident.

Rear window defogger switch

Press the rear window defogger switch to defrost the rear window.
Refer to Rear Window Defogger on page 4-76.

▼ Operation of Automatic Air Conditioner

1. Set the mode selector dial to the AUTO position.
2. Set the air intake selector to the outside air position (indicator light turned off).

   NOTE

   If the recirculated air position is used for long periods in cold weather or high humidity, the windscreen may fog up more easily.
3. Set the fan control dial to the AUTO position.
4. Press the A/C switch to operate the air conditioner (turn indicator light on).
5. Set the temperature control dial to the desired position.
6. To turn off the system, set the fan control dial to the 0 position.

NOTE

- ***(European models)***
  Set the control dial to the recommended temperature of 22 °C (72 °F), and then adjust it as desired.
- ***(Except European models)***
  Set the control dial to the recommended temperature of 25 °C (77 °F), and then adjust it as desired.
- *Setting the temperature to maximum hot or cold will not provide the desired temperature at a faster rate.*
- *When selecting heat, the system will restrict airflow until it has warmed to prevent cold air from blowing out of the vents.*

▼ Windscreen Defrosting and Defogging

Set the mode selector dial to the position and turn the fan control dial to the desired speed.
In this position, the outside air position is automatically selected, and when the fan control dial is ON, the air conditioner automatically turns on. The air conditioner will directly dehumidify the air to the front windscreen and side windows (page 5-4). Airflow amount will be increased.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ WARNING

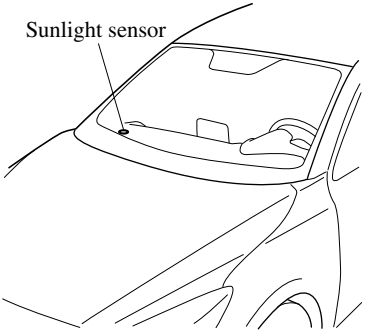
Set the temperature control to the hot or warm position when defogging (position):
Using the position with the temperature control set to the cold position is dangerous as it will cause the outside of the windscreen to fog up. Your vision will be hampered, which could lead to a serious accident.

NOTE
Use the temperature control dial to increase the air flow temperature and defog the windscreen more quickly.

▼ Sunlight/Temperature Sensor

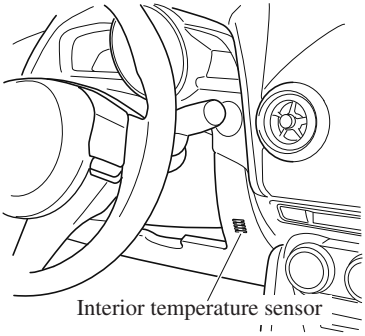
Sunlight sensor

Do not place objects on the sunlight sensor. Otherwise, the interior temperature may not adjust correctly.



Interior temperature sensor

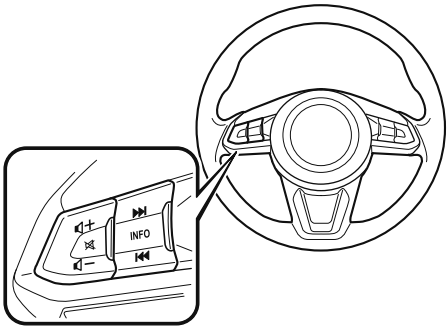
Do not cover the interior temperature sensor. Otherwise, the interior temperature may not adjust correctly.



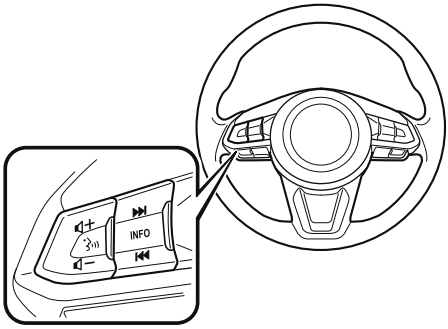
OwnersManuals2.com

Audio Control Switch*

Without Bluetooth® Hands-Free

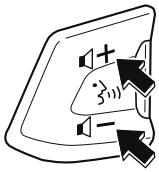


With Bluetooth® Hands-Free



▼ Adjusting the Volume

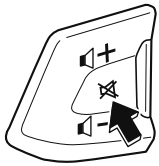
To increase the volume, press up the volume switch (+).
To decrease the volume, press down the volume switch (−).



▼ Mute Switch*

Press the mute switch (🔇) once to mute audio, press it again to resume audio output.

NOTE
If the ignition is switched off with the audio muted, the mute will be cancelled. Therefore, when the engine is restarted, the audio is not muted. To mute the audio again, press the mute switch (🔇).



OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Seek Switch

AM/MW*/LW*/FM radio

Press the seek switch (⏮, ⏭). The radio switches to the next/previous stored station in the order that it was stored.
Press and hold the seek switch (⏮, ⏭) to seek all usable stations at a higher or lower frequency whether programmed or not.

Radio stations which have been previously stored in the favourite radio can be called up by pressing the seek switch (⏮, ⏭) while any radio station stored in the favourite radio is being received. Radio stations can be called up in the order they were stored with each press of the switch (⏮, ⏭).



DAB radio*

Press the Seek switch (⏮, ⏭) while listening to DAB radio to call up a station previously stored to the favourites list. With each operation of the switch, radio stations can be called up in the order they were stored.
Press and hold the seek switch (⏭) to go to the next station, (⏮) to return to the previous station.

USB Audio/Bluetooth® Audio*

Press the seek switch (⏭) to skip forward to the beginning of the next track.
Press the seek switch (⏮) within a few seconds after playback begins to track down to the beginning of the previous track.
Press the seek switch (⏮) after a few seconds have elapsed to start playback from the beginning of the current track.
Press and hold the seek switch (⏮, ⏭) to continuously switch the tracks up or down.

Aha™*/Stitcher™ Radio *

Press the seek switch (⏭) to skip forward to the beginning of the next track.
Press and hold the seek switch (⏭) to evaluate the playback of the current song as “Like”.
Press and hold the seek switch (⏮) to evaluate the playback of the current song as “Dislike”.

 *Some models.

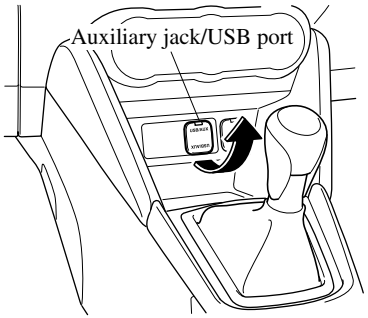
OwnersManuals2.com

AUX/USB mode

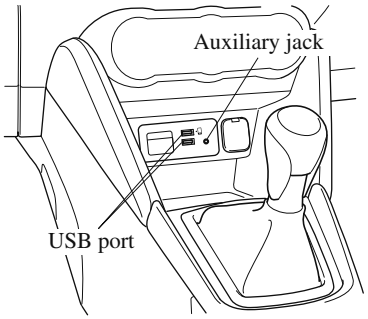
Audio can be heard from the vehicle's speakers by connecting a commercially-available portable audio unit to the auxiliary jack.
A commercially-available, non-impedance (3.5ϕ) stereo mini plug lead is required. Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for details.
In addition, audio can be played from the vehicle audio device by connecting a USB device to the USB port.

NOTE
The SD card slot is for the navigation system. For vehicles with the navigation system, the SD card (Mazda genuine) with stored map data is inserted into the SD card slot and used.

Type A



Type B



① How to use AUX mode.....page 5-27
② How to use USB mode..... page 5-28
③ How to use iPod mode.....page 5-31

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the portable audio unit or a similar product while driving the vehicle:
Adjusting the portable audio unit or a similar product while driving the vehicle is dangerous as it could distract your attention from the vehicle operation which could lead to a serious accident. Always adjust the portable audio unit or a similar product while the vehicle is stopped.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ CAUTION

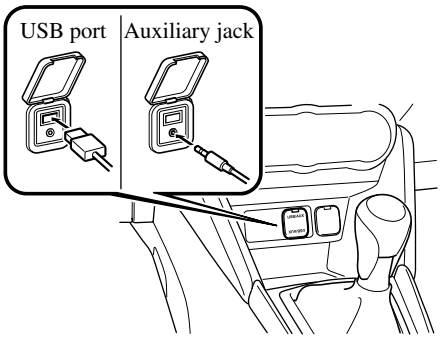
Depending on the portable audio device, noise may occur when the device is connected to the vehicle accessory socket. (If noise occurs, do not use the accessory socket.)

NOTE

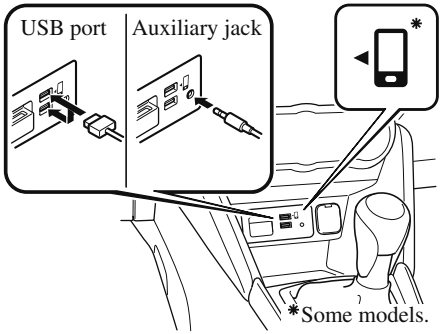
- *This mode may not be usable depending on the portable audio device to be connected.*
- *Before using the auxiliary jack/USB port, refer to the instruction manual for the portable audio device.*
- *Use a commercially-available, non-impedance (3.5ϕ) stereo mini plug for connecting the portable audio unit to the auxiliary jack. Before using the auxiliary jack, read the manufacturer's instructions for connecting a portable audio unit to the auxiliary jack.*
- *To prevent discharging of the battery, do not use the auxiliary input for long periods with the engine off or idling.*
- *When connecting a device to the auxiliary jack or USB port, noise may occur depending on the connected device. If the device is connected to the vehicle's accessory socket, the noise can be reduced by unplugging it from the accessory socket.*

▼ How to connect USB port/Auxiliary jack

Type A



Type B



Connecting a device

1. If there is a cover on the AUX jack or USB port, remove the cover.
2. Connect the connector on the device to the USB port.

Connecting with a connector lead

1. If there is a cover on the AUX jack or USB port, remove the cover.
2. Connect the device plug/connector lead to the auxiliary jack/USB port.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ WARNING

Do not allow the connection plug cord to get tangled with the parking brake or the shift lever (manual transaxle)/selector lever (automatic transaxle):
Allowing the plug cord to become tangled with the parking brake or the shift lever (manual transaxle)/selector lever (automatic transaxle) is dangerous as it could interfere with driving, resulting in an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not place objects or apply force to the auxiliary jack/USB port with the plug connected.

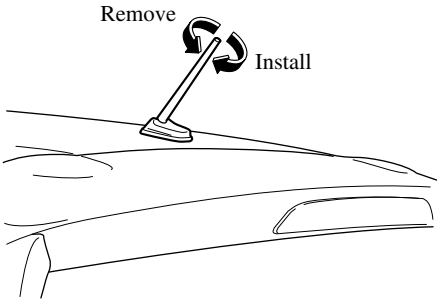
NOTE

- *Insert the plug into the auxiliary jack/USB port securely.*
- *Insert or pull out the plug with the plug perpendicular to the auxiliary jack/USB port hole.*
- *Insert or remove the plug by holding its base.*
- ***(Vehicles with USB port indicated with)***
  Use the USB port indicated by the mark when using Apple CarPlay and Android Auto™.

Aerial

Type A*

To remove the aerial, turn it anticlockwise.
To install the aerial, turn it clockwise.
Make sure the aerial is securely installed.

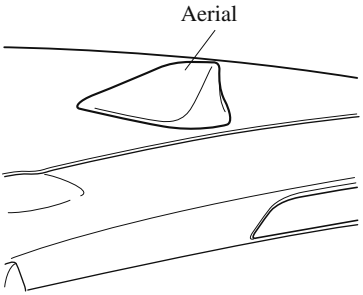


⚠ CAUTION

➢ *To prevent damage to the aerial, remove it before entering a car wash facility or passing beneath a low overhead clearance.*

NOTE
When leaving your vehicle unattended, we recommend that you remove the aerial and store it inside the vehicle.

Type B*



*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Type C*

The aerial is embedded into the window glass.

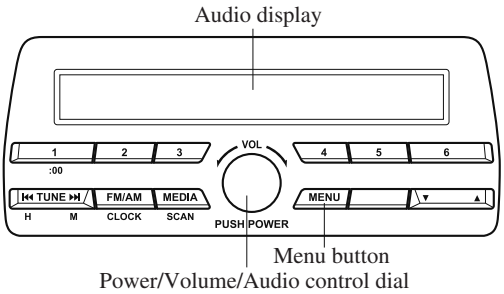
⚠ CAUTION

When washing the inside of the window which has an aerial, use a soft cloth dampened in lukewarm water, gently wiping the aerial lines.
Use of glass cleaning products could damage the aerial.

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Power/Volume/Sound Controls



▼ Power ON/OFF

Switch the ignition to ACC or ON. Press the power/volume dial to turn the audio system on. Press the power/volume dial again to turn the audio system off.

▼ Volume adjustment

To adjust the volume, turn the power/volume dial. Turn the power/volume dial clockwise to increase volume, anticlockwise to decrease it.

▼ Audio sound adjustment

1. Press the menu button (**MENU**) to select the function. The selected function will be indicated.
2. Turn the audio control dial to adjust the selected functions as follows:

Indication	Setting value	
	Turn Anti-clockwise	Turn Clockwise
AF*1 (Setting Alternative Frequency (AF))	Off	On
REG*1 (Setting Regional Programme (REG))	Off	On
ALC (Automatic volume adjustment)	Level decrease	Level increase
BASS (Low pitch sound)	Decrease bass	Increase bass
TREB (Treble sound)	Decrease treble	Increase treble
FADE (Front/back volume balance)	Shift the sound to the front	Shift the sound to the rear
BAL (Left/right volume balance)	Shift the sound to the left	Shift the sound to the right
BEEP (Audio operation sound)	Off	On
BT SETUP*2	Select mode	
12Hr < > 24Hr (12 Hr/24 Hr time adjustment)	12Hr (Flashing)	24Hr (Flashing)

*1 With Radio Data System (RDS)
*2 Depending on the model, this function may not be available.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE
*If not operated for several seconds, the display returns to the previous display. To reset bass, treble, fade, and balance, press the menu button (***MENU***) for 2 seconds. The unit will beep and "CLEAR" will be displayed.*

AF (Setting Alternative Frequency (AF))*

The AF function of the Radio Data System (RDS) can be set on or off.
Refer to Radio Data System (RDS) on page 5-26.

REG (Setting Regional Programme (REG))*

The REG function of the Radio Data System (RDS) can be set on or off.
Refer to Radio Data System (RDS) on page 5-26.

ALC (Automatic volume adjustment)

The automatic level control (ALC) changes the audio volume automatically according to the vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the higher the volume increases. ALC has ALC OFF and ALC LEVEL 1 to 7 modes. At ALC LEVEL 7, the amount that the volume can increase is at the maximum. Select the mode according to the driving conditions.

BEEP (Audio operation sound)

The setting for the operation sound when pressing and holding a button can be changed. The initial setting is ON. Set to OFF to mute the operation sound.

BT SETUP mode*

Music and other audio such as voice data recorded on portable audio devices and mobile phones available on the market which are equipped with the Bluetooth® transmission function can be listened to via wireless transmission over the vehicle's speakers. Using the BT SETUP mode, these devices can be programmed to the Bluetooth® unit or changed (page 5-37).

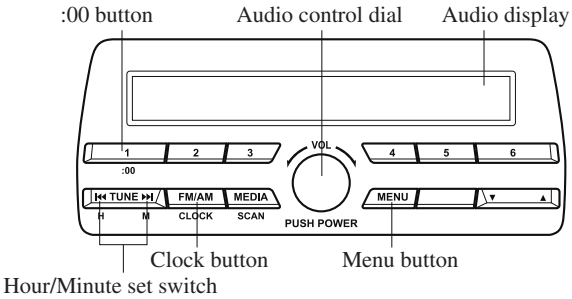
12Hr < > 24Hr (12 Hr/24 Hr time adjustment)

Rotating the audio control dial switches the display between 12 and 24-hour clock time (page 5-23).

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Clock



▼ Setting the time

The clock can be set at any time when the ignition is switched to ACC or ON.

1. To adjust the time, press the clock button (**FM/AM**) for about 2 seconds until a beep is heard.
2. The clock's current time will flash.
   Time adjustment
   - To adjust the time, press the hour/minute set button (⏮, ⏭) while the clock's current time is flashing.
   - The hours advance while the hour set button (⏮) is pressed. The minutes advance while the minute set button (⏭) is pressed.
3. Press the clock button (**FM/AM**) again to start the clock.

▼ Time resetting

1. Press the clock button (**FM/AM**) for about 2 seconds until a beep is heard.
2. Press the :00 button (1).
3. When the button is pressed, the time will be reset as follows:
   (Example)
   12:01—12:29→12:00
   12:30—12:59→1:00

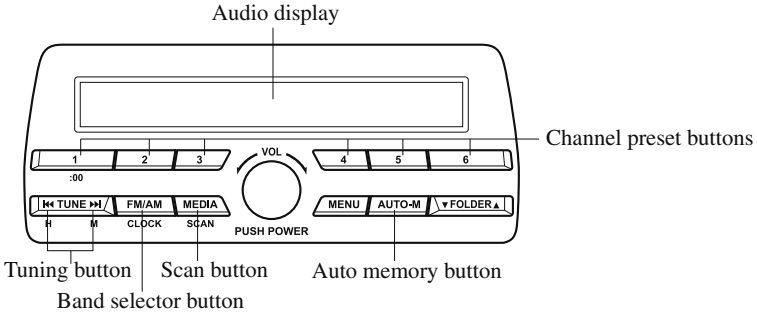
NOTE

- *When the :00 button (1) is pressed, the seconds will start at "00".*
- *Switching between 12 and 24-hour clock time:*
  *Press the menu button (**MENU**) several times until 12 and 24-hour clock time are displayed. Turn the audio control dial in either direction, select the desired clock setting while the preferred clock time is flashing.*

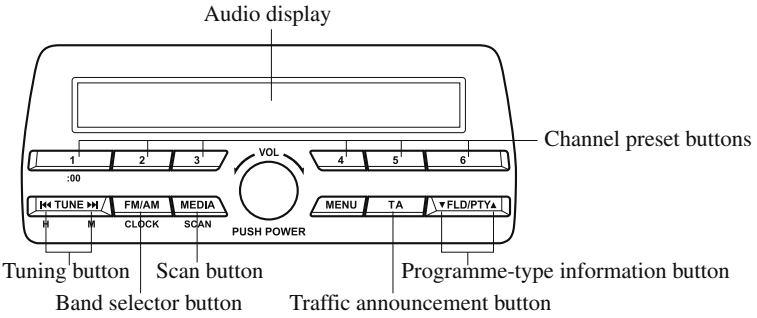
OwnersManuals2.com

Operating the Radio

Without Radio Data System (RDS)



With Radio Data System (RDS)



▼ Radio ON

Press a band selector button (**FM/AM**) to turn the radio on.

▼ Band selection

Successively pressing the band selector button (**FM/AM**) switches the bands as follows: FM1→FM2→AM (Without Radio Data System (RDS)), MW/LW (With Radio Data System (RDS)).

The selected mode will be indicated.

NOTE

If the FM broadcast signal becomes weak, reception automatically changes from STEREO to MONO for reduced noise.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Tuning

The radio has the following tuning methods: Manual, Seek, Scan, Preset channel, and Auto memory tuning. The easiest way to tune stations is to set them on preset channels.

Manual tuning

Select the station by pressing the tuning button (⏮, ⏭) lightly.

Seek tuning

Automatic search for radio stations starts when the tuning button (⏮, ⏭) is pressed until a beep sound is heard. The search stops when a station is found.

NOTE
If you continue to press and hold the button, the frequency will continue changing without stopping.

Scan tuning

Press and hold the scan button (MEDIA) to automatically sample strong stations. Scanning stops at each station for about 5 seconds. To hold a station, press and hold the scan button (MEDIA) again during this interval.

Preset channel tuning

The 6 preset channels can be used to store 6 AM (Without Radio Data System (RDS)), MW/LW (With Radio Data System (RDS)) and 12 FM stations.

1. To set a channel first select AM (Without Radio Data System (RDS)), MW/LW (With Radio Data System (RDS)), FM1, or FM2. Tune to the desired station.
2. Press a channel preset button for about 2 seconds until a beep is heard. The preset channel number or station frequency will be displayed. The station is now held in the memory.
3. Repeat this operation for the other stations and bands you want to store. To tune one in the memory, select AM (Without Radio Data System (RDS)), MW/LW (With Radio Data System (RDS)), FM1, or FM2 and then press its channel preset button. The station frequency or the channel number will be displayed.

Auto memory tuning (Without Radio Data System (RDS))

This is especially useful when driving in an area where the local stations are not known.

Press and hold the auto memory button (AUTO-M) for about 2 seconds until a beep is heard; the system will automatically scan and temporarily store up to 6 stations with the strongest frequencies in each selected band in that area.

After scanning is completed, the station with the strongest frequency will be tuned and its frequency displayed. Press and release the auto memory button (AUTO-M) to recall stations from the auto-stored stations. One stored station will be selected each time and its frequency and channel number will be displayed.

NOTE
If no stations can be tuned after scanning operations, "A" will be displayed.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Radio Data System (RDS)*

NOTE
The radio data system (RDS) does not function if it is out of the system's service coverage area.

Alternative frequency (AF)

AF functions on FM stations. Press the menu button (**MENU**) and select the AF mode to turn it on and "AF" will be displayed. If the radio reception of the current station weakens, the system switches to an alternative station automatically.

If you wish to continue a regional programme, press the menu button (**MENU**) and select the REG mode to turn it on. "REG ON" is displayed. To cancel it, press the audio control dial and select the REG mode to turn it off. "REG OFF" is displayed.

Traffic announcement (TA)

If the traffic announcement button (**TA**) is pressed, the unit switches to TA mode and "TA" is displayed.

If a TA broadcast is received while in the TA mode, the TA broadcast intercedes even while using other functions (FM, USB device, AUX, or BT audio), and "Traffic Info" is displayed.
During a TA broadcast, press the traffic announcement button (**TA**) to end the broadcast and return to the previous mode.

Programme-type information (PTY)

Some FM stations transmit programme-type codes. This code enables alternative stations transmitting the same programme-type code to be found quickly.

Press the programme-type information button (▼,▲) while in FM mode. The programme-type code and "PTY" will be displayed during reception. If there is no programme-type code, "None" will be displayed.

(To choose a programme-type:)

1. Press the Programme-type information button (▼,▲) when the programme-type code is displayed.
2. Operate any one of the following:
   - Press the pre-programmed channel preset button (1 to 6).
   - Press the Programme-type information button (▼,▲).

(To scan for programme-type information:)

1. Press the Programme-type information button (▼,▲) when the programme-type code is displayed.
2. Press the Programme-type information button (▼,▲) until the beep sounds. The unit will scan for broadcasts, if none are found, "Nothing" will be displayed and the unit will return to the previously tuned band.

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

(To store programme types in the channel preset buttons:)

1. Press the Programme-type information button (▼,▲) when the programme-type code is displayed.
2. Press the Programme-type information button (▼,▲) and select the programme type.
3. While the programme type is displayed, press a channel preset button for about 2 seconds.

Emergency broadcast

If an emergency broadcast is received, the emergency broadcast intercedes even while using other functions (FM, USB device, AUX, or BT audio), and “Alarm!” is displayed.

When the emergency broadcast ends, the system will return to the previous mode.

How to use AUX mode

1. Switch the ignition to ACC or ON.
2. Press the power/volume dial to turn the audio system on.
3. Press the media button (**MEDIA**) of the audio unit to change to the AUX mode.

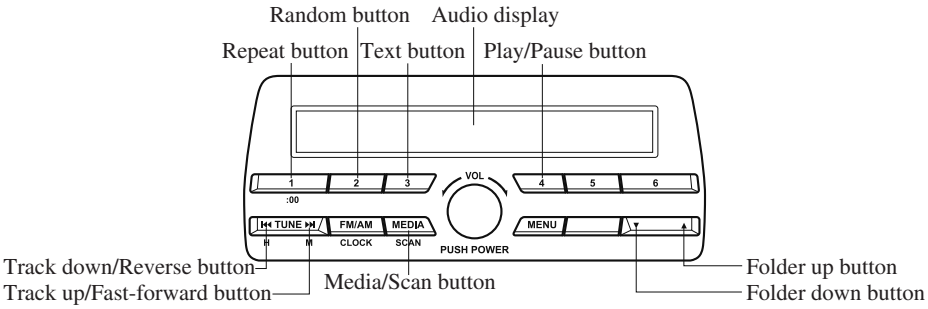


NOTE

- *When the device is not connected to the auxiliary jack, the mode does not switch to the AUX mode.*
- *Adjust the audio volume using the portable audio device or audio unit.*
- *Audio adjustments other than audio volume can only be done using the portable audio device.*
- *If the connection plug is pulled out from the auxiliary jack while in AUX mode, noise may occur.*

OwnersManuals2.com

How to use USB mode



Type	Playable data
USB mode	MP3/WMA/AAC file

This unit does not support a USB 3.0 device. In addition, other devices may not be supported depending on the model or OS version.

▼ Playback

1. Switch the ignition to ACC or ON.
2. Press the power/volume dial to turn the audio system on.
3. Press the media button (**MEDIA**) to switch to the USB mode and start playback.

NOTE

- *Some devices such as smart phones may require a setting change to allow operation using a USB connection.*
- *When the USB device is not connected, the mode does not switch to USB mode.*
- *When there is no playable data in the USB device, "NO CONTENTS" is flashed.*
- *Playback of the USB device is in the order of the folder numbers. Folders which have no MP3/WMA/AAC files are skipped.*
- *Do not remove the USB device while in the USB mode. The data may be damaged.*

Pause

To stop playback, press the play/pause button (4).
Press the button again to resume playback.

Fast-forward/Reverse

Press and hold the fast-forward button (⏭) to advance through a track at high speed.
Press and hold the reverse button (⏮) to reverse through a track at high speed.

OwnersManuals2.com

Track search

Press the track up button (⏭) once to skip forward to the beginning of the next track.
Press the track down button (⏮) within a few seconds after playback begins to track down to the beginning of the previous track.
Press the track down button (⏮) after a few seconds have elapsed to start playback from the beginning of the current track.

Folder search

To change to the previous folder, press the folder down button (▼), or press the folder up button (▲) to advance to the next folder.

Music scan

This function scans the titles in a folder currently being played and plays 10 seconds of each song to aid you in finding a song you want to listen to.
Press and hold the scan button (MEDIA) during playback to start the scan play operation (the track number will flash).
Press and hold the scan button (MEDIA) again to cancel scan playback.

NOTE
If the unit is left in scan, normal playback will resume where scan was selected.

Repeat playback

Track repeat

1. Press the repeat button (1) during playback to play the current track repeatedly. “TRACK RPT” is displayed (♫ is displayed next to RPT at the bottom of the display area).
2. To cancel the repeat playback, press the button again after 3 seconds.

Folder repeat

1. Press the repeat button (1) during playback, and then press the button again within 3 seconds to play the tracks in the current folder repeatedly. “FOLDER RPT” is displayed (🗀 is displayed next to RPT at the bottom of the display area).
2. Press the button again to cancel the repeat playback.

Random playback

Tracks are randomly selected and played.

Folder random

1. Press the random button (2) during playback to play the tracks in the folder randomly. “FOLDER RDM” is displayed (🗀 is displayed next to RDM at the bottom of the display area).
2. To cancel the random playback, press the button again after 3 seconds.

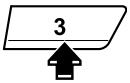
OwnersManuals2.com

All random

1. Press the random button (2) during playback, and then press the button again within 3 seconds to play the tracks in the USB device randomly. “ALL RDM” is displayed (⑦ is displayed next to RDM at the bottom of the display area).
2. Press the button again to cancel the random playback.

▼ Switching the display

The information displayed on the audio display changes as follows each time the text button (3) is pressed during playback.

Button	Information displayed on audio display
	File number/Elapsed time
	Folder number/File number
	File name
	Folder name
	Album name
	Song name
	Artist name

NOTE

- *The information (artist name, music name) is displayed only when the USB device information in the USB device has information which can be displayed on the screen.*
- *This unit cannot display some characters. Characters which cannot be displayed are indicated by an asterisk (✻).*

Display scroll

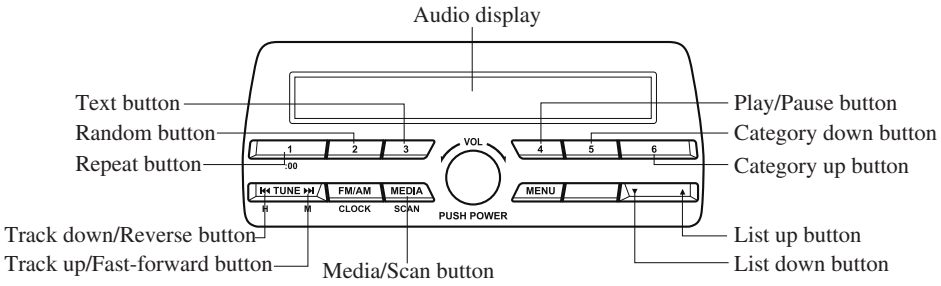
Only 13 characters can be displayed at one time. To display the rest of the characters of a long title, press and hold the text button (3). The display scrolls the next 13 characters. Press and hold the text button (3) again after the last 13 characters have been displayed to return to the beginning of the title.

NOTE

The number of characters which can be displayed is restricted.

OwnersManuals2.com

How to use iPod mode



An iPod may not be compatible depending on the model or OS version. In this case, an error message is displayed.

NOTE

The iPod functions on the iPod cannot be operated while it is connected to the unit because the unit controls the iPod functions.

▼ Playback

1. Switch the ignition to ACC or ON.
2. Press the power/volume dial to turn the audio system on.
3. Press the media button (**MEDIA**) to switch to the iPod mode and start playback.

NOTE

- *When an iPod is not connected, the mode does not switch to the iPod mode.*
- *When there is no playable data in the iPod, "NO CONTENTS" is flashed.*
- *Do not remove the iPod while in the iPod mode. Otherwise, the data could be damaged.*

Pause

To stop playback, press the play/pause button (4).
Press the button again to resume playback.

Fast-forward/Reverse

Press and hold the fast-forward button (⏭) to advance through a track at high speed.
Press and hold the reverse button (⏮) to reverse through a track at high speed.

Track search

Press the track up button (⏭) once to skip forward to the beginning of the next track.
Press the track down button (⏮) within a few seconds (depends on iPod software version) after playback begins to track down to the beginning of the previous track.
Press the track down button (⏮) after a few seconds (depends on iPod software version) have elapsed to start playback from the beginning of the current track.

Category search

Press the category down button (5) to select the previous category and press the category up button (6) to select the next category.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE
The types of categories include Playlist, Artist, Album, Song, Podcast, Genre, Composer, and Audio book.

List search

Press the list down button (▼) to select the previous list and press the list up button (▲) to select the next list.

NOTE
When the selected category is Song or Audio book, there is no list.

Music scan

This function scans the titles in a list currently being played and plays 10 seconds of each song to aid you in finding a song you want to listen to.
Press and hold the scan button (**MEDIA**) during playback to start the scan play operation (the track number will flash). Press and hold the scan button (**MEDIA**) again to cancel scan playback.

NOTE
If the unit is left in scan, normal playback will resume where scan was selected.

Repeat playback

1. Press the repeat button (1) during playback to play the current track repeatedly. “TRACK RPT” is displayed (♫ is displayed next to RPT at the bottom of the display area).
2. Press the button again to cancel the repeat playback.

Random playback

Tracks are randomly selected and played.

Song random

1. Press the random button (2) during playback to play the tracks in the list randomly. “SONG RDM” is displayed (♪ is displayed next to RDM at the bottom of the display area).
2. To cancel the random playback, press the button again after 3 seconds.

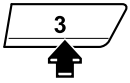
Album random

1. Press the random button (2) during playback, and then press the button again within 3 seconds to play the tracks in the iPod randomly. “ALBUM RDM” is displayed (📁 is displayed next to RDM at the bottom of the display area).
2. Press the button again to cancel the random playback.

NOTE
The track number being played randomly is in the order of the iPod shuffle table.

▼ Switching the display

The information displayed on the audio display changes as follows each time the text button (3) is pressed during playback.

Button	Information displayed on audio display
	File number/Elapsed time
	File number
	Category name
	Artist name
	Album name
	Song name

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

- *The information (artist name, music name) is displayed only when the iPod has information which can be displayed.*
- *This unit cannot display some characters. Characters which cannot be displayed are indicated by an asterisk (✻).*

Display scroll

13 characters can be displayed at one time. To display the rest of the characters of a long title, press and hold the text button (3). The display scrolls the next 13 characters. Press and hold the text button (3) again after the last 13 characters have been displayed to return to the beginning of the title.

NOTE
The number of characters which can be displayed is restricted.

Error Indications

If you see an error indication on the display, take appropriate action according to the following methods. If you cannot clear the error indication, take the vehicle to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

CHECK USB

When the message “CHECK USB” is displayed, it indicates that there is some error in the USB device. Verify that the content recorded in the USB device has MP3/WMA/AAC files and re-connect correctly.

CHECK iPod

If the message “CHECK iPod” is displayed, it indicates that there is a malfunction in the iPod. Verify that the content recorded in the iPod has playable files and connect correctly.

OwnersManuals2.com

Bluetooth®*

▼ Introduction

Bluetooth® Hands-Free outline

When a Bluetooth® device (mobile phone) is connected to the vehicle's Bluetooth® unit, a call can be made or received by pressing the talk button, pick-up button, or hang-up button on the audio remote control switch. For example, even if a device (mobile phone) is in your coat pocket, a call can be made without taking the device (mobile phone) out and operating it directly.

Bluetooth® audio outline

When a portable audio unit equipped with the Bluetooth® communication function is paired to the vehicle, you can listen to music stored on the paired portable audio device from the vehicle's speakers. It is not necessary to connect the portable audio device to the vehicle's external input terminal. After programming, operate the vehicle audio control panel to play/stop the audio.

NOTE

- *For your safety, a device can be paired only when the vehicle is parked. If the vehicle starts to move, the pairing procedure will end. Park the vehicle in a safe place before pairing.*
- *The communication range of a Bluetooth® equipped device is about 10 meters (32 ft) or less.*
- *Basic audio operation is available using voice commands even if Bluetooth® is not connected.*

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ CAUTION

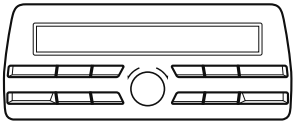
Some Bluetooth® mobile devices are not compatible with the vehicle. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), Mazda's call centre or Web support centre for information regarding Bluetooth® mobile device compatibility:

Phone:
(Germany)
0800 4263 738 (8:00—18:00 Central European Time)
(Except Germany)
00800 4263 7383 (8:00—18:00 Central European Time)
(Worldwide)
+ 49 721 5099 8198 (8:00—18:00 Central European Time)
Web:
http://www.mazdahandsfree.com

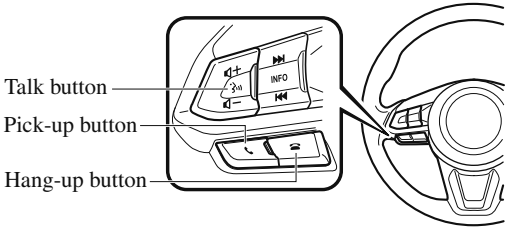
Applicable Bluetooth® specification (Recommended)
Ver. 2.0

▼ Component Parts

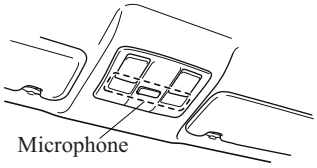
Audio unit



Talk button, Pick-up button and Hang-up button



Microphone



OwnersManuals2.com

Microphone (hands-free)

The microphone is used for speaking voice commands or when making a Hands-free call.

Talk button

Activates the voice recognition. In addition, it skips the voice guidance.

Pick-up button

Responds to incoming calls. In addition, after selecting a contact or dialing a number, it places the call when the button is pressed.

Hang-up button

Ends the call or refuses an incoming call. In addition, it ends the voice recognition operation.

Volume adjustment

The power/volume dial of the audio unit is used to adjust the volume. Turn the dial to the right to increase volume, to the left to decrease it.
The volume can also be adjusted using the volume button on the steering wheel.

NOTE
If the volume is lower compared to other audio modes, increase the volume from the device side.

OwnersManuals2.com

Bluetooth® Preparation*

NOTE
The language used for the words "password" and "pin code" appearing in the Bluetooth® Preparation, differs depending on the market.

- *password*
  Except Thailand: password
  Thailand: passcode
- *pin code*
  Except Thailand: pin code
  Thailand: pairing code

▼ Bluetooth® Hands-Free Preparation

Pairing code setting

The 4-digit pairing code setting for registration of your cell phone (pairing) can be set beforehand.

NOTE
The initial setting value is "0000".

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] "Setup"
3. **Prompt:** "Select one of the following: Pairing options, confirmation prompts, language, password, select phone or select music player."
4. **Say:** [Beep] "Pairing options"
5. **Prompt:** "Select one of the following: Pair, Edit, Delete, List, or Set pin Code."
6. **Say:** [Beep] "Set pin code"
7. **Prompt:** "Your current pin code is XXXX. Do you want to change it to a different pairing pin code?"
8. **Say:** [Beep] "Yes"
9. **Prompt:** "Please say a 4-digit pairing code."
10. **Say:** [Beep] "YYYY"
11. **Prompt:** "YYYY is this correct?"
12. **Say:** [Beep] "Yes" or "No"
13. If "Yes", go to Step 14. If "No", the procedure returns to Step 9.
14. **Prompt:** "Your new pairing pin code is YYYY. Use this pin code when pairing devices to the Hands free system. Do you want to pair a device now?"
15. **Say:** [Beep] "Yes" or "No"
16. If "Yes", the system switches to the device registration mode. If "No", the system returns to standby status.

▼ Device pairing (Bluetooth® Hands-Free)

To use Bluetooth® Hands-Free, the device equipped with Bluetooth® has to be paired to the Bluetooth® unit using the following procedure.
A maximum of seven devices including hands-free mobile phones and Bluetooth® audio devices can be paired to one vehicle.

NOTE

- *A device can be paired only when the vehicle is parked. If the vehicle starts to move, the pairing procedure will end. Pairing is dangerous while driving - pair up your device before you start driving. Park the car in a safe place before paired.*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *If a Bluetooth® device has already been paired to the vehicle as a Bluetooth® audio device, it does not need to be paired again when using the device as a hands-free mobile phone. Conversely, it does not need to be paired again as a Bluetooth® audio device if it has already been paired as a hands-free mobile phone.*
- *Since the communication range of a Bluetooth® equipped device is about 10 m (32 ft), if a device is placed within a 10 m (32 ft) radius of the vehicle, it may be detected/paired unintentionally while another device is being paired.*

1. Activate the Bluetooth® application of the device.

   NOTE
   For the operation of the device, refer to its instruction manual.
2. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
3. **Say:** [Beep] “Setup”
4. **Prompt:** “Select one of the following: Pairing options, confirmation prompts, language, password, select phone or select music player.”
5. **Say:** [Beep] “Pairing options”
6. **Prompt:** “Select one of the following: Pair, edit, delete, list, or set pin code.”
7. **Say:** [Beep] “Pair”
8. **Prompt:** “Start the pairing process on your Bluetooth® device. Your pin code is 0000 (XXXX). Input this on your Bluetooth® device. See device manual for instructions.”
9. Using the device, perform a search for the Bluetooth® device (Peripheral device).

   NOTE
   For the operation of the device, refer to its instruction manual.
10. Select “Mazda” from the device list searched by the device.
11. Input the 4-digit pairing code to the device.
12. **Prompt:** “Please say the name of the device after the beep.”
13. **Say:** [Beep] “XXXX - - -” (Speak a “device tag”, an arbitrary name for the device.)
    Example: “Stan's device.”

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE
Say a paired "device tag" within 10 seconds.
If more than 2 devices are to be paired, they cannot be paired with the same or similar "device tag".

14. **Prompt:** "Adding XXXXXX - - - (Ex. "Stan's device") (Device tag). Is this correct?"
15. **Say:** [Beep] "Yes"
16. **Prompt:** "Pairing complete"

After a device is registered, the system automatically identifies the device. By activating Bluetooth® Hands-Free again, or by activating Bluetooth® Hands-Free first after switching the ignition from OFF to ACC, the system reads out a voice guidance, "XXXXXX - - - (Ex. "Stan's device") (Device tag) is connected".

NOTE

- *When the pairing is completed, the* B *symbol is displayed.*
- *Some Bluetooth® audio devices need a certain amount of time before the* B *symbol is displayed.*
- *Device registration can also be done by operating the audio unit.*
- *Depending on the device, the registration status may be lost after a certain period of time. If this occurs, repeat the entire process from Step 1.*

Registered device read-out

Bluetooth® Hands-Free can read-out the devices registered to its system.

NOTE
Do this function only when parked. It is too distracting to attempt while driving and you may make too many errors to be effective.

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] "Setup"
3. **Prompt:** "Select one of the following: Pairing options, confirmation prompts, language, password, select phone or select music player."
4. **Say:** [Beep] "Pairing options"
5. **Prompt:** "Select one of the following: Pair, edit, delete, list, or set pin code."
6. **Say:** [Beep] "List"
7. **Prompt:** "XXXXX..., XXXXX..., XXXXX... (Ex. Device A, device B, device C)" (The voice guidance reads out the device tags registered to the hands-free system.)

   Press the talk button with a short press during the read-out at the desired device, and then say one of the following voice commands to execute it.

   - "Select phone": Selects device (Mobile phone) when the talk button is short-pressed.
   - "Select music player": Selects device (Music player) when the talk button is short-pressed.
   - "Edit": Edits device when the talk button is short-pressed.

OwnersManuals2.com

- "Continue": Continues the list read-out.
- "Delete": Deletes the registered device when the talk button is short-pressed.
- "Previous": Returns to the previous device in read-out when the talk button is short-pressed.

8. **Prompt:** "End of list, would you like to start from the beginning?"
9. **Say:** [Beep] "No"
10. **Prompt:** "Returning to main menu."

▼ Device selection (Bluetooth® Hands-Free)

If several devices have been paired, the Bluetooth® unit links the device last paired. If you would like to link a different paired device, it is necessary to change the link. The order of device priority after the link has been changed is maintained even when the ignition is switched off.

(Hands-free phone)

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] "Setup"
3. **Prompt:** "Select one of the following: Pairing options, confirmation prompts, language, password, select phone or select music player."
4. **Say:** [Beep] "Select phone"
5. **Prompt:** "Please say the name of the device you would like to select. Available devices are XXXXX... (Ex. device A), XXXXX... (Ex. device B), XXXXX... (Ex. device C). Which device please?"
6. **Say:** [Beep] "X" (Say the number for the mobile phone to be connected.)
7. **Prompt:** "XXXXX... (Ex. device B...) (Registered device tag) is this correct?"
8. **Say:** [Beep] "Yes"
9. **Prompt:** "XXXXX... (Ex. device B...) (Device tag) selected."

(Music player)

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] "Setup"
3. **Prompt:** "Select one of the following: Pairing options, confirmation prompts, language, password, select phone or select music player."
4. **Say:** [Beep] "Select music player"
5. **Prompt:** "Please say the name of the device you would like to select. Available devices are XXXXX... (Ex. device A), XXXXX... (Ex. device B), XXXXX... (Ex. device C). Which device please?"
6. **Say:** [Beep] "X" (Say the number for the music player to be connected.)
7. **Prompt:** "XXXXX... (Ex. device B...) (Registered device tag) is this correct?"
8. **Say:** [Beep] "Yes"
9. **Prompt:** "XXXXX... (Ex. device B...) (Device tag) selected."

NOTE

- *When the selected device connection is completed, the ⍈ or ♪ symbol is displayed.*
- *Some Bluetooth® audio devices need a certain amount of time before the ⍈ or ♪ symbol is displayed.*
- *Device (Music player) selection can also be done by operating the panel button.*

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Deleting a device (Bluetooth® Hands-Free)

Registered devices (Mobile phone) can be deleted individually or collectively.

NOTE
Do this function only when parked. It is too distracting to attempt while driving and you may make too many errors to be effective.

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Setup”
3. **Prompt:** “Select one of the following: Pairing options, confirmation prompts, language, password, select phone or select music player.”
4. **Say:** [Beep] “Pairing options”
5. **Prompt:** “Select one of the following: Pair, edit, delete, list, or set pin code.”

   NOTE
   A registered device (Mobile phone) can be deleted using the registration list.
6. **Say:** [Beep] “Delete”
7. **Prompt:** “Please say the name of the device you would like to delete. Available devices are XXXXX... (Ex. device A), XXXXX... (Ex. device B), XXXXX... (Ex. device C), or all. Which device please?”
8. **Say:** [Beep] “X” (Say the number of the device to be deleted.)

   NOTE
   Say “All” to delete all devices (Mobile phone).
9. **Prompt:** “Deleting XXXXX... (Ex. device B...) (Registered device tag). Is this correct?”
10. **Say:** [Beep] “Yes”
11. **Prompt:** “Deleted”

▼ Registered device editing (Bluetooth® Hands-Free)

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Setup”
3. **Prompt:** “Select one of the following: Pairing options, confirmation prompts, language, password, select phone or select music player.”
4. **Say:** [Beep] “Pairing options”
5. **Prompt:** “Select one of the following: Pair, edit, delete, list, or set pin code.”
6. **Say:** [Beep] “Edit”
7. **Prompt:** “Please say the name of the device you would like to edit. Available devices are XXXXX... (Ex. device A), XXXXX... (Ex. device B), XXXXX... (Ex. device C). Which device please?”
8. **Say:** [Beep] “X” (Say the number of the device to be edited.)
9. **Prompt:** “New name please?”
10. **Say:** [Beep] “XXXXX... (Ex. device C)” (Speak a “device tag”, an arbitrary name for the device.)
11. **Prompt:** “XXXXX... (Ex. device C) (Device tag), is this correct?”
12. **Say:** [Beep] “Yes”
13. **Prompt:** “New name saved.”

▼ Bluetooth® Audio Preparation

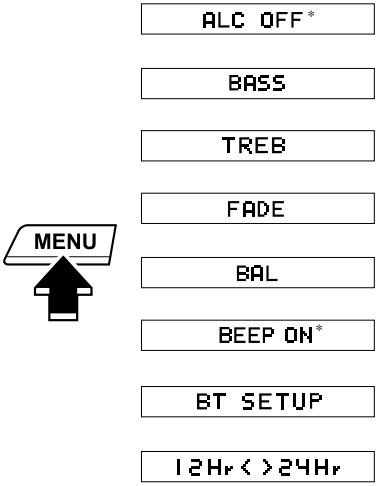
Bluetooth® audio device set-up

Bluetooth® audio pairing, changes, deletions, and display of paired device information can be performed.

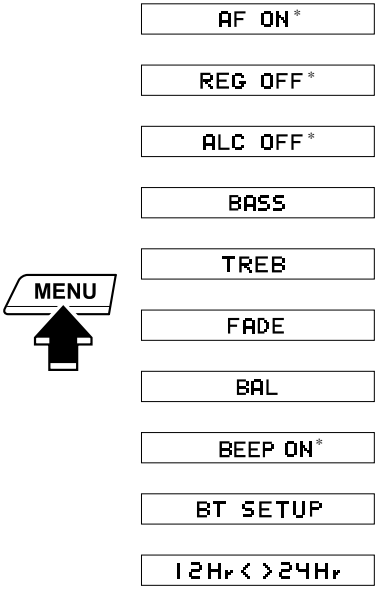
1. The mode changes as follows each time the menu button (**MENU**) is pressed. Select “BT SETUP”.

OwnersManuals2.com

Without Radio Data System (RDS)

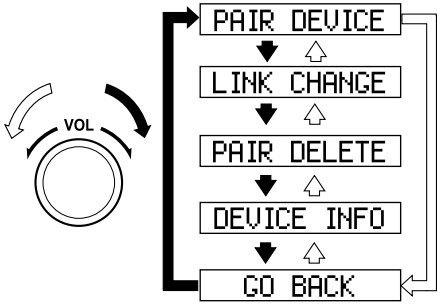


With Radio Data System (RDS)



* Depending on the mode selected, the indication changes.

2. Turn the audio control dial and select a desired mode.



Display	Mode	Function
PAIR DEVICE	Pairing mode	Bluetooth® audio device pairing
LINK CHANGE	Link change mode	Changing link to Bluetooth® audio device
PAIR DELETE	Pairing deletion mode	Deleting link to Bluetooth® audio device
DEVICE INFO	Device information display mode	Displaying vehicle's Bluetooth® unit information

3. Press the audio control dial to determine the mode.

▼ Bluetooth® audio device pairing (Bluetooth® Audio)

Any Bluetooth® audio device must be paired to the vehicle's Bluetooth® unit before it can be listened to over the vehicle's speakers.
A maximum of seven devices including Bluetooth® audio devices and hands-free mobile phones can be paired to one vehicle.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

- *If a Bluetooth® device has already been paired to the vehicle as a hands-free mobile phone, it does not need to be paired again when using the device as a Bluetooth® audio device. Conversely, it does not need to be paired again as a hands-free mobile phone if it has already been paired as a Bluetooth® audio device.*
- *Device registration can also be done using voice recognition.*

Concerning the operation of a Bluetooth® audio device itself, refer to its instruction manual.
Some Bluetooth® audio devices have PIN codes (four digits). Refer to the audio device's instruction manual because the pairing procedure differs depending on whether it has a PIN code or not.

Pairing a Bluetooth® audio device which has a four-digit PIN code

1. Using the audio control dial, select the pairing mode “PAIR DEVICE” in the “BT SETUP” mode. (Refer to “Bluetooth® audio device set-up” for details.)
2. Press the audio control dial to determine the mode.
   After “ENTER PIN” is displayed on the audio display for 3 seconds, “PIN 0000” is displayed and the PIN code can be input.
3. Input the PIN code of your Bluetooth® audio device by pressing channel preset buttons 1 to 4 while “PIN 0000” is displayed.
   Press channel preset button 1 to input the first digit, 2 for the second, 3 for the third, and 4 for the forth. For example, if the PIN code were “4213”, press channel preset button 1 four times (1, 2, 3, 4), button 2 twice (1, 2), button 3 once (1), and button 4 three times (1, 2, 3). If the “PIN 0000” display disappears before finishing the PIN code input, repeat the procedure from Step 1.

   NOTE
   Some devices accept only a particular pairing code (Usually, “0000” or “1234”).
   If pairing cannot be completed, refer to the owner's manual of your mobile device, and try those numbers if necessary.
4. Press the audio control dial while the input PIN code is displayed.
   “PAIRING” flashes on the display.
5. Operate the Bluetooth® audio device and set it to the pairing mode while “PAIRING” is flashing.
6. When the pairing is completed, “♪” and “PAIR SUCCESS” are displayed after about 10 — 30 seconds, after which “PAIR SUCCESS” continues to be displayed for 3 seconds, and then the unit returns to the normal display.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

- *Some Bluetooth® audio devices need a certain amount of time before the "♪" symbol is displayed.*
- *If the pairing failed, "Err" flashes for 3 seconds.*
- *Pairing cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving. If you attempt to perform pairing while the vehicle is moving, "PAIR DISABLE" is displayed.*
- *If seven Bluetooth® audio devices have already been paired to the vehicle, pairing cannot be performed and "MEMORY FULL" is displayed. Delete one paired device to pair another one.*

Pairing a Bluetooth® audio device which does not have a four-digit PIN code

1. Using the audio control dial, select the pairing mode "PAIR DEVICE" in the "BT SETUP" mode. (Refer to "Bluetooth® audio set up" for details.)
2. Press the audio control dial to determine the mode. After "ENTER PIN" is displayed on the audio display for 3 seconds, "PIN 0000" is displayed and the PIN code can be input.
3. Press the audio control dial while "PIN 0000" is displayed.
   "PAIRING" flashes on the audio display.
4. Operate the Bluetooth® audio device and set it to the pairing mode while "PAIRING" is flashing.
5. As the Bluetooth® audio device requires a PIN code, input "0000".
6. When the pairing is completed, "♪" and "PAIR SUCCESS" are displayed after about 10 — 30 seconds, after which "PAIR SUCCESS" continues to be displayed for 3 seconds, and then the unit returns to the normal display.

   NOTE

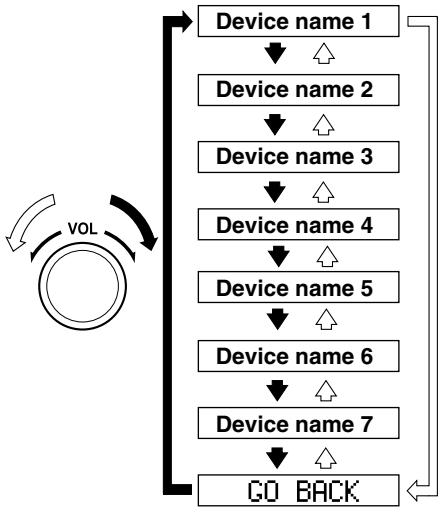
   - *If pairing cannot be completed, try "1234" instead. Refer to the owner's manual of your mobile device for the right PIN code.*
   - *Some Bluetooth® audio devices need a certain amount of time before the "♪" symbol is displayed.*
   - *If the pairing failed, "Err" flashes for 3 seconds.*
   - *Pairing cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving. If you attempt to perform pairing while the vehicle is moving, "PAIR DISABLE" is displayed.*
   - *If seven Bluetooth® audio devices have already been paired to the vehicle, pairing cannot be performed and "MEMORY FULL" is displayed. Delete one paired device to pair another one.*

▼ Device selection (Bluetooth® Audio)

If several devices have been paired, the Bluetooth® unit links the device last paired. If you would like to link a different paired device, it is necessary to change the link. The order of device priority after the link has been changed is maintained even when the ignition is switched off.

OwnersManuals2.com

1. Using the audio control dial, select the link change mode “LINK CHANGE” in the “BT SETUP” mode. (Refer to “Bluetooth® audio device set-up” for details.)
2. Press the audio control dial to determine the mode.
3. The name of the currently linked Bluetooth® audio device is displayed. If no Bluetooth® audio device is currently linked, the name of the first device among the paired devices is displayed.
4. Turn the audio control dial to select the name of the device you would like to link.



5. Press the audio control dial to select the device you would like to link. The “♪” symbol disappears, and “PAIRING” flashes in the audio display.

NOTE

When “GO BACK” is selected and the audio control dial is pressed, the display returns to “LINK CHANGE”.

6. If the link to the desired device is successful, the “♪” symbol is displayed again, together with “LINK CHANGED”. “LINK CHANGED” is displayed for 3 seconds, then it returns to the normal display.

NOTE

- *Some Bluetooth® audio devices need a certain amount of time before the “♪” symbol is displayed.*
- *If a hands-free type mobile phone has been the most recently paired device, the Bluetooth® unit links this device. If you would like to use a Bluetooth® audio type device which has been previously paired to the Bluetooth® unit, the link must be changed to this device.*
- *If an error occurs while trying to link a device, “Err” flashes in the display for 3 seconds, and the display returns to “LINK CHANGE”. If this occurs, check the pairing status of the Bluetooth® audio device and the location of the device in the vehicle (not in the luggage compartment/boot or a metal-type box), and then try the link operation again.*
- *Device selection can also be done using voice recognition.*

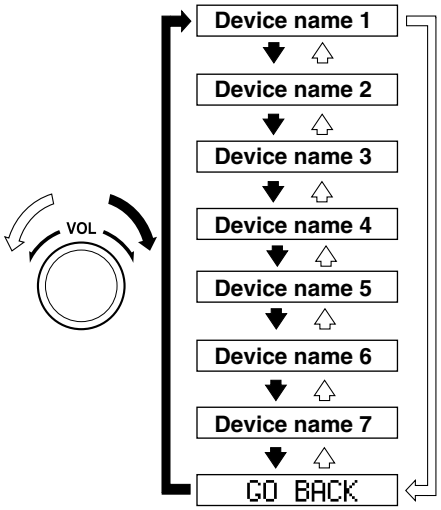
OwnersManuals2.com

How to confirm the device currently linked

Switch to the link-change mode. (Refer to "Changing the link to a Bluetooth® audio device")
The device name displayed first is the device which is currently linked.

▼ Deleting a device (Bluetooth® Audio)

1. Using the audio control dial, select the pairing delete mode "PAIR DELETE" in the "BT SETUP" mode. (Refer to "Bluetooth® audio device set-up" for details.)
2. Press the audio control dial to determine the mode.
3. The name of the first device among the paired devices is displayed.
4. Rotate the audio control dial and select the name of the paired device you would like to delete.



NOTE
Only the names of paired devices can be displayed. If only one device is paired, only the name for this device is displayed.

5. If a selection other than "GO BACK" is made and the audio control dial is pressed, "SURE ? NO" is displayed.
6. Rotate the audio control dial clockwise and switch the display to "SURE ? YES".

NOTE
The display changes as follows depending on whether the audio control dial is rotated clockwise or anticlockwise.
-Clockwise: "SURE ? YES" displayed
-Anticlockwise: "SURE ? NO" displayed

7. Press the audio control dial to delete the selected device.

NOTE
Select "GO BACK" and press the audio control dial to return to the "PAIR DELETE" display.

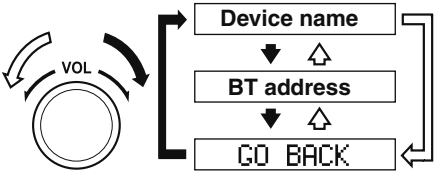
8. "PAIR DELETED" is displayed for 3 seconds after the deletion is completed, and then it returns to the normal display.

NOTE
If an error occurs while trying to delete the paired device, "Err" flashes in the display for 3 seconds and the display returns to "LINK DELETE".

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Bluetooth® audio device information display

1. Using the audio control dial, select the pair device information display mode “DEVICE INFO” in the “BT SETUP” mode. (Refer to “Bluetooth® audio device set-up” for details.)
2. Press the audio control dial to determine the mode.
3. The name of the Bluetooth® unit device is displayed.
4. Rotate the audio control dial to select the information for the Bluetooth® unit which you would like to view.



NOTE
When “GO BACK” is selected and the audio control dial is pressed, the display returns to “DEVICE INFO”.

Available Language*

NOTE
The language used for the word “password” appearing in the Available Language, differs depending on the market.

- *password*
  Except Thailand: password
  Thailand: passcode

The available languages are as follows:

- **(Except Thailand)**
  - English
  - French
  - Spanish
  - Italian
  - German
  - Dutch
  - Portuguese
- **(Thailand)**
  - English
  - Spanish
  - Canadian French

NOTE

- *If the language setting is changed, device registration is maintained.*
- *Phonebook records are not cleared, but each language has a separate phonebook. Therefore, entries created in one language will need to be re-entered in the phonebook of the new language.*
- *Do these steps before you start driving. These less used functions are too distracting to undertake while driving until you are fully familiar with the system.*

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

(Method 1)

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Setup”
3. **Prompt:** “Select one of the following: Pairing options, confirmation prompts, language, password, select phone or select music player.”
4. **Say:** [Beep] “Language”
5. · **(Except Thailand)**
   Prompt: “Select a language: English, French, Spanish, Italian, German, Dutch, or Portuguese.”
   · **(Thailand)**
   Prompt: “Select a language: English, French, or Spanish.”
6. · **(Except Thailand)**
   Say: [Beep] “French” (Speak the desired language: “English”, “French”, “Spanish”, “Italian”, “German”, “Dutch”, or “Portuguese”)
   · **(Thailand)**
   Say: [Beep] “French” (Speak the desired language: “English”, “French” or “Spanish”)

   NOTE
   Other language settings can also be made while in the current setting by saying the name of the language in the native pronunciation.
7. **Prompt:** “French (Desired language) selected. Is this correct?”
8. **Say:** [Beep] “Yes”
9. **Prompt:** “Please wait. Switching to French phonebook. French selected.” (Spoken in the newly selected language).

(Method 2)

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. · **(Except Thailand)**
   Say: [Beep] “French” (Say the desired language: “English”, “French”, “Spanish”, “Italian”, “German”, “Dutch”, or “Portuguese”). (Change the desired language by saying the language name.)
   · **(Thailand)**
   Say: [Beep] “French” (Say the desired language: “English”, “French” or “Spanish”). (Change the desired language by saying the language name.)

   NOTE
   Other language settings can also be made while in the current setting by saying the name of the language in the native pronunciation.
3. **Prompt:** “Would you like to change the language to French (Desired language)?”
4. **Say:** [Beep] “Yes”
5. **Prompt:** “Please wait. Switching to French phonebook. French selected.” (Spoken in the newly selected language).

OwnersManuals2.com

Security Setting*

NOTE
The language used for the word "password" appearing in the Security Setting, differs depending on the market.

・password
Except Thailand: password
Thailand: passcode

If a password is set, the system cannot be activated unless the password is input.

NOTE
Do this function only when parked. It is too distracting to attempt while driving and you may make too many errors to be effective.

Password setting

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] "Setup"
3. **Prompt:** "Select one of the following: Pairing options, confirmation prompts, language, password, select phone or select music player."
4. **Say:** [Beep] "Password"
5. **Prompt:** "Password is disabled. Would you like to enable it?"
6. **Say:** [Beep] "Yes"
7. **Prompt:** "Please say a 4-digit password. Remember this password. It will be required to use this system."
8. **Say:** [Beep] "XXXX" (Say a desired 4-digit password, "PCode".)
9. **Prompt:** "Password XXXX (Password, PCode). Is this correct?"
10. **Say:** [Beep] "Yes"
11. **Prompt:** "Password is enabled."

Using Bluetooth® Hands-Free with a password

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Prompt:** "Hands-Free system is locked. State the password to continue."
3. **Say:** [Beep] "XXXX" (Say the set password "PCode".)
4. If the correct password is input, voice guidance "XXXXXX... (Ex. "Mary's device") (Device tag) is connected" is announced.
   If the password is incorrect, voice guidance "XXXX (4-digit password, Pcode) incorrect password, please try again" is announced.

Cancelling the password

NOTE
Do this function only when parked. It is too distracting to attempt while driving and you may make too many errors to be effective.

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] "Setup"
3. **Prompt:** "Select one of the following: Pairing options, confirmation prompts, language, password, select phone or select music player."
4. **Say:** [Beep] "Password"
5. **Prompt:**"Password is enabled. Would you like to disable it?"
6. **Say:** [Beep] "Yes"
7. **Prompt:** "Password is disabled."

OwnersManuals2.com

Confirmation Prompts

The confirmation prompt confirms the command content to the user before advancing to the operation requested by the user. When this function is turned on, the system reads out the voice input command previously received and confirms whether the command is correct before advancing to the command execution.
When the confirmation prompt function is turned on:
(Ex. “Calling John's device. Is this correct?”)
When the confirmation prompt function is turned off:
(Ex. “Calling John's device.”)

NOTE

If the confirmation prompt function is turned off when making an emergency call, the system reads out and confirms the command before executing it.

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Setup”
3. **Prompt:** “Select one of the following: Pairing options, confirmation prompts, language, password, select phone or select music player.”
4. **Say:** [Beep] “Confirmation prompts”
5. **Prompt:** “Confirmation prompts are on/off. Would you like to turn confirmation prompts off/on?”
6. **Say:** [Beep] “Yes”
7. **Prompt:** “Confirmation prompts are off/on.”

Bluetooth® Audio*

Applicable Bluetooth® specification (Recommended)
Ver. 2.0

Response profile

- A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Ver. 1.0
- AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) Ver. 1.0/1.3

A2DP is a profile which transmits only audio to the Bluetooth® unit. If your Bluetooth® audio device corresponds only to A2DP, but not AVRCP, you cannot operate it using the control panel of the vehicle's audio system. In this case, only the operations on the mobile device are available the same as when a portable audio device for a non-compliant Bluetooth® device is connected to the AUX terminal.

Function	A2DP	AVRCP	
		Ver. 1.0	Ver. 1.3
Playback	—	X	X
Pause	—	X	X
File (Track) up/down	—	X	X
Reverse	—	—	X
Fast-forward	—	—	X
Text display	—	—	X

X: Available
—: Not available

NOTE

- *The battery consumption of Bluetooth® audio devices increases while Bluetooth® is connected.*

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

- *If a general mobile phone device is USB connected during music playback over the Bluetooth® connection, the Bluetooth® connection is disconnected. For this reason, you cannot have music playback over a Bluetooth® connection and music playback using a USB connection at the same time.*
- *The system may not operate normally depending on the Bluetooth® audio device.*

▼ Switching to Bluetooth® audio mode

To listen to music or voice audio recorded to a Bluetooth® audio device, switch to the Bluetooth® audio mode to operate the audio device using the audio system control panel. Any Bluetooth® audio device must be paired to the vehicle's Bluetooth® unit before it can be used. Refer to Bluetooth® Preparation on page 5-37.

1. Turn on the Bluetooth® audio device's power.
2. Switch the ignition to ACC or ON. Make sure that the "♪" symbol is displayed in the audio display. The symbol is not displayed if an un-paired Bluetooth® audio device is being used or the vehicle's Bluetooth® unit has a malfunction.

   NOTE

   Some Bluetooth® audio devices need a certain amount of time before the "♪" symbol is displayed.
3. Press the media button (**MEDIA**) to switch to the Bluetooth® audio mode and start playback.

If the current device version is lower than AVRCP Ver. 1.3: "BT Audio" is displayed.
If the current device is AVRCP Ver. 1.3: The playback time is displayed.

NOTE

- *If the Bluetooth® audio device does not begin playback, press the Play/Pause button (4).*
- *If a call is received on a hands-free mobile phone during playback from the Bluetooth® audio device, the playback is stopped. Playback from the Bluetooth® audio device resumes after the call ends.*

▼ Playback

1. To listen to a Bluetooth® audio device over the vehicle's speaker system, switch the mode to Bluetooth® audio mode. (Refer to "Switching to Bluetooth® audio mode")
2. To stop playback, press the Play/Pause button (4).
3. Press the button again to resume playback.

Selecting a file (track)

Selects the next file (track)

Short-press the track up button (⏭).

Selects the beginning of the current file (track)

Short-press the track down button (⏮).

Fast-forward/Reverse (AVRCP Ver. 1.3)

Fast-forward

Press and hold the fast-forward button (⏭).

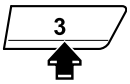
OwnersManuals2.com

Reverse

Press and hold the reverse down button (⏮).

▼ Switching the display (only AVRCP Ver. 1.3)

The information displayed on the audio display changes as follows each time the text button (3) is pressed during playback.

Button	Information displayed on audio display
	Elapsed time
	Album name
	Song name
	Artist name

NOTE

- *If title information is not available, "NO TITLE" is displayed.*
- *This unit cannot display some characters. Characters which cannot be displayed are indicated by an asterisk (✳).*

Display scroll

Only 13 characters can be displayed at one time. To display the rest of the characters of a long title, press and hold the text button (3). The display scrolls the next 13 characters. Press and hold the text button (3) again after the last 13 characters have been displayed to return to the beginning of the title.

▼ Bluetooth® audio device information display

If a Bluetooth® audio device is connected, the following information is displayed in the audio display.

Category	AVRCP Ver. lower than 1.3	AVRCP Ver. 1.3
Device name	X	X
Title	—	X
Artist name	—	X
Album name	—	X
File number	—	X
Playback time	—	X
Folder number	—	—

X: Available
—: Not available

NOTE

Some information may not display depending on the device, and if the information cannot be displayed, "NO TITLE" is indicated.

OwnersManuals2.com

Bluetooth® Hands-Free*

▼ Making a Call

Phonebook Usage

Telephone calls can be made by saying the name of a person (voice tag) whose phone number has been registered in Bluetooth® Hands-Free in advance. Refer to Phonebook registration.

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Call”
3. **Prompt:** “Name please.”
4. **Say:** [Beep] “XXXXX... (Ex. “John's phone”)” (Say a voice tag registered in the phonebook.)
5. **Prompt:** “Calling XXXXX... (Ex. “John's phone”) XXXX (Ex. “at home”). Is this correct?” (Voice tag and phone number location registered in phonebook).
6. **Say:** [Beep] “Yes”
7. **Prompt:** “Dialing”

NOTE

The “Call” command and the voice tag can be combined.
Ex. In Step 2, say, “Call John's phone”, then, Steps 3 and 4 can be skipped.

Phonebook registration

Phone numbers can be registered to the Bluetooth® Hands-Free phonebook.

NOTE

Do this function only when parked. It is too distracting to attempt while driving and you may make too many errors to be effective.

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Phonebook”
3. **Prompt:** “Select one of the following: New entry, edit, list names, delete, erase all or import contact.”
4. **Say:** [Beep] “New entry”
5. **Prompt:** “Name please.”
6. **Say:** [Beep] “XXXXX... (Ex. “Mary's phone”)” (Say a voice tag for the name registered.)
7. **Prompt:** “Adding XXXXX... (Ex. “Mary's phone”) (Registered voice tag). Is this correct?”
8. **Say:** [Beep] “Yes”
9. **Prompt:** “Home, Work, Mobile, or Other?”
10. **Say:** [Beep] “Mobile” (Say “Home” , “Work”, “Mobile”, or “Other”, for the desired location to be registered.)
11. **Prompt:** “Mobile (Location to be registered). Is this correct?”
12. **Say:** [Beep] “Yes”
13. **Prompt:** “Number, please.”
14. **Say:** [Beep] “XXXXXXXXXX” (Say the phone number to be registered.)
15. **Prompt:** “XXXXXXXXXX (Phone number registration). After the beep, continue to add numbers, or say Go-Back to re-enter the last entered numbers, or press the Pick-Up button to save the number.”

OwnersManuals2.com

16. **(Registration)**
    Press the pick-up button or say "Enter", then go to Step 17.
    (Adding/inputting telephone number)
    Say, "XXXX" (desired telephone number), then go to Step 15.
    (Telephone number correction)
    Say, "Go Back". The prompt replies, "Go Back. The last entered numbers have been removed.". Then go back to Step 13.
17. **Prompt:** "Number saved. Would you like to add another number for this entry?"
18. **Say:** [Beep] "Yes" or "No".
19. If "Yes", an additional phone number registration can be made for the same entry.
    If "No", the system returns to standby status.

(Import contact)

Phonebook data from your device (Mobile phone) can be sent and registered to your Bluetooth® Hands-Free phonebook using Bluetooth®.

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] "Phonebook"
3. **Prompt:** "Select one of the following: New entry, edit, list names, delete, erase all or import contact."
4. **Say:** [Beep] "Import contact"
5. **Prompt:** "The hands free system is ready to receive a contact from the phone; only a home, work, mobile number can be imported into the hands free system. The import contact process requires the user to operate the phone. Refer to the phone's manual for information on how to operate the phone to perform the import operation."
6. **Prompt:** "X (Number of locations which include data) numbers have been imported. What name would you like to use for these numbers?"
7. **Say:** [Beep] "XXXXX... (Ex. "Mary's phone")" (Say a voice tag for the name registered.)
8. **Prompt:** "Adding XXXXX... (Ex. "Mary's phone") (Voice tag). Is this correct?"
9. **Say:** [Beep] "Yes"
10. **Prompt:** "Number saved. Would you like to import another contact?"
11. **Say:** [Beep] "Yes" or "No"
12. If "Yes", the procedure proceeds to Step 5.
    If "No", the system returns to standby status.

Editing phonebook

The data registered to the Bluetooth® Hands-Free phonebook can be edited.

NOTE
Do this function only when parked. It is too distracting to attempt while driving and you may make too many errors to be effective.

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] "Phonebook"

OwnersManuals2.com

3. **Prompt:** “Select one of the following: New entry, edit, list names, delete, erase all or import contact.”
4. **Say:** [Beep] “Edit”
5. **Prompt:** “Please say the name of the entry you would like to edit or say, “List names”.”
6. **Say:** [Beep] “XXXXX... (Ex. “Mary's phone”)” (Say the voice tag for the registered name to be edited in the phonebook.)
7. **Prompt:** “Home, Work, Mobile, or Other?”
8. **Say:** [Beep] “Home” (Say the registered location to be edited: “Home”, “Work”, “Mobile”, or “Other”.)
9. **Prompt:** “XXXXX... (Ex. “Mary's phone”) (Registered voice tag) XXXX (Ex. “Home”) (Registered location). Is this correct?”
10. **Say:** [Beep] “Yes”
11. **Prompt:** “The current number is XXXXXXXXXX (Ex. “555-1234”) (Currently registered number). New number, please.”

    NOTE
    If there was no previous phone number registered to a location (Ex. “Work”), the prompt will only read out “Number, please”
12. **Say:** [Beep] “XXXXXXXXXX (Ex. “555-5678”)” (Say the new phone number to be registered.)
13. **Prompt:** “XXXXXXXX (Telephone number) After the beep, continue to add numbers, or say Go-Back to re-enter the last entered numbers, or press the Pick-Up button to save the number.”
14. **(Number Change)**
    Press the pick-up button, then go to Step 15.
    (Adding/inputting telephone number)
    Say, “XXXX” (desired telephone number), then go to Step 13.
    (Telephone number correction)
    Say, “Go Back”. The prompt replies, “Go Back. The last entered numbers have been removed. Number, please.”. Then go back to Step 12.
15. **Prompt:** “Number changed.”

Phonebook data deletion

(Erasing individual phonebook data)

Individual data registered to the Bluetooth® Hands-Free phonebook can be cleared.

NOTE
Do this function only when parked. It is too distracting to attempt while driving and you may make too many errors to be effective.

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Phonebook”
3. **Prompt:** “Select one of the following: New entry, edit, list names, delete, erase all or import contact.”
4. **Say:** [Beep] “Delete”
5. **Prompt:** “Please say the name of the entry you would like to delete or say, “List names”. ”
6. **Say:** [Beep] “XXXXX... (Ex. “John's phone”) ” (Say the registered voice tag to be deleted from the phonebook.)

OwnersManuals2.com

7. **Prompt:** “Deleting XXXXX... (Ex. “John's phone”) (Registered voice tag) Home (Registered location). Is this correct?”
8. **Say:** [Beep] “Yes”
9. **Prompt:** “XXXXX... (Ex. “John's phone”) (Registered voice tag) Home (Registered location) deleted.”

(Complete deletion of the phonebook data)

All data registered to the Bluetooth® Hands-Free phonebook can be erased.

NOTE
Do this function only when parked. It is too distracting to attempt while driving and you may make too many errors to be effective.

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Phonebook”
3. **Prompt:** “Select one of the following: New entry, edit, list names, delete, erase all or import contact.”
4. **Say:** [Beep] “Erase all”
5. **Prompt:** “Are you sure you want to delete everything from your Hands Free system phonebook?”
6. **Say:** [Beep] “Yes”
7. **Prompt:** “You are about to delete everything from your Hands Free system phonebook. Do you want to continue?”
8. **Say:** [Beep] “Yes”
9. **Prompt:** “Please wait, deleting the Hands Free system phonebook.”
10. **Prompt:** “Hands-Free system phonebook deleted.”

Read-out of names registered to the Bluetooth® Hands-Free phonebook

Bluetooth® Hands-Free can read out the list of names registered to its phonebook.

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Phonebook”
3. **Prompt:** “Select one of the following: New entry, edit, list names, delete, erase all or import contact.”
4. **Say:** [Beep] “List names”
5. **Prompt:** “XXXXX..., XXXXX..., XXXXX... (Ex. “John's phone”, Mary's phone, Bill's phone)” (Voice guidance reads out the voice tags registered to the phonebook.)
   Press the talk button with a short press during the read-out at the desired name, and then say one of the following voice commands to execute it.
   - “Continue”: Continues the list readout.
   - “Call”: Calls the registered phonebook data when the talk button is short-pressed.
   - “Edit”: Edits the registered phonebook data when the talk button is short-pressed.
   - “Delete”: Deletes the registered phonebook data when the talk button is short-pressed.
   - “Previous”: Returns to the previous phonebook data in read-out when the talk button is short-pressed.
6. **Prompt:** “End of list, would you like to start from the beginning?”
7. **Say:** [Beep] “No”

OwnersManuals2.com

Redial Function

Redialing the number of the person previously dialed using the phone is possible.

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Redial”
3. **Prompt:** “Dialing”

Telephone Number Input

NOTE

Practice this while parked until you are confident you can do it while driving in a non-taxing road situation. If you are not completely comfortable, make all calls from a safe parking position, and only start driving when you can devote your full attention to driving.

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Dial”
3. **Prompt:** “Number, please”
4. **Say:** [Beep] “XXXXXXXXXXX (Telephone number)”
5. **Prompt:** “XXXXXXXXXXX. (Telephone number) After the beep, continue to add numbers, or say Go-Back to re-enter the last entered numbers, or press the Pick-Up button to execute dialing.”
6. **(Dialing)**
   Press the pick-up button or say “Dial”, then go to Step 7.
   (Adding/inputting telephone number)
   Say, “XXXX” (desired telephone number), then go to Step 5.
   (Telephone number correction)
   Say, “Go Back”. The prompt replies, “Go Back. The last entered numbers have been removed.”. Then go back to Step 3.
7. **Prompt:** “Dialing”

NOTE

The “Dial” command and a telephone number can be combined.
Ex. In Step 2, say, “Dial 123-4567” then, Steps 3 and 4 can be skipped.

Emergency calls*

A call can be made to the emergency phone number (112) using the voice input command.

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Emergency”
3. **Prompt:** “Dialing “112”, is this correct?”
4. **Say:** [Beep] “Yes”
5. **Prompt:** “Dialing”

▼ Receiving an Incoming Call

1. **Prompt:** “Incoming call, press the pick-up button to answer”
2. To accept the call, press the pick-up button.
   To reject the call, press the hang-up button.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Hanging Up a Call

Press the hang-up button during the call. A beep sound will confirm that call is ended.

▼ Mute

The microphone can be muted during a call.

1. Press the talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Mute”
3. **Prompt:** “Microphone muted”

Cancelling mute

1. Press the talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Mute off”
3. **Prompt:** “Microphone unmuted”

▼ Transferring a Call from Hands-Free to a Device (Mobile Phone)

Communication between the hands-free unit and a device (Mobile phone) is cancelled, and the line can be switched to a standard call using a device (Mobile phone).

1. Press the talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Transfer call”
3. **Prompt:** “Transferred call to phone”

▼ Transferring a Call from a Device (Mobile Phone) to Hands-Free

Communication between devices (Mobile phone) can be switched to Bluetooth® Hands-Free.

1. Press the talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Transfer call”
3. **Prompt:** “Transferred call to Hands Free system”

▼ Call interrupt

A call can be interrupted to receive an incoming call from a third party.
Switch to a new incoming call using the following methods.

(Method 1)

1. Press the pick-up button.
2. **Prompt:** “Swapping calls.”

(Method 2)

1. Press the talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Swap calls”
3. **Prompt:** “Swapping calls.”

NOTE

- *To refuse an incoming call, press the hang-up button.*
- *After receiving a new incoming call, the previous call is placed on hold.*

Switching calls

Switching back to the previous call can also be done.

Method 1

1. Press the pick-up button.
2. **Prompt:** “Swapping calls.”

Method 2

1. Press the talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Swap calls”
3. **Prompt:** “Swapping calls.”

Three-way call function

1. Press the talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Join calls”
3. **Prompt:** “Joining calls”

OwnersManuals2.com

Making a call using a telephone number

1. Press the talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Dial”
3. **Prompt:** “Number, please”
4. **Say:** [Beep] “XXXXXXXXXXX (Telephone number)”
5. **Prompt:** “XXXXXXXXXXX. (Telephone number) After the beep, continue to add numbers, or say Go-Back to re-enter the last entered numbers, or press the Pick-Up button to execute dialing.”
6. **(Dialing)**
   Press the pick-up button or say “Dial”, then go to Step 7.
   (Adding/inputting telephone number)
   Say, “XXXX” (desired telephone number), then go to Step 5.
   (Telephone number correction)
   Say, “Go Back”. The prompt replies, “Go Back. The last entered numbers have been removed.”. Then go back to Step 3.
7. **Prompt:** “Dialing”

Making calls using the phonebook

1. Press the talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Call”
3. **Prompt:** “Name please.”
4. **Say:** [Beep] “XXXXX... (Ex. “John's phone”)” (Say a voice tag registered in the phonebook.)
5. **Prompt:** “Calling XXXXX... (Ex. “John's phone”) XXXX (Ex. “at home”). Is this correct?” (Voice tag and phone number location registered in phonebook).
6. **Say:** [Beep] “Yes”
7. **Prompt:** “Dialing”

Redialing function

1. Press the talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Redial”
3. **Prompt:** “Dialing”

Ending the current call

Press the hang-up button during the call.

▼ DTMF (Dual Tone Multi-Frequency Signal) Transmission

This function is used when transmitting DTMF via the user's voice. The receiver of a DTMF transmission is generally a home telephone answering machine or a company's automated guidance call centre (When you send tone signals back according to the voice guidance recording).

1. Press the talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “XXXX... send” (Say DTMF code)
3. **Prompt:**“Sending XXXX... (DTMF code)”

OwnersManuals2.com

Voice Recognition*

In this section, the basic operation of the voice recognition is explained.

Activating Voice Recognition

To Activate the Main Menu: Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.

Ending Voice Recognition

Use one of the following methods:

- Press and hold the talk-button.
- Press the hang-up button.

Skipping Voice Guidance (for faster operation)

Press and release the talk-button.

NOTE

- *The Bluetooth® Hands-Free system is operable several seconds after the ignition is switched to ACC or ON (requires less than 15 seconds).*
- *When operating the audio unit or the A/C while using Bluetooth® Hands-Free, the beep sounds or voice guidance (audio unit)/cannot be heard.*

Tutorial

The tutorial explains how to use Bluetooth® Hands-Free.
To activate the tutorial, do the following:

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Tutorial”
3. Follow the prompts to receive the appropriate voice guidance instructions.

Commands useable anytime during voice recognition

“Help” or “Go Back” are commands which can be used at anytime during voice recognition.

Help function use

The help function informs the user of all the available voice commands under the current conditions.

1. **Say:** [Beep] “Help”
2. Follow the prompts to receive the appropriate voice guidance instructions.

Returning to previous operation

This command is for returning to the previous operation while in the voice recognition mode.
Say: [Beep] “Go Back”

To prevent a deterioration in the voice recognition rate and voice quality, the following points should be observed:

- **The voice recognition cannot be performed while voice guidance or the beep sound is operating. Wait until the voice guidance or the beep sound is finished before saying your commands.**
- Dialects or different wording other than hands-free prompts cannot be recognised by voice recognition. Speak in the wording specified by the voice commands.
- It is not necessary to face the microphone or approach it. Speak the voice commands while maintaining a safe driving position.
- Do not speak too slow or too loud.

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

- Speak clearly, without pausing between words or numbers.
- Close the windows to reduce loud noises from outside the vehicle, or turn down the airflow of the air-conditioning system while Bluetooth® Hands-Free is being used.
- Make sure the vents are not directing air up towards the microphone.

NOTE

If the voice recognition performance is not satisfactory.
Refer to Voice Recognition Learning Function (Speaker Enrolment) on page 5-61.
Refer to Troubleshooting on page 5-64.

Voice Recognition Learning Function (Speaker Enrolment)*

The voice recognition learning function enables voice recognition appropriate to the characteristics of the user's voice. If the recognition of the voice input commands to the system is not adequate, this function can largely improve the system's voice recognition of the user. If your voice can be recognised sufficiently without using this function, you may not realize the added benefit of the function.
To register your voice, the voice input command list must be read out. Read out the list when the vehicle is parked.
Perform the registration in as quiet a place as possible (page 5-60). The registration must be performed completely. The required time is a few minutes. The user needs to be seated in the driver's seat with the voice input command list for voice recognition learning visible.

▼ When voice recognition learning is done for the first time

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Voice training”
3. **Prompt:** “This operation must be performed in a quiet environment while the vehicle is stopped. See the owner's manual for the list of required training phrases. Press and release the talk button when you are ready to begin. Press the hang-up button to cancel at any time.”
4. Press the talk button with a short press.

OwnersManuals2.com

5. The voice guidance reads out the voice input command number (refer to the voice input command list for voice recognition learning). (Ex. “Please read phrase 1”)
6. **Say:** [Beep] “0123456789” (Say the voice input command for voice recognition learning (1 to 8) according to the voice guidance.)
7. **Prompt:** “Speaker enrolment is complete.”

NOTE
If an error occurred in the voice recognition learning, re-learning can be done by pressing the talk button with a short press.

▼ Voice recognition re-learning

If voice recognition learning has already been done.

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] “Voice training”
3. **Prompt:** “Enrolment is enabled/ disabled. Would you like to disable/ enable or retrain?”
4. **Say:** [Beep] “Retrain”
5. **Prompt:** “This operation must be performed in a quiet environment while the vehicle is stopped. See the owner's manual for the list of required training phrases. Press and release the talk button when you are ready to begin. Press the hang-up button to cancel at any time.”
6. Press the talk button with a short press.
7. The voice guidance reads out the voice input command number (refer to the voice input command list for voice recognition learning). (Ex. “Please read phrase 1”)
8. **Say:** [Beep] “0123456789” (Say the voice input command for voice recognition learning (1 to 8) according to the voice guidance.)
9. **Prompt:** “Speaker enrolment is complete.”

NOTE
If an error occurred in the voice recognition learning, re-learning can be done by pressing the talk button with a short press.

Voice input command list for voice recognition learning

When reading out, the following points must be observed:

- Read out the numbers one at a time correctly and naturally.
  (For example, “1234” must be read out “one, two, three, four” not “twelve, thirty four”.)
- Do not read out parentheses. “(” and hyphens “-” are used for separating numbers in a phone number.

Ex.
“(888) 555-1212” must be spoken “Eight, eight, eight, five, five, five, one, two, one, two.”

Phrase	Command
1	0123456789
2	(888) 555-1212
3	Call
4	Dial
5	Setup
6	Cancel
7	Continue
8	Help

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE

- *The applicable phrase appears in the audio display.*
- *After user voice registration is completed, voice guidance "Speaker enrolment is complete" is announced.*

Voice recognition learning on/off

1. Press the pick-up button or talk button with a short press.
2. **Say:** [Beep] "Voice training"
3. **Prompt:** "Enrolment is enabled/ disabled. Would you like to disable/ enable or retrain?"
4. **Say:** [Beep] "Disable" or "Enable"
5. When "Disable" is spoken, the voice recognition learning is turned off. When "Enable" is spoken, the voice recognition learning is turned on.
6. **Prompt:** "Speaker Enrolment is disabled/enabled."

OwnersManuals2.com

Troubleshooting*

Mazda Bluetooth® Hands-Free Customer Service

If you have any problems with Bluetooth®, contact our toll-free customer service centre.
Phone:
(Germany)
0800 4263 738 (8:00—18:00 Central European Time)
(Except Germany)
00800 4263 7383 (8:00—18:00 Central European Time)
(Worldwide)
+ 49 721 5099 8198 (8:00—18:00 Central European Time)
Web:
http://www.mazdahandsfree.com

Bluetooth® Device pairing, connection problems

Symptom	Cause	Solution method
Unable to perform pairing	—	First make sure the device is compatible with the Bluetooth® unit, and then check whether the Bluetooth® function and the Find Mode/Visible setting*1 on the device are turned on. If pairing is still not possible after this, contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) or Mazda Bluetooth® Hands-Free Customer Service.
Pairing cannot be performed again	The pairing information paired to the Bluetooth® unit or device is not recognised correctly.	Perform pairing using the following procedure. ・Clear “Mazda” stored in the device. ・Perform pairing again.
Unable to perform pairing	The Bluetooth® function and the Find Mode/Visible setting*1 on the device may turn off automatically after a period of time has elapsed depending on the device.	Check whether the Bluetooth® function and the Find Mode/Visible setting*1 on the device are turned on and pairing or reconnect.
Does not connect automatically when starting the engine		
Automatically connects, but then disconnects suddenly		
Disconnects intermittently	The device is in a location in which radio wave interference can occur easily, such as inside a bag in a rear seat, in a rear pocket of a pair of pants.	Move the device to a location in which radio wave interference is less likely to occur.

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Symptom	Cause	Solution method
Does not connect automatically when starting the engine	The pairing information is updated when the device OS is updated.	Perform pairing again.

*1 Setting which detects the existence of a device external to the Bluetooth® unit.

NOTE

- *When the OS of the device is updated, the pairing information may be deleted. If this happens, reprogramme the pairing information to the Bluetooth® unit.*
- *If you pair your phone which has already been paired to your vehicle more than once in the past, you need to delete "Mazda" on your mobile device. Then, execute the Bluetooth® search on your mobile device once again, and pair to a newly detected "Mazda".*
- *Before you pair your device, make sure that Bluetooth® is "ON", both on your phone and on the vehicle.*
- *If Bluetooth®-enabled devices are used in the following locations or conditions, connection via Bluetooth® may not be possible.*
  - *The device is in a location hidden from the unit such as behind or under a seat, or inside the glove compartment.*
  - *The device contacts or is covered by a metal object or body.*
  - *The device is set to power-saving mode.*
- *Different Bluetooth®-enabled devices can be used for Bluetooth® Hands-Free and Bluetooth® audio. For example, device A can be connected as a Bluetooth® Hands-Free device and device B can be connected as a Bluetooth® audio device. However, the following may occur when they are used at the same time.*
  - *The Bluetooth® connection of the device is disconnected.*
  - *Noise occurs in the Hands-Free audio.*
  - *Hands-Free operates slowly.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Voice recognition related problems

Symptom	Cause	Solution method
Poor voice recognition False recognition of numbers	• Excessive, slow speech. • Excessive, forceful speech (shouting). • Speaking before the beep sound has ended. • Loud noise (speaking or noise from outside/inside vehicle). • Airflow from A/C is blowing against the microphone. • Speaking in off-standard expressions (dialect).	Regarding the causes indicated on the left, be careful with how you speak. In addition, when numbers are spoken in a sequence, recognition ability will improve if no stop is placed between the numbers.
Poor voice recognition	There is a malfunction in the microphone.	A poor connection or malfunction with the microphone may have occurred. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
Phone-related voice recognition is disabled	There is a problem with the connection between the Bluetooth® unit and the device.	If there is any malfunction after checking the pairing situation, check for device pairing or connection problems.
Names in the phonebook are not easily recognised	The Bluetooth® system is under a condition in which recognition is difficult.	By carrying out the following measures, the rate of recognition will improve. • Clear memory from the phonebook which is not used very often. • Avoid shortened names, use full names. (Recognition improves the longer the name is. By not using names such as “Mum”, “Dad”, recognition will improve.)
When operating the audio, a song name is not recognised	Song names cannot be recognised by voice.	—
You want to skip guidance	—	Guidance can be skipped by quickly pressing and releasing the Talk button.

OwnersManuals2.com

Regarding problems with calls

Symptom	Cause	Solution method
When starting a call, vehicle noise from the other party can be heard	For about 3 seconds after starting a call, the Bluetooth® unit's Noise Suppression function requires time to adapt to the call environment.	This does not indicate a problem with the device.
The other party cannot be heard or the speaker's voice is quiet	The volume is set at zero or low.	Increase the volume.

Other problems

Symptom	Cause	Solution method
The indication for the remaining battery is different between the vehicle and the device	The indication method is different between the vehicle and the device.	—
When a call is made from the vehicle, the telephone number is updated in the incoming/outgoing call record but the name does not appear	The number has not been registered into the phonebook.	If the number has been registered into the phonebook, the incoming/outgoing call record is updated by the name in the phonebook when the engine is restarted.
The cell phone does not synchronize with the vehicle regarding the incoming/outgoing call record	Some types of cell phones do not synchronize automatically.	Operate the cell phone for synchronization.
It takes a long time to complete the function for changing the language	A maximum of 60 seconds is required.	—

OwnersManuals2.com

Appendix

▼ Things You Need to Know

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust the audio while the vehicle is stopped:
Do not adjust the audio control switches while driving the vehicle. Adjusting the audio while driving the vehicle is dangerous as it could distract your attention from the vehicle operation which could lead to a serious accident.
Even if the audio control switches are equipped on the steering wheel, learn to use the switches without looking down at them so that you can keep your maximum attention on the road while driving the vehicle.

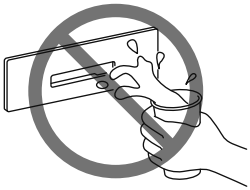
⚠ CAUTION

For the purposes of safe driving, adjust the audio volume to a level that allows you to hear sounds outside of the vehicle including car horns and particularly emergency vehicle sirens.

NOTE

- *To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the audio system on for a long period of time when the engine is not running.*
- *If a cellular phone or CB radio is used in or near the vehicle, it could cause noise to occur from the audio system, however, this does not indicate that the system has been damaged.*

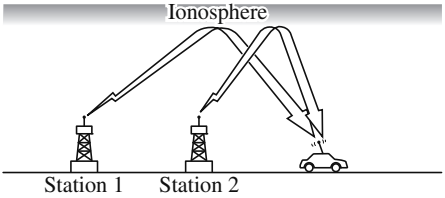
Do not spill any liquid on the audio system.



▼ Radio Reception

AM characteristics

AM signals bend around such things as buildings or mountains and bounce off the ionosphere.
Therefore, they can reach longer distances than FM signals.
Because of this, 2 stations may sometimes be picked up on the same frequency at the same time.

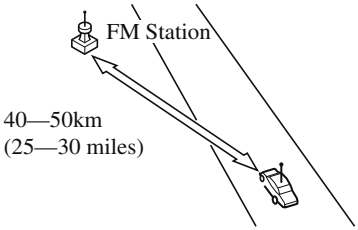


FM characteristics

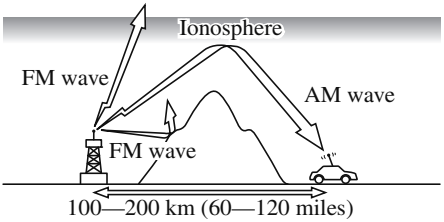
An FM broadcast range is usually about 40—50 km (25—30 miles) from the source. Because of extra coding needed to break the sound into 2 channels, stereo FM

OwnersManuals2.com

has even less range than monaural (non-stereo) FM.



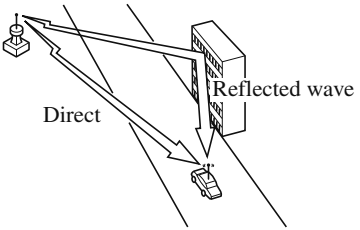
Signals from an FM transmitter are similar to beams of light because they do not bend around corners, but they do reflect. Unlike AM signals, FM signals cannot travel beyond the horizon. Therefore, FM stations cannot be received at the great distances possible with AM reception.



Atmospheric conditions can also affect FM reception. High humidity will cause poor reception. However, cloudy days may provide better reception than clear days.

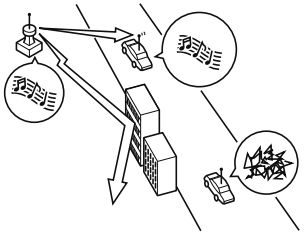
Multipath noise

Since FM signals can be reflected by obstructions, it is possible to receive both the direct signal and the reflected signal at the same time. This causes a slight delay in reception and may be heard as a broken sound or a distortion. This problem may also be encountered when in close proximity to the transmitter.



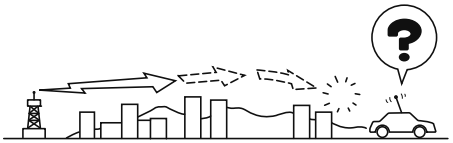
Flutter/Skip noise

Signals from an FM transmitter move in straight lines and become weak in valleys between tall buildings, mountains, and other obstocles. When a vehicle passes through such an area, the reception conditions may change suddenly, resulting in annoying noise.



Weak signal noise

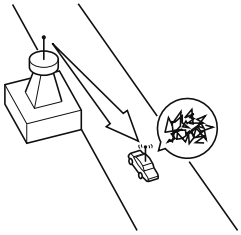
In suburban areas, broadcast signals become weak because of distance from the transmitter. Reception in such fringe areas is characterised by sound breakup.



OwnersManuals2.com

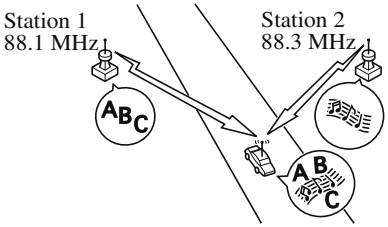
Strong signal noise

This occurs very close to a transmitter tower. The broadcast signals are extremely strong, so the result is noise and sound breakup at the radio receiver.



Station drift noise

When a vehicle reaches the area of 2 strong stations broadcasting at similar frequencies, the original station may be temporarily lost and the second station picked up. At this time there will be some noise from this disturbance.



▼ Operating Tips for MP3

MP3 stands for MPEG Audio Layer 3, which is standardised voice compression established by the ISO*1 working group (MPEG).
Use of MP3 allows for audio data to be compressed to approximately a tenth of the source data size.
This unit plays files with the extension (.mp3) as MP3 files.

*1 International Organisation for Standardisation

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use an audio file extension on files other than audio files. In addition, do not change the audio file extension. Otherwise, the unit will not recognise the file correctly resulting in noise or a malfunction.

NOTE

Supply of this product only conveys a license for private, non-commercial use and does not convey a license nor imply any right to use this product in any commercial (i.e. revenue-generating) real time broadcasting (terrestrial, satellite, lead and/or any other media), broadcasting/streaming via the Internet, intranets and/or other networks or in other electronic content distribution systems, such as pay-audio or audio-on-demand applications. An independent license for such use is required. For details, please visit http://www.mp3licensing.com.

- When naming an MP3 file, be sure to add an MP3 file extension (.mp3) after the file name.
- The number of characters which can be displayed is restricted.

▼ Operating Tips for WMA

WMA is short for Windows Media*1 Audio and is the audio compression format used by Microsoft*1.
Audio data can be created and stored at a higher compression ratio than MP3.
This unit plays files with the extension (.wma) as WMA files.

*1 Windows Media and Microsoft are registered trademarks of Microsoft

OwnersManuals2.com

Corporation U.S. in the United States and other countries.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use an audio file extension on files other than audio files. In addition, do not change the audio file extension. Otherwise, the unit will not recognise the file correctly resulting in noise or a malfunction.

- WMA files written under specifications other than the indicated specification may not play normally or files or folder names may not display correctly.
- The file extension may not be provided depending on the computer operating system, version, software, or settings. In this case, add the file extension ".wma" to the end of the file name, and then write it to the memory.

▼ Operating Tips for AAC

AAC stands for Advanced Audio Coding, which is standardised voice compression established by the ISO*1 working group (MPEG). Audio data can be created and stored at a higher compression ratio than MP3.
This unit plays files with the extensions (.m4a) as the AAC files.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use an audio file extension on files other than audio files. In addition, do not change the audio file extension. Otherwise, the unit will not recognise the file correctly resulting in noise or a malfunction.

- AAC files written under specifications other than the indicated specification may not play normally or files or folder names may not display correctly.
- The file extension may not be provided depending on the computer operating system, version, software, or settings. In this case, add the file extension ".m4a" to the end of the file name, and then write it to the memory.

*1 International Organisation for Standardisation

▼ Operating Tips for USB device

This unit plays audio files as follows:

Extension	Playback with this unit
.mp3	MP3
.wma	WMA
.m4a	AAC

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use an audio file extension on files other than audio files. In addition, do not change the audio file extension. Otherwise, the unit will not recognise the file correctly resulting in noise or a malfunction.

NOTE

- *Playback may not be possible depending on the type and condition of the USB flash memory even if the audio file complies with the standard.*
- *A copyright protected WMA/AAC file cannot be played in this unit.*
- *The order of the music data stored in the device may differ from the playback order.*
- *To prevent loss or damage of stored data, we recommend that you always back up your data.*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *If a device exceeds the maximum electric current value of 1,000 mA, it may not operate or recharge when connected.*
- *Do not pull out the USB device while in the USB mode (only pull it out while in FM/AM radio mode).*
- *The device will not operate if the data is password protected.*

MP3/WMA/AAC files written under specifications other than the indicated specification may not play normally or files/folder names may not display correctly.

▼ Operating Tips for iPod

This unit supports playback of music files recorded to an iPod.

∗ iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

The iPod may not be compatible depending on the model or OS version. In this case, an error message is displayed.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Remove the iPod when it is not in use. Because the iPod is not designed to withstand excessive changes in temperature inside the cabin, it could be damaged or the battery may deteriorate due to the excessive temperature or humidity inside the cabin if it is left in the vehicle.*
- *If data in the iPod is lost while it is connected to the unit, Mazda cannot guarantee recovery of any lost data.*
- *If the iPod battery is deteriorated, the iPod may not recharge and playback may not be possible when it is connected to the unit.*
- *For details on using the iPod, refer to the iPod instruction manual.*
- *When connecting the iPod to a USB port, all commands are made from the audio unit. iPod control is not possible.*

NOTE

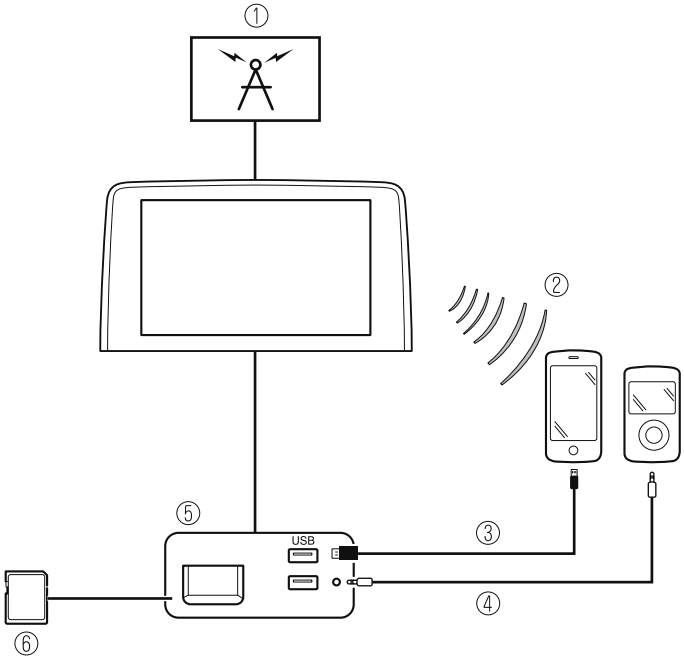
The audio unit cannot display images or videos stored in an iPod.

OwnersManuals2.com

What is Mazda Connect ?

▼ What is Mazda Connect ?

This manual only indicates a part of the information for Mazda Connect. For details, check the Web owner's manual at the Mazda site for each country.

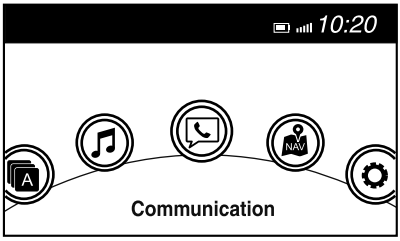


1. Radio
2. Bluetooth® Audio/Hands-Free Call/SMS (Short Message Service)/E-mail
3. USB Audio
4. AUX
5. USB port*1/Auxiliary jack*1/SD card slot*2
6. SD card (Navigation system)*

*1 The location of the USB slot/auxiliary jack differs depending on the specifications.

OwnersManuals2.com

*2 The SD card slot is for the navigation system only. For vehicles with the navigation system, the SD card (Mazda genuine) with stored map data is inserted into the SD card slot and used.



Icon	Function
	Applications Information such as average fuel economy, maintenance, and warnings can be verified. In addition, Apple CarPlay, and Android™ can be selected. Depending on the grade and specification, the screen display may differ.
	Entertainment Operates audio such as the radio. The audio source most recently used is displayed. An audio source which cannot be used at that time is skipped and the previous audio source is displayed. To change the audio source, select the icon displayed at the bottom of the screen.
	Communication Bluetooth® related functions are available.
	Navigation Navigation screen is displayed (vehicles with navigation system). If the SD card for the navigation system is not inserted, the compass indicating the direction in which the vehicle is moving is displayed. The compass may not indicate the correct bearing when the vehicle is stopped or travelling at a slow speed.
	Settings Overall setting menu (Such as display, sound, Bluetooth® and Language). Depending on the grade and specification, the screen display may differ.

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust Mazda Connect while the vehicle is stopped:
Do not adjust Mazda Connect with the Commander switch while driving the vehicle. Adjusting Mazda Connect with the Commander switch while driving the vehicle is dangerous as it could distract your attention from the vehicle operation which could lead to a serious accident.

OwnersManuals2.com

Even if the audio remote control switches are equipped on the steering wheel, learn to use the switches without looking down at them so that you can keep your maximum attention on the road while driving the vehicle.

Do not allow the connection plug cord to get tangled with the shift lever (manual transmission)/selector lever (automatic transmission):
Allowing the plug cord to become tangled with the shift lever (manual transmission)/selector lever (automatic transmission) is dangerous as it could interfere with driving, resulting in an accident.

Do not adjust a mobile device or a similar product while driving the vehicle:
Adjusting a mobile device or a similar product while driving the vehicle is dangerous as it could distract your attention from the vehicle operation which could lead to a serious accident. Always adjust a mobile device or a similar product while the vehicle is stopped.

⚠ CAUTION

For the purposes of safe driving, adjust the audio volume to a level that allows you to hear sounds outside of the vehicle including car horns and particularly emergency vehicle sirens.

NOTE

- *Do not use Mazda Connect for a long time with the engine stopped. Otherwise, the battery power could be depleted.*
- *If a mobile phone or CB radio is used in or near the vehicle, it could cause noise to occur from the audio system. However, this does not indicate a problem.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Mazda Connect Basic Operations

▼ Mazda Connect Basic Operations

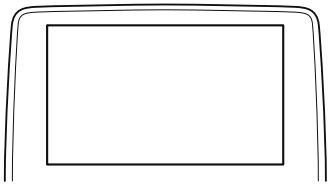
NOTE
The explanation of functions described in this manual may differ from the actual operation, and the shapes of screens and buttons and the letters and characters displayed may also differ from the actual appearance.
Additionally, depending on future software updates, the content may successively change without notice.

▼ Touch Panel Operation

⚠ CAUTION

Do not press the screen strongly or press it with a sharp-pointed object. Otherwise, the screen could be damaged.

NOTE
For safety reasons, operation of the centre display is disabled while the vehicle is being driven. However, items not displayed in grey can be operated using the commander switch while the vehicle is being driven.

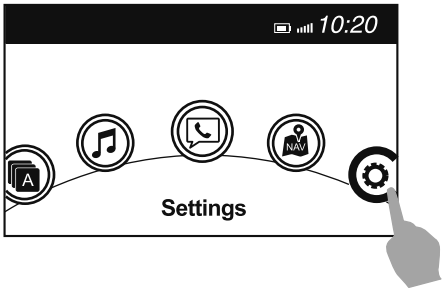


Touch & Tap

1. Touch or tap on the item indicated on the screen.

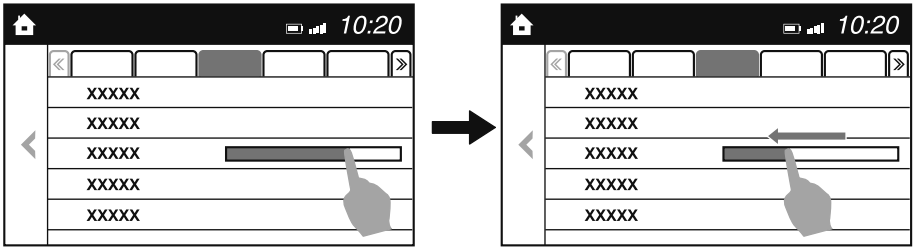
OwnersManuals2.com

2. The operation is launched and the next item is displayed.



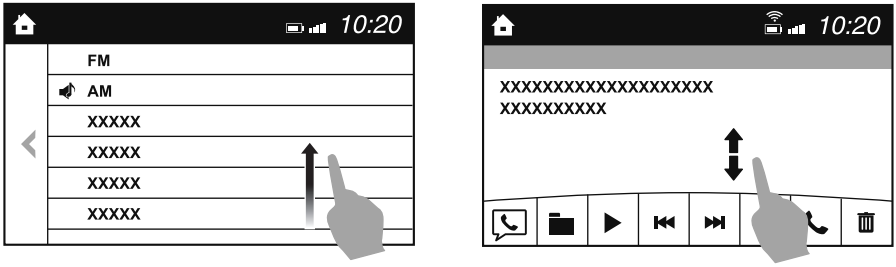
Slide

1. Touch the setting item displaying a slider bar.
2. Touch the slider with your finger and move to the desired level.



Swipe

1. Touch the screen with your finger and move up or down.
2. Items which were not displayed can be displayed.



Return to previous screen

1. Touch the [<].

OwnersManuals2.com

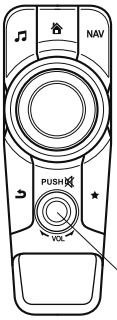
Displaying the home screen

1. Touch the .

▼ Commander Switch Operation

NOTE
For safety reasons, some operations are disabled while the vehicle is being driven.

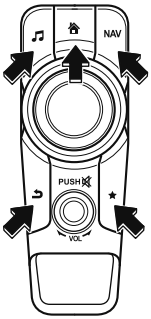
Volume dial operation



Volume dial

Press the volume dial to mute and pause. However, while an audio source which cannot be paused such as FM radio is playing, only mute is available. Press the volume dial again to resume the audio.
Turn the volume dial to adjust the volume. The volume increases by turning the dial clockwise, and decreases by turning it anticlockwise.

Switches around commander knob



The following operations can be done by pressing the switches around the commander knob.

: Displays the home screen.

: Displays the Entertainment screen.

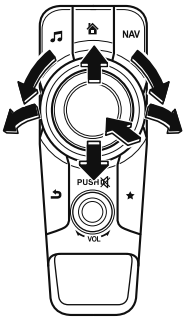
OwnersManuals2.com

NAV : Displays the Navigation screen (Only navigation-equipped vehicles). For operation of the Navigation screen, refer to the navigation system manual. If the SD card for the navigation system is not inserted, the compass indicating the direction in which the vehicle is moving is displayed.

★ : Displays the Favourites screen. Long-press to store particular items in Favourites. (Radio, phonebook and destination of the navigation system can be programmed.)

↩ : Returns to previous screen.

Commander knob operation



(Selection of icons on screen)

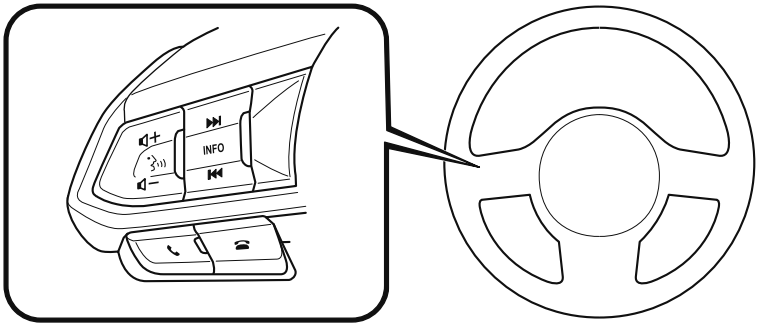
1. Tilt or turn the commander knob and move the cursor to the desired icon.
2. Press the commander knob and select the icon.

NOTE

Long-press operation of the commander knob is also possible for some functions.

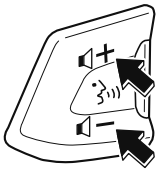
OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Audio Remote Control Switch Operation



Adjusting the Volume

To increase the volume, press up the volume switch (+).
To decrease the volume, press down the volume switch (−).



Seek Switch

AM/FM radio

Press the seek switch (⏮, ⏭). The radio switches to the next/previous stored station in the order that it was stored.
Press and hold the seek switch (⏮, ⏭) to seek all usable stations at a higher or lower frequency whether programmed or not.

Radio stations which have been previously stored in favourites can be called up by pressing the seek switch (⏮, ⏭) while any radio station stored in the favourite radio is being

OwnersManuals2.com

received. Radio stations can be called up in the order they were stored with each press of the switch (⏮, ⏭).



DAB radio*

Press the Seek switch (⏮, ⏭) while listening to DAB radio to call up a station previously stored to the favourites list. With each operation of the switch, radio stations can be called up in the order they were stored.
Press and hold the seek switch (⏭) to go to the next station, (⏮) to return to the previous station.

USB Audio/Bluetooth® Audio

Press the seek switch (⏭) to skip forward to the beginning of the next track.
Press the seek switch (⏮) within a few seconds after playback begins to track down to the beginning of the previous track.
Press the seek switch (⏮) after a few seconds have elapsed to start playback from the beginning of the current track.
Press and hold the seek switch (⏮, ⏭) to continuously switch the tracks up or down.

Aha™/Stitcher™ Radio

Press the seek switch (⏭) to skip forward to the beginning of the next track.
Press and hold the seek switch (⏭) to evaluate the playback of the current song as “Like”.
Press and hold the seek switch (⏮) to evaluate the playback of the current song as “Dislike”.

Pick up/hang up the Phone, or Activate Voice Control Using the Switch

Talk button

Activates the voice recognition. In addition, it skips the voice guidance.

Pick-up button

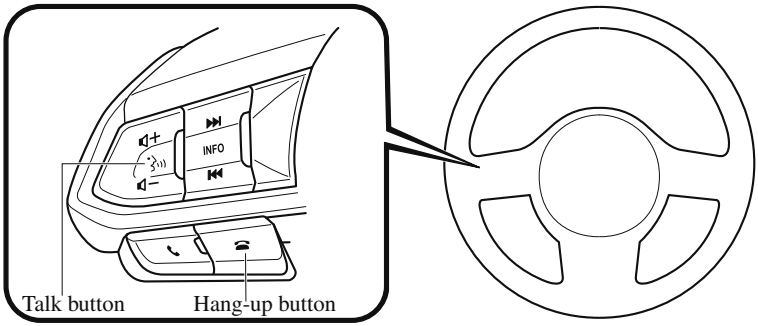
Answers incoming calls. In addition, after selecting a contact or dialing a number, it places the call when the button is pressed.

Hang-up button

Ends the call or refuses an incoming call. In addition, it ends the voice recognition operation.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Operation Using Voice Recognition Function



Talk button

Activates the voice recognition. In addition, it skips the voice guidance.

Hang-up button

Ends the voice recognition operation.

Basic Operation Method

Activating Voice Recognition

Press the talk button.

Ending Voice Recognition

Use one of the following methods:

- Press the hang-up button.
- Say, “Cancel”.
- Operate the commander switch or the centre display (only when vehicle is stopped).

Skipping Voice Guidance (for faster operation)

Press and release the talk button.

Troubleshooting for Voice Recognition

If you do not understand an operation method while in the voice recognition mode, say “Tutorial” or “Help”.

Commands useable anytime during voice recognition

“Go Back” and “Cancel” are commands which can be used at anytime during voice recognition.

OwnersManuals2.com

Returning to previous operation
To return to the previous operation, say, “Go Back” while in voice recognition mode.
Cancel
To put the Bluetooth® Hands-Free system in standby mode, say, “Cancel” while in voice recognition mode.

To prevent a deterioration in the voice recognition rate and voice quality, the following points should be observed:

- **The voice recognition cannot be performed while voice guidance or the beep sound is operating. Wait until the voice guidance or the beep sound is finished before saying a command.**
- Phone related commands are available only when a phone is connected via Bluetooth®. Make sure a phone is connected via Bluetooth® before you operate phone related voice commands.
- Music play commands, such as Play Artist and Play Album can be used only in USB audio mode.
- Do not speak too slowly or loudly (no loud voice).
- Speak clearly, without pausing between words or numbers.
- Dialects or different wording other than hands-free prompts cannot be recognised by voice recognition. Speak in the wording specified by the voice commands.
- It is not necessary to face the microphone or be close to it. Speak the voice commands while maintaining a safe driving position.
- Close the windows to reduce loud noises from outside the vehicle, or turn down the airflow of the air-conditioning system while Bluetooth® Hands-Free is being used.
- Make sure the vents are not directing air up towards the microphone.

Voice Command List

Voice command

When the talk button is pressed and the following command is spoken, the audio or navigation can be operated. The commands in the () can be omitted. The specified name and number are put into the {}.

Standard command

Voice command	Function
Help	Usable commands can be verified.
Tutorial	Basic voice commands and methods of use can be verified.
(Navigate/Take me/Drive) Home	Set the destination to Home.

OwnersManuals2.com

Communication (phone) related command

Voice command	Function
Call {name in phonebook} (mobile/ home/work/other) Example: “Call John Mobile”	Calls to the contact in the downloaded phonebook.
Redial	Calls to the last contact you called.
Callback	Calls to the last contact who called you.

Entertainment (audio) related command

Voice command	Function	Corresponding audio source
(Go to/Play) Bluetooth (Audio)	Switches the audio source to Bluetooth® audio. Can also switch to each audio source by similarly using commands such as FM, AM, or USB.	All
Play Artist {Artist name}	Plays the selected artist.	USB

Navigation related command*

For the navigation screen voice commands, refer to the separate navigation system manual.

NOTE

- *Some commands cannot be used depending on the vehicle specifications.*
- *Some commands cannot be used depending on the device connection conditions and the use conditions.*
- *The commands indicated in this manual are some examples of usable voice commands. Some commands cannot be used depending on the vehicle specifications.*

▼ Appendix

Gracenote® Database

When a USB device or Bluetooth® device is connected to this unit and the audio is played, the album name, artist name, genre and title information are automatically displayed if there is a match in the vehicle's database compilation to the music being played. The information stored in this device uses database information in the Gracenote® music recognition service.

⚠ CAUTION

For information related to the most recent Gracenote® database which can be used and how to install it, go to the Mazda Hands Free Website:
http://www.mazdahandsfree.com

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California (“Gracenote”). The software from Gracenote (the “Gracenote Software”) enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information (“Gracenote Data”) from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, “Gracenote Servers”) and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.
You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.
You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.
The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.
The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you “AS IS.” Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from in the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.
GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

OwnersManuals2.com

© Gracenote, Inc. 2009

Updating the database

The Gracenote® media database can be updated using USB device.

1. Connect a USB device containing the software for updating Gracenote®.
2. Select the ⚙ icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
3. Select the System tab and select Music Database Update.
4. Select Search. The list of the update package stored in the USB device and the version are displayed.
5. Select the package to use the update.
6. Select Install.

NOTE

Gracenote® can be downloaded from the Mazda Hands-free Website.

Apple CarPlay™

Apple CarPlay™ allows you to make calls, send or receive messages, and listen to music using your iPhone with the vehicle's audio system, or search for destinations using the maps. In addition, voice recognition operation is possible using Siri.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ CAUTION

- *YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY™ ("THE APPLICATION") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATION AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND MAZDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATION AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, MAZDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATION, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, ITS AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; MAZDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; MAZDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATION OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.
  TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL MAZDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATION OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATION OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION.*
- *When using Apple CarPlay™, please avoid distraction and use Apple CarPlay™ responsibly. Stay fully aware of driving conditions and always obey applicable laws.*

NOTE

- *Apple CarPlay™ is provided by Apple and its use is subject to your agreement to the Apple CarPlay™ terms of use, which are included as part of the Apple iOS terms of use.*

OwnersManuals2.com

・*When using Apple CarPlay™, location, speed, and other vehicle data is transferred to your iPhone. For further details, refer to Apple's Privacy Policy.*

Android Auto™

Android Auto™ is an application which allows the operation of an Android™ Smartphone using the vehicle's audio. Android Auto™ functions such as the phone, messages, music, and map can be used with the vehicle's audio system.

⚠ CAUTION

➢ *YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF ANDROID AUTO™ ("THE APPLICATION") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATION AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE," WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND MAZDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATION AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, MAZDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATION, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY GOOGLE, ITS AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; MAZDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; MAZDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATION OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.*
TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL MAZDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATION OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATION OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION.

OwnersManuals2.com

➢ *When using Android Auto™, please avoid distraction and use Android Auto™ responsibly. Stay fully aware of driving conditions and always obey applicable laws.*

NOTE

- *Android Auto™ is provided by Google and its use is subject to your agreement to the Android Auto™ terms of use.*
- *When using Android Auto™, location, speed, and other vehicle data is transferred to your smart phone. For further details, refer to Google's Privacy Policy.*

Trademark

- Manufactured under license by Dolby Labouratories, Inc.. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Labouratories.
- Aha™, the Aha™ logo, and the Aha™ trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Harman International Industries, Inc., used with permission.
- Stitcher™, the Stitcher™ logo, and the Stitcher™ trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Stitcher, Inc., used with permission.
- iPhone, iPod touch, iPod nano, Siri and Apple Music are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- Apple CarPlay is trademarks of Apple Inc.
- iOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and is used under license.
- "Made for iPhone" and "Made for iPod" mean that an accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPhone or iPod, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards.
  Please note that the use of this accessory with iPhone or iPod may affect wireless performance.

  Made for
  iPhone 7 Plus
  iPhone 7
  iPhone SE
  iPhone 6s Plus
  iPhone 6s
  iPhone 6 Plus
  iPhone 6
  iPhone 5s
  iPhone 4s
  iPod touch (7th generation)
  iPod touch (6th generation)

OwnersManuals2.com

iPod touch (5th generation)



- Google, Android, Android Auto and other related marks are trademarks of Google LLC.
- AudioPilot is a registered trademark of Bose Corporation.
- Centerpoint is a registered trademark of Bose Corporation.
- Windows Media and Microsoft are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation U.S. in the United States and other countries.
  This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation and third parties.
  Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorised Microsoft subsidiary and third parties.
- The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Panasonic Corporation is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.



- SDHC Logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.



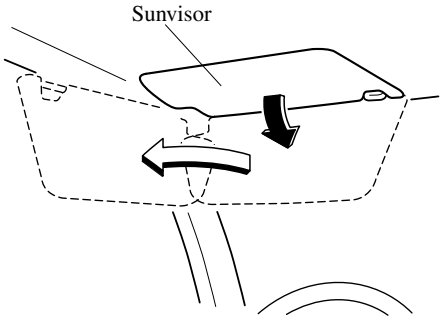
- Gracenote, the Gracenote logo and logotype are either a registered trademark or a trademark of Gracenote, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.



OwnersManuals2.com

Sunvisors

When you need a sunvisor, lower it for use in front or swing it to the side.



▼ Vanity Mirrors

To use the vanity mirror, lower the sunvisor.

Interior Lights

NOTE

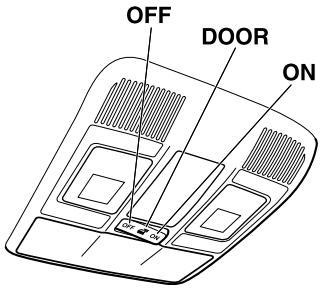
Do not leave the lights on for long periods while the engine is turned off. Otherwise the battery power could be depleted.

Overhead Lights

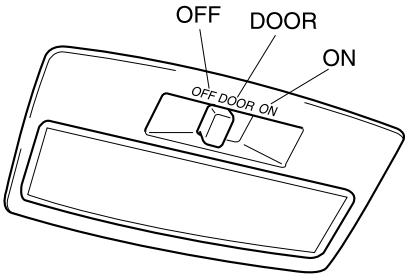
Switch Position	Overhead Lights
OFF	Light off
DOOR	• Light is on when any door is open • Light is on or off when the illuminated entry system is on
ON	Light on

Front

With Map Lights

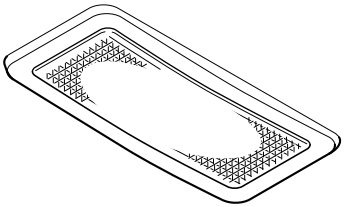


Without Map Lights



OwnersManuals2.com

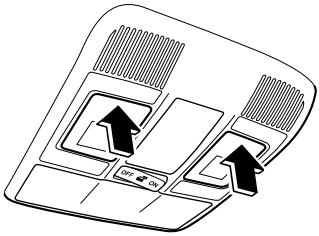
Rear*



NOTE
(With map lights)
The rear overhead light also turn on and off when the front overhead light switch is operated.

Map Lights*

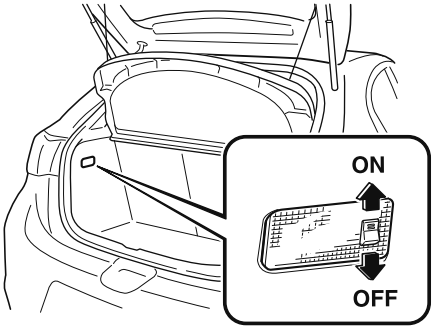
When the overhead light switch is in the door or off position, press the lens to illuminate the map lights, and then press the lens again to turn them off.



NOTE
The map lights will not turn off even if the lens is pressed in the following cases:

- *The overhead light switch is in the ON position.*
- *The overhead light switch is in the door position with the door open.*
- *The illuminated entry system is on.*

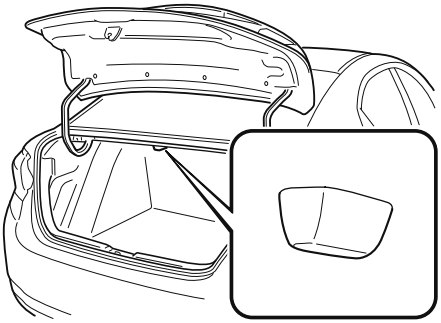
Luggage Compartment Lights (Hatchback)



Switch Position	Luggage Compartment Light
OFF	Light off
ON	Light on when the liftgate is open

Boot Light (Saloon)

The boot light is on when the lid is open and off when it's closed.



NOTE
To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the boot open for a long period when the engine is not running.

▼ Illuminated Entry System

The overhead lights turn on when any of the following operations is done with the

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

overhead light switch in the DOOR position.

- The driver's door is unlocked with the ignition is switched OFF.
- The ignition is switched OFF with all doors closed.

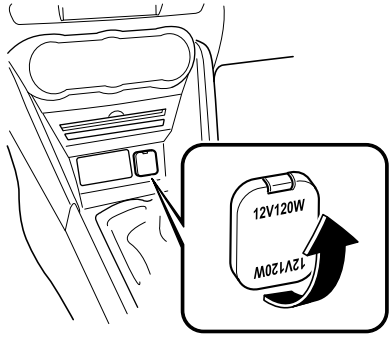
NOTE

- *The illumination time differs depending on the operation.*
- ***Lead-acid battery saver***
  If an interior light is left on with the ignition switched OFF, the light turns off automatically after a certain period of time has passed to prevent lead-acid battery depletion.
- *The operation of the illuminated entry system can be changed.*
  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

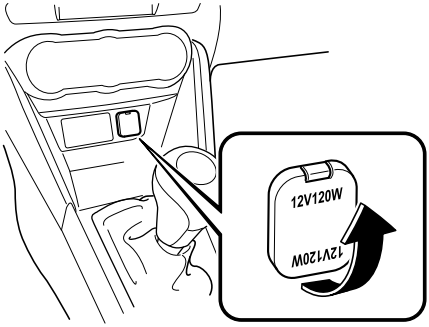
Accessory Socket

Only use genuine Mazda accessories or the equivalent requiring no greater than 120 W (DC 12 V, 10 A).
The ignition must be switched to ACC or ON.

Type A



Type B



OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ CAUTION

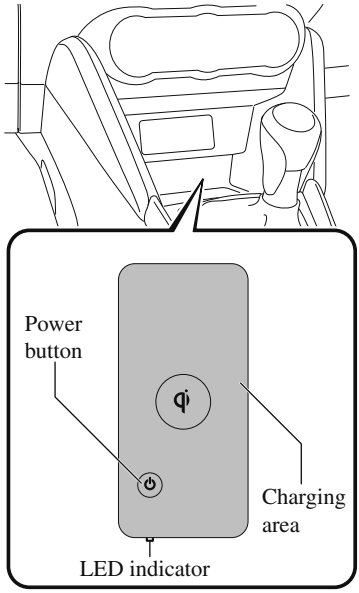
- *To prevent accessory socket damage or electrical failure, pay attention to the following:*
  - *Do not use accessories that require more than 120 W (DC 12 V, 10 A).*
  - *Do not use accessories that are not genuine Mazda accessories or the equivalent.*
  - *Close the cover when the accessory socket is not in use to prevent foreign objects and liquids from getting into the accessory socket.*
  - *Correctly insert the plug into the accessory socket.*
  - *Do not insert the cigarette lighter into the accessory socket.*
- *Noise may occur on the audio playback depending on the device connected to the accessory socket.*
- *Depending on the device connected to the accessory socket, the vehicle's electrical system may be affected, which could cause the warning light to illuminate. Disconnect the connected device and make sure that the problem is resolved. If the problem is resolved, disconnect the device from the socket and switch the ignition off. If the problem is not resolved, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*

NOTE

To prevent discharging of the battery, do not use the socket for long periods with the engine off or idling.

Wireless Charger (Qi)*

You can charge mobile devices such as Smartphones which comply with the Qi Wireless Charging standard.
Only use mobile devices that have a maximum power consumption of 5 W, or 15 W or below. The maximum power consumption differs depending on the mobile device.



 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ WARNING

Radio waves from the Wireless Charger (Qi) may affect the operation of medical devices such as implanted-type cardiac pacemakers or defibrillators.

- *Before using the Wireless Charger (Qi) near people who use medical devices, ask the medical device manufacturer or your physician if radio waves from the Wireless Charger (Qi) will affect the device.*
- *The Wireless Charger (Qi) can be disabled to prevent it from affecting medical devices. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for details.*

Heed the following cautions. Otherwise, the Wireless Charger (Qi) may malfunction or be damaged, which could cause a fire, burns due to heat generation, or an accident such as electrical shock.

- *Do not install, remove, disassemble, or change the wiring of the Wireless Charger (Qi). If the Wireless Charger (Qi) needs to be installed or removed, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *Do not use the Wireless Charger (Qi) when it is malfunctioning. In addition, if smoke, abnormal noise, or abnormal smell is emitted from the Wireless Charger (Qi), stop the vehicle in a safe place, switch the ignition OFF, and consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *When using the Wireless Charger (Qi) to store items on, turn off the Wireless Charger (Qi).*
- *Do not place any metal object between the charging area and the mobile device. Also, do not apply items such as a metallic sticker to the Wireless Charger (Qi).*
- *When charging, do not place any item other than the mobile device to be charged on the Wireless Charger (Qi). In addition, do not place any metal object, IC card, coin, or magnetic item near the charging area.*
- *Remove dust or dirt from the charging area before use.*
- *Do not apply strong force or impact to the Wireless Charger (Qi) or get it wet.*
- *Use only mobile devices which support the Wireless Charger (Qi).*

How to use

1. Start the engine.
2. The power for the Wireless Charger (Qi) turns on and the LED indicator turns on.
   - The power can be turned on/off by pressing the power button on the Wireless Charger (Qi) for about 3 seconds.
   - When the power is turned off, the LED indicator turns off.
3. Place a device compliant with the Qi Wireless Charging standard in the centre of the charging area on the tray.
   - The LED indicator turns on in amber or green when charging starts.

OwnersManuals2.com

- For details on the LED indicator, refer to the following LED indicator table.
- Charging starts when all the doors and liftgate are closed.
- The function to reduce noise on the radio operates if the power button is pressed for about 1 second during charging. Use it when noise occurs on the radio due to interference by the Wireless Charger (Qi). Press the power button again for about 1 second to cancel the function.

NOTE

If charging cannot be done even if a device compliant with the Qi Wireless Charging standard is placed in the centre of the charging area, install the spacer attached to the vehicle and recharge the device. For details on the spacer installation procedure, refer to the instructions on the spacer packaging.

LED indicator

The status of the Wireless Charger (Qi) can be checked using the LED indicator.

Status	Illumination/flash pattern
OFF	Does not turn on
Stand-by (charging is possible)	Turns on in white
Normal charging	Turns on in amber
Fast charging*1	Turns on in green
Normal charging (charging efficiency is low)	Flashes in amber
Fast charging*1 (charging efficiency is low)	Flashes in green
Stand-by (charging is not possible)	Flashes in white
Charging is stopped due to high temperature or foreign matter detected	Flashes in red
Charging is stopped due to internal problem or malfunction	Turns on in red

*1 Some mobile devices can switch between normal charging and fast charging.

⚠ CAUTION

- *While a mobile device is placed on the charging area, keep the vehicle key away from the Wireless Charger (Qi). The vehicle key may not be detected due to radio wave interference by the Wireless Charger (Qi).*
- *Charging may not operate normally under the following conditions:*
  - *The mobile device is fully charged.*
  - *There is foreign matter between the mobile device and the charging area.*
  - *The temperature of the mobile device is high.*
  - *The mobile device is placed with the charging side facing upward.*
  - *The mobile device is placed in a position extremely deviating from the centre of the charging area.*
  - *Your vehicle is in an area where strong radio waves or electrical noise occur such as near a television tower, power plant, or airport.*
  - *The Near Field Communication (NFC) function setting of the mobile device is on (depends on the model of the mobile device).*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *Keep the following items away from the charging area. Otherwise the data stored on the mobile device could be erased or the device could malfunction.*
  - *Magnetic items such as magnets, magnetic cards, and magnetic recording media.*
  - *High precision devices such as wristwatches.*
- *Before using the Wireless Charger (Qi), make sure to back up the data stored on the mobile device. The data on the mobile device could be deleted.*
- *Do not wipe the Wireless Charger (Qi) using oil, alcohol, or thinner, or spray hairspray or insecticide onto it. Otherwise, it could cause damage or cracking.*
- *Do not leave mobile devices in the cabin. The temperature inside the cabin may become very hot, causing the devices to malfunction.*

NOTE

- *A mobile device larger than the charging area cannot be charged. In addition, even if the mobile device is in the charging area, the charging efficiency may decrease or charging may not be possible depending on where the mobile device is placed.*
- *If the function to reduce noise on the radio is used, fast charging may be disabled depending on the mobile device being charged.*
- *If the LED indicator is flashing in amber or green, the charging efficiency is low. Check that there is no foreign matter between the mobile device and the charging area, and position the mobile device near the centre of the charging area.*
- *Depending on the mobile device case or accessories used, the mobile device may not charge, or the charging efficiency may be reduced resulting in a longer charging time. If charging does not start even when a mobile device is placed on the charging area, remove the mobile device case or any accessories.*
- *While the keyless entry is operating, charging may stop temporarily, however, this does not indicate a problem.*
- *During charging, the Wireless Charger (Qi) and the mobile device become warm, however, this does not indicate a problem.*
- *If the mobile device temperature rises during charging, charging may stop due to the protection function of the device. If that happens, wait until the mobile device cools down sufficiently and then recharge it.*
- *When using the Wireless Charger (Qi), applications using the Near Field Communication (NFC) function may activate, but this does not indicate a problem with the Wireless Charger (Qi).*

OwnersManuals2.com

・*While i-stop is operating, charge amount may be temporarily restricted and charging may be temporarily cancelled, however, this does not indicate a problem.*

Trademarks

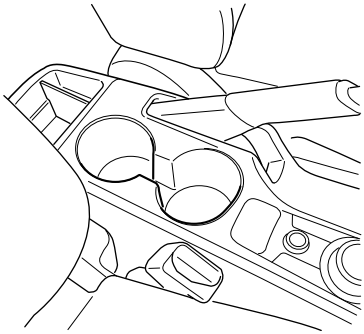
"Qi" and the Qi symbol are trademarks or registered trademarks of the Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

Cup Holder

⚠ WARNING

Never use a cup holder to hold hot liquids while the vehicle is moving:
Using a cup holder to hold hot liquids while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. If the contents spill, you could be scalded.

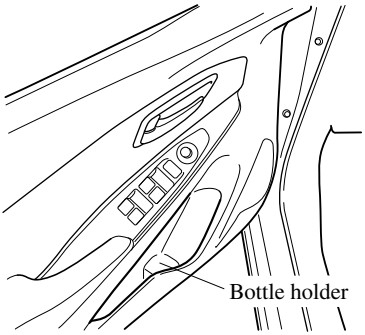
Do not put anything other than cups or drink cans in cup holders:
Putting objects other than cups or drink cans in a cup holder is dangerous. During sudden braking or manoeuvring, occupants could be hit and injured, or objects could be thrown around the vehicle, causing interference with the driver and the possibility of an accident. Only use a cup holder for cups or drink cans.



OwnersManuals2.com

Bottle Holder

Bottle holders are on the inside of the front doors.



⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the bottle holders for containers without caps. The contents may spill when opening/closing the door or while driving the vehicle.

Storage Compartments

⚠ WARNING

Keep storage boxes closed when driving:
Driving with the storage boxes open is dangerous. To reduce the possibility of injury in an accident or a sudden stop, keep the storage boxes closed when driving.

When loading cargo, make sure that it is completely secured:
If the cargo is not completely secured, it may move or collapse while driving or during sudden braking, resulting in injury or an accident.

Do not put articles in storage spaces with no lid:
Putting articles in storage spaces with no lid is dangerous as they could be thrown around the cabin if the vehicle is suddenly accelerated and cause injury depending on how the article is stored.

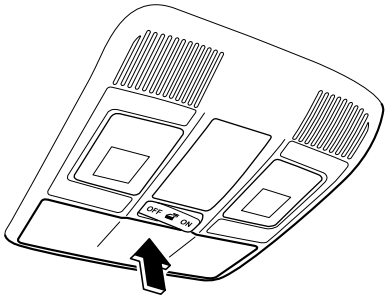
⚠ CAUTION

Do not leave lighters or eyeglasses in the storage boxes while parked under the sun. A lighter could explode or the plastic material in eyeglasses could deform and crack from high temperature.

OwnersManuals2.com

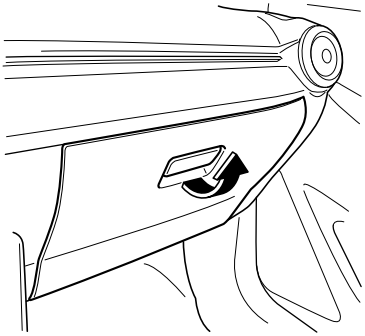
▼ Overhead Console*

This console box is designed to store eyeglasses or other accessories.
Push and release to open.



▼ Glove Compartment

To open the glove compartment, pull the latch toward you.



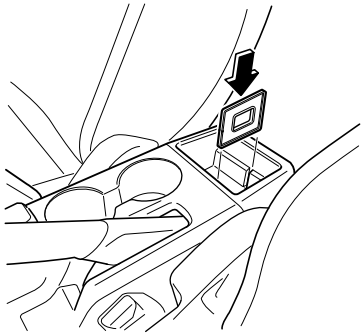
To close the glove compartment, firmly press in the centre of the glove compartment lid.

▼ Centre Console Tray

⚠ WARNING

Never use a cup holder to hold hot liquids while the vehicle is moving:
Using a cup holder to hold hot liquids while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. If the contents spill, you could be scalded.

A cup or small items can be placed on the centre console tray using the centre console divider.
The centre console tray is large enough to place a small item when the centre console divider is not in use.



 *Some models.

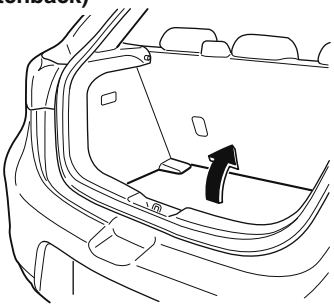
OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Luggage Compartment

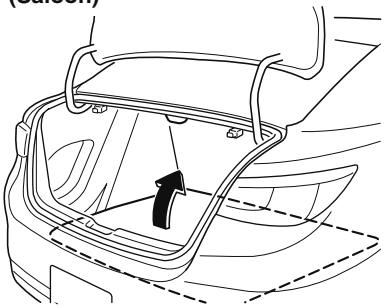
Cargo Sub-Compartment*

Lift the boot mat.

(Hatchback)



(Saloon)



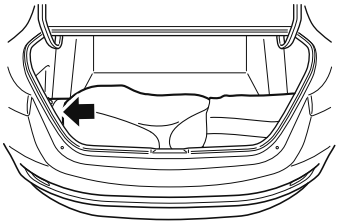
NOTE

Loading golf bags (only Saloon)

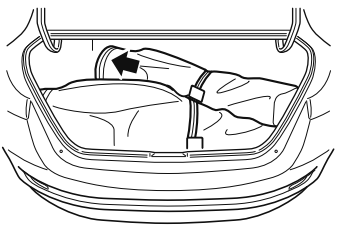
(Some golf bags may not fit using the following methods depending on their sizes.)
Up to two golf bags can be carried in the boot.

First golf bag: Place the golf bag in the luggage compartment with its bottom pointed to the left and fit it into the front of the compartment.
Second golf bag: Place the golf bag in the luggage compartment with its bottom pointed to the left and fit it into the back of the compartment.

First golf bag



Second golf bag



The arrows indicate the bottoms of the golf bags.

OwnersManuals2.com

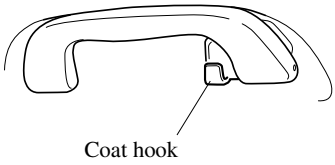
▼ Rear Coat Hooks

⚠ WARNING

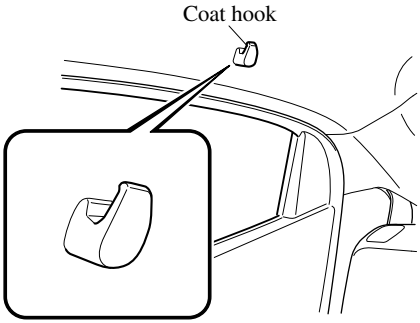
Never hang heavy or sharp objects on the assist grips and coat hooks:
Hanging heavy or sharp-ended objects such as a coat hanger from the assist grips or coat hooks is dangerous as they can fly off and hit an occupant in the cabin if a curtain air bag was to deploy, which could result in serious injury or death.

Always hang clothes on the coat hooks and the assist grips without hangers.

Type A



Type B



Removable Ashtray*

The removable ashtray can be fixed and used in either of the front cup holders.

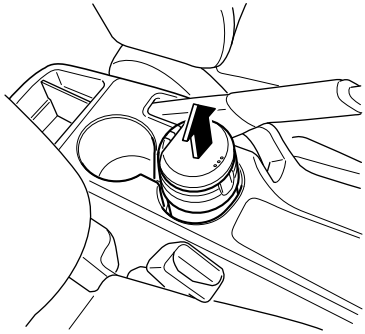
⚠ WARNING

Only use the removable ashtray in its fixed position, and make sure it is completely inserted:
Using an ashtray removed from its fixed position or not completely inserted is dangerous. Cigarettes could roll around or spill out of the ashtray into the vehicle and start a fire. Moreover, cigarette stubs will not extinguish themselves completely even if the ashtray lid is closed.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the ashtray for rubbish. You might start a fire.

To use the ashtray, insert it straight into the cup holder.
To remove the ashtray, pull it upward.



 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

6 Maintenance and Care

How to keep your Mazda in top condition.

Essential Information.....6-2
Introduction..... 6-2

Scheduled Maintenance..... 6-3
Scheduled Maintenance.....6-3
Maintenance Table.....6-4

Owner Maintenance.....6-16
Owner Maintenance Precautions..... 6-16
Bonnet.....6-18
Engine Compartment Overview..... 6-20
Engine Oil.....6-22
Engine Coolant..... 6-27
Brake/Clutch Fluid..... 6-29
Window and Headlight Washer Fluid.....6-30
Body Lubrication.....6-31
Wiper Blades..... 6-31
Battery..... 6-36
Key Battery Replacement.....6-38
Tyres..... 6-40
Light Bulbs..... 6-44
Fuses.....6-53

Appearance Care.....6-59
Exterior Care..... 6-59
Interior Care.....6-65

OwnersManuals2.com

Introduction

Be careful not to hurt yourself when inspecting your vehicle, replacing a tyre, or doing some kind of maintenance such as car washing.
In particular, wear thick work gloves such as cotton gloves when touching areas that are difficult to see while inspecting or working on your vehicle. Doing inspections or procedures with your bare hands could cause injury.

If you are unsure about any procedure this manual describes, we strongly urge you to have a reliable and qualified technician perform the work, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

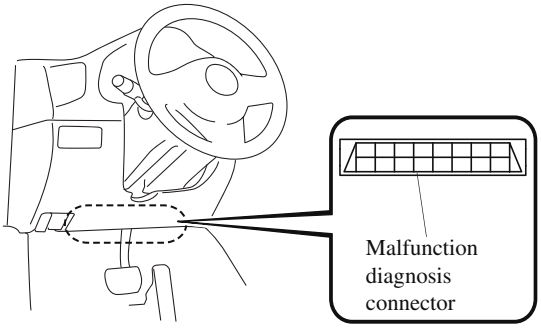
Authorised Mazda technicians and genuine Mazda parts are dedicated to your vehicle. Without this expertise and the parts that have been designed and made especially for your Mazda, inadequate, incomplete, and insufficient servicing may result in problems. This could lead to vehicle damage or an accident and injuries.

For expert advice and quality service, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

The owner should retain evidence that proper maintenance has been performed as prescribed.

A claim against a warranty will not qualify if it results from lack of maintenance and not from defective material or authorised workmanship.

The malfunction diagnosis connector is designed exclusively for connecting the specially designed device to perform on-board diagnosis.
Do not connect any devices other than the specially designed malfunction diagnosis devices for servicing. If any device other than the malfunction diagnosis device is connected, it may affect the vehicle's electrical devices or lead to damage such as battery depletion.



OwnersManuals2.com

Scheduled Maintenance

NOTE
After the prescribed period, continue to follow the described maintenance at the recommended intervals.

Emission control and related systems
The ignition and fuel systems are highly important to the emission control system and to efficient engine operation. Do not tamper with them.
All inspections and adjustments must be made by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

OwnersManuals2.com

Maintenance Table

Each maintenance table is based on the environmental conditions for each country and region.
Perform the appropriate maintenance according to the maintenance table for your country or region.
For the maintenance table that applies to your country or region, refer to the following guide.

▼ Country/Region Maintenance Table Guide

Country/Region	Maintenance Table	Country/Region	Maintenance Table	Country/Region	Maintenance Table
ALBANIA	1	ALGERIA	4	ANDORRA	1
ANGOLA	4	ANTIGUA	4	ARMENIA	2
ARUBA	4	AUSTRIA	1	AZERBAIJAN	2
B.VIRGIN	4	BAHRAIN	4	BARBADOS	4
BELARUS	2	BELGIUM	1	BERMUDA	4
BOLIVIA	4	BOSNIA AND HERZEGOVINA	1	BOTSWANA	4
BRUNEI	4	BULGARIA	1	BURUNDI	4
CAMBODIA	4	CAMEROON	4	CANARY ISLANDS	4
CHILE*1	4 or 5	COLOMBIA*3	4 or 6	COMMONWEALTH OF DOMINICA	4
COSTA RICA	4	CROATIA	1	CURACAO	4
CYPRUS*2	1 or 4	CZECH	1	DENMARK	1
DOMINICAN REPUBLIC (LHD)	4	ECUADOR	4	EGYPT	4
EL SALVADOR	4	ESTONIA	1	ETHIOPIA	4
F.GUIANA	4	FAEROE	4	FIJI	4
FINLAND	1	FRANCE	1	GABON	4
GEORGIA	4	GERMANY	1	GHANA	4
GREECE	1	GRENADA	4	GUADELOUPE	4
GUATEMALA	4	HAITI	4	HONDURAS	4
HONG KONG	4	HUNGARY	1	ICELAND	1
INDONESIA	4	IRAN	4	IRAQ	4
IRELAND	1	ISRAEL	3	ITALY	1
IVORY COAST	4	JAMAICA	4	JORDAN	4
KAZAKHSTAN	2	KENYA	4	KUWAIT	4
LAOS	4	LATVIA	1	LEBANON	4

OwnersManuals2.com

Country/Region	Maintenance Table	Country/Region	Maintenance Table	Country/Region	Maintenance Table
LESOTHO	4	LIBYA	4	LIECHTENSTEIN	1
LITHUANIA	1	LUXEMBOURG	1	MACAU	4
MACEDONIA	1	MADAGASCAR	4	MALAYSIA*3	4 or 6
MALTA*2	1 or 4	MARSHALL ISLANDS	4	MARTINIQUE	4
MAURITIUS	4	MOLDOVA	1	MONACO	1
MONGOLIA	4	MONTENEGRO	1	MOROCCO	4
MOZAMBIQUE	4	MYANMAR	4	NAMIBIA	4
NEPAL	4	NEW CALEDONIA	4	NICARAGUA	4
NIGERIA	4	NORWAY	1	OMAN	4
PANAMA	4	PAPUA NEW GUINEA	4	PARAGUAY	4
PERU	4	POLAND	1	PORTUGAL	1
QATAR	4	REUNION	4	ROMANIA	1
RUSSIA	2	SAN MARINO	1	SAUDI ARABIA*1	4 or 5
SENEGAL	4	SERBIA	1	SEYCHELLES	4
SINGAPORE*3	4 or 6	SLOVAKIA	1	SLOVENIA	1
SOUTH AFRICA	4	SPAIN	1	SRI LANKA	4
ST.LUCIA	4	ST.MARTIN	4	ST.VINCENT	4
SURINAM	4	SWAZILAND	4	SWEDEN	1
SWITZERLAND	1	SYRIA	4	TAHITI	4
TAIWAN	4	TANZANIA	4	THAILAND	4
THE NETHERLANDS	1	THE PHILIPPINES	4	TRINIDAD AND TOBAGO	4
TUNISIA	4	TURKEY	4	UAE	4
UK	1	UKRAINE	1	URUGUAY	4
USTT	4	VANUATU	4	VATICAN	1
VIETNAM	4	ZIMBABWE	4	Country/Region, not listed in the chart	4

*1 Table 4: Diesel engine and SKYACTIV-G 2.5T, Table 5: Petrol engine except SKYACTIV-G 2.5T
*2 Table 1: Petrol engine and e-SKYACTIV EV, Table 4: Diesel engine
*3 Table 4: Except e-SKYACTIV EV, Table 6: e-SKYACTIV EV

OwnersManuals2.com

Scheduled Maintenance

▼ Table 1

My Mazda Service

My Mazda Service is the maintenance monitoring feature that alerts you of maintenance needs by turning on the wrench indicator light and/or displaying a specific message in the instrument panel.

In any case, every maintenance must be done within 20,000 km or 12 months at the latest after the previous maintenance, whichever of the three events (20,000 km, 12 months or display/wrench indication) occurs first.

Maintenance		1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th	7th	8th	9th	10th	11th	12th
Spark plugs*1		Replace every 120,000 km (75,000 miles).											
Air filter*2				R			R			R			R
Fuel lines and hoses			I		I		I		I		I		I
Evaporative system (if equipped)				I			I			I			I
Engine oil & filter*3*4		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Fuel filter	Cyprus/ Malta	Replace every 60,000 km (37,500 miles).											
Drive belts*5				I			I			I			I
Cooling system			I		I		I		I		I		I
Engine coolant*6		Replace at first 200,000 km (125,000 miles) or 10 years; after that, every 100,000 km (62,500 miles) or 5 years.											
Battery*7		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake fluid*8			R		R		R		R		R		R
Parking brake		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Disc brakes		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Drum brakes			I		I		I		I		I		I
Steering operation and linkages	Except below		I		I		I		I		I		I
	Cyprus/ Malta	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Manual transaxle oil		Replace every 180,000 km (112,500 miles).											
Front and rear suspension, ball joints and wheel bearing axial play			I		I		I		I		I		I
Driveshaft dust boots			I		I		I		I		I		I
Exhaust system and heat shields		Inspect every 80,000 km (50,000 miles) or 5 years.											
Bolts and nuts on chassis and body			T		T		T		T		T		T
Body condition (for rust, corrosion and perforation)		Inspect annually.											
Cabin air filter (if equipped)			R		R		R		R		R		R

OwnersManuals2.com

Maintenance		1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th	7th	8th	9th	10th	11th	12th
Tyres (including spare tyre) (with inflation pressure adjustment)*9*10		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Emergency flat tyre repair kit (if equipped)*11		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Self-test with Mazda Modular Diagnostic System (M-MDS)*12*13 SKYACTIV-G	Ukraine	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

Chart symbols:

I: Inspect: Inspect and clean, repair, adjust, fill up, or replace if necessary.
R: Replace
L: Lubricate
C: Clean
T: Tighten
D: Drain

Remarks:

*1 In the countries below, inspect the spark plugs at every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 12 months before replacing them at the said interval.
Albania, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Bulgaria, Croatia, Latvia, Macedonia, Moldova, Montenegro, Romania, Serbia, Slovakia, Ukraine

*2 If the vehicle is operated in very dusty or sandy areas, clean and if necessary, replace the air filter more often than the recommended intervals.

*3 Flexible setting is factory preset for some countries in Europe. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for details. Flexible setting can be set if the vehicle is operated mainly where none of the following conditions apply.
a) Purpose of vehicle use is police car, taxi or driving school car.
b) Driving in dusty conditions
c) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
Once the flexible maintenance is selected, the vehicle calculates the remaining oil life based on engine operating conditions and lets you know when an oil change is due by illuminating the wrench indicator light in the instrument cluster.
Reset the engine oil data whenever replacing the engine oil regardless of the message/wrench indicator light display.

*4 If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, replace the engine oil and oil filter at every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or shorter.
a) Purpose of vehicle use is police car, taxi or driving school car.
b) Driving in dusty conditions
c) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
d) Driving for long period in cold temperatures or driving regularly at short distance only
e) Driving in extremely hot conditions
f) Driving in mountainous conditions continually

*5 Also inspect the air conditioner drive belts, if equipped.
If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, inspect the drive belts at every 20,000 km (12,500 miles) or 12 months.
a) Driving in dusty conditions
b) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
c) Driving for long period in cold temperatures or driving regularly at short distance only
d) Driving in extremely hot conditions

OwnersManuals2.com

e) Driving in mountainous conditions continually
f) Driving for long period in extremely wet or heavy rain condition

*6 Use of FL-22 is recommended when replacing engine coolant. Using engine coolant other than FL-22 may cause serious damage to the engine and cooling system.

*7 Inspect the battery electrolyte level and outer appearance. The sealed battery only requires an outer appearance inspection.

*8 If the brakes are used extensively (for example, continuous hard driving or mountain driving) or if the vehicle is operated in extremely humid climates, replace the brake fluid annually.

*9 Tyre rotation is recommended every 10,000 km (6,250 miles).

*10 The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) initialization must be performed so that the system operates normally (if equipped).

*11 Check the tyre repair fluid expiration date every year when performing the periodic maintenance. Replace the tyre repair fluid bottle with new one before the expiration date.

*12 If DTC P1200 is stored, clean the fuel system by using Mazda genuine deposit cleaner.
If the required tool (M-MDS) is not available, clean the fuel system by using Mazda genuine deposit cleaner without performing self-test.
Using non-genuine deposit cleaner could cause internal damage to the fuel system.

*13 If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, perform "Self-test with Mazda Modular Diagnostic System (M-MDS)" at every 10,000 km (6,250 miles).
a) The vehicle is idled for long periods or driven at low speeds, such as with police cars, taxis, or driver's education school car.
b) Driving under extremely high temperature conditions.

▼ Table 3

Maintenance Interval	Number of months or kilometres, whichever comes first												
	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120	132	144
	×1000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150	165	180
Spark plugs		Replace every 120,000 km or 6 years.											
Fuel filter		Replace every 135,000 km.											
Evaporative system (if equipped)					I				I				I
Fuel lines and hoses			I		I		I		I		I		I
Drive belts*1		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine oil & oil filter*2		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Air filter*3		C	C	C	R	C	C	C	R	C	C	C	R
Cooling system			I		I		I		I		I		I
Engine coolant*4		Replace at first 195,000 km or 10 years; after that, every 90,000 km or 5 years.											
Battery*5		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake fluid*6		I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Parking brake		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Power brake unit (Brake booster) and hoses		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Disc brakes		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Drum brakes			I		I		I		I		I		I

OwnersManuals2.com

Maintenance Interval	Number of months or kilometres, whichever comes first												
	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120	132	144
	×1000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150	165	180
Steering operation and linkages			I		I		I		I		I		I
Manual transaxle oil		Replace every 100,000 km or 5 years.											
Front and rear suspension, ball joints and wheel bearing axial play		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Driveshaft dust boots				I			I			I			I
Exhaust system and heat shields		Inspect every 75,000 km.											
Bolts and nuts on chassis and body		T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T
Body condition (for rust, corrosion and perforation)		Inspect annually.											
Cabin air filter (if equipped)			R		R		R		R		R		R
Tyres (including spare tyre) (with inflation pressure adjustment)*7		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Emergency flat tyre repair kit (if equipped)*8		Inspect annually.											

Chart symbols:

I: Inspect: Inspect and clean, repair, adjust, fill up, or replace if necessary.
R: Replace
L: Lubricate
C: Clean
T: Tighten
D: Drain

Remarks:

*1 Also inspect the air conditioner drive belts, if equipped.
If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, inspect the drive belts at every 10,000 km or shorter.
a) Driving in dusty conditions
b) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
c) Driving for long period in cold temperatures or driving regularly at short distance only
d) Driving in extremely hot conditions
e) Driving in mountainous conditions continually
f) Driving for long period in extremely wet or heavy rain condition

*2 If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, replace the engine oil and oil filter at every 10,000 km or shorter.
a) Purpose of vehicle use is police car, taxi or driving school car.
b) Driving in dusty conditions
c) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
d) Driving for long period in cold temperatures or driving regularly at short distance only
e) Driving in extremely hot conditions
f) Driving in mountainous conditions continually

*3 If the vehicle is operated in very dusty or sandy areas, clean and if necessary, replace the air filter more often than the recommended intervals.

OwnersManuals2.com

*4 Use of FL-22 is recommended when replacing engine coolant. Using engine coolant other than FL-22 may cause serious damage to the engine and cooling system.
*5 Inspect the battery electrolyte level and outer appearance. The sealed battery only requires an outer appearance inspection.
*6 If the brakes are used extensively (for example, continuous hard driving or mountain driving) or if the vehicle is operated in extremely humid climates, replace the brake fluid annually.
*7 The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) initialization must be performed so that the system operates normally (if equipped).
*8 Check the tyre repair fluid expiration date every year when performing the periodic maintenance. Replace the tyre repair fluid bottle with new one before the expiration date.

▼ Table 4

Maintenance Interval		Number of months or kilometres (miles), whichever comes first.															
	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60	66	72	78	84	90	96
	×1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160
	×1000 miles	6.25	12.5	18.75	25	31.25	37.5	43.75	50	56.25	62.5	68.75	75	81.25	87.5	93.75	100
SKYACTIV-G 1.3, SKYACTIV-G 1.5 AND SKYACTIV-G 2.0																	
Spark plugs*1		Replace every 120,000 km (75,000 miles).															
Fuel filter	Except Taiwan	Replace every 60,000 km (37,500 miles).															
	Taiwan	Replace every 80,000 km (50,000 miles).															
Evaporative system (if equipped)			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
SKYACTIV-D 1.5																	
Fuel filter	Except Thailand		D		R		D		R		D		R		D		R
	Thailand		D	R		D	R		D	R		D	R		D	R	
Fuel injection system*2			I						I						I		
SKYACTIV-G 1.3, SKYACTIV-G 1.5, SKYACTIV-G 2.0 AND SKYACTIV-D 1.5																	
Engine oil*3*4	Except below countries	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
	Georgia/ Cambodia/ Gabon/ Ghana/ Cameroon/ Burundi/ Mozambique/ Mongolia/ Tanzania/ Paraguay	Replace every 5,000 km (3,125 miles) or 6 months.															

OwnersManuals2.com

Maintenance Interval		Number of months or kilometres (miles), whichever comes first.															
	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60	66	72	78	84	90	96
	×1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160
	×1000 miles	6.25	12.5	18.75	25	31.25	37.5	43.75	50	56.25	62.5	68.75	75	81.25	87.5	93.75	100
Engine oil filter*3	Except below countries	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
	Georgia/ Cambodia	Replace every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 1 year.															
	Gabon/ Ghana/ Cameroon/ Burundi/ Mozambique/ Mongolia/ Tanzania/ Paraguay	Replace every 5,000 km (3,125 miles) or 6 months.															
Drive belts*5		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cooling system			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
Engine coolant*6		Replace at first 200,000 km (125,000 miles) or 10 years; after that, every 100,000 km (62,500 miles) or 5 years.															
Air filter*7	Except below countries		C		C		R		C		C		R		C		C
	Georgia		C		R		C		R		C		R		C		R
Fuel lines and hoses			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
Battery*8			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
Brake lines, hoses and connections			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
Brake fluid*9		I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R
Parking brake		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Power brake unit (Brake booster) and hoses			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
Disc brakes		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Drum brakes			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
Steering operation and linkages			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
Manual transaxle oil											R						
Front and rear suspension, ball joints and wheel bearing axial play			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
Driveshaft dust boots					I				I				I				I
Exhaust system and heat shields		Inspect every 80,000 km (50,000 miles).															
Bolts and nuts on chassis and body			T		T		T		T		T		T		T		T
Body condition (for rust, corrosion and perforation)		Inspect annually.															

OwnersManuals2.com

Scheduled Maintenance

Maintenance Interval	Number of months or kilometres (miles), whichever comes first.																
	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60	66	72	78	84	90	96
	×1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160
	×1000 miles	6.25	12.5	18.75	25	31.25	37.5	43.75	50	56.25	62.5	68.75	75	81.25	87.5	93.75	100
Cabin air filter (if equipped)			R		R		R		R		R		R		R		R
Tyres (including spare tyre) (with inflation pressure adjustment)*10		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tyre rotation*10		Rotate every 10,000 km (6,250 miles).															
Emergency flat tyre repair kit (if equipped)*11		Inspect annually.															
Self-test with Mazda Modular Diagnostic System (M-MDS)*12*13*14 SKYACTIV-G	Except Thailand	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Fuel system clean.*15*16 SKYACTIV-G	Thailand	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C

Chart symbols:

I: Inspect: Inspect and clean, repair, adjust, fill up, or replace if necessary.
R: Replace
L: Lubricate
C: Clean
T: Tighten
D: Drain

Remarks:

*1 In the countries below, inspect the spark plugs at every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 1 year before replacing them at the said interval.
Algeria, Angola, Bahrain, Bolivia, Burundi, B.Virgin, Cambodia, Cameroon, Chile, Costa Rica, Curacao, El Salvador, Ethiopia, Gabon, Georgia, Ghana, Guatemala, Haiti, Honduras, Hong Kong, Iran, Ivory Coast, Jordan, Kenya, Macau, Madagascar, Malaysia, Mongolia, Mozambique, Myanmar, Nigeria, Nicaragua, Oman, Panama, Papua New Guinea, Paraguay, Peru, Senegal, Seychelles, Syria, Tanzania, The Philippines, UAE, Vietnam, Zaire, Zimbabwe

*2 Implement the fuel injection amount correction.

*3 If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, replace the engine oil and oil filter more often than the recommended intervals.
a) Purpose of vehicle use is police car, taxi or driving school car.
b) Driving in dusty conditions
c) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
d) Driving for long period in cold temperatures or driving regularly at short distance only
e) Driving in extremely hot conditions
f) Driving in mountainous conditions continually

*4 For SKYACTIV-D 1.5, reset the engine oil data whenever replacing the engine oil regardless of the message/ wrench indicator light display.

*5 Also inspect the air conditioner drive belts, if equipped.

OwnersManuals2.com

If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, inspect the drive belts more often than the recommended intervals.
a) Driving in dusty conditions
b) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
c) Driving for long period in cold temperatures or driving regularly at short distance only
d) Driving in extremely hot conditions
e) Driving in mountainous conditions continually
f) Driving for long period in extremely wet or heavy rain condition

*6 Use of FL-22 is recommended when replacing engine coolant. Using engine coolant other than FL-22 may cause serious damage to the engine and cooling system.

*7 If the vehicle is operated in very dusty or sandy areas, clean and if necessary, replace the air filter more often than the recommended intervals.

*8 Inspect the battery electrolyte level and outer appearance. If the vehicle is operated in extremely hot and cold areas, inspect the battery electrolyte level and appearance every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 6 months. The sealed battery only requires an outer appearance inspection.

*9 If the brakes are used extensively (for example, continuous hard driving or mountain driving) or if the vehicle is operated in extremely humid climates, replace the brake fluid annually.

*10 The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) initialization must be performed so that the system operates normally (if equipped).

*11 Check the tyre repair fluid expiration date every year when performing the periodic maintenance. Replace the tyre repair fluid bottle with new one before the expiration date.

*12 If DTC P1200 is stored, clean the fuel system by using Mazda genuine deposit cleaner.
If the required tool (M-MDS) is not available, clean the fuel system by using Mazda genuine deposit cleaner without performing self-test.
Using non-genuine deposit cleaner could cause internal damage to the fuel system.

*13 If the vehicle is driven primarily under any of the following conditions, perform "Mazda Modular Diagnostic System (M-MDS)" at every 5,000 km.
a) The vehicle is idled for long periods or driven at low speeds, such as with police cars, taxis, or driver's education school car.
b) Driving under extremely high temperature conditions.

*14 Applicable countries are as follows:
SKYACTIV-G: Algeria, Angola, Antigua, Aruba, Bahrain, Barbados, Bermuda, Bolivia, Botswana, Brunei, Burundi, Cambodia, Cameroon, Colombia, Common Wealth of Dominica, Curacao, Ecuador, El Salvador, Ethiopia, Gabon, Ghana, Grenada, Haiti, Honduras, Indonesia, Iran, Iraq, Ivory Coast, Jordan, Kenya, Kuwait, Laos, Lesotho, Libya, Macau, Madagascar, Malaysia, Marshall islands, Mongolia, Morocco, Myanmar, Namibia, Nicaragua, Nigeria, Oman, Paraguay, Peru, Qatar, Senegal, Seychelles, South Africa, Sri Lanka, St. Lucia, St. Martin, St. Vincent, Swaziland, Syria, Tanzania, The Philippines, Trinidad and Tobago, Tunisia, USTT, Vanuatu, Vietnam, Zimbabwe

*15 Use Mazda genuine deposit cleaner. Using non-genuine deposit cleaner could cause an internal damage to the fuel system.

*16 If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, clean the fuel system at every 5,000 km (3,125 miles).
a) Purpose of vehicle use is police car, taxi or driving school car.
b) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
c) Driving in extremely hot conditions

OwnersManuals2.com

Scheduled Maintenance

▼ Table 5

Maintenance Interval	Number of months or kilometres (miles), whichever comes first.																
	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120	132	144	156	168	180	192
	×1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160
	×1000 miles	6.25	12.5	18.75	25	31.25	37.5	43.75	50	56.25	62.5	68.75	75	81.25	87.5	93.75	100
Spark plugs*1	Replace every 120,000 km (75,000 miles).																
Engine oil & Engine oil filter*2	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Fuel filter	Replace every 60,000 km (37,500 miles).																
Evaporative system (if equipped)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Drive belts*3	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cooling system	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine coolant*4	Replace at first 200,000 km (125,000 miles) or 10 years; after that, every 100,000 km (62,500 miles) or 5 years.																
Air filter*5	C	C	R	C	C	R	C	C	R	C	C	R	C	C	R	C	
Fuel lines and hoses	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Battery*6	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake fluid*7	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	
Parking brake	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Power brake unit (Brake booster) and hoses	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Disc brakes	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Drum brakes	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering operation and linkages	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Manual transaxle oil					R					R					R		
Front and rear suspension, ball joints and wheel bearing axial play	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Driveshaft dust boots		I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I	
Exhaust system and heat shields	Inspect every 80,000 km (50,000 miles).																
Bolts and nuts on chassis and body	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T
Body condition (for rust, corrosion and perforation)	Inspect annually.																
Cabin air filter (if equipped)	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Tyres (including spare tyre) (with inflation pressure adjustment)*8	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tyre rotation*8	Rotate every 10,000 km (6,250 miles).																
Emergency flat tyre repair kit (if equipped)*9	Inspect annually.																

OwnersManuals2.com

Chart symbols:

I: Inspect: Inspect and clean, repair, adjust, fill up, or replace if necessary.
R: Replace
L: Lubricate
C: Clean
T: Tighten
D: Drain

Remarks:

*1 For Chile, inspect the spark plugs at every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 1 year before replacing them at the said interval.

*2 If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, replace the engine oil and oil filter more often than the recommended intervals.
a) Purpose of vehicle use is police car, taxi or driving school car.
b) Driving in dusty conditions
c) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
d) Driving for long period in cold temperatures or driving regularly at short distance only
e) Driving in extremely hot conditions
f) Driving in mountainous conditions continually

*3 Also inspect the air conditioner drive belts, if equipped.
If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, inspect the drive belts more often than the recommended intervals.
a) Driving in dusty conditions
b) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
c) Driving for long period in cold temperatures or driving regularly at short distance only
d) Driving in extremely hot conditions
e) Driving in mountainous conditions continually
f) Driving for long period in extremely wet or heavy rain condition

*4 Use of FL-22 is recommended when replacing engine coolant. Using engine coolant other than FL-22 may cause serious damage to the engine and cooling system.

*5 If the vehicle is operated in very dusty or sandy areas, clean and if necessary, replace the air filter more often than the recommended intervals.

*6 Inspect the battery electrolyte level and outer appearance. If the vehicle is operated in extremely hot and cold areas, inspect the battery electrolyte level and appearance every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 6 months. The sealed battery only requires an outer appearance inspection.

*7 If the brakes are used extensively (for example, continuous hard driving or mountain driving) or if the vehicle is operated in extremely humid climates, replace the brake fluid annually.

*8 The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) initialization must be performed so that the system operates normally (if equipped).

*9 Check the tyre repair fluid expiration date every year when performing the periodic maintenance. Replace the tyre repair fluid bottle with new one before the expiration date.

OwnersManuals2.com

Owner Maintenance Precautions

Routine Service

We highly recommend that these items be inspected before driving.

- Engine Oil Level (page 6-26)
- Engine Coolant Level (page 6-27)
- Brake and clutch Fluid Level (page 6-29)
- Washer Fluid Level (page 6-30)
- Battery Maintenance (page 6-37)
- Tyre Inflation Pressure (page 6-40)

Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This section gives instructions only for items that are easy to perform.

As explained in the Introduction (page 6-2), several procedures can be done only by a qualified service technician with special tools.

Improper do-it yourself maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Mazda Warranty statement provided with the vehicle. If you are unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, have it done by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

There are strict environmental laws regarding the disposal of waste oil and fluids. Please dispose of your waste properly and with due regard to the environment.

Entrust the oil and fluid changes of your vehicle to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

⚠ WARNING

Do not perform maintenance work if you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work. Have maintenance work done by a qualified technician:
Performing maintenance work on a vehicle is dangerous if not done properly. You can be seriously injured while performing some maintenance procedures.

OwnersManuals2.com

If you must run the engine while working under the bonnet, make certain that you remove all jewellery (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all neckties, scarves, and similar loose clothing before getting near the engine or cooling fan which may turn on unexpectedly:
Working under the bonnet with the engine running is dangerous. It becomes even more dangerous when you wear jewellery, loose clothing or have long hair or a long beard. Either can become entangled in moving parts and result in injury.



Pull over to a safe location, then switch the ignition off and make sure the fan is not running before attempting to work near the cooling fan:
Working near the cooling fan when it is running is dangerous. The fan could continue running indefinitely even if the engine has stopped and the engine compartment temperature is high. You could be hit by the fan and seriously injured.

Do not leave items in the engine compartment:
After you have finished checking or doing servicing in the engine compartment, do not forget and leave items such as tools or rags in the engine compartment.
Tools or other items left in the engine compartment could cause engine damage or a fire leading to an unexpected accident.

OwnersManuals2.com

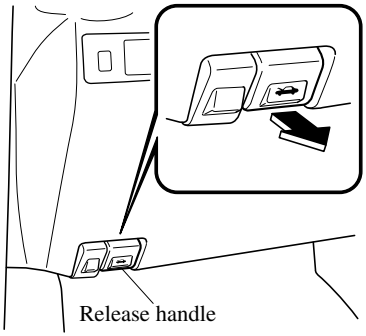
Bonnet

⚠ WARNING

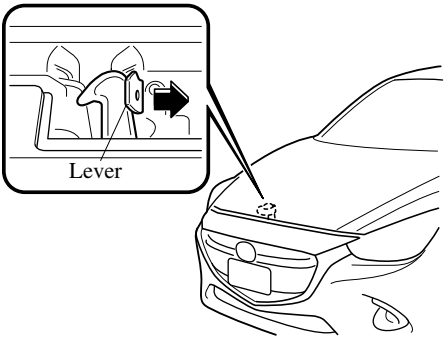
Always check that the bonnet is closed and securely locked:
A bonnet that is not closed and securely locked is dangerous as it could fly open while the vehicle is moving and block the driver's vision which could result in a serious accident.

▼ Opening the Bonnet

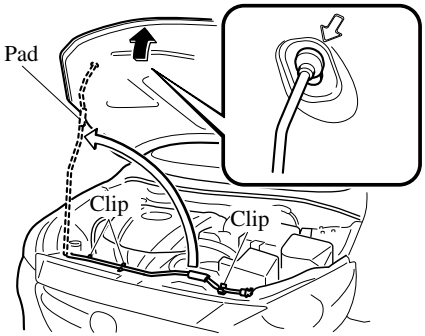
1. With the vehicle parked, pull the release handle to unlock the bonnet.



2. Insert your hand into the bonnet opening, slide the latch lever to the right, and lift up the bonnet.



3. Grasp the support rod in the padded area and secure it in the support rod hole indicated by the arrow to hold the bonnet open.

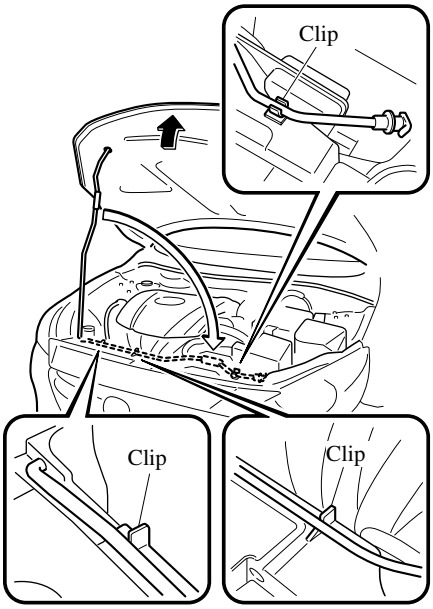


▼ Closing the Bonnet

1. Check under the bonnet area to make certain all filler caps are in place and all loose items (e.g. tools, oil containers, etc.) have been removed.

OwnersManuals2.com

2. Lift the bonnet, grasp the padded area on the support rod, and secure the support rod in the clip. Verify that the support rod is secured in the clip before closing the bonnet.



3. Lower the bonnet slowly to a height of about 20 cm (7.9 in) above its closed position and then let it drop.

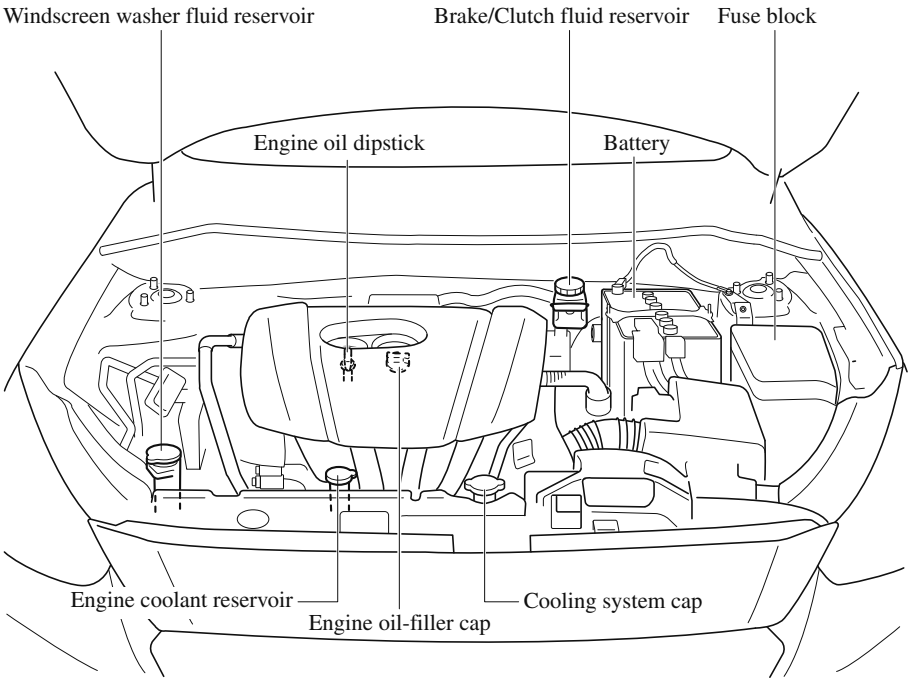
⚠ CAUTION

When closing the bonnet, do not push it excessively such as by applying your weight. Otherwise, the bonnet could be deformed.

OwnersManuals2.com

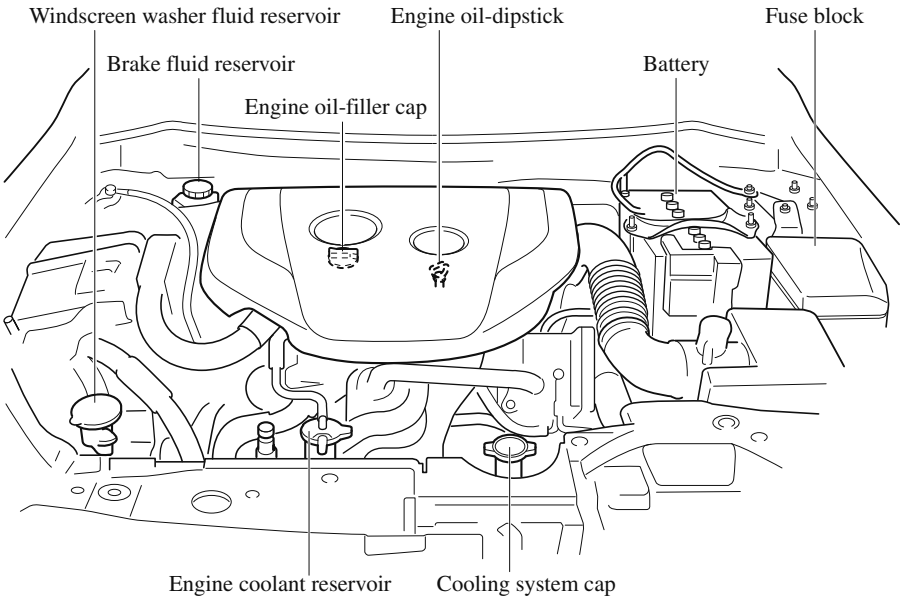
Engine Compartment Overview

SKYACTIV-G 1.3, SKYACTIV-G 1.5 and SKYACTIV-G 2.0



OwnersManuals2.com

SKYACTIV-D 1.5



OwnersManuals2.com

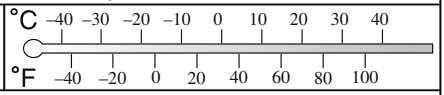
Engine Oil

NOTE
Changing the engine oil should be done by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

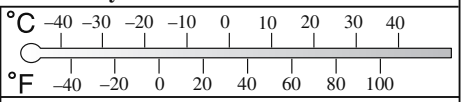
▼ Recommended Oil

In order to keep the maintenance interval (page 6-3) and to protect the engine from damage caused by poor lubrication, it is vitally important to make use of engine oil with the correct specification. Do not use oils which do not meet the following specifications or requirements. Use of unsuitable oil may lead to engine damage which is not covered by the Mazda Warranty.

SKYACTIV-G 1.3, SKYACTIV-G 1.5 and SKYACTIV-G 2.0 (Europe and Taiwan)

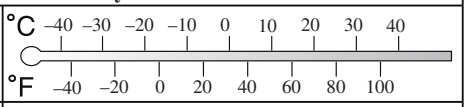
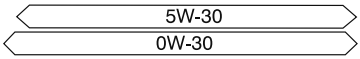
Temperature Range SAE Viscosity Numbers		
Grade		
Recommended oils		
Mazda Original Oil Supra-X 0W-20		0W-20
Mazda Original Oil Ultra 5W-30		5W-30
Alternative Oil Quality		
API **SN** or higher, or ACEA **A5/B5**	**0W-20**	0W-20
	5W-30	5W-30

(Except Europe and Taiwan)

Temperature Range SAE Viscosity Numbers	
Grade	
API **SL** or higher	10W-30 5W-20 5W-30 0W-20 0W-30

OwnersManuals2.com

SKYACTIV-D 1.5

Temperature Range SAE Viscosity Numbers	
Grade	
ACEA **C3**	

Engine oil viscosity, or thickness, has an effect on fuel economy and cold-weather operation (starting and oil flow).
Low-viscosity engine oils can provide improved fuel economy and cold-weather performance.

When choosing an oil, consider the temperature range your vehicle will operate in before the next oil change.
Then select the recommended viscosity from the chart.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Using oils of viscosity besides those recommended for specific temperature ranges could result in engine damage.*
- ***(SKYACTIV-D 1.5)***
  SKYACTIV-D 1.5 uses specified oil. Please confirm the specification in owner's manual. ***If engine oil other than the specified oil is used, the Diesel Particulate Filter effective period of use will be shortened or the Diesel Particulate Filter may be damaged.***

OwnersManuals2.com

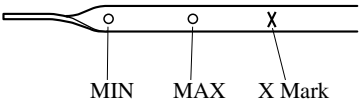
NOTE

(SKYACTIV-G 1.3, SKYACTIV-G 1.5 and SKYACTIV-G 2.0)

- *It is normal for all engines to consume engine oil under normal driving conditions. Engine oil consumption may be as high as 0.8 L/1,000 km (1 L/800 miles). This may be as a result of evaporation, internal ventilation or burning of the lubricating oil in the working engine. Oil consumption may be higher when the engine is new due to the running-in process. Oil consumption is also dependant on engine speed and engine load. Under extreme driving conditions, oil consumption may be higher.*

(SKYACTIV-D 1.5)

- *Inspect the engine oil level periodically. When inspecting the engine oil, if the engine oil level is exceeds the "X" mark on the dipstick, replace the engine oil. This should be done by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). When replacing the engine oil, inspect the oil level using the oil dipstick and refill so that the engine oil level is within the range between MIN and MAX as shown in the figure.*



- *Whenever the engine oil is replaced, the vehicles engine control unit needs to be reset as soon as possible. Otherwise the wrench indicator light or engine oil warning light may turn on. To reset the engine control unit, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) or refer to the vehicle engine control unit reset procedure on page 6-25.*

OwnersManuals2.com

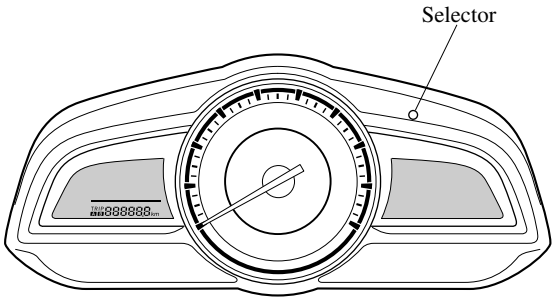
▼ Vehicle Engine Control Unit Reset Procedure

NOTE
This procedure is intended for vehicles with the engine oil flexible maintenance setting selected.

After replacing the engine oil, have a repair shop such as an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) perform the initialization (engine oil data resetting) of the recorded value. If the value recorded by the computer is not initialized, the wrench indicator light may not turn off or it may turn on earlier than normal.

NOTE
The initialization (engine oil data resetting) of the recorded value can be performed using the following procedure:

1. *Switch the ignition OFF.*
2. *Switch the ignition ON with the selector pressed and continue pressing the selector for about 5 seconds until the master warning light ⚠/⚠ flashes.*

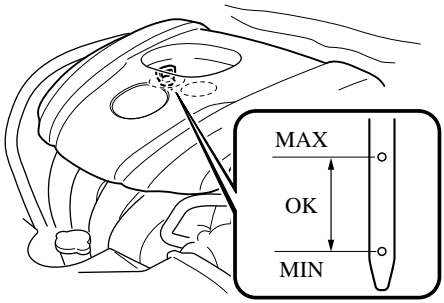


3. *After the master warning light ⚠/⚠ flashes for several seconds, the initialization is completed.*

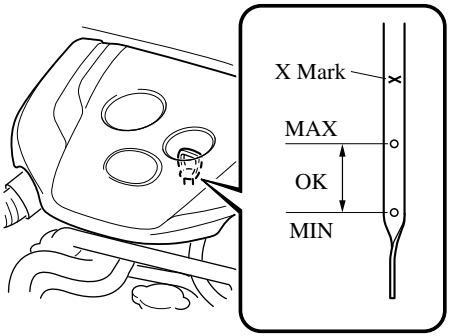
OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Inspecting Engine Oil Level

1. Be sure the vehicle is on a level surface.
2. Warm up the engine to normal operating temperature.
3. Turn it off and wait at least 5 minutes for the oil to return to the sump.
4. Pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean, and reinsert it fully.
   SKYACTIV-G 1.3, SKYACTIV-G 1.5 and SKYACTIV-G 2.0



SKYACTIV-D 1.5



NOTE
(SKYACTIV-D 1.5)

When inspecting the engine oil level, pull out the dipstick straight without twisting. In addition, when inserting the dipstick, always insert it without twisting so that the "X" mark faces the front of the vehicle.

5. Pull it out again and examine the level. The level is normal if it is between the MIN and MAX marks.
   If it is near or below MIN, add enough oil to bring the level to MAX.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not overfill the engine oil. This may cause engine damage.

6. Make sure the O-ring on the dipstick is positioned properly before reinserting the dipstick.
7. Reinsert the dipstick fully.

OwnersManuals2.com

Engine Coolant

▼ Inspecting Coolant Level

⚠ WARNING

Do not use a match or live flame in the engine compartment. DO NOT ADD COOLANT WHEN THE ENGINE IS HOT:
A hot engine is dangerous. If the engine has been running, parts of the engine compartment can become very hot. You could be burned. Carefully inspect the engine coolant in the coolant reservoir, but do not open it.



Pull over to a safe location, then switch the ignition off and make sure the fan is not running before attempting to work near the cooling fan:
Working near the cooling fan when it is running is dangerous. The fan could continue running indefinitely even if the engine has stopped and the engine compartment temperature is high. You could be hit by the fan and seriously injured.



Do not remove either cooling system cap when the engine and radiator are hot:
When the engine and radiator are hot, scalding coolant and steam may shoot out under pressure and cause serious injury.

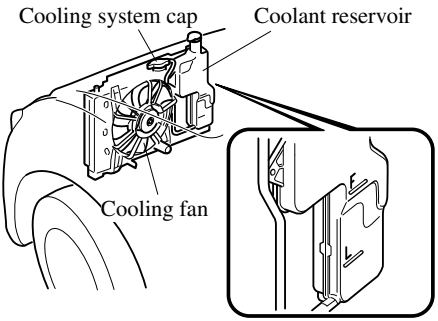
NOTE
Changing the coolant should be done by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Inspect the antifreeze protection and coolant level in the coolant reservoir at least once a year—at the beginning of the winter season—and before travelling where temperatures may drop below freezing.

Inspect the condition and connections of all cooling system and heater hoses. Replace any that are swollen or deteriorated.

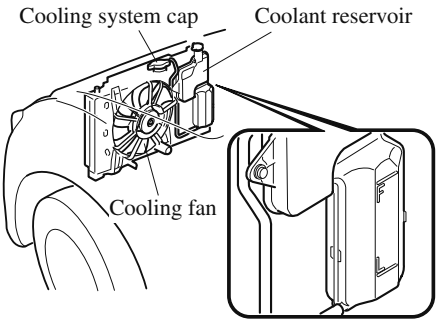
The coolant should be at full in the radiator and between the F or FULL and L marks on the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

SKYACTIV-G 1.3 and SKYACTIV-G 1.5
Type A

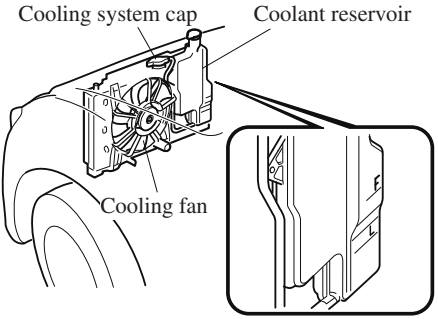


OwnersManuals2.com

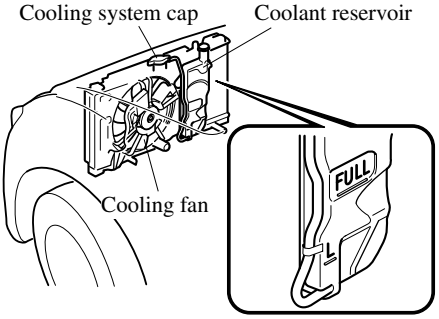
Type B



SKYACTIV-G 2.0



SKYACTIV-D 1.5



If it is at or near L, add enough coolant to the coolant reservoir to provide freezing and corrosion protection and to bring the level to F or FULL.

Securely tighten the coolant reservoir tank cap after adding coolant.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Radiator coolant will damage paint. Rinse it off quickly if spilled.*
- *If the "FL22" mark is shown on or near the cooling system cap, use of FL-22 is recommended when replacing engine coolant. Using engine coolant other than FL-22 may cause serious damage to the engine and cooling system.*





If the coolant reservoir is empty or new coolant is required frequently, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

OwnersManuals2.com

Brake/Clutch Fluid

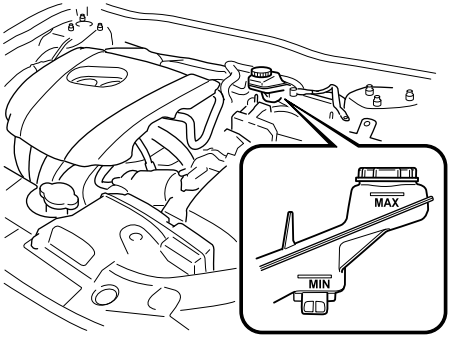
▼ Inspecting Brake/Clutch Fluid Level

⚠ WARNING

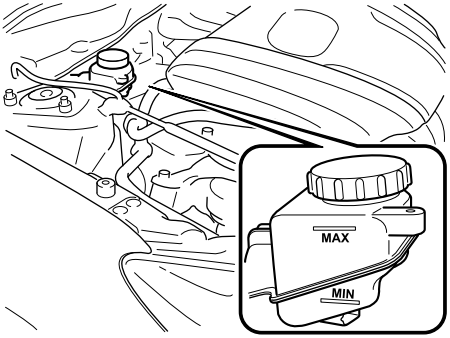
If the brake/clutch fluid level is low, have the brakes inspected:
A low brake/clutch fluid level is dangerous. A low level could indicate brake lining wear or a brake system leak which could cause the brakes to fail and lead to an accident.

The brakes and clutch draw fluid from the same reservoir.
Inspect the fluid level in the reservoir regularly. It should be kept between the MAX and MIN lines.
The level normally drops with accumulated distance, a condition associated with wear of brake and clutch linings. If it is excessively low, have the brake/clutch system inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Left-hand drive model



Right-hand drive model



OwnersManuals2.com

Window and Headlight Washer Fluid

▼ Inspecting Washer Fluid Level

⚠ WARNING

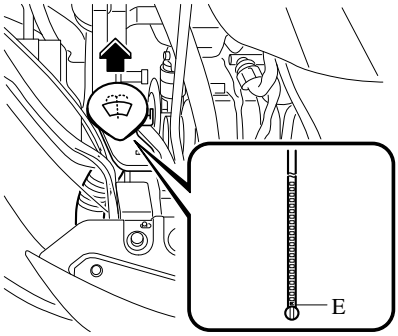
Use only windscreen washer fluid or plain water in the reservoir:
Using radiator antifreeze as washer fluid is dangerous. If sprayed on the windscreen, it will dirty the windscreen, affect your visibility, and could result in an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze in the reservoir as it could cause paint discolouration or pump damage.

Add washer fluid under any of the following conditions.

- The top of the fluid level is low.
- The Low Washer Fluid Level Warning Indication/Warning Light (if equipped) turns on.
- The top of the fluid level is lower than E (if equipped).



Use plain water if washer fluid is unavailable.
But use only washer fluid in cold weather to prevent it from freezing.

NOTE
Front and rear washer fluid is supplied from the same reservoir.

OwnersManuals2.com

Body Lubrication

All moving points of the body, such as door and bonnet hinges and locks, should be lubricated each time the engine oil is changed. Use a nonfreezing lubricant on locks during cold weather.

Make sure the bonnet's secondary latch keeps the bonnet from opening when the primary latch is released.

Wiper Blades

⚠ CAUTION

- *Hot waxes applied by automatic car washers have been known to affect the wiper's ability to clean windows.*
- *To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use petrol, paraffin, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.*
- *When the wiper lever is in the AUTO position and the ignition is switched ON, the wipers may move automatically in the following cases:*
  - *If the windscreen above the rain sensor is touched.*
  - *If the windscreen above the rain sensor is wiped with a cloth.*
  - *If the windscreen is struck with a hand or other object.*
  - *If the rain sensor is struck with a hand or other object from inside the vehicle.*

  Be careful not to pinch hands or fingers as it may cause injury, or damage the wipers. When washing or servicing the vehicle, make sure the wiper lever is in the OFF position.

Contamination of either the windscreen or the blades with foreign matter can reduce wiper effectiveness. Common sources are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes.

If the blades are not wiping properly, clean the window and blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent; then rinse thoroughly with clean water. Repeat if necessary.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Replacing Windscreen Wiper Blades

When the wipers no longer clean well, the blades are probably worn or cracked. Replace them.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not try to sweep the wiper arm by hand.

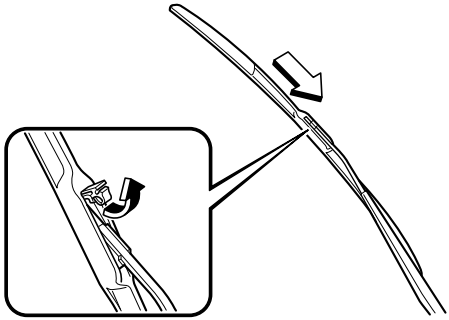
NOTE

When raising both windscreen wiper arms, raise the driver's side wiper arm first. When lowering the wiper arms, slowly lower the wiper arm from the passenger's side first while supporting it with your hand. Forcefully lowering the wiper arms could damage the wiper arm and blade, and may scratch or crack the windscreen.

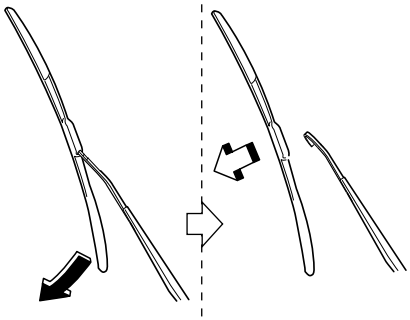
Replace the wiper blades using the following procedure.

(Type A)

1. Raise the wiper arm.
2. Open the clip and slide the blade assembly in the direction of the arrow.



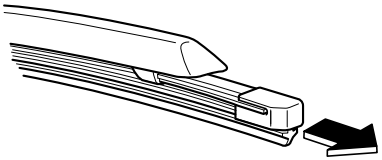
3. Tilt the blade assembly and remove it from the arm.



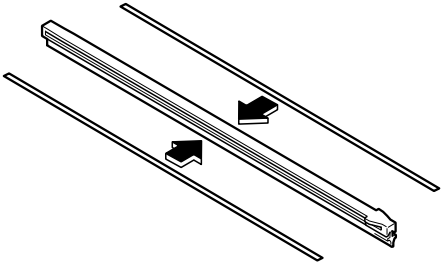
⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the windscreen let the wiper arm down easily, do not let it slap down on the windscreen.

4. Pull down the blade rubber and slide it out of blade holder.



5. Remove the metal stiffeners from each blade rubber and install them in the new blade.

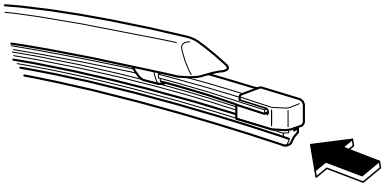


OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ CAUTION

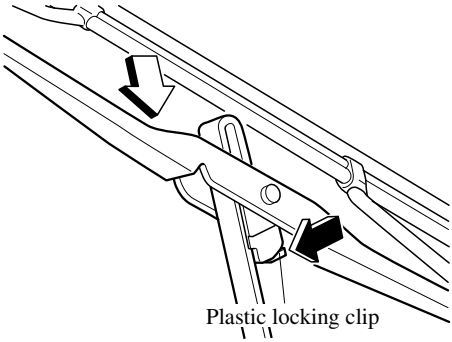
- *Do not bend or discard the stiffeners. You need to use them again.*
- *If the metal stiffeners are switched, the blade's wiping efficiency could be reduced.*
  So do not use the driver's side metal stiffeners on the passenger's side, or vice versa.
- *Be sure to reinstall the metal stiffeners in the new blade rubber so that the curve is the same as it was in the old blade rubber.*

6. Carefully insert the new blade rubber. Then install the blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.



(Type B)

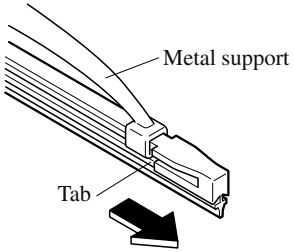
1. Raise the wiper arm and turn the blade assembly to expose the plastic locking clip.
   Compress the clip and slide the assembly downward; then lift it off the arm.



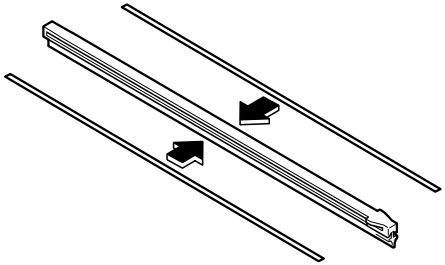
⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the windscreen let the wiper arm down easily, do not let it slap down on the windscreen.

2. Hold the end of the rubber and pull until the tabs are free of the metal support.



3. Remove the metal stiffeners from each blade rubber and install them in the new blade.

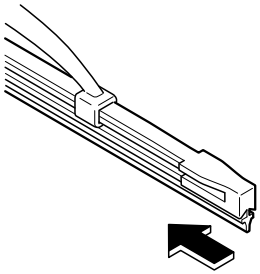


OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not bend or discard the stiffeners. You need to use them again.*
- *If the metal stiffeners are switched, the blade's wiping efficiency could be reduced.*
  So do not use the driver's side metal stiffeners on the passenger's side, or vice versa.
- *Be sure to reinstall the metal stiffeners in the new blade rubber so that the curve is the same as it was in the old blade rubber.*

4. Carefully insert the new blade rubber. Then install the blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.



NOTE
Install the blade so that the tabs are toward the bottom of the wiper arm.

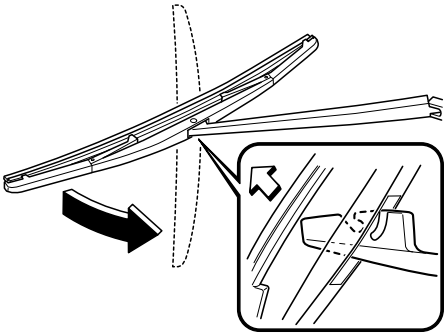
▼ Replacing Rear Window Wiper Blade (Hatchback)

When the wiper no longer cleans well, the blade is probably worn or cracked. Replace it.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the wiper arm and other components, do not move the wiper by hand.

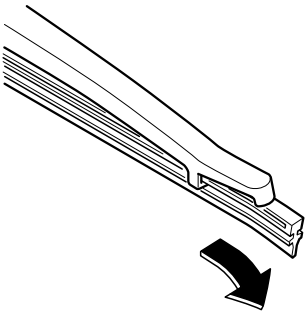
1. Raise the wiper arm and rotate the wiper blade to the right until it unlocks, then remove the blade.



⚠ CAUTION

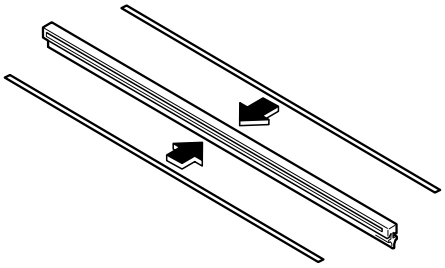
To prevent damage to the rear window, do not let the wiper arm fall on it.

2. Pull down the blade rubber and slide it out of the blade holder.



OwnersManuals2.com

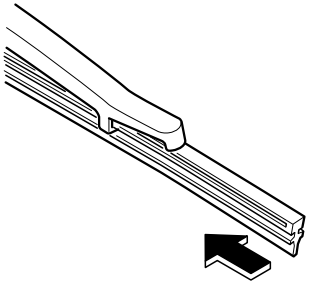
3. Remove the metal stiffeners from the blade rubber and install them in the new blade.



⚠ CAUTION

Do not bend or discard the stiffeners. You need to use them again.

4. Carefully insert the new blade rubber. Then install the blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.



OwnersManuals2.com

Battery

⚠ WARNING



Read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting to ensure safe and correct handling:



Always wear eye protection when working near the battery:
Working without eye protection is dangerous. Battery fluid contains SULPHURIC ACID which could cause blindness if splashed into your eyes. Also, hydrogen gas produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode.



Wear eye protection and protective gloves to prevent contact with battery fluid:
Spilled battery fluid is dangerous.
Battery fluid contains SULPHURIC ACID which could cause serious injuries if it gets in eyes, or on the skin or clothing. If this happens, immediately flush your eyes with water for 15 minutes or wash your skin thoroughly and get medical attention.



Always keep batteries out of the reach of children:
Allowing children to play near batteries is dangerous. Battery fluid could cause serious injuries if it gets in the eyes or on the skin.

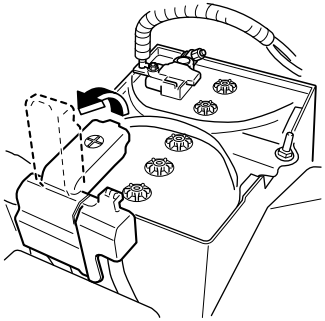


Keep flames and sparks away from battery cells and do not allow metal tools to contact the positive (+) or negative (−) terminal of the battery when working near a battery. Do not allow the positive (+) terminal to contact the vehicle body:
Flames and sparks near battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries. Keep all flames including cigarettes and sparks away from battery cells.

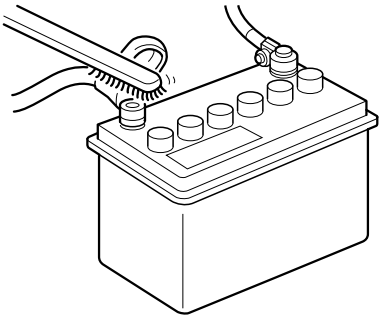
OwnersManuals2.com

Keep all flames and sparks away from battery cells because hydrogen gas is produced from battery cells while charging the battery or adding battery fluid:
Flames and sparks near battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries. Keep all flames including cigarettes and sparks away from battery cells.

NOTE
Before performing battery maintenance, remove the battery cover.



▼ Battery Maintenance



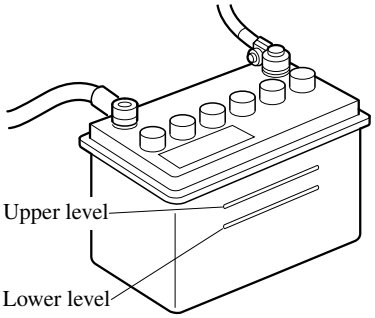
To get the best service from a battery:

- Keep it securely mounted.
- Keep the top clean and dry.
- Keep terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse off spilled electrolyte immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle will not be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery leads and charge the battery every 6 weeks.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Inspecting Electrolyte Level*

A low level of electrolyte fluid will cause the battery to discharge quickly.



Inspect the electrolyte level at least once a week. If it is low, contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for the electrolyte level.

▼ Battery Replacement

Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for battery replacement.

Key Battery Replacement

If the buttons on the transmitter are inoperable and the operation indicator light does not flash, the battery may be dead.
Replace with a new battery before the transmitter becomes unusable.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Make sure the battery is installed correctly. Battery leakage could occur if it is not installed correctly.*
- *When replacing the battery, be careful not to touch any of the internal circuitry and electrical terminals, bend the electrical terminals, or get dirt in the transmitter as the transmitter could be damaged.*
- *There is the danger of explosion if the battery is not correctly replaced.*
- *Dispose of used batteries according to the following instructions.*
  - *Insulate the plus and minus terminals of the battery using cellophane or equivalent tape.*
  - *Never disassemble.*
  - *Never throw the battery into fire or water.*
  - *Never deform or crush.*
- *Replace only with the same type battery (CR2032 or equivalent).*

The following conditions indicate that the battery power is low:

- The messages are displayed in the instrument cluster for about 30 seconds after the engine is switched OFF.
- The system does not operate and the operation indicator light on the

 *Some models.

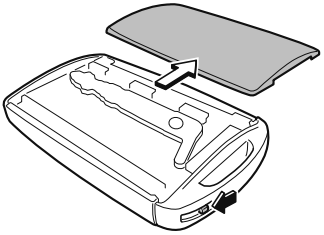
OwnersManuals2.com

transmitter does not flash when the buttons are pressed.
- The system's operational range is reduced.

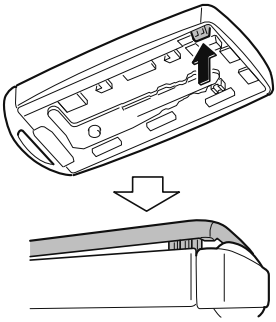
Replacing the battery at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), is recommended to prevent damage to the key. If replacing the battery by yourself, follow the instruction.

Replacing the key battery

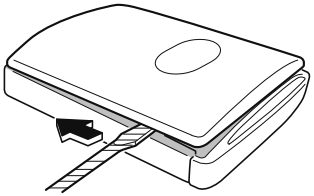
1. Remove the lower cover while sliding the knob in the direction of the arrow.



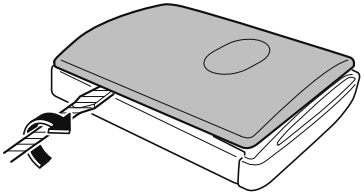
2. Press in the tab to unlock the upper cover.



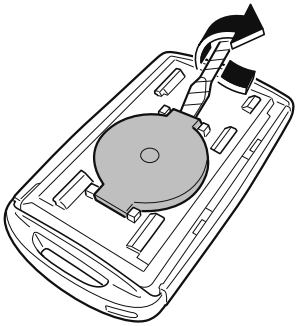
3. Insert a tape-wrapped flathead screwdriver into the gap and slide it in the direction of the arrow.



4. Twist the flathead screwdriver in the direction of the arrow and remove the upper cover.

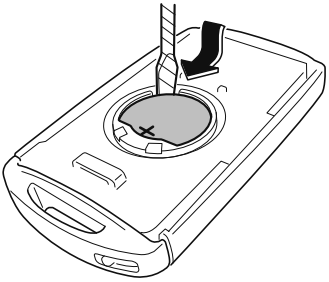


5. Remove the cap using the tape-wrapped flathead screwdriver.

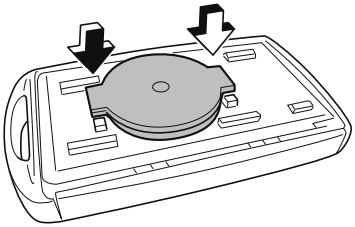


OwnersManuals2.com

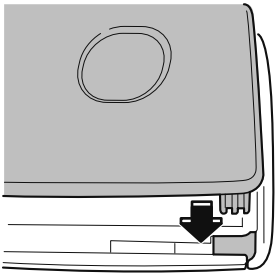
6. Remove the battery using tape-wrapped flathead screwdriver.



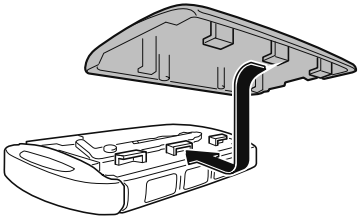
7. Insert a new battery into the transmitter so that the positive pole is facing up.
8. Install the cap.



9. Install the upper cover.



10. Insert the tabs of the lower cover into the slots of the transmitter and install the lower cover.



Tyres

For reasons of proper performance, safety, and better fuel economy, always maintain recommended tyre inflation pressures and stay within the recommended load limits and weight distribution.

⚠ WARNING

Using Different Tyre Types:
Driving your vehicle with different types of tyres is dangerous. It could cause poor handling and poor braking; leading to loss of control.
Except for the limited use of the temporary spare tyre, use only the same type tyres (radial, bias-belted, bias-type) on all four wheels.

Using Wrong-Sized Tyres:
Using any other tyre size than what is specified for the vehicle (page 9-15) is dangerous. It could seriously affect ride, handling, ground clearance, tyre clearance, and speedometer calibration. This could cause you to have an accident. Use only tyres that are the correct size specified for the vehicle.

▼ Tyre Inflation Pressure

⚠ WARNING

Always inflate the tyres to the correct pressure:
Overinflation or underinflation of tyres is dangerous. Adverse handling or unexpected tyre failure could result in a serious accident.
Refer to Tyres on page 9-15.

OwnersManuals2.com

Use only a Mazda-genuine tyre valve cap:
Use of a non-genuine part is dangerous as the correct tyre air pressure cannot be maintained if the tyre valve becomes damaged. If the vehicle is driven under this condition, the tyre air pressure will decrease which could result in a serious accident. Do not use any part for the tyre valve cap that is not a Mazda-genuine part.

Inspect all tyre pressures monthly (including the spare*) when the tyres are cold. Maintain recommended pressures for the best ride, handling, and minimum tyre wear.
Refer to the specification charts (page 9-15).
(With tyre pressure monitoring system)
After adjusting the tyre pressure, initialization of the tyre pressure monitoring system is necessary to make the system operate normally.
Refer to Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Initialization on page 4-225.

NOTE

- *Always check tyre pressure when tyres are cold.*
- *Warm tyres normally exceed recommended pressures. Do not release air from warm tyres to adjust the pressure.*
- *Underinflation can cause reduced fuel economy, uneven and accelerated tyre wear, and poor sealing of the tyre bead, which will deform the wheel and cause separation of tyre from rim.*
- *Overinflation can produce a harsh ride, uneven and accelerated tyre wear, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.*
  Keep your tyre pressure at the correct levels. If one frequently needs inflating, have it inspected.

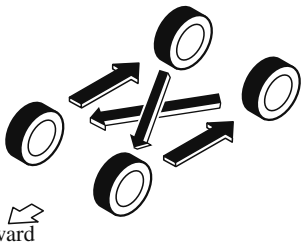
▼ Tyre Rotation

⚠ WARNING

Rotate tyres periodically:
Irregular tyre wear is dangerous. To equalize tread wear for maintaining good performance in handling and braking, rotate the tyres every 10,000 km (6,250 miles), or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, inspect them for correct balance.

NOTE
(Without temporary spare tyre)
Because your vehicle is not equipped with a spare tyre, you cannot do a tyre rotation safely with the jack that comes with your vehicle. Have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) perform tyre rotation.



Do not include (TEMPORARY USE ONLY) spare tyre in rotation.

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Also, inspect them for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by one or a combination of the following:

- Incorrect tyre pressure
- Improper wheel alignment
- Out-of-balance wheel
- Severe braking

After rotation, inflate all tyre pressures to specification (page 9-15) and inspect the wheel nuts for tightness.
(With tyre pressure monitoring system)
After adjusting the tyre pressure, initialization of the tyre pressure monitoring system is necessary to make the system operate normally.
Refer to Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Initialization on page 4-225.

⚠ CAUTION

Rotate unidirectional tyres and radial tyres that have an asymmetrical tread pattern or studs only from front to rear, not from side to side. Tyre performance will be reduced if rotated from side to side.

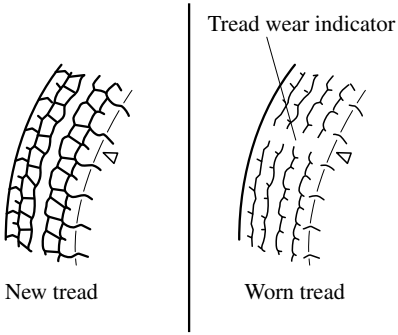
▼ Replacing a Tyre

⚠ WARNING

Always use tyres that are in good condition:
Driving with worn tyres is dangerous. Reduced braking, steering, and traction could result in an accident.

Replace all four tyres at the same time:
Replacing just one tyre is dangerous. It could cause poor handling and poor braking resulting in loss of vehicle control. Mazda strongly recommends that you replace all four tyres at the same time.

If a tyre wears evenly, a wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread.
Replace the tyre when this happens.



You should replace the tyre before the band crosses the entire tread.
(With tyre pressure monitoring system)
After adjusting the tyre pressure, initialization of the tyre pressure monitoring system is necessary to make the system operate normally.
Refer to Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Initialization on page 4-225.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Temporary Spare Tyre*

Inspect the temporary spare tyre at least monthly to make sure it is properly inflated and stored.

NOTE
The temporary spare tyre condition gradually deteriorates even if it has not been used.

The temporary spare tyre is easier to handle because of its construction which is lighter and smaller than a conventional tyre. This tyre should be used only for an emergency and only for a short distance.

Use the temporary spare tyre only until the conventional tyre is repaired, which should be as soon as possible.

Refer to Tyre on page 9-15.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not use your temporary spare tyre rim with a snow tyre or a conventional tyre. Neither will properly fit and could damage both tyre and rim.*
- *The temporary spare tyre has a tread life of less than 5,000 km (3,000 miles). The tread life may be shorter depending on driving conditions.*
- *The temporary spare tyre is for limited use, however, if the tread wear solid-band indicator appears, replace the tyre with the same type of temporary spare (page 6-42).*

▼ Replacing a Wheel

⚠ WARNING

Always use wheels of the correct size on your vehicle:
Using a wrong-sized wheel is dangerous. Braking and handling could be affected, leading to loss of control and an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

A wrong-sized wheel may adversely affect:

- *Tyre fit*
- *Wheel and bearing life*
- *Ground clearance*
- *Snow-chain clearance*
- *Speedometer calibration*
- *Headlight aim*
- *Bumper height*
- *Tyre Pressure Monitoring System**

NOTE

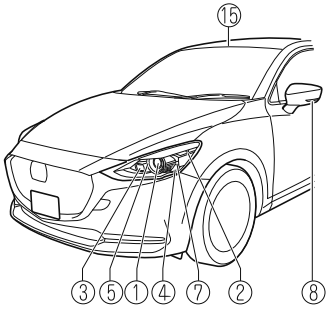
- *When replacing a wheel, make sure the new one is the same as the original factory wheel in diameter, rim width, and offset (inset/outset).*
- *For details, contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*

Proper tyre balancing provides the best riding comfort and helps reduce tread wear. Out-of-balance tyres can cause vibration and uneven wear, such as cupping and flat spots.

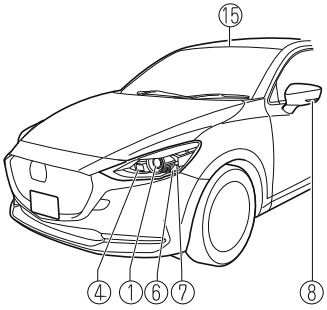
OwnersManuals2.com

Light Bulbs

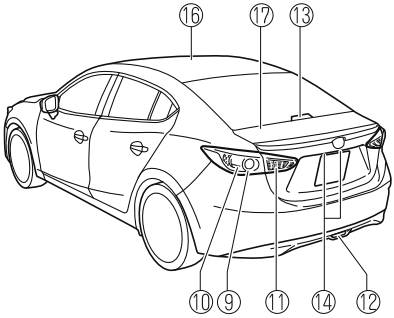
Type A



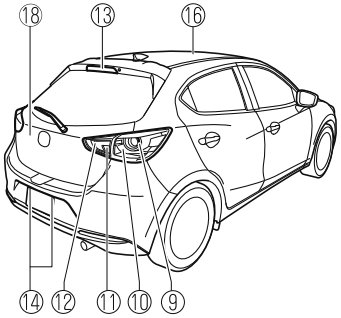
Type B



Saloon



Hatchback



OwnersManuals2.com

① Headlights (Low/High beam)
② Headlights (Wide-range low beam)*
③ Headlights (High beam)*
④ Running lights
⑤ Running lights/Position lights
⑥ Position lights*
⑦ Front direction indicator lights
⑧ Side direction indicator lights
⑨ Brake lights/Tail lights
⑩ Rear direction indicator lights
⑪ Reverse lights
⑫ Rear fog light*
⑬ High-mount brake light
⑭ Number plate lights
⑮ Overhead lights (Front)/Map lights*
⑯ Overhead lights (Rear)*
⑰ Boot light (Saloon)
⑱ Luggage compartment light (Hatchback)

⚠ CAUTION

When removing the lens or lamp unit using a flathead screwdriver, make sure that the flathead screwdriver does not contact the interior terminal. If the flathead screwdriver contacts the terminal, a short circuit may occur.

NOTE

- *To replace the bulb, contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *Use the protective cover and carton for the replacement bulb to dispose of the old bulb promptly and out of the reach of children.*

▼ Replacing Exterior Light Bulbs

Headlights, Running lights/Position lights (Type A), Side direction indicator lights, High-mount brake light

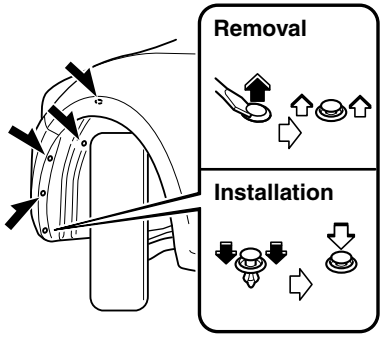
The LED bulb cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED bulb has to be replaced with the unit. If a replacement is necessary, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Front direction indicator lights, Position lights (Type B)

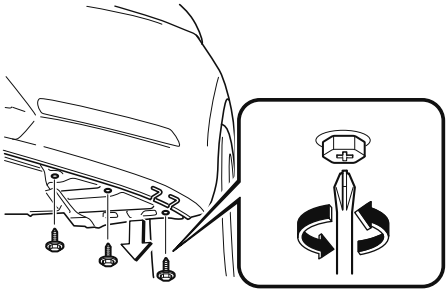
1. If you are changing the right bulb, start the engine, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left, and turn off engine. If you are changing the left bulb, turn the steering wheel to the right, and turn off engine.
2. Make sure the headlight switch is off.

OwnersManuals2.com

3. Pull the centre of each plastic retainer and remove the retainers.

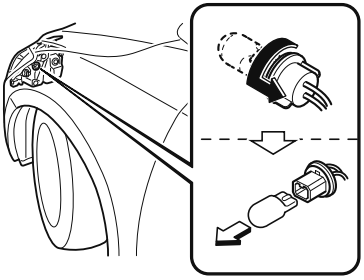


4. Turn the screw anticlockwise and remove it, and then partially peel back the mudguard.

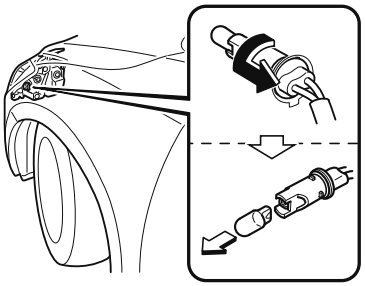


5. Turn the socket and bulb assembly anticlockwise and remove it.
6. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.

Front direction indicator lights



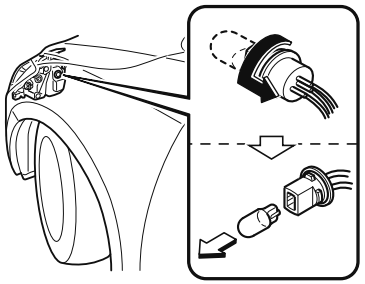
Position lights (Type B)



7. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

Running lights (Type B)*

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and the headlight switch is off.
2. Lift the bonnet.
   Refer to Bonnet on page 6-18.
3. Turn the socket and bulb assembly anticlockwise and remove it.
4. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.



5. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

Rear direction indicator lights, Brake lights/Tail lights

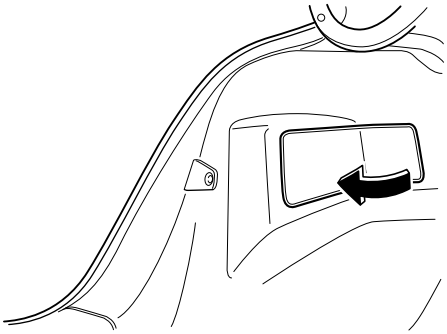
Saloon

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and the headlight switch is off.

 *Some models.

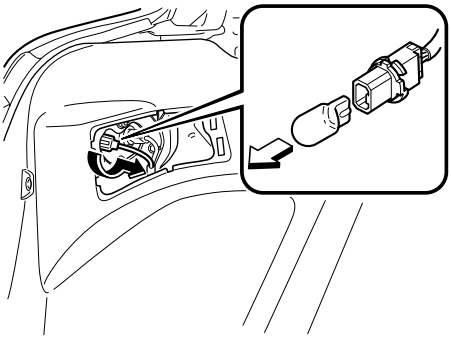
OwnersManuals2.com

2. Remove the cover.

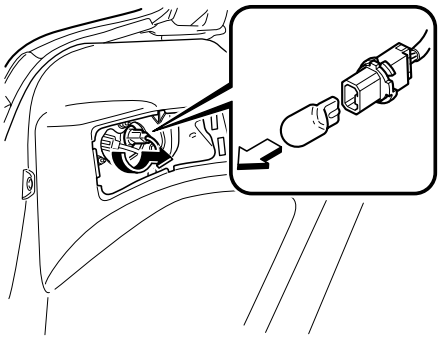


3. Turn the socket and bulb assembly anticlockwise and remove it.
4. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.

Rear direction indicator lights



Brake lights/Tail lights



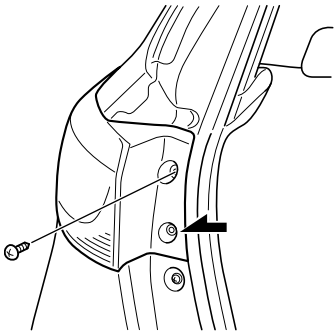
5. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.
6. Insert the cover tabs and install the cover.

NOTE

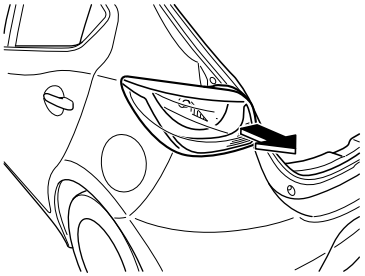
Verify that the cover is securely installed.

Hatchback

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and the headlight switch is off.
2. Turn the bolts anticlockwise and remove them.



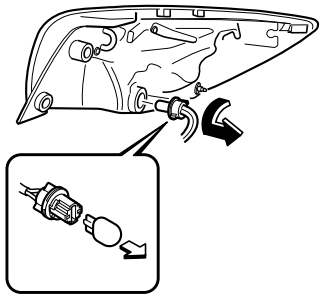
3. Pull the unit rearward to remove it.



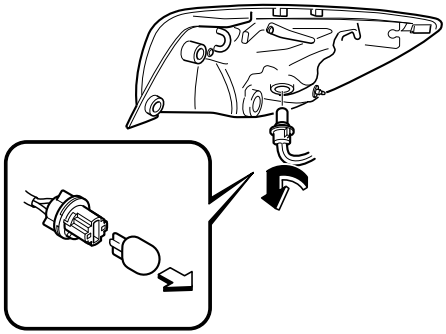
4. Turn the socket and bulb assembly anticlockwise and remove it.
5. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.

OwnersManuals2.com

Rear direction indicator lights



Brake lights/Tail lights
(LED type)
The LED bulb cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit.
The LED bulb has to be replaced with the unit. If a replacement is necessary, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
(Bulb type)

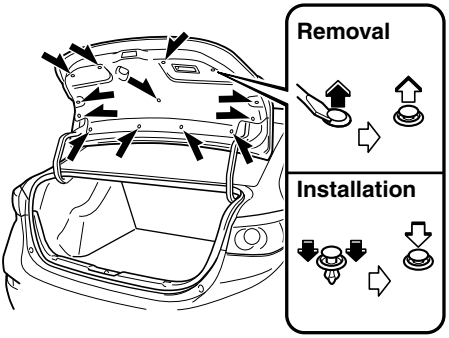


6. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

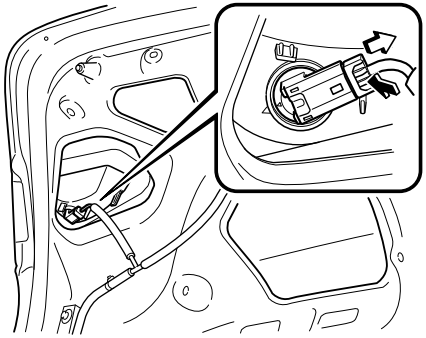
Reverse lights

Saloon

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and the headlight switch is off.
2. Pull the centre of each plastic retainer and remove the retainers.
3. Peel back the boot lid trim.



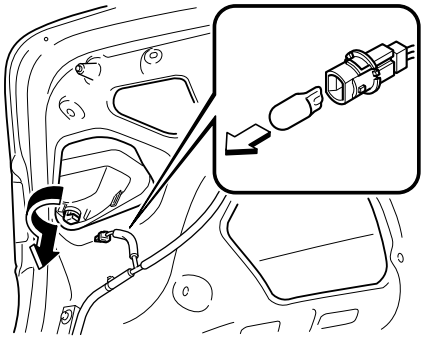
4. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb by pressing the tab on the connector with your finger and pulling the connector.



5. Turn the socket and bulb assembly anticlockwise and remove it.

OwnersManuals2.com

6. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.



7. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

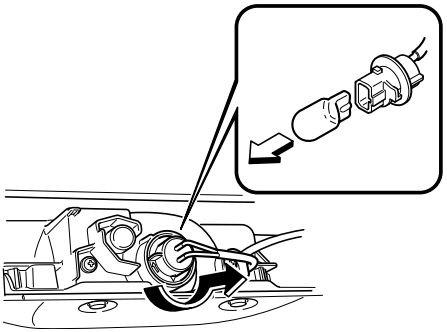
Hatchback

The LED bulb cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED bulb has to be replaced with the unit. If a replacement is necessary, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Rear fog light*

Saloon

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and the headlight switch is off.
2. Turn the socket and bulb assembly anticlockwise and remove it.
3. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.



4. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

Hatchback

The LED bulb cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED bulb has to be replaced with the unit. If a replacement is necessary, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

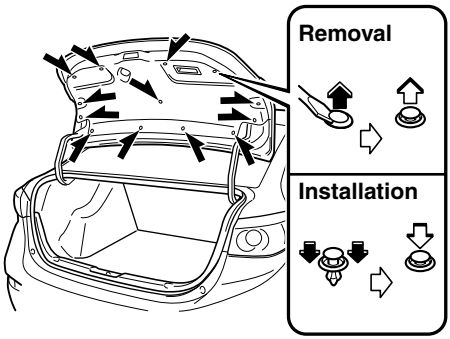
Number plate lights

Saloon

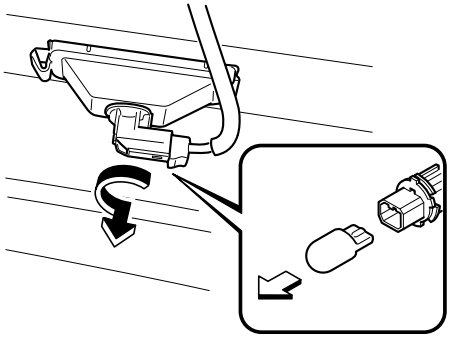
1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and the headlight switch is off.
2. Pull the centre of each plastic retainer and remove the retainers.

OwnersManuals2.com

3. Peel back the boot lid trim.



4. Turn the socket and bulb assembly anticlockwise and remove it.
5. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.

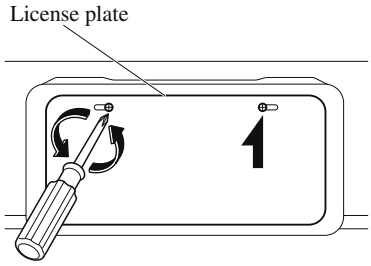


6. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

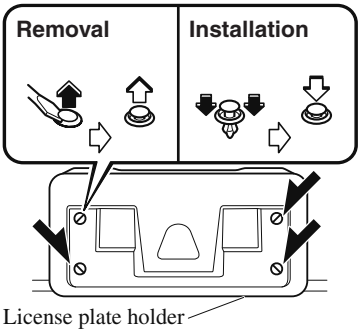
Hatchback

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and the headlight switch is off.
2. **(Vehicles for Colombia)**
   Remove the number plate and the number plate holder using the following procedure.

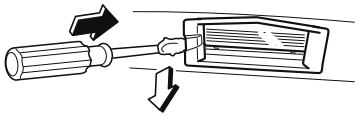
1. Remove the screws by turning them anticlockwise, and then remove the number plate.



2. Remove the fasteners, and then remove the number plate holder.

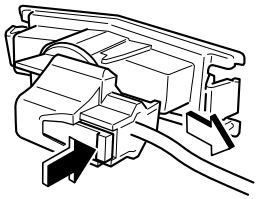


3. Wrap a flathead screwdriver with a soft cloth to prevent damage to the light unit.
4. Insert the screwdriver from the left side (press in strongly) and move the tip of the screwdriver downward to remove the light unit.

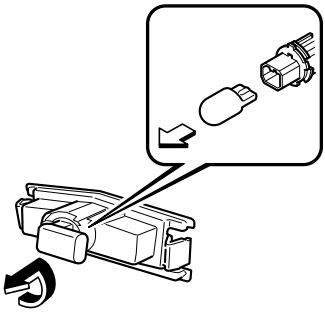


OwnersManuals2.com

5. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb by pressing the tab on the connector with your finger and pulling the connector.



6. Turn the socket and bulb assembly anticlockwise and remove it.
7. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.



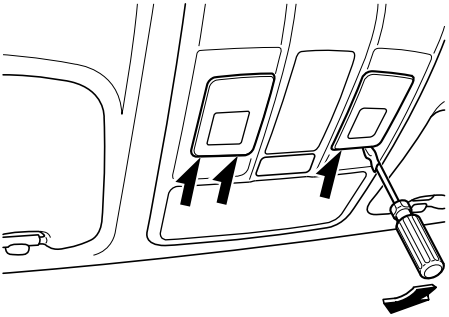
8. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

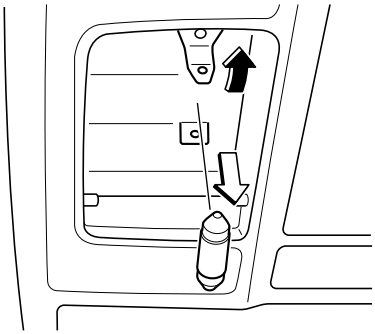
▼ Replacing Interior Light Bulbs

Overhead lights/Map lights*, Overhead lights (Front)*, Overhead lights (Rear)*

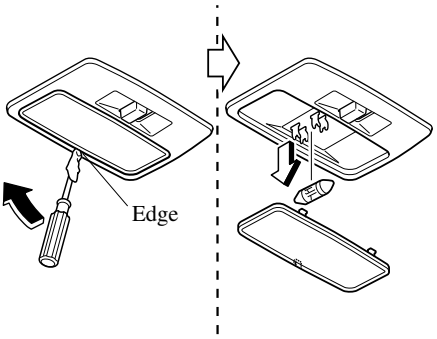
1. Wrap a small flathead screwdriver with a soft cloth to prevent damage to the lens, and then remove the lens by carefully prying on the edge of the lens with the flathead screwdriver.
2. Disconnect the bulb by pulling it out.

Overhead lights/Map lights*



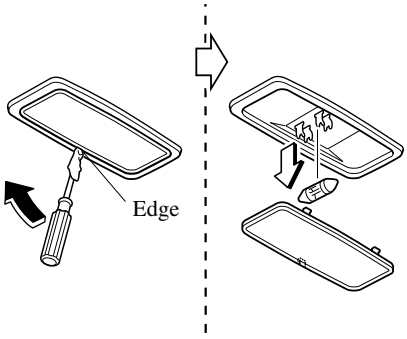


Overhead lights (Front)*



OwnersManuals2.com

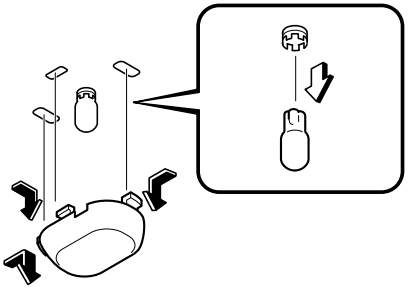
Overhead lights (Rear)*



3. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

Boot light (Saloon)

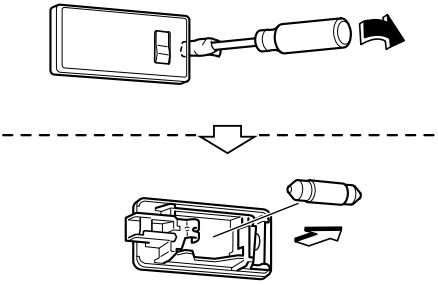
1. Press both sides of the lens cap to remove it.
2. Disconnect the bulb by pulling it out.



3. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

Luggage compartment light (Hatchback)

1. Wrap a small flathead screwdriver with a soft cloth to prevent damage to the lens and remove the lens by carefully prying on the edge of the lens with the flathead screwdriver.
2. Disconnect the bulb by pulling it out.



3. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Fuses

Your vehicle's electrical system is protected by fuses.

If any lights, accessories, or controls do not work, inspect the appropriate circuit protector. If a fuse has blown, the inside element will be melted.

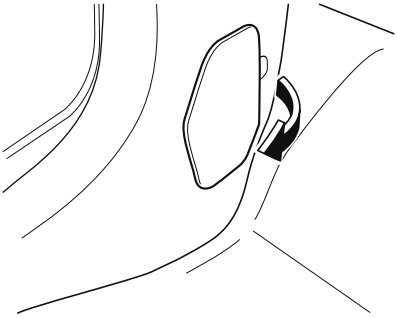
If the same fuse blows again, avoid using that system and consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.

▼ Fuse Replacement

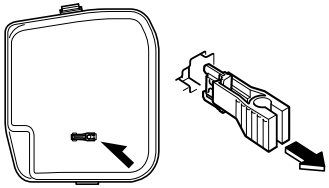
Replacing the fuses on the vehicle's left side

If the electrical system does not work, first inspect the fuses on the vehicle's left side.

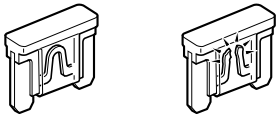
1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and other switches are off.
2. Open the fuse panel cover.



3. Pull the fuse straight out with the fuse puller provided on the fuse block located in the engine compartment.



4. Inspect the fuse and replace it if it is blown.



Normal Blown

5. Insert a new fuse of the same amperage rating, and make sure it fits tightly. If it does not fit tightly, have an expert install it. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
   If you have no spare fuses, borrow one of the same rating from a circuit not essential to vehicle operation, such as the AUDIO or OUTLET circuit.

⚠ CAUTION

Always replace a fuse with a genuine Mazda fuse or equivalent of the same rating. Otherwise you may damage the electric system.

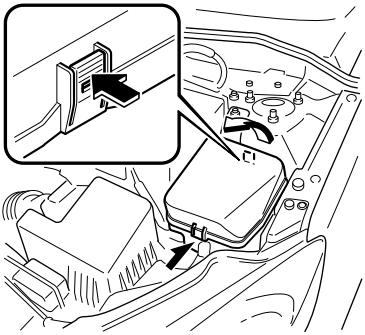
6. Reinstall the cover and make sure that it is securely installed.

OwnersManuals2.com

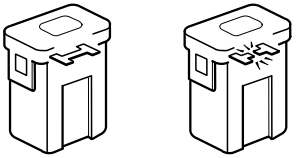
Replacing the fuses under the bonnet

If the headlights or other electrical components do not work and the fuses in the cabin are normal, inspect the fuse block under the bonnet.
If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced. Follow these steps:

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and other switches are off.
2. Remove the fuse block cover.



3. If any fuse but the MAIN fuse is blown, replace it with a new one **of the same amperage rating**.



Normal Blown

⚠ WARNING

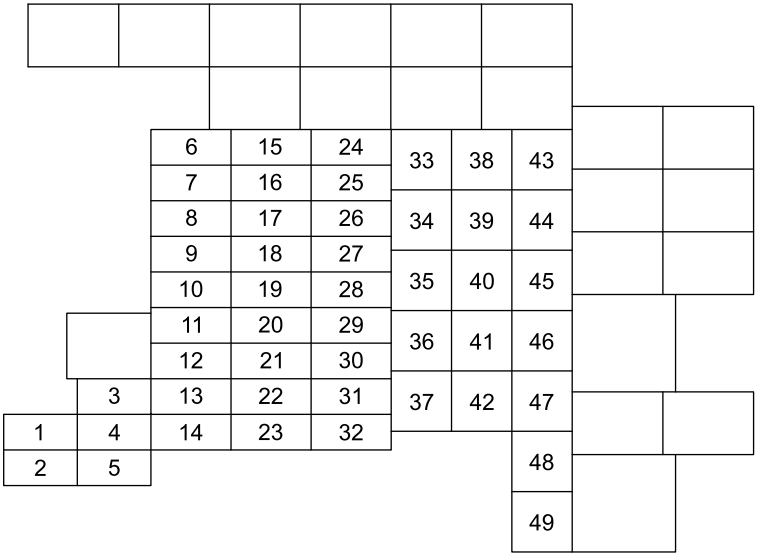
Do not replace the main fuse by yourself. Have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) perform the replacement:
Replacing the fuse by yourself is dangerous because the MAIN fuse is a high current fuse. Incorrect replacement could cause an electrical shock or a short circuit resulting in a fire.

4. Reinstall the cover and make sure that it is securely installed.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Fuse Panel Description

Fuse block (Engine compartment)



DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
1	C/U IG1	15 A	For protection of various circuits
2	ENGINE IG1	7.5 A	Engine control system
3	SUNROOF	10 A	—
4	INTERIOR	15 A	For protection of various circuits
5	ENG+B	7.5 A	Engine control system
6	AUDIO2 ENGINE4	15 A	Audio system*/Engine control system*
7	METER1	10 A	Instrument cluster
8	SRS1	7.5 A	Air bag
9	METER2	7.5 A	Instrument cluster*
10	RADIO	7.5 A	Audio system
11	ENGINE3	15 A	Engine control system
12	ENGINE1	15 A	Engine control system*
13	ENGINE2	15 A	Engine control system
14	AUDIO1	25 A	Audio system

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

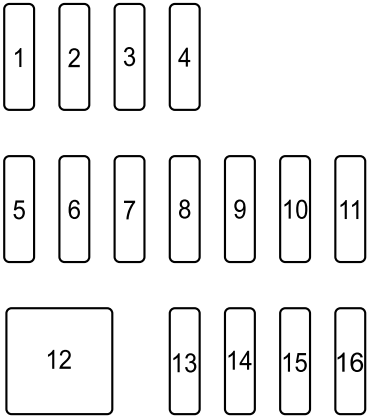
DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
15	A/C MAG	7.5 A	Air conditioner*
16	AT PUMP	15 A	Transaxle control system*
17	AT	15 A	Transaxle control system
18	D.LOCK	25 A	Power door locks
19	H/L RH	20 A	Headlight (RH)
20	ENG+B2	7.5 A	Engine control system
21	TAIL	20 A	Tail lights, Number plate lights, Position lights
22	ST.HEATER	20 A 15 A/20 A	Heated steering wheel*/Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)*
23	ROOM	25 A	For protection of various circuits
24	FOG	15 A	—
25	H/CLEAN	20 A	Headlight washer*
26	STOP	10 A	Brake lights
27	HORN	15 A	Horn
28	H/L LH	20 A	Headlight (LH)
29	ABS/DSC S	30 A	ABS, Dynamic stability control system
30	HAZARD	15 A	Hazard warning flashers, Direction indicator lights
31	FUEL PUMP SCR	15 A	Fuel system*
32	FUEL WARM	25 A	—
33	WIPER	20 A	Front window wiper
34	CABIN+B	50 A	For protection of various circuits
35	FAN2 EPB L	30 A	Cooling fan*
36	FUEL PUMP	30 A	—
37	ABS/DSC M	50 A	ABS, Dynamic stability control system
38	EVVT	20 A	Engine control system*
39	WIPER DEI	20 A	—
40	FAN1 EPB R	30 A	Cooling fan*
41	FAN3	40 A	Cooling fan*
42	ENG.MAIN	40 A	Engine control system
43	EPS	60 A	Power steering system*
44	DEFOG	40 A	Rear window defogger
45	IG2	30 A	For protection of various circuits

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
46	INJECTOR ENG.SUB	30 A	Engine control system*
47	HEATER	40 A	Air conditioner
48	P.WINDOW1	30 A	Power windows
49	DCDC DE	40 A	—

Fuse block (Left side)



DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
1	—	—	—
2	—	—	—
3	AUDIO2	15 A	Audio system*
4	ST.HEATER	10 A	Heated steering wheel*
5	F.OUTLET	15 A	Accessory sockets
6	—	—	—
7	AT IND	7.5 A	AT shift indicator*
8	MIRROR	7.5 A	Power control mirror
9	—	—	—
10	P.WINDOW2	25 A	Power windows
11	R.WIPER	15 A	Rear window wiper and washer
12	P.SEAT D	30A	Power seat*
13	—	—	—

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
14	SRS2/ESCL	15 A	Electronic steering lock
15	SEAT WARM	20 A	Seat warmer*
16	M.DEF	7.5 A	Mirror defogger*

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Exterior Care

The paintwork on your Mazda represents the latest technical developments in composition and methods of application.

Environmental hazards, however, can harm the paint's protective properties, if proper care is not taken.

Here are some examples of possible damage, with tips on how to prevent them.

Etching Caused by Acid Rain or Industrial Fallout

Occurrence

Industrial pollutants and vehicle emissions drift into the air and mix with rain or dew to form acids. These acids can settle on a vehicle's finish. As the water evaporates, the acid becomes concentrated and can damage the finish.
And the longer the acid remains on the surface, the greater the chance is for damage.

Prevention

It is necessary to wash and wax your vehicle to preserve its finish according to the instructions in this section. These steps should be taken immediately after you suspect that acid rain has settled on your vehicle's finish.

Damage Caused by Bird Dropping, Insects, or Tree Sap

Occurrence

Bird droppings contain acids. If these are not removed they can eat away the clear and colour base coat of the vehicle's paintwork.

When insects stick to the paint surface and decompose, corrosive compounds form. These can erode the clear and colour base coat of the vehicle's paintwork if they are not removed.

Tree sap will harden and adhere permanently to the paint finish. If you scratch the sap off while it is hard, some vehicle paint could come off with it.

Prevention

It is necessary to have your Mazda washed and waxed to preserve its finish according to the instructions in this section. This should be done as soon as possible.

Bird droppings can be removed with a soft sponge and water. If you are travelling and these are not available, a moistened tissue may also take care of the problem. The cleaned area should be waxed according to the instructions in this section.
Insects and tree sap are best removed with a soft sponge and water or a commercially available chemical cleaner.

Another method is to cover the affected area with dampened newspaper for 1 to 2 hours. After removing the newspaper, rinse off the loosened debris with water.

OwnersManuals2.com

Water Marks

Occurrence

Rain, fog, dew, and even tap water can contain harmful minerals such as salt and lime. If moisture containing these minerals settles on the vehicle and evaporates, the minerals will concentrate and harden to form white rings. The rings can damage your vehicle's finish.

Prevention

It is necessary to wash and wax your vehicle to preserve its finish according to the instructions in this section. These steps should be taken immediately after you find water marks on your vehicle's finish.

Paint Chipping

Occurrence

Paint chipping occurs when gravel thrown in the air by another vehicle's tyres hits your vehicle.

How to avoid paint chipping

Keeping a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead reduces the chances of having your paint chipped by flying gravel.

NOTE

- *The paint chipping zone varies with the speed of the vehicle. For example, when travelling at 90 km/h (56 mph), the paint chipping zone is 50 m (164 ft).*
- *In low temperatures a vehicle's finish hardens. This increases the chance of paint chipping.*
- *Chipped paint can lead to rust forming on your Mazda. Before this happens, repair the damage by using Mazda touch-up paint according to the instructions in this section. Failure to repair the affected area could lead to serious rusting and expensive repairs.*

Follow **all** label and container directions when using a chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warnings and cautions.

▼ Maintaining the Finish

Washing

⚠ CAUTION

- *When the ignition is switched ON and the wiper lever is in the AUTO position, the windscreen wipers may operate automatically in the following cases:*
  - *The area of the windscreen above the rain sensor is touched or wiped with a cloth.*
  - *The windscreen or the rain sensor area in the cabin is hit.*

  When the ignition is switched ON and the wiper lever is in the AUTO position, do not touch the windscreen or the windscreen wipers Otherwise, the windscreen wipers will operate automatically which could catch your fingers or damage the windscreen wipers.
  When removing ice or snow, or cleaning the windscreen, always make sure the wiper lever is in the OFF position.

OwnersManuals2.com

➢ *Do not spray water in the engine compartment. Otherwise, it could result in engine-starting problems or damage to electrical parts.*
➢ *When washing and waxing the vehicle, be careful not to apply excessive force to any single area of the vehicle roof or the aerial. Otherwise, you could dent the vehicle or damage the aerial.*

To help protect the finish from rust and deterioration, wash your Mazda thoroughly and frequently, at least once a month, with lukewarm or cold water.

If the vehicle is washed improperly, the paint surface could be scratched. Here are some examples of how scratching could occur.

Scratches occur on the paint surface when:

- The vehicle is washed without first rinsing off dirt and other foreign matter.
- The vehicle is washed with a rough, dry, or dirty cloth.
- The vehicle is washed at a car wash that uses brushes that are dirty or too stiff.
- Cleansers or wax containing abrasives are used.

NOTE

- *Mazda is not responsible for scratches caused by automatic car washes or improper washing.*
- *Scratches are more noticeable on vehicles with darker paint finishes.*

To minimize scratches on the vehicle's paint finish:

- Rinse off any dirt or other foreign matter using lukewarm or cold water before washing.
- Use plenty of lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth when washing the vehicle. Do not use a nylon cloth.
- Rub gently when washing or drying the vehicle.
- Take your vehicle only to a car wash that keeps its brushes well maintained.
- Do not use abrasive cleansers or wax that contain abrasives.

⚠ CAUTION

➢ *Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodised aluminium parts. This may damage the protective coating; also, cleaners and detergents may discolour or deteriorate the paint.*

➢ ***(With detachable aerial)***
To prevent damaging the aerial, remove it before entering a car wash facility or passing beneath a low overhead clearance.

Pay special attention to removing salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign material from the underside of the wings, and make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are clean.

OwnersManuals2.com

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial fallout, and similar deposits can damage the finish if not removed immediately. When prompt washing with plain water is ineffective, use a mild soap made for use on vehicles.

Thoroughly rinse off all soap with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

After washing the vehicle, dry it with a clean chamois to prevent water spots from forming.

⚠ WARNING

Dry off brakes that have become wet by driving slowly, releasing the accelerator pedal and lightly applying the brakes several times until the brake performance returns to normal:
Driving with wet brakes is dangerous. Increased stopping distance or the vehicle pulling to one side when braking could result in a serious accident. Light braking will indicate whether the brakes have been affected.

When using an automatic car wash

- Retract the door mirrors.
- The automatic car wash brushes could reduce the paint lustre or hasten paint deterioration.

When using a high water pressure car wash

High water temperature and high water pressure car washers are available depending on the type of car wash machine. If the car washer nozzle is put too close to the vehicle, the force of the spray could damage or deform the molding, affect the sealability of parts, and allow water to penetrate the interior. Keep a sufficient space (30 cm (12 in) or more) between the nozzle and the vehicle. In addition, do not spend too much time spraying the same area of the vehicle, and be very careful when spraying between gaps in doors and around windows.

Waxing

Your vehicle needs to be waxed when water no longer beads on the finish. Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing it. In addition to the vehicle body, wax the metal trim to maintain its lustre. If the roof is equipped with vinyl wrap, do not apply wax to it.

1. Use wax which contains no abrasives. Wax containing abrasives will remove paints and could damage bright metal parts.
2. Use a good grade of natural wax for metallic, mica, and solid colours.
3. When waxing, coat evenly with the sponge supplied or a soft cloth.
4. Wipe off the wax with a soft cloth.

NOTE
A spot remover to remove oil, tar, and similar materials will usually also take off the wax. Rewax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not need it.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Paint Damage Touch-up

Repair damage to the finish caused by stone chipping, damage during parking etc., by using Mazda touch-up paint before rust begins to form. First, remove the dirt and grease with a clean soft cloth.

If rust has already begun to form:

1. Remove rust completely with sandpaper.
2. Wipe with a clean soft cloth.
3. Apply rust preventive primer to the area.
4. After drying it completely, apply a suitable top coat material to the area.

Of course there will be no problem if you assign the work to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Cavity Protection

Cavities are treated for protection at the factory, but additional protective treatment after the vehicle has been put into use will extend the life of the body.
Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) concerning this additional precaution.

▼ Bright-Metal Maintenance

- Use tar remover to remove road tar and insects. Never do this with a knife or similar tool.
- To prevent corrosion on bright-metal surfaces, apply wax or chrome preservative and rub it to a high lustre.
- During cold weather or in coastal areas, cover bright-metal parts with a coating of wax or preservative heavier than usual. It would also help to coat them with noncorrosive petroleum jelly or some other protective compound.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodised aluminium parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discolouration or paint deterioration.

▼ Undercoating

This special coating is applied to the critical parts of the underside to protect vehicles from damage caused by chemicals or stones. This coating is liable to be damaged with time. Check this coating periodically.

Should repairs be necessary, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). They are well informed on how repairs should be made.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Aluminium Wheel Maintenance*

A protective coating is provided over the aluminium wheels. Special care is needed to protect this coating.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use any detergent other than mild detergent. Before using any detergent, verify the ingredients. Otherwise, the product could discolour or stain the aluminium wheels.

NOTE

- *Do not use a wire brush or any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, or solvent on aluminium wheels. They may damage the coating.*
- *Always use a sponge or soft cloth to clean the wheels.*
  Rinse the wheels thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on dusty or salted roads to help prevent corrosion.
- *Avoid washing your vehicle in an automatic car wash that uses high-speed or hard brushes.*
- ***(16-inch wheel vehicle)***
  If your aluminium wheels lose lustre, apply wax which contains no polishing powder.

▼ Plastic Part Maintenance

- When cleaning the plastic lenses of the lights, do not use petrol, paraffin, rectified spirit, paint, thinner, highly acidic detergents, or strongly alkaline detergents. Otherwise, these chemical agents can discolour or damage the surfaces resulting in a significant loss in functionality. If plastic parts become inadvertently exposed to any of these chemical agents, flush with water immediately.
- If plastic parts such as the bumpers become inadvertently exposed to chemical agents or fluids such as petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid, it could cause discolouration, staining, or paint peeling. Wipe off any such chemical agents or fluids using a soft cloth immediately.
- High water temperature and high water pressure car washers are available depending on the type of high pressure car washer device. If the car washer nozzle is put too close to the vehicle or aimed at one area for an extended period of time, it could deform plastic parts or damage the paint.
- Do not use wax containing compounds (polish). Otherwise, it could result in paint damage.
- In addition, do not use an electrical or air tool to apply wax. Otherwise, the frictional heat generated could result in deformation of plastic parts or paint damage.

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Interior Care

⚠ WARNING

Do not spray water into the vehicle cabin:
Spraying water into the vehicle cabin is dangerous as electrical devices such as the audio and switches could get wet resulting in a malfunction or vehicle fire.

NOTE

- *Do not wipe the interior using alcohol, chlorine bleach, or organic solvents such as thinner, benzene, and petrol. Otherwise, it may cause discolouration or stains.*
- *Rubbing hard with a stiff brush or cloth may cause damage.*

If the vehicle interior becomes soiled by any of the following, wipe it off immediately using a soft cloth.
Leaving it uncleaned could cause discolouration, stains, cracks, or peeling of the coating, and it will make it hard to wipe off later.

- Beverage or fragrance
- Grease or oil
- Soiling

▼ Seat Belt Maintenance

1. Clean the soiled area by lightly dabbing it with a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (approx. 5%) diluted with water.
2. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.
3. Before retracting seat belts which have been pulled out for cleaning, dry them off thoroughly and make sure there is no remaining moisture on them.

⚠ WARNING

If a seat belt appears frayed or has abrasions, have it replaced by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer):
If a seat belt is used under such a condition, it cannot function at its full capacity which could result in serious injury or death.

Use a mild detergent to remove soiling from a seat belt:
If organic solvents are used for cleaning the seat belts or they become stained or bleached, there is the possibility of them becoming weakened and as a result, they may not function at their full capacity which could cause serious injury or death.

NOTE
Clean seat belts diligently if they get dirty. Leaving them uncleaned will make it difficult to clean them later, and it may affect the smooth retracting of the seat belt.

▼ Vinyl Upholstery Maintenance

1. Remove dust and sand using a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe off the soiled area with a soft cloth and a suitable, a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (about 5 %) diluted with water.
3. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.

OwnersManuals2.com

4. Remove moisture with a dry, soft cloth and allow the leather to further dry in a well-ventilated, shaded area. If the leather gets wet such as from rain, remove the moisture and dry it as soon as possible.

▼ Upholstery Maintenance

1. Clean the soiled area by lightly dabbing it with a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (approx. 5%) diluted with water.
2. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.

▼ Leather Upholstery Maintenance*

1. Remove dust and sand using a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe off the soiled area with a soft cloth and a suitable, special cleaner or a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (about 5%) diluted with water.
3. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.
4. Remove moisture with a dry, soft cloth and allow the leather to further dry in a well-ventilated, shaded area. If the leather gets wet such as from rain, remove the moisture and dry it as soon as possible.

NOTE

- *Because genuine leather is a natural material, its surface is not uniform and it may have natural scars, scratches, and wrinkles.*
- *To maintain the quality for as long as possible, periodical maintenance, about twice a year, is recommended.*
- *If the leather upholstery comes into contact with any of the following, clean it immediately.*
  Leaving it uncleaned could cause premature wear, mold, or stains.
  - *Sand or dirt*
  - *Grease or oil, such as hand cream*
  - *Alcohol, such as in cosmetic or hair dressing items*
- *If the leather upholstery gets wet, promptly remove moisture with a dry cloth. Remaining moisture on the surface may cause deterioration such as hardening and shrinkage.*
- *Exposure to direct sunlight for long periods may cause deterioration and shrinkage. When parking the car under direct sunlight for long periods, shade the interior using sunshades.*
- *Do not leave vinyl products on the leather upholstery for long periods. They may affect the leather quality and colouring. If the cabin temperature becomes hot, the vinyl may deteriorate and adhere to the genuine leather.*

▼ Plastic Part Maintenance

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use polishing agents.
Depending on the product ingredients, they could cause discolouration, stains, cracks or peeling of the coating.

▼ Instrument Panel Top Maintenance

1. Wipe the soiled area with a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (approx. 5%) diluted with water.

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

2. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.

▼ Active Driving Display Maintenance*

The combiner and mirror surface have a special coating. When cleaning it, do not use a hard cloth, a cloth with a rough surface, or cleaning detergent. Use a fine-textured, soft cloth.
If a chemical solvent gets on the combiner or mirror surface, wipe it off immediately. Otherwise, they could be damaged and the surface coating could be scratched.

▼ Panel Maintenance

If a panel becomes soiled, wipe it off with a soft cloth soaked in clean water and thoroughly wrung out.
If some areas require further cleaning, use the following procedure:

1. Wipe the soiled area with a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (approx. 5 %) diluted with water.
2. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.

NOTE
Be particularly careful when cleaning shiny surface panels and metallic parts such as plating as they can be scratched easily.

▼ Cleaning the Window Interiors

If the windows become covered with an oily, greasy, or waxy film, clean them with glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the container.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the window glass. It could damage the thermal filaments and the aerial lines.*
- *When washing the inside of the window glass, use a soft cloth dampened in lukewarm water, gently wiping the thermal filaments and the aerial lines. Use of glass cleaning products could damage the thermal filaments and the aerial lines.*

OwnersManuals2.com

MEMO

OwnersManuals2.com

7 If Trouble Arises

Helpful information on what to do if a problem arises with the vehicle.

Parking in an Emergency..... 7-2
Parking in an Emergency.....7-2
Roadside Emergency Triangle Retaining Strap (Hatchback)*.....7-2

Flat Tyre..... 7-3
Spare Tyre and Tool Storage..... 7-3
Emergency Flat Tyre Repair Kit* 7-10
Changing a Flat Tyre (With Spare Tyre)..... 7-17

Battery Runs Out..... 7-23
Jump-Starting..... 7-23

Emergency Starting.....7-27
Starting a Flooded Engine (SKYACTIV-G 1.3 and SKYACTIV-G 1.5)..... 7-27
Push-Starting..... 7-27
Running Out of Fuel (SKYACTIV-D 1.5)..... 7-28

Overheating.....7-29
Overheating..... 7-29

Emergency Towing..... 7-31
Towing Description..... 7-31
Towing/Tiedown Hooks..... 7-32

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds..... 7-34
If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes..... 7-34
Message Indicated on Display*..... 7-47
Warning Sound is Activated..... 7-49

When Liftgate/Boot Lid Cannot be Opened.....7-54
When Liftgate/Boot Lid Cannot be Opened.....7-54

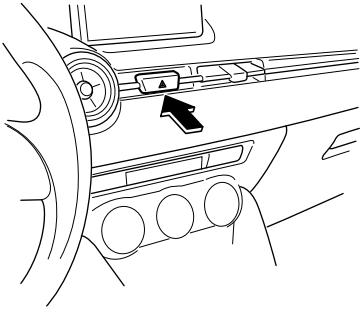
Active Driving Display Does Not Operate.....7-56
If the Active Driving Display Does Not Operate..... 7-56

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Parking in an Emergency

The hazard warning lights should always be used when you stop on or near a roadway in an emergency.



The hazard warning lights warn other drivers that your vehicle is a traffic hazard and that they must take extreme caution when near it.



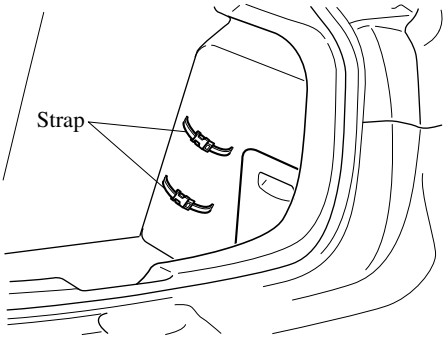
Depress the hazard warning flasher and all the direction indicators will flash. The hazard warning indicator lights in the instrument cluster flash simultaneously.

NOTE

- *The direction indicators do not work when the hazard warning lights are on.*
- *Check local regulations about the use of hazard warning lights while the vehicle is being towed to verify that it is not in violation of the law.*

Roadside Emergency Triangle Retaining Strap (Hatchback)*

Keep the roadside emergency triangle in the right side trim and secure it with the strap.



 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Spare Tyre and Tool Storage

NOTE

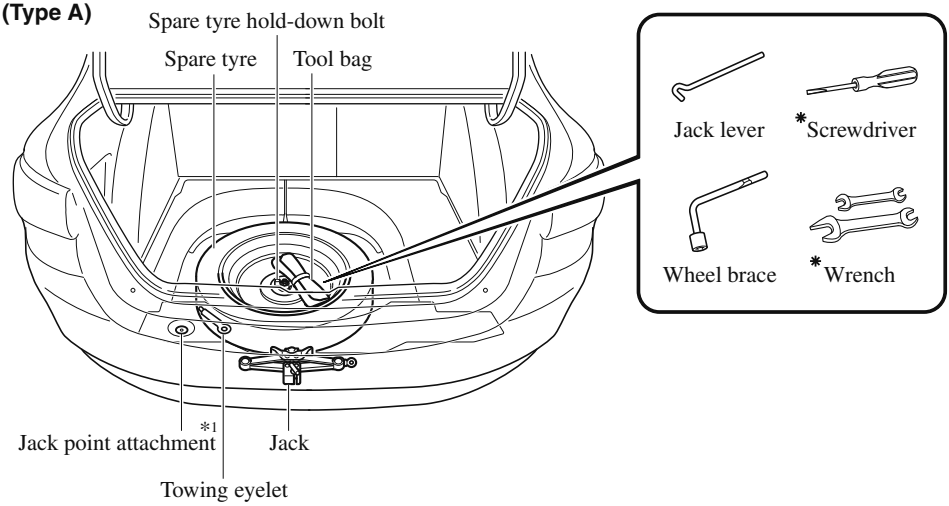
Your vehicle may or may not be equipped with a spare tyre. For details, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

OwnersManuals2.com

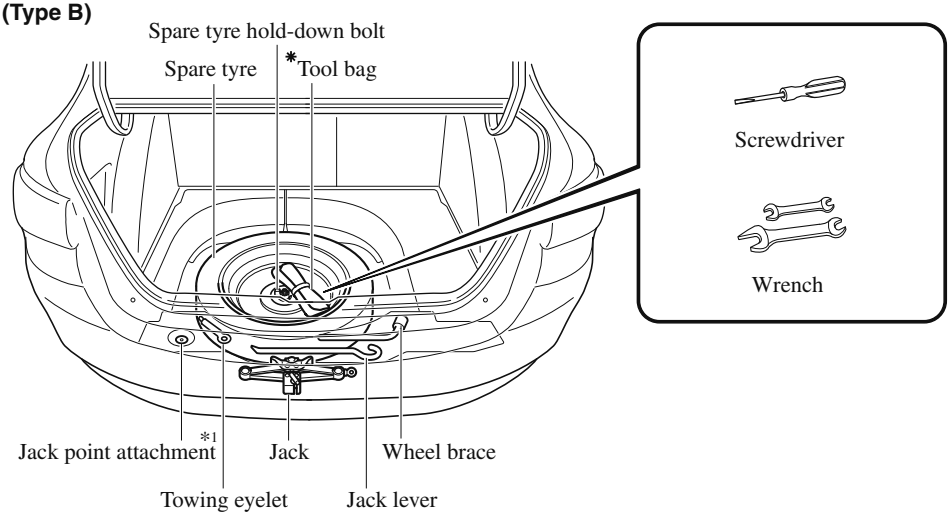
Flat Tyre

Spare tyre and tools are stored in the locations illustrated in the diagram.

Saloon
(Type A)



(Type B)

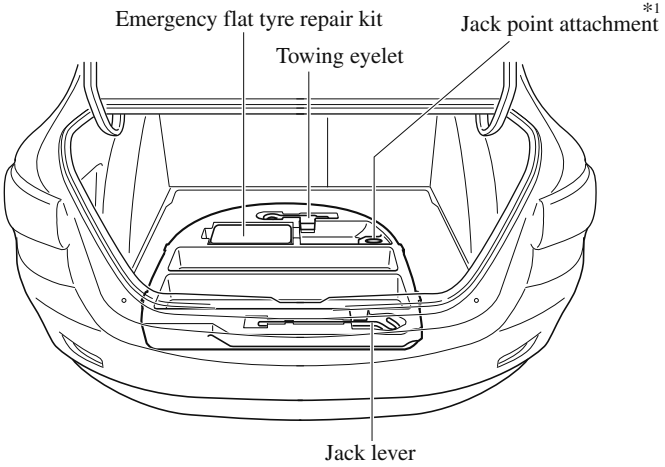


*1 The jack point attachment can be used by vehicle repair shops and road assistance services. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details.

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

(Type C)



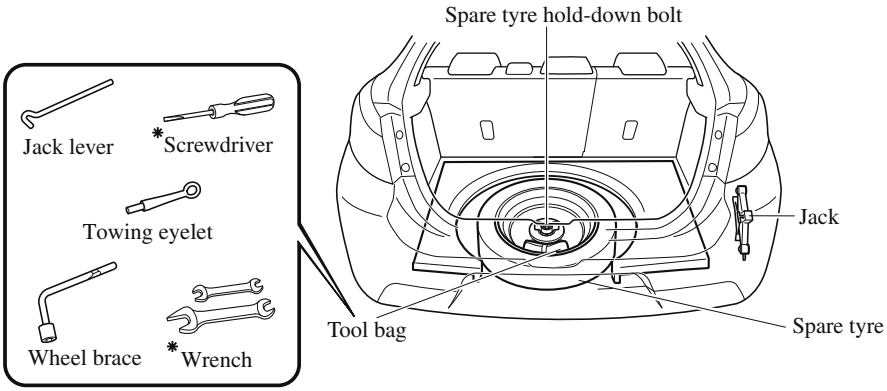
*1 The jack point attachment can be used by vehicle repair shops and road assistance services. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details.

OwnersManuals2.com

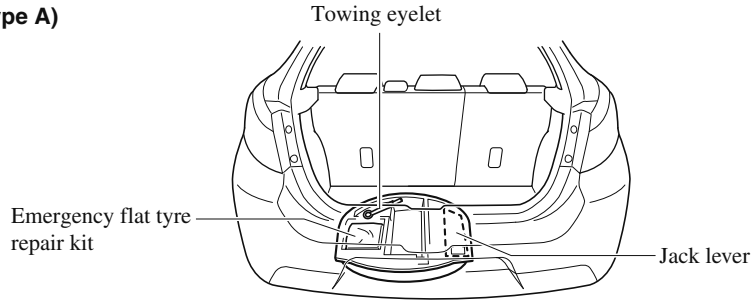
Flat Tyre

Hatchback

With spare tyre



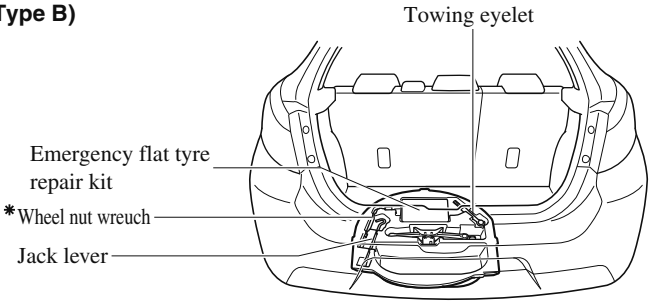
Without spare tyre
(Type A)



*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

(Type B)



*Some models.

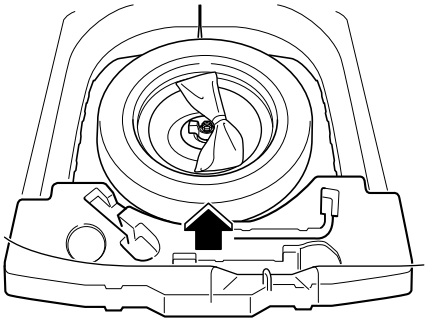
OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Jack*

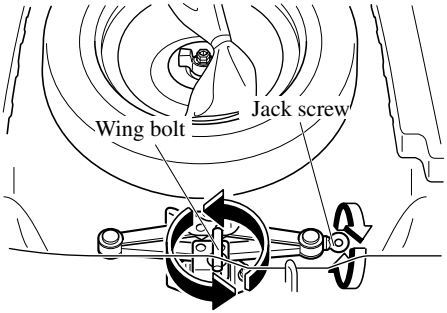
To remove the jack

Saloon

1. Lift the boot mat.
2. Remove the boot board.

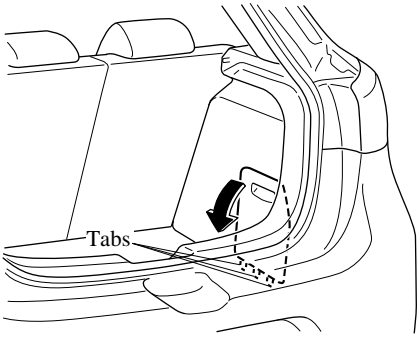


3. Turn the wing bolt and jack screw anticlockwise.

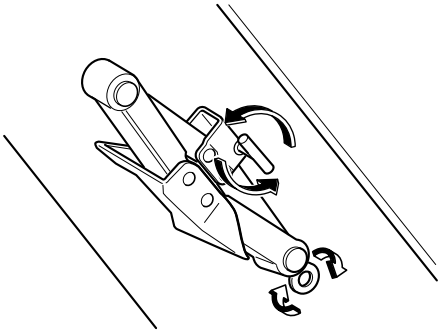


Hatchback

1. Remove the cover.



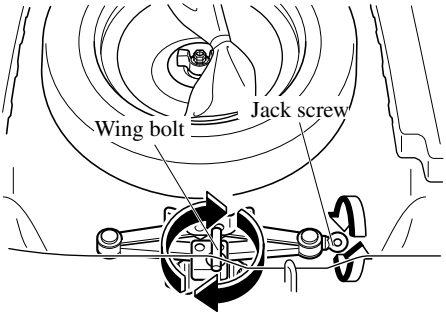
2. Turn the wing bolt and jack screw anticlockwise.



To secure the jack

1. Insert the wing bolt into the jack with the jack screw pointing to the right (Saloon) or down (Hatchback) and turn the wing bolt clockwise to temporarily tighten it.
2. Turn the jack screw in the direction shown in the figure.

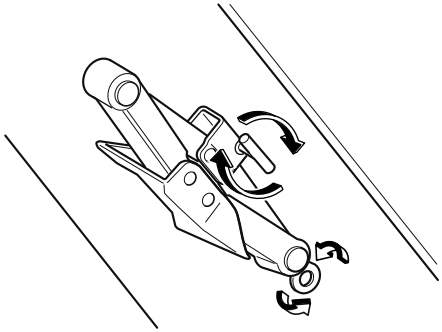
Saloon



 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Hatchback



3. Turn the wing bolt completely to secure the jack.

   NOTE
   If the jack is not completely secured, it could rattle while driving. Make sure the jack screw is sufficiently tightened.
4. Return the boot board to its original position (Saloon), or insert the cover tabs and install the cover (Hatchback).

   NOTE
   Verify that the cover is securely installed.

Maintenance

- Always keep the jack clean.
- Make sure the moving parts are kept free from dirt or rust.
- Make sure the screw thread is adequately lubricated.

▼ Spare Tyre*

Your Mazda has a temporary spare tyre. The temporary spare tyre is lighter and smaller than a conventional tyre, and is designed only for emergency use and should be used only for VERY short periods. Temporary spare tyres should NEVER be used for long drives or extended periods.

⚠ WARNING

Do not install the temporary spare tyre on the front wheels (driving wheels):
Driving with the temporary spare tyre on one of the front driving wheels is dangerous. Handling will be affected. You could lose control of the vehicle, especially on ice or snow bound roads, and have an accident. Move a regular tyre to the front wheel and install the temporary spare tyre to the rear.

⚠ CAUTION

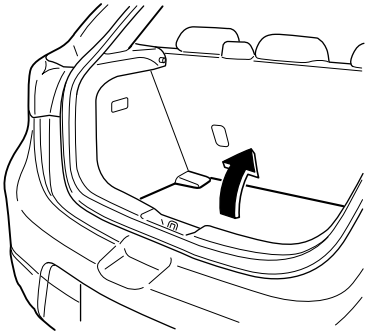
- *When using the temporary spare tyre, driving stability may decrease compared to when using only the conventional tyre. Drive carefully.*
- *To avoid damage to the temporary spare tyre or to the vehicle, observe the following precautions:*
  - *Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).*
  - *Avoid driving over obstacles. Also, do not drive through an automatic car wash. This tyre's diameter is smaller than a conventional tyre, so the ground clearance is reduced.*
  - *Do not use a tyre chain on this tyre because it will not fit properly.*
  - *Do not use your temporary spare tyre on any other vehicle, it has been designed only for your Mazda.*
  - *Use only one temporary spare tyre on your vehicle at the same time.*

*Some models.

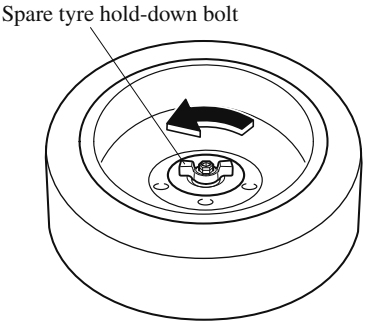
OwnersManuals2.com

To remove the spare tyre

1. Lift the boot/luggage compartment mat.



2. Turn the spare tyre hold-down bolt anticlockwise.



To secure the spare tyre

Store the spare tyre in the reverse order of removal. After storing, verify that the spare tyre is stored securely.

Emergency Flat Tyre Repair Kit*

The emergency flat tyre repair kit included with your Mazda is for a temporary repair of a slightly damaged flat tyre resulting from running over nails or similar sharp objects on the road surface.
Perform the emergency flat tyre repair without removing the nail or similar sharp object which punctured the tyre.

NOTE

Your vehicle is not equipped with a spare tyre. In the event of a flat tyre, use the emergency flat tyre repair kit to repair the tyre temporarily. When doing the repair, refer to the instructions included in the emergency flat tyre repair kit. If an emergency repair was performed on a flat tyre using the emergency flat tyre repair kit, have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), repair or replace the tyre as soon as possible.

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ About the Emergency Flat Tyre Repair Kit

The emergency flat tyre repair kit includes the following items.


Tyre sealant

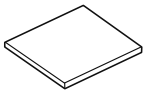

Compressor


Valve core tool


Injection hose


Spare valve core


Speed restriction sticker


Instructions

⚠ WARNING

Do not allow children to touch the tyre sealant:

- *Ingestion of tyre sealant is dangerous. In the event tyre sealant is accidentally swallowed, drink large amounts of water immediately and seek medical assistance.*
- *Tyre sealant that comes into contact with the eyes and skin is dangerous. If tyre sealant enters the eyes or contacts the skin, flush immediately with large amounts of water and seek medical assistance.*

NOTE

- *The tyre sealant cannot be reused. Purchase new tyre sealant at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *The emergency flat tyre repair kit cannot be used in the following cases. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
  - *The period of effective use for the tyre sealant has expired. (The period of effectiveness is indicated on the bottle label.)*
  - *The tear or puncture exceeds about 4 mm (0.16 in).*
  - *The damage has occurred to an area of the tyre other than the tread.*
  - *The vehicle has been driven with nearly no air remaining in the tyre.*
  - *The tyre has come off the wheel rim.*
  - *Damage to the wheel rim has occurred.*
  - *The tyre has 2 or more punctures.*

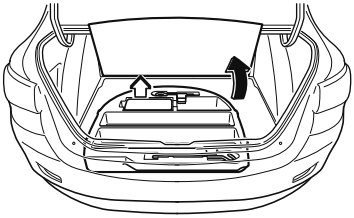
▼ Using the Emergency Flat Tyre Repair Kit

1. Park on a level surface off the right-of-way and set the parking brake.
2. Put a vehicle with an automatic transaxle in Park (P), a manual transaxle in Reverse (R) or 1, and turn off the engine.
3. Turn on the hazard warning flasher.

OwnersManuals2.com

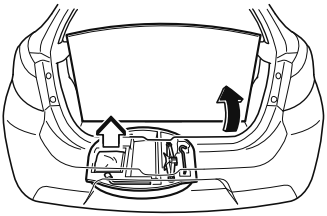
4. Unload passengers and luggage, and remove the emergency flat tyre repair kit.

Saloon

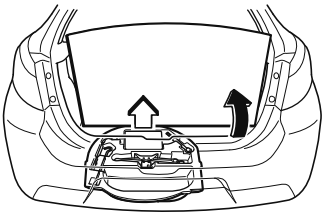


Hatchback

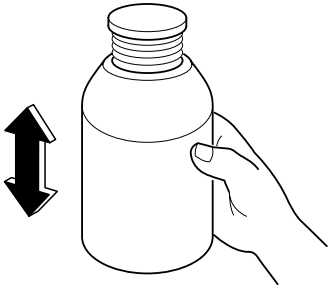
Type A



Type B



5. Shake the tyre sealant well.



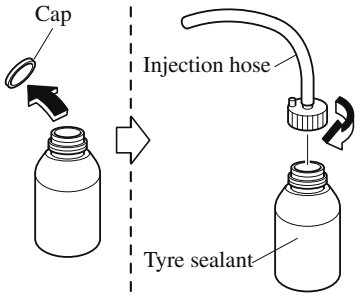
⚠ CAUTION

If the bottle is shaken after the injection hose is screwed on, tyre sealant could spray out from the injection hose. Tyre sealant contacting clothing or other objects may be impossible to remove. Shake the bottle before screwing on the injection hose.

NOTE

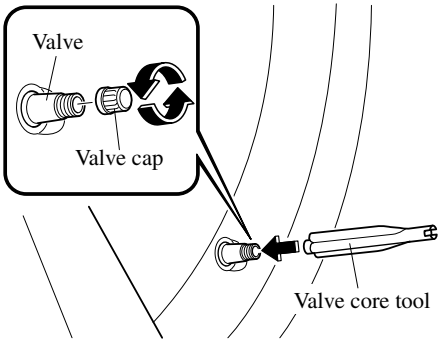
The tyre sealant can be used at outside temperatures down to −30 °C (−22 °F). In extremely cold temperatures (0 °C (32 °F) or below), the tyre sealant hardens easily and injection of the sealant will be difficult. Warm the sealant inside the vehicle before doing the injection work.

6. Remove the cap from the bottle. Screw on the injection hose with the bottle's inner cap left on to break the inner cap.



OwnersManuals2.com

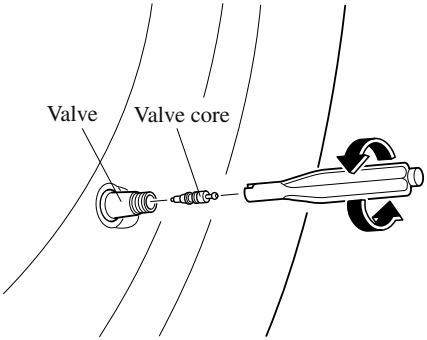
7. Remove the valve cap from the flat tyre. Press the back of a valve core tool to the core of the tyre valve and bleed all the remaining air.



⚠ CAUTION

If there is air remaining in the tyre when the valve core is removed, the valve core could fly out. Remove the valve core carefully.

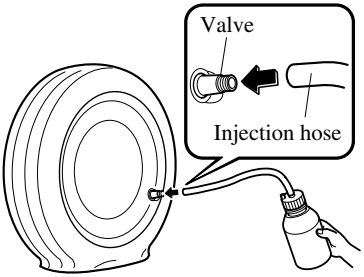
8. Turn the valve core anticlockwise with the valve core tool and remove the valve core.



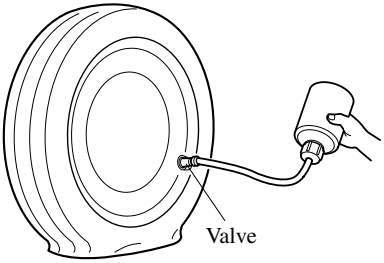
NOTE

Store the valve core in a place where it will not get dirty.

9. Insert the injection hose into the valve.



10. Hold the bottom of the bottle upright, squeeze the bottle with your hands, and inject the entire amount of tyre sealant into the tyre.



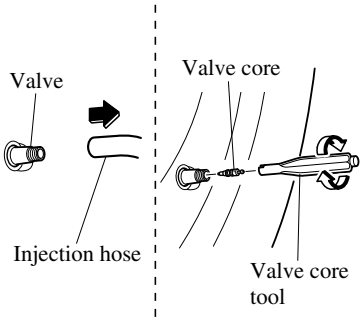
11. Pull out the injection hose from the valve.

NOTE

The tyre sealant cannot be reused. Purchase a new tyre sealant kit at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

OwnersManuals2.com

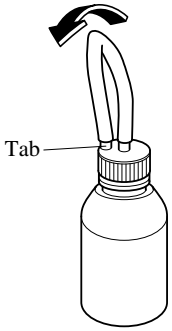
12. Reinsert the valve core into the valve and turn it clockwise to install it.



NOTE

Do not throw away the empty tyre sealant bottle after use. Return the empty tyre sealant bottle to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) when replacing the tyre. The empty tyre sealant bottle will need to be used to extract and dispose of the used sealant from the tyre.

13. After that, install the injection hose to the tab of the bottle to prevent leakage of any remaining sealant.



14. Adhere the speed restriction sticker in a place where it can be viewed easily by the driver.

⚠ WARNING

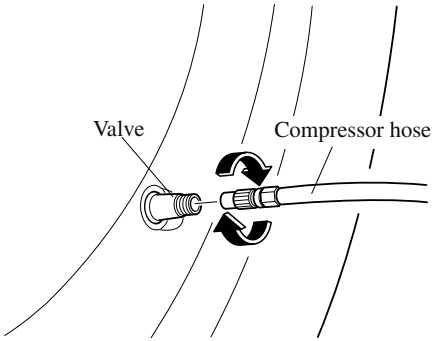
Attach the speed restriction sticker in a place where it can be viewed easily by the driver:

Applying the speed restriction sticker to the steering wheel is dangerous as it could interfere with the air bag deployment and result in serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

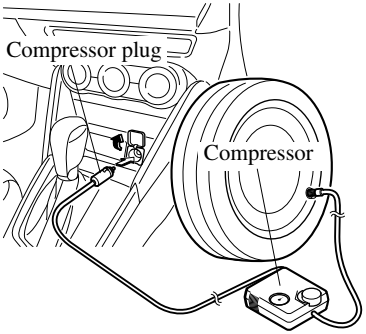
- *Do not apply speed restriction stickers on the instrument panel or displays. Otherwise, the instrument panel or displays could be scratched or damaged when removing the sticker.*
- *Remove the speed restriction sticker immediately after repair or replacement of a tyre.*

15. Install the compressor hose to the tyre valve.



OwnersManuals2.com

16. Insert the compressor plug into the interior accessory socket and switch the ignition to ACC.



⚠ CAUTION

- *Before pulling out the compressor plug from the electrical socket, make sure the compressor power switch is off.*
- *The compressor turns on and off with the push-button switch.*

17. Turn the compressor switch on and inflate the tyre carefully to the correct inflation pressure.

⚠ WARNING

Never operate the compressor above 300 kPa (3.1 kgf/cm^2, 3 bar, 43.5 psi):
Operating the compressor above 300 kPa (3.1 kgf/cm^2, 3 bar, 43.5 psi) is dangerous. When the inflation pressure rises above 300 kPa (3.1 kgf/cm^2, 3 bar, 43.5 psi), heated air will be exhausted from the back of the compressor and you could be burned.

NOTE

- *Check the tyre inflation pressure label (driver's door frame) for the correct tyre inflation pressure.*
- *Do not use the compressor for longer than 10 minutes because using the compressor for long periods could damage it.*
- *If the tyre does not inflate, repair of the tyre may not be possible. If the tyre does not reach the correct inflation pressure within a 10-minute period, it probably has received more extensive damage.*
  When this happens, the emergency flat tyre repair kit cannot be used to repair the tyre. Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- *If the tyre has been over-inflated, loosen the screw cap on the compressor and bleed some of the air out.*

18. When the tyre has been inflated to the proper inflation pressure, turn the compressor switch off and remove the compressor hose from the tyre valve.
19. Install the tyre valve cap.
20. Put the emergency flat tyre repair kit in the luggage compartment/boot and continue driving.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Drive carefully to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and keep the vehicle speed below 80 km/h (50 mph).*
- *If the vehicle is driven 80 km/h (50 mph) or higher, the vehicle might begin to vibrate.*

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTE
(With tyre pressure monitoring system)
If the tyre is not properly inflated, the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light will illuminate.

21. After driving the vehicle for 10 minutes or 5 km (3 miles), check the tyre pressure with the tyre pressure gauge equipped with the compressor. If the tyre pressure has fallen below the correct tyre pressure, inflate the tyre to the correct pressure again following the steps from number 16.

⚠ CAUTION

- *If the tyre inflation pressure falls below 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm² or bar, 18.9 psi), repair cannot be done with the repair kit. Park the vehicle on a level surface off the right-of-way and contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *If the tyre inflation pressure continues to remain low after repeating steps 15 to 21, park the vehicle on a level surface off the right-of-way and contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*

NOTE
When checking the tyre inflation pressure with the tyre pressure gauge on the compressor unit, make sure the compressor switch is turned off.

22. If the tyre inflation pressure remains stable, the tyre repair is complete. Drive the vehicle with care to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have the tyre replaced.

⚠ CAUTION

- *A tyre that has been temporarily repaired with the tyre sealant cannot be reused. Mazda recommends replacing the tyre with a new one.*
- *The wheel can be reused after any sealant adhering to it is wiped off and carefully inspected. However, replace the tyre valve with a new one.*

▼ Inspecting the Emergency Flat Tyre Repair Kit

Inspect the emergency flat tyre repair kit at regular intervals.

- Check the tyre sealant period of effective use.
- Check the operation of the tyre compressor.

NOTE
The tyre sealant has a period of effective use. Check the period of effective use indicated on the bottle label and do not use it if it has expired. Have the tyre sealant replaced at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) before the period of effective use has expired.

OwnersManuals2.com

Changing a Flat Tyre (With Spare Tyre)

NOTE
If the following occurs while driving, it could indicate a flat tyre.

- *Steering becomes difficult.*
- *The vehicle begins to vibrate excessively.*
- *The vehicle pulls in one direction.*

If you have a flat tyre, drive slowly to a level spot that is well off the road and out of the way of traffic to change the tyre. Stopping in traffic or on the shoulder of a busy road is dangerous.

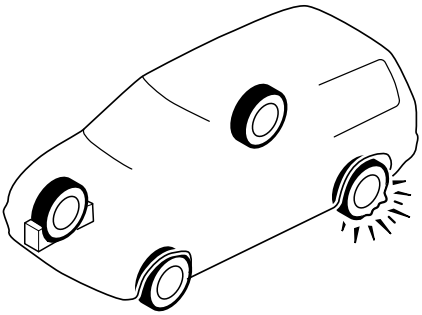
⚠ WARNING

Be sure to follow the directions for changing a tyre:
Changing a tyre is dangerous if not done properly. The vehicle can slip off the jack and seriously injure someone.
No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

Never allow anyone inside a vehicle supported by a jack:
Allowing someone to remain in a vehicle supported by a jack is dangerous. The occupant could cause the vehicle to fall resulting in serious injury.

NOTE
Make sure the jack is well lubricated before using it.

1. Park on a hard, level surface off the right-of-way and firmly set the parking brake.
2. Put a vehicle with an automatic transaxle in Park (P), a manual transaxle in Reverse (R) or 1, and turn off the engine.
3. Turn on the hazard warning flasher.
4. Have passengers get out of the vehicle and away from the vehicle and traffic.
5. Remove any luggage, the jack, tools, and spare tyre (page 7-3).
6. Block the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tyre. When blocking a wheel, place a tyre block both in front and behind the tyre.



NOTE
When blocking a tyre, use rocks or wood blocks of sufficient size if possible to hold the tyre in place.

OwnersManuals2.com

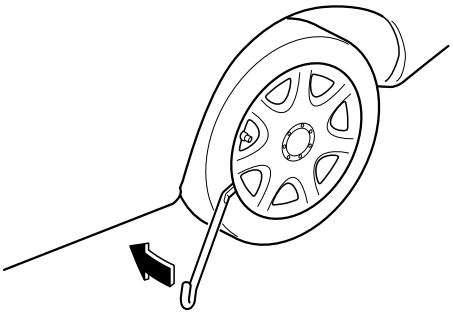
▼ Removing a Flat Tyre

⚠ WARNING

When jacking-up a vehicle, always shift the shift lever to 1st or R position (manual transaxle vehicle) or shift the selector lever to P position (automatic transaxle vehicle), apply the parking brake, and place wheel blocks in the position diagonally opposed to the jack:

Changing a flat tyre without using wheel blocks is dangerous because the vehicle may move and fall off the jack even with the shift lever in 1st or R position, or the selector lever is in P position, which could result in an accident.

1. If your vehicle is equipped with a wheel cover, pry off the wheel cover with the bevelled end of the jack lever.

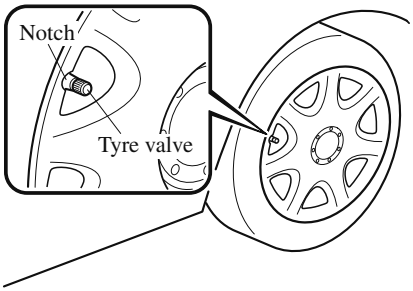


NOTE

Force the end of the jack lever firmly between wheel and cover, or removal will be difficult.

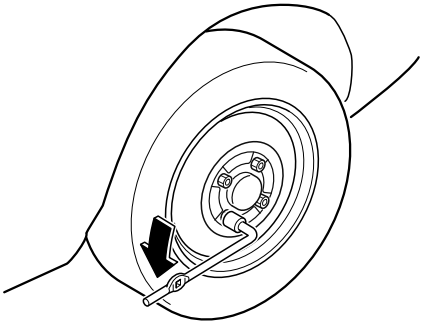
⚠ CAUTION

Align the notch on the wheel cover with the valve stem when installing it.



Damage could occur during installation if the wheel cover is not properly aligned.

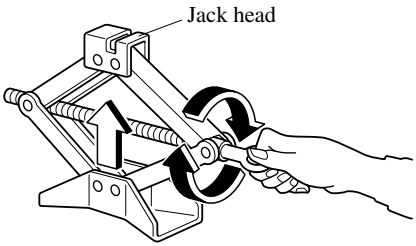
2. Loosen the wheel nuts by turning them anticlockwise one turn each, but do not remove any wheel nuts until the tyre has been raised off the ground.



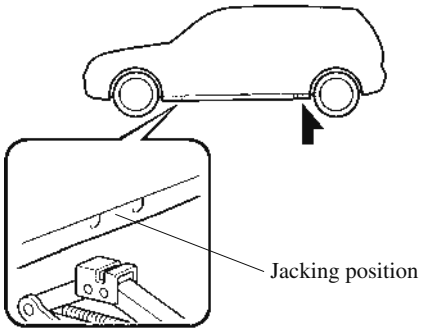
3. Place the jack on the ground.

OwnersManuals2.com

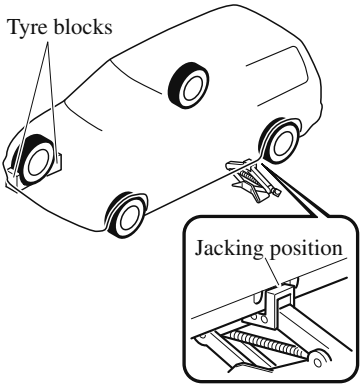
4. Turn the jack screw in the direction shown in the figure and adjust the jack head so that it is close to the jack-up position.



5. Place the jack under the jack-up position closest to the tyre being changed with the jack head squarely under the jack-up point.



6. Continue raising the jack head gradually by rotating the screw with your hand until the jack head is inserted into the jack-up position.



⚠ WARNING

Use only the front and rear jacking positions recommended in this manual:
Attempting to jack the vehicle in positions other than those recommended in this manual is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and seriously injure or even kill someone. Use only the front and rear jacking positions recommended in this manual.

Do not jack up the vehicle in a position other than the designated jack-up position or place any objects on or under the jack:
Jacking up the vehicle in a position other than the designated jack-up position or placing objects on or under the jack is dangerous as it could deform the vehicle body or the vehicle could fall off the jack resulting in an accident.

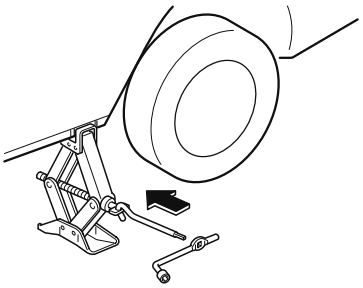
OwnersManuals2.com

Use only the jack provided with your Mazda:
Using a jack that is not designed for your Mazda is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and seriously injure someone.

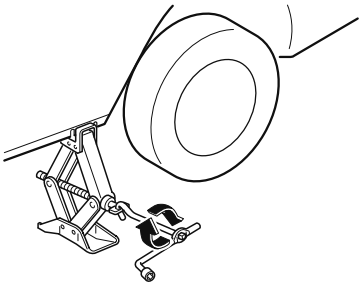
Never place objects under the jack:
Jacking the vehicle with an object under the jack is dangerous. The jack could slip and someone could be seriously injured by the jack or the falling vehicle.

NOTE
When raising the jack head into the jacking position and aligning the groove in the jack head with the rail under the vehicle body, the top of the jack head contacts the vehicle's underbody without the rail contacting the bottom of the groove.

7. Insert the jack lever and attach the wheel brace to tyre jack.



8. Turn the jack handle clockwise and raise the vehicle high enough so that the spare tyre can be installed. Before removing the wheel nuts, make sure your Mazda is firmly in position and that it cannot slip or move.



⚠ WARNING

Do not jack up the vehicle higher than is necessary:
Jacking up the vehicle higher than is necessary is dangerous as it could destabilize the vehicle resulting in an accident.

Do not start the engine or shake the vehicle while it is jacked up:
Starting the engine or shaking the vehicle while it is jacked up is dangerous as it could cause the vehicle to fall off the jack resulting in an accident.

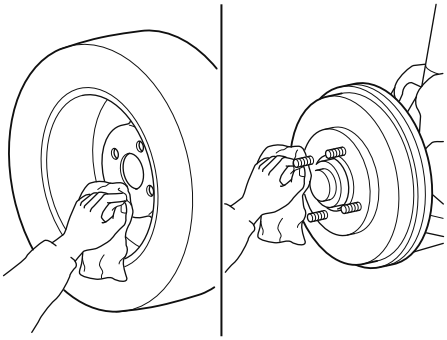
Never go under the vehicle while it is jacked up:
Going under the vehicle while it is jacked up is dangerous as it could result in death or serious injury if the vehicle were to fall off the jack.

OwnersManuals2.com

9. Remove the wheel nuts by turning them anticlockwise; then remove the wheel and centre cap.

▼ Mounting the Spare Tyre

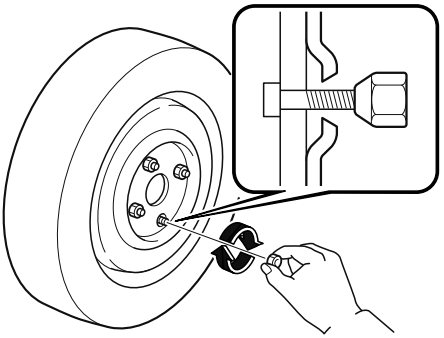
1. Remove dirt and grime from the mounting surfaces of the wheel and hub, including the hub bolts, with a cloth.



⚠ WARNING

Make sure the mounting surfaces of the wheel, hub and wheel nuts are clean before changing or replacing tyres:
When changing or replacing a tyre, not removing dirt and grime from the mounting surfaces of the wheel, hub and hub bolts is dangerous. The wheel nuts could loosen while driving and cause the tyre to come off, resulting in an accident.

2. Mount the spare tyre.
3. Install the wheel nuts with the bevelled edge inward; tighten them by hand.



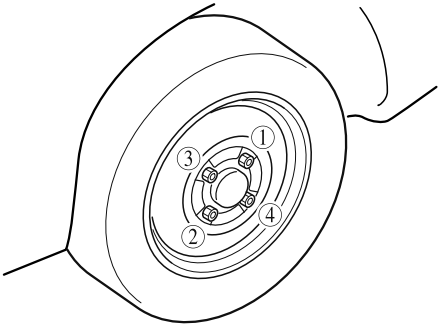
⚠ WARNING

Do not apply oil or grease to wheel nuts and bolts and do not tighten the wheel nuts beyond the recommended tightening torque:
Applying oil or grease to wheel nuts and bolts is dangerous. The wheel nuts could loosen while driving and cause the tyre to come off, resulting in an accident. In addition, wheel nuts and bolts could be damaged if tightened more than necessary.

4. Turn the wheel brace anticlockwise and lower the vehicle.

OwnersManuals2.com

5. Use the wheel brace to tighten the nuts in the order shown.



If you are unsure of how tight the nuts should be, have them inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Nut tightening torque	
N·m (kgf·m, ft·lbf)	108—147 (12—14, 80—108)

⚠ WARNING

Always securely and correctly tighten the wheel nuts:
Improperly or loosely tightened wheel nuts are dangerous. The wheel could wobble or come off. This could result in loss of vehicle control and cause a serious accident.

Be sure to reinstall the same nuts you removed or replace them with metric nuts of the same configuration:
Because the wheel studs and wheel nuts on your Mazda have metric threads, using a non-metric nut is dangerous. On a metric stud, it would not secure the wheel and would damage the stud, which could cause the wheel to slip off and cause an accident.

6. Remove the tyre blocks and store the tools and jack.
7. Store the damaged tyre in the luggage compartment.
8. Check the inflation pressure. Refer to Tyres on page 9-15.
9. Have the flat tyre repaired or replaced as soon as possible.

NOTE
(With tyre pressure monitoring system)
Do not press the tyre pressure monitoring system set switch after installing the spare tyre. The switch is only to be pressed after installing the repaired flat tyre or installing a replacement tyre (page 4-39).

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive with any tyres that have incorrect air pressure:
Driving on tyres with incorrect air pressure is dangerous. Tyres with incorrect pressure could affect handling and result in an accident. When you check the regular tyres' air pressure, check the spare tyre, too.

NOTE
To prevent the jack and tool from rattling, store them properly.

OwnersManuals2.com

Jump-Starting

Jump-starting is dangerous if done incorrectly. So follow the procedure carefully. If you feel unsure about jump-starting, we strongly recommend that you have a competent service technician do the work.

⚠ WARNING



Read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting to ensure safe and correct handling:



Always wear eye protection when working near the battery:
Working without eye protection is dangerous. Battery fluid contains SULPHURIC ACID which could cause blindness if splashed into your eyes. Also, hydrogen gas produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode.



Wear eye protection and protective gloves to prevent contact with battery fluid:
Spilled battery fluid is dangerous.
Battery fluid contains SULPHURIC ACID which could cause serious injuries if it gets in eyes, or on the skin or clothing. If this happens, immediately flush your eyes with water for 15 minutes or wash your skin thoroughly and get medical attention.



Always keep batteries out of the reach of children:
Allowing children to play near batteries is dangerous. Battery fluid could cause serious injuries if it gets in the eyes or on the skin.



Keep flames and sparks away from battery cells and do not allow metal tools to contact the positive (+) or negative (−) terminal of the battery when working near a battery. Do not allow the positive (+) terminal to contact the vehicle body:
Flames and sparks near battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries. Keep all flames including cigarettes and sparks away from battery cells.

OwnersManuals2.com

Battery Runs Out

 ***Keep all flames and sparks away from battery cells because hydrogen gas is produced from battery cells while charging the battery or adding battery fluid:***
Flames and sparks near battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries. Keep all flames including cigarettes and sparks away from battery cells.

Do not jump-start a frozen battery or one with a low fluid level:
Jump-starting a frozen battery or one with a low fluid level is dangerous. It may rupture or explode, causing serious injury.

Connect the negative lead to a good ground point away from the battery:
Connecting the end of the second jumper lead to the negative (−) terminal of the discharged battery is dangerous.
A spark could cause the gas around the battery to explode and injure someone.

Route the jumper leads away from parts that will be moving:
Connecting a jumper lead near or to moving parts (cooling fans, belts) is dangerous. The lead could get caught when the engine starts and cause serious injury.

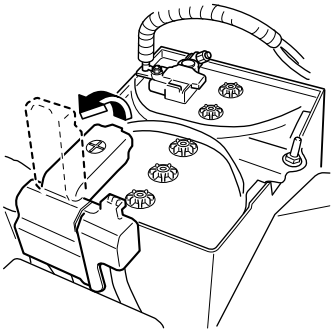
⚠ CAUTION

- *Use only a 12 V booster system. You can damage a 12 V starter, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair with a 24 V power supply (two 12 V batteries in series or a 24 V motor generator set).*
- *Do not use vehicles with Mazda M Hybrid as a booster vehicle to prevent damaging your vehicle.*

1. Move the booster vehicle so that its battery is as close as possible to your vehicle's battery.
2. Make sure that the power such as for the headlights and air conditioner is turned off.

OwnersManuals2.com

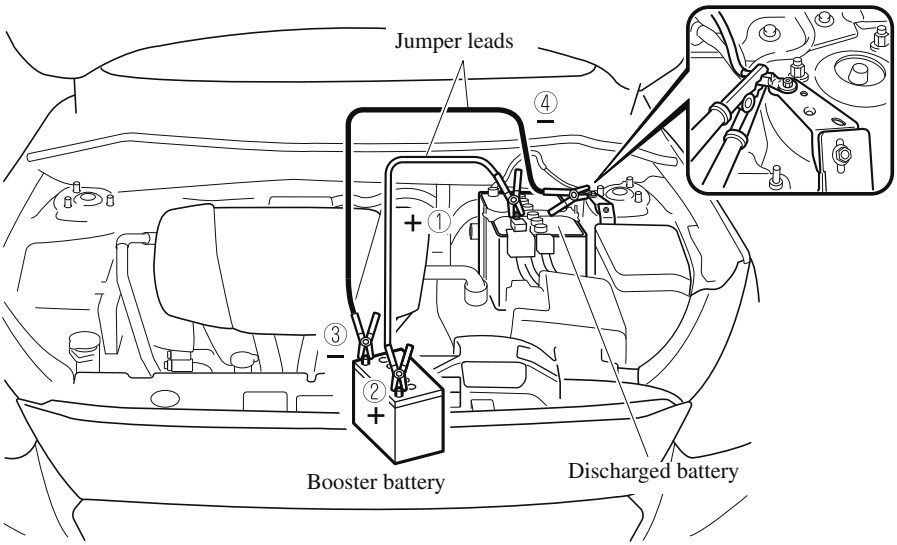
3. Remove the battery cover.



4. Turn off the booster vehicle's engine and connect the jumper leads in the following order.
   Make sure that the jumper leads are securely connected so that they do not disconnect due to engine vibrations.
   1st lead
   ①Positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery
   ②Positive (+) terminal on booster vehicle's battery
   2nd lead
   ③Negative (-) terminal on booster vehicle's battery

OwnersManuals2.com

④Location shown in the figure (do not connect to the negative (-) terminal of the battery)



5. Start the booster vehicle's engine and rev the engine.
6. Start the engine of your vehicle. Run the engines for about 3 minutes to temporarily charge the battery of your vehicle.
7. Disconnect the jumper leads in the reverse order of their connection.
8. Install the battery cover.
9. Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.

OwnersManuals2.com

Starting a Flooded Engine (SKYACTIV-G 1.3 and SKYACTIV-G 1.5)

If the engine fails to start, it may be flooded (excessive fuel in the engine).

Follow this procedure:

1. If the engine does not start within 5 seconds on the first try, wait 10 seconds and try again.
2. Make sure the parking brake is on.
3. Depress the accelerator all the way and hold it there.
4. Depress the clutch pedal (Manual transaxle) or the brake pedal (Automatic transaxle), then press the push button start. If the engine starts, release the accelerator immediately because the engine will suddenly rev up.
5. If the engine fails to start, crank it without depressing the accelerator.

If the engine still does not start using the previous procedure, have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Push-Starting

Do not push-start your Mazda.

⚠ WARNING

Never tow a vehicle to start it:
Towing a vehicle to start it is dangerous. The vehicle being towed could surge forward when its engine starts, causing the 2 vehicles to collide. The occupants could be injured.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not push-start a vehicle that has a manual transaxle. It can damage the emission control system.

NOTE
You cannot start a vehicle with an automatic transaxle by pushing it.

OwnersManuals2.com

Running Out of Fuel (SKYACTIV-D 1.5)

⚠ CAUTION

Do not try starting the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time. Doing so, could damage the starter. If the engine does not start on the first try wait about 20 seconds before trying again.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel, add at least 10 L (2.6 US gal, 2.2 Imp gal) of diesel fuel, and try to restart the engine. Because air can get into fuel lines when a vehicle runs out of fuel, your engine may take longer to start. If the engine does not start the first time, try starting it several more times. If it still does not start, contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

OwnersManuals2.com

Overheating

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light turns on, the vehicle loses power, or you hear a loud knocking or pinging noise, the engine is probably too hot.

⚠ WARNING



Pull over to a safe location, then switch the ignition off and make sure the fan is not running before attempting to work near the cooling fan:
Working near the cooling fan when it is running is dangerous. The fan could continue running indefinitely even if the engine has stopped and the engine compartment temperature is high. You could be hit by the fan and seriously injured.



Do not remove either cooling system cap when the engine and radiator are hot:
When the engine and radiator are hot, scalding coolant and steam may shoot out under pressure and cause serious injury.

Open the bonnet ONLY after steam is no longer escaping from the engine:
Steam from an overheated engine is dangerous. The escaping steam could seriously burn you.

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light turns on:

1. Drive safely to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way.
2. Put a vehicle with an automatic transaxle in park (P), a manual transaxle in neutral.
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Turn off the air conditioner.
5. Check whether coolant or steam is escaping from the engine compartment.

If steam is coming from the engine compartment:
Do not go near the front of the vehicle.
Stop the engine.
Wait until the steam dissipates, then open the bonnet and start the engine.

If neither coolant nor steam is escaping:
Open the bonnet and idle the engine until it cools.

⚠ CAUTION

If the cooling fan does not operate while the engine is running, the engine temperature will increase. Stop the engine and call an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

6. Make sure the cooling fan is operating, then turn off the engine after the temperature has decreased.

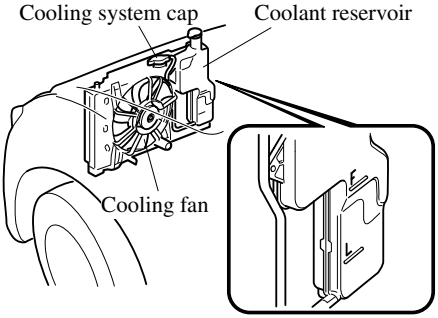
OwnersManuals2.com

7. When cool, check the coolant level. If it is low, look for coolant leaks from the radiator and hoses.

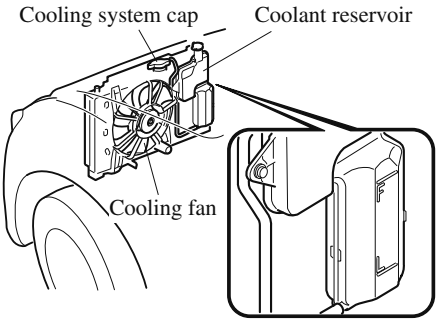
If you find a leak or other damage, or if coolant is still leaking:
Stop the engine and call an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

SKYACTIV-G 1.3 and SKYACTIV-G 1.5

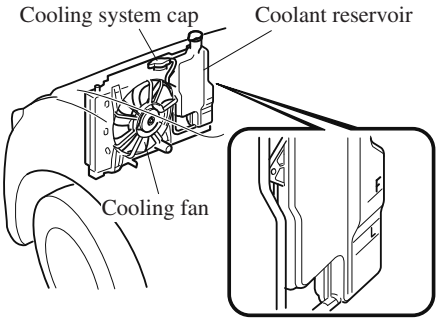
Type A



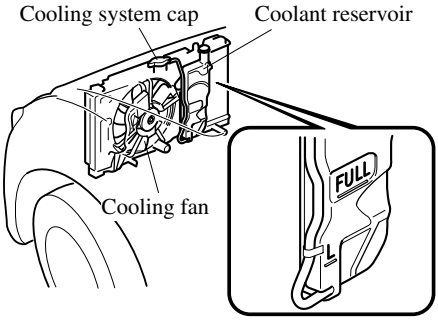
Type B



SKYACTIV-G 2.0



SKYACTIV-D 1.5



If you find no problems, the engine is cool, and no leaks are obvious:
Carefully add coolant as required (page 6-27).

⚠ CAUTION

If the engine continues to overheat or frequently overheats, have the cooling system inspected. The engine could be seriously damaged unless repairs are made. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

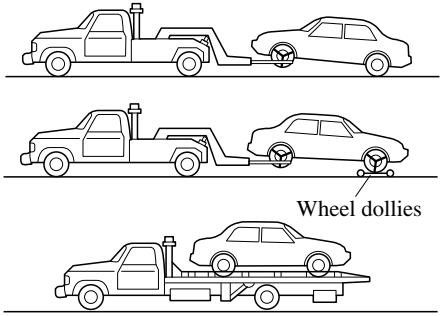
OwnersManuals2.com

Towing Description

We recommend that towing be done only by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) or a commercial tow-truck service.

Proper lifting and towing are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. Government and local laws must be followed.

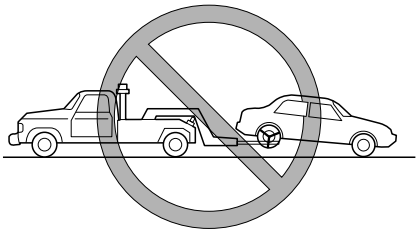
A towed vehicle usually should have its drive wheels (front wheels) off the ground. If excessive damage or other conditions prevent this, use wheel dollies.



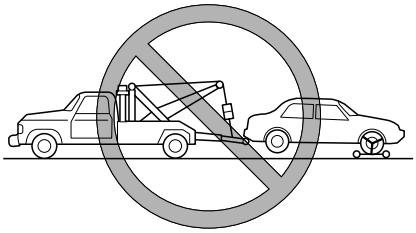
When towing with the rear wheels on the ground, release the parking brake.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not tow the vehicle pointed backward with driving wheels on the ground. This may cause internal damage to the transaxle.*



- *Do not tow with sling-type equipment. This could damage your vehicle. Use wheel-lift or flatbed equipment.*



If towing service is not available in an emergency, the vehicle may be towed with all four wheels on the ground using the towing hook at the front of the vehicle. Only tow the vehicle on paved surfaces for short distances at low speeds.

OwnersManuals2.com

⚠ CAUTION

Follow these instructions when towing the vehicle with all wheels on the ground.

- *Shift to neutral (Manual transaxle), or the N position (Automatic transaxle).*
- *Switch the ignition to ACC.*
- *Release the parking brake.*

Remember that power assist for the brakes and steering will not be available when the engine is not running.

Towing/Tiedown Hooks

⚠ CAUTION

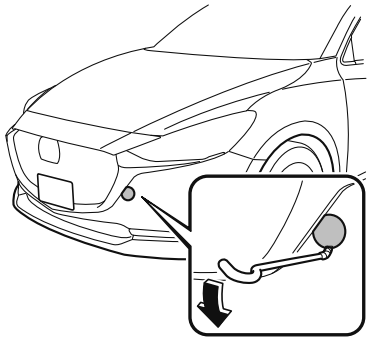
- *The towing eyelet should be used in an emergency (to get the vehicle out of a ditch or a snow bank, for example).*
- *When using the towing eyelets, always pull the lead or chain in a straight direction with respect to the eyelet. Never apply a sideways force.*

NOTE

When towing with chain or lead, wrap the chain or lead with a soft cloth near the bumper to prevent damage to the bumper.

▼ Towing Hook-Front

1. Remove the towing eyelet and the wheel brace from the luggage compartment (page 7-3).
2. Wrap a jack lever or similar tool with a soft cloth to prevent damage to a painted bumper, and open the cap located on the front bumper.



OwnersManuals2.com

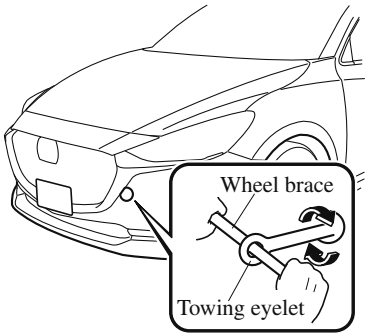
⚠ CAUTION

Do not use excessive force as it may damage the cap or scratch the painted bumper surface.

NOTE

Remove the cap completely and store it so as not to lose it.

3. Securely install the towing eyelet using the wheel brace.



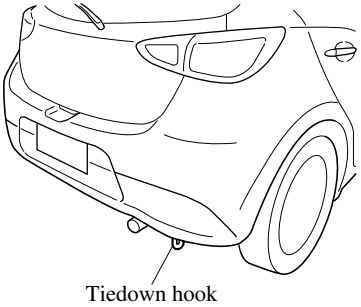
4. Hook the towing rope to the towing eyelet.

⚠ CAUTION

If the towing eyelet is not securely tightened, it may loosen or disengage from the bumper when towing the vehicle. Make sure that the towing eyelet is securely tightened to the bumper.

▼ Tiedown Hook-Rear

The hook positioned under the rear bumper on the right side is for tying down the vehicle during transport, and it cannot be used for towing other vehicles.
It can be used as a towing hook only when the vehicle must be towed by another vehicle in an emergency case such as when the vehicle is stuck in snow, however, it may damage the bumper.



⚠ CAUTION

When using the hook in such emergency cases, observe the following so as not to damage the tiedown hook or the vehicle body.

- *The vehicle must be pulled straight to the rear so that no load is applied to the vehicle in the lateral direction.*
- *The bumper may be damaged if the tie down hook is used as a towing hook.*
- *When using a metal chain or wire lead, wrap a cloth around the attachment area. If the metal chain or wire lead contacts the bumper directly, the bumper could be scratched or damaged.*

OwnersManuals2.com

If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes

If any warning light turns on/flashes, take appropriate action for each light. There is no problem if the light turns off, however if the light does not turn off or turns on/flashes again, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

(Vehicles with Mazda Connect)

The details for some warnings can be viewed on the centre display.

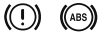
1. If the warning light is turned on, select the icon on the home screen to display the application screen.
2. Select “Vehicle Status Monitor”.
3. Select “Warning Guidance” to display the current warnings.
4. Select the applicable warning to view the warning details.

▼ Stop Vehicle in Safe Place Immediately

If any of the following warning lights turns on, the system may have a malfunction. Stop the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Signal	Warning
 Brake System Warning Light	This warning has the following functions: **Parking brake warning/Warning light inspection** The light illuminates when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switched to START or ON. It turns off when the parking brake is fully released. **Low brake fluid level warning** If the brake warning light remains illuminated even though the parking brake is released, the brake fluid may be low or there could be a problem with the brake system. Park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). **⚠ WARNING** ***Do not drive with the brake system warning light illuminated. Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have the brakes inspected as soon as possible:*** *Driving with the brake system warning light illuminated is dangerous. It indicates that your brakes may not work at all or that they could completely fail at any time. If this light remains illuminated, after checking that the parking brake is fully released, have the brakes inspected immediately.* **⚠ CAUTION** *In addition, the effectiveness of the braking may diminish so you may need to depress the brake pedal more strongly than normal to stop the vehicle.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Signal	Warning
 Electronic Brake Force Distribution System Warning	If the electronic brake force distribution control unit determines that some components are operating incorrectly, the control unit may illuminate the brake system warning light and the ABS warning light simultaneously. The problem is likely to be the electronic brake force distribution system. **⚠ WARNING** ***Do not drive with both the ABS warning light and brake warning light illuminated. Have the vehicle towed to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have the brakes inspected as soon as possible:*** *Driving when the brake system warning light and ABS warning light are illuminated simultaneously is dangerous.* *When both lights are illuminated, the rear wheels could lock more quickly in an emergency stop than under normal circumstances.*
 Charging System Warning Light	If the warning light turns on while driving, it indicates a problem with the generator or the charging system. Drive to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). **⚠ CAUTION** *Do not continue driving when the charging system warning light is illuminated because the engine could stop unexpectedly.*
 Engine Oil Warning Light	This warning light indicates low engine oil pressure. **⚠ CAUTION** *Do not run the engine if the oil pressure is low. Otherwise, it could result in extensive engine damage.* If the light illuminates or the warning indication is displayed while driving: 1. Drive to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way on level ground. 2. Turn off the engine and wait 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the sump. 3. Inspect the engine oil level. (page 6-26) If it's low, add the appropriate amount of engine oil while being careful not to overfill. **⚠ CAUTION** *Do not run the engine if the oil level is low. Otherwise, it could result in extensive engine damage.* 4. Start the engine and check the warning light. If the light remains illuminated even though the oil level is normal or after adding oil, stop the engine immediately and have your vehicle towed to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

OwnersManuals2.com

Signal	Warning
 Mazda M Hybrid Warning Light*	The warning light turns on if there is a malfunction in the system while the Mazda M Hybrid system is on. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
 (Red) High Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light	The light flashes when the engine coolant temperature is extremely high, and illuminates when the engine coolant temperature increases further. **Handling Procedure** **Flashing light** Drive slowly to reduce engine load until you can find a safe place to stop the vehicle and wait for the engine to cool down. **Illuminated light** This indicates the possibility of overheating. Park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and stop the engine. Refer to Overheating on page 7-29. **⚠ CAUTION** *Do not drive the vehicle with the high engine coolant temperature warning light illuminated. Otherwise, it could result in damage to the engine.*
 Power Steering Malfunction Indicator Light	The light illuminates/flashes if the electric power steering has a malfunction. If the light illuminates/flashes, stop the vehicle in a safe place and do not operate the steering wheel. There is no problem if the light turns off after a while. Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) if the light illuminates/flashes continuously. ***NOTE*** ・ *If the indicator light illuminates/flashes, the power steering will not operate normally. If this happens, the steering wheel can still be operated, however, the operation may feel heavy compared to normal, or the steering wheel could vibrate when turning.* ・ *Repeatedly jerking the steering wheel left and right while the vehicle is stopped or moving extremely slowly will cause the power steering system to go into protective mode which will make the steering feel heavy, but this does not indicate a problem. If this occurs, park the vehicle safely and wait several minutes for the system to return to normal.*

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Contact Expert Repairer (We Recommend Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected

If any of the following warning lights turns on/flashes, the system may have a malfunction. Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have your vehicle inspected.

Signal	Warning
 ABS Warning Light	If the ABS warning light stays on while you're driving, the ABS control unit has detected a system malfunction. If this occurs, your brakes will function normally as if the vehicle had no ABS. Should this happen, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible. ***NOTE*** ・ *When the engine is jump-started to charge the battery, uneven rpm occurs and the ABS warning light may illuminate. If this occurs, it is the result of the weak battery and does not indicate an ABS malfunction.* ・ ***(With DSC vehicles)*** *The brake assist system does not operate while the ABS warning light is illuminated.*
 Master Warning Light	**Vehicles with Mazda Connect** ・ The light turns on when the system has a malfunction. Operate the centre display and verify the content. Refer to If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes on page 7-34. **Vehicles without Mazda Connect** The light illuminates continuously if any one of the following occurs. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). ・ There is a malfunction in the battery management system. ・ There is a malfunction in the brake switch. ・ **(SKYACTIV-D 1.5)** ・ There is a malfunction in the engine's hydraulic control. ・ There is a malfunction in the engine's timing chain. ・ There is a malfunction in the blow-by heater. ・ There is a malfunction in the oil level sensor.
 Check Engine Light	If this light illuminates while driving, the vehicle may have a problem. It is important to note the driving conditions when the light illuminated and consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). The check engine light may illuminate in the following cases: ・ The engine's electrical system has a problem. ・ The emission control system has a problem. ・ **(SKYACTIV-G 1.3, SKYACTIV-G 1.5, SKYACTIV-G 2.0)** ・ The fuel tank level being very low or approaching empty. If the check engine light remains on, or it flashes continuously , do not drive at high speeds and consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.

OwnersManuals2.com

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
i-stop (Amber) i-stop warning light*	**When the light is turned on** A problem in the system may be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). ・ The light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON. ・ The light continues to remain on even though the i-stop OFF switch has been pressed while the engine is running. ・ **(Except European model)** If the i-stop warning light (amber) remains on while the engine is running, the battery performance may have decreased. Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). **When the light is flashing** The light continues to flash if the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
i-ELOOP (Amber) i-ELOOP Warning Light*	The light turns on if there is any malfunction in the i-ELOOP system. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
AT Automatic Transaxle Warning Light*	The light illuminates when the transaxle has a problem. **⚠ CAUTION** *If the automatic transaxle warning light illuminates, the transaxle has an electrical problem. Continuing to drive your Mazda in this condition could cause damage to your transaxle. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.*
(Turns on) TCS/DSC Indicator Light*	If the light stays on, the TCS, DSC or the brake assist system may have a malfunction and they may not operate correctly. Take your vehicle to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Light	A system malfunction is indicated if the warning light constantly flashes, constantly illuminates or does not illuminate at all when the ignition is switched ON. If any of these occur, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible. The system may not operate in an accident. **⚠ WARNING** ***Never tamper with the air bag/pretensioner systems and always have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) perform all servicing and repairs:*** *Self-servicing or tampering with the systems is dangerous. An air bag/pretensioner could accidentally activate or become disabled causing serious injury or death.*

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Signal	Warning
 (Flashing) Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Warning Light*	If the tyre pressure monitoring system has a malfunction, the tyre pressure warning light flashes for about 1 minute when the ignition is switched ON and then continues illuminating. Have your vehicle checked by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible. **⚠ WARNING** ***If the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light illuminates or flashes, or the tyre pressure warning beep sound is heard, decrease vehicle speed immediately and avoid sudden manoeuvring and braking:*** *If the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light illuminates or flashes, or the tyre pressure warning beep sound is heard, it is dangerous to drive the vehicle at high speeds, or perform sudden manoeuvring or braking. Vehicle drivability could worsen and result in an accident.* *To determine if you have a slow leak or a flat, pull over to a safe position where you can check the visual condition of the tyre and determine if you have enough air to proceed to a place where air may be added and the system monitored again by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) or a tyre repair station.* ***Do not ignore the TPMS Warning Light:*** *Ignoring the TPMS warning light is dangerous, even if you know why it is illuminated. Have the problem taken care of as soon as possible before it develops into a more serious situation that could lead to tyre failure and a dangerous accident.*
 (Red) (Turns on) KEY Warning Light	If any malfunction occurs in the keyless entry system, it illuminates continuously. **⚠ CAUTION** *If the key warning indicator light illuminates or the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes, the engine may not start. If the engine cannot be started, try starting it using the emergency operation for starting the engine, and have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.* Refer to Emergency Operation for Starting the Engine on page 4-10.
 Security Indicator Light	If the engine does not start with the correct key, and the security indicator light remains illuminated or flashing, try the following: Make sure the key is within the operational range for signal transmission. Switch the ignition off, and then restart the engine. If the engine does not start after 3 or more tries, contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
 (Amber) High Beam Control System (HBC) Warning Light*	The light remains turned on if there is a problem with the system. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). ***NOTE*** *If the windscreen area in front of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is fogged or obstructed, the light turns on temporarily. If the light remains turned on, there may be a problem with the system.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Signal	Warning
 (Amber) Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) Warning Light*	The light remains turned on if there is a problem with the system. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). ***NOTE*** *If the windscreen area in front of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is fogged or obstructed, the light turns on temporarily. If the light remains turned on, there may be a problem with the system.*
 Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Warning Light*	• The warning light remains turned on if there is a problem with the system. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). • The system does not operate when the warning light illuminates. **⚠ CAUTION** ➢ *A problem in the system may be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).* ➢ *When the light remains turned on while driving the vehicle.* *When the system is cancelled automatically, the light turns on. Normally, the system restores automatically and the light turns off, however, if the light remains turned on, there may be a problem with the system.* ➢ *The light does not illuminate when the ignition is switched ON.* ➢ *Always use tyres for all wheels that are of the specified size, and the same manufacture, brand, and tread pattern. In addition, do not use tyres with significantly different wear patterns on the same vehicle. If such improper tyres are used, the system may not operate normally.* ➢ *When an emergency spare tyre is used, the system may not operate normally.* ***NOTE*** *If the windscreen area in front of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is fogged or obstructed, the light turns on temporarily. If the light remains turned on, there may be a problem with the system.*

 *Some models.

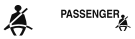
OwnersManuals2.com

Signal	Warning
 Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Warning Light*	・The warning light remains turned on if there is a problem with the system. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). ・The system does not operate when the warning light illuminates. **⚠ CAUTION** ➢ *A problem in the system may be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).* ➢ *When the light remains turned on while driving the vehicle.* *When the system is cancelled automatically, the light turns on. Normally, the system restores automatically and the light turns off, however, if the light remains turned on, there may be a problem with the system.* ➢ *The light does not illuminate when the ignition is switched ON.* ➢ *Always use tyres for all wheels that are of the specified size, and the same manufacture, brand, and tread pattern. In addition, do not use tyres with significantly different wear patterns on the same vehicle. If such improper tyres are used, the system may not operate normally.* ➢ *When an emergency spare tyre is used, the system may not operate normally.* ***NOTE*** *If the windscreen area in front of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is fogged or obstructed, the light turns on temporarily. If the light remains turned on, there may be a problem with the system.*
 Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF Indicator Light*	A problem in the system may be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). ・The light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON. ・The light remains on even when the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) system can be operated. ・The light turns on while driving the vehicle. ***NOTE*** *If the vehicle is driven on a road with less traffic and few vehicles that the radar sensors can detect, the system may pause (The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates). However, it does not indicate a malfunction.*
 (Amber) Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) Warning Light*	The warning light turns on if there is a malfunction in the system while the Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) system is on. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
 LED Headlight Warning Light	This light illuminates if there is a malfunction in the LED headlight. Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Taking Action

Take the appropriate action and verify that the warning light turns off.

Signal	Warning	Action to be taken
 Low Fuel Warning Light	The light turns on when the remaining fuel is about 9.0 L (2.3 US gal, 1.9 Imp gal). ***NOTE*** *The light illumination timing may vary because fuel inside the fuel tank moves around according to the driving conditions and the vehicle posture.*	Add fuel.
 Seat Belt Warning Light (Front seat)	The seat belt warning light turns on if the driver or front passenger's seat is occupied and the seat belt is not fastened with the ignition switched ON. If the driver or front passenger's seat belt is unfastened (only when the front passenger seat is occupied) and the vehicle is driven at a speed faster than about 20 km/h (12 mph), the warning light flashes. After a short time, the warning light stops flashing, but remains illuminated. If a seat belt remains unfastened, the warning light flashes again for a given period of time. ***NOTE*** • *If the driver or front passenger's seat belt is unfastened after the warning light turns on, and the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph), the warning light flashes again.* • *Placing heavy items on the front passenger's seat may cause the front passenger's seat belt warning function to operate depending on the weight of the item.* • *To allow the front passenger's seat weight sensor to function properly, do not place and sit on an additional seat cushion on the front passenger's seat. The sensor may not function properly because the additional seat cushion could cause sensor interference.* • *If a small child is seated on the front passenger's seat, the warning light may not operate.*	Fasten the seat belts.

OwnersManuals2.com

Signal	Warning	Action to be taken
REAR (Red) Seat Belt Warning Light (Rear seat)*	If the rear seat belts are not fastened while the ignition is switched ON , the driver and the passenger are alerted by the warning light. The warning light operates even if there is no passenger on the rear seat. ***NOTE*** *If a rear seat belt is not fastened by a certain period of time after the engine has been started, the warning light turns off.*	Fasten the seat belts.
Door-Ajar Warning Light	The light turns on if any door/liftgate/boot lid is not closed securely.	Close the door/liftgate/boot lid securely.
Low Washer Fluid Level Warning Light*	This warning light indicates that little washer fluid remains.	Add washer fluid (page 6-30).
120 km/h 120km/h Warning Light*	The 120 km/h warning light illuminates when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h.	Lower the vehicle speed.

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Signal	Warning	Action to be taken
 (Amber) Smart Brake Support/ Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) Warning Light*	The light turns on if the windscreen or the radar sensor are dirty, or there is a malfunction in the system.	**Vehicles with Mazda Connect** Verify the reason why the warning light is illuminated on the centre display (page 7-34). If the reason why the warning light is illuminated is due to a dirty windscreen, clean the windscreen. If the warning light is illuminated because of a dirty radar sensor, clean the front emblem. For any other reasons, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). **Vehicles without Mazda Connect** If the reason why the warning light is illuminated is due to a dirty windscreen, clean the windscreen. For any other reasons, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Warning Light (Turns on)*



Take the appropriate action and verify that the warning light turns off.

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

Warning
When the warning light illuminates, and the warning beep sound is heard (about 3 seconds), tyre pressure is too low in one or more tyres. **⚠ WARNING** ***If the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light illuminates or flashes, or the tyre pressure warning beep sound is heard, decrease vehicle speed immediately and avoid sudden manoeuvring and braking:*** *If the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light illuminates or flashes, or the tyre pressure warning beep sound is heard, it is dangerous to drive the vehicle at high speeds, or perform sudden manoeuvring or braking. Vehicle drivability could worsen and result in an accident.* *To determine if you have a slow leak or a flat, pull over to a safe position where you can check the visual condition of the tyre and determine if you have enough air to proceed to a place where air may be added and the system monitored again by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) or a tyre repair station.* ***Do not ignore the TPMS Warning Light:*** *Ignoring the TPMS warning light is dangerous, even if you know why it is illuminated. Have the problem taken care of as soon as possible before it develops into a more serious situation that could lead to tyre failure and a dangerous accident.*

Action to be taken
Inspect the tyres and adjust to the specified inflation pressure (page 6-40). ***NOTE*** • *Perform tyre pressure adjustment when the tyres are cold. Tyre pressure will vary according to the tyre temperature, therefore let the vehicle stand for 1 hour or only drive it 1.6 km (1 mile) or less before adjusting the tyre pressures. When pressure is adjusted on hot tyres to the cold inflation pressure, the TPMS warning light/beep may turn on after the tyres cool and pressure drops below specification.* *Also, an illuminated TPMS warning light, resulting from the tyre air pressure dropping due to cold ambient temperature will remain illuminated even if the ambient temperature rises. In this case, it will also be necessary to adjust the tyre air pressures. If the TPMS warning light illuminates due to a drop in tyre air pressure, make sure to check and adjust the tyre air pressures.* • *Tyres lose air naturally over time and the TPMS cannot tell if the tyres are getting too soft over time or you have a flat. However, when you find one low tyre in a set of four-that is an indication of trouble; you should have someone drive the vehicle slowly forward so you can inspect any low tyre for cuts and any metal objects sticking through tread or sidewall. Put a few drops of water in the valve stem to see if it bubbles indicating a bad valve. Leaks need to be addressed by more than simply reinflating the tyre as leaks are dangerous — take it to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*

OwnersManuals2.com

KEY Warning Light

Take the appropriate action and verify that the warning light turns off.

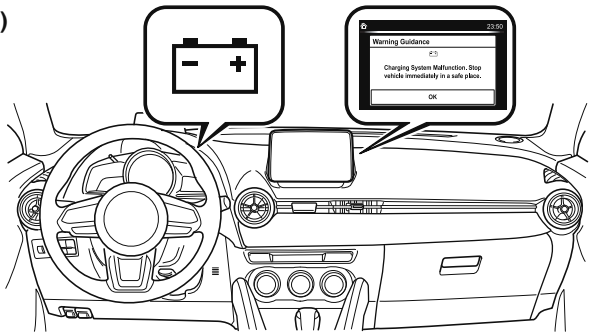
Signal	Cause	Action to be taken
 (Red) (Flashing)	The advanced key battery is dead.	Replace the key battery (page 6-38).
	The advanced key is not within the operation range.	Bring the advanced key into the operation range (page 3-8).
	The advanced key is placed in areas inside the cabin where it is difficult for the key to be detected.	
	A key from another manufacturer similar to the advanced key is in the operation range.	Take the key from another manufacturer similar to the advanced key out of the operation range.
	Without the ignition switched off, the advanced key is taken out of the cabin, and then all the doors are closed.	Bring the advanced key back into the cabin.

OwnersManuals2.com

Message Indicated on Display*

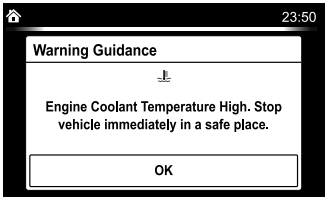
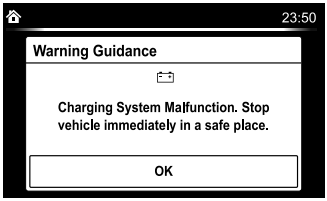
If a message is displayed in the centre display (Mazda Connect), take appropriate action (in a calm manner) according to the displayed message.

(Display example)



▼ Stop Vehicle in Safe Place Immediately

If the following messages are displayed in the centre display (Mazda Connect), a vehicle system may be malfunctioning. Stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

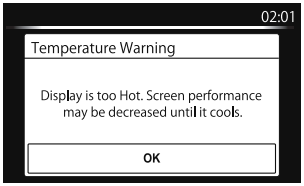
Display	Indicated Condition
	Displays if the engine coolant temperature has increased excessively.
	Displays if the charging system has a malfunction.

*Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Verify Display Content

Displays in the following cases:

Display	Indicated Condition/Action to be taken
	The following message is displayed when the temperature around the centre display is high. Lowering the temperature in the cabin or the temperature around the centre display by avoiding direct sunlight is recommended.

OwnersManuals2.com

Warning Sound is Activated

▼ Lights-On Reminder

If lights are on and the ignition is switched to ACC or off, a continuous beep sound will be heard when the driver's door is opened.

NOTE

- *When the ignition is switched to ACC, the "Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP) Warning Beep" (page 7-50) overrides the lights-on reminder.*
- *A personalised function is available to change the sound volume for the lights-on reminder.*
  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Beep

If there is a problem with the air bag/seat belt pretensioner systems and the warning light illumination, a warning beep sound will be heard for about 5 seconds every minute.

The air bag and seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sound will continue to be heard for approximately 35 minutes. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive the vehicle with the air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sounding:
Driving the vehicle with the air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sounding is dangerous. In a collision, the air bags and the seat belt pretensioner system will not deploy and this could result in death or serious injury. Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have the vehicle inspected as soon as possible.

▼ Seat Belt Warning Beep

Front seat

If the vehicle speed exceeds about 20 km/h (12 mph) with the driver or front passenger's seat belt unfastened, a warning beep sounds continuously. If the seat belt remains unfastened, the beep sound stops once and then continues for a certain period. The beep stops after the driver or front passenger's seat belt is fastened.

NOTE

- *Placing heavy items on the front passenger seat may cause the front passenger seat belt warning function to operate depending on the weight of the item.*
- *To allow the front passenger seat weight sensor to function properly, do not place and sit on an additional seat cushion on the front passenger seat. The sensor may not function properly because the additional seat cushion could cause sensor interference.*

OwnersManuals2.com

- *When a small child sits on the front passenger seat, it is possible that the warning beep will not operate.*

Rear seat*

The warning beep only sounds if a seat belt is unfastened after being fastened.

▼ Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP) Warning Beep

If the driver's door is opened with the ignition switched to ACC, a beep will be heard continuously in the cabin to notify the driver that the ignition has not been switched OFF (STOP). Under this condition, the keyless entry system will not operate, the vehicle cannot be locked, and the battery voltage will be depleted.

▼ Key Removed from Vehicle Warning Beep

Vehicles with advanced keyless function

If the key is taken out of the vehicle while the ignition is not switched OFF and all the doors are closed, the beep which sounds outside of the vehicle will be heard 6 times, the beep which sounds inside the vehicle will be heard 6 times.

Vehicles without advanced keyless function

If the key is taken out of the vehicle while the ignition is not switched OFF and all the doors are closed, a beep will be heard in the cabin 6 times.

NOTE

Because the key utilizes low-intensity radio waves, the Key Removed From Vehicle Warning may activate if the key is carried together with a metal object or it is placed in a poor signal reception area.

▼ Request Switch Inoperable Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function)*

If the request switch is pressed with the door open or ajar, or the ignition is not switched OFF with a key being carried, a beep will be heard outside for about 2 seconds to notify the driver that the door or liftgate/boot lid cannot be locked.

▼ Key Left-in-luggage Compartment/ Boot Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function)*

If the key is left in the luggage compartment/boot with all the doors locked and the liftgate/boot lid closed, a beep will be heard outside for about 10 seconds to notify the driver that the key is in the luggage compartment/boot. In this case, take out the key by pressing the electric liftgate/boot lid opener and opening the liftgate/boot lid. The key taken out of the luggage compartment/ boot may not operate because its functions have been temporarily stopped. To restore the key's functions, perform the applicable procedure (page 3-8).

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Key Left-in-vehicle Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function)*

If all the doors and luggage compartment/boot are locked using another key while the key is left in the cabin, the beep which sounds outside of the vehicle will be heard for about 10 seconds to notify the driver that the key is in the cabin. In this case, take out the key by opening the door. A key taken out of the vehicle using this method may not operate because its functions have been temporarily stopped. To restore the key's functions, perform the applicable procedure (page 3-8).

▼ Electronic Steering Lock Warning Beep

The warning beep operates if the steering wheel is not unlocked after the push button start is pressed. (page 4-4)

▼ i-stop Warning Beep*

- If the driver's door is opened while engine idling is stopped, the warning sound operates to notify the driver that engine idling is stopped. It stops when the driver's door is closed.
- **(European model)**
  The warning sound operates if the following operations are performed while the engine idling is stopped. In such cases, the engine does not restart automatically to ensure safety. Start the engine using the normal method.
  (With Mazda M Hybrid)
  - **(Manual transaxle)**
    With the shift lever in a position other than neutral, the driver's door is opened.
  - **(Automatic transaxle)**
    With the selector lever in the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position, the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.

  (Without Mazda M Hybrid)
  - **(Manual transaxle)**
    With the shift lever in a position other than neutral, the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
  - **(Automatic transaxle)**
    With the selector lever in the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position, the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.

▼ Vehicle Speed Alarm*

The vehicle speed alarm function is designed to alarm the driver via a single beep sound and a warning indication in the instrument cluster that the previously set vehicle speed has been exceeded.
You can change the vehicle speed setting at which the warning is triggered.

▼ 120 km/h Warning Beep*

If the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h, a chime sounds for 5 seconds.

▼ Outside Temperature Warning Beep*

Warns the driver of the possibility of icy roads when the outside temperature is low. If the outside temperature is lower than about 4 °C (39 °F), a beep sound is heard once and the outside temperature display flashes for about 10 seconds.

OwnersManuals2.com

Refer to Outside Temperature Display on page 4-31.

▼ Over Rev. Buzzer*

The buzzer sounds to notify the driver if the engine speed is about to exceed the permissible engine speed.

⚠ CAUTION

Operate the accelerator and shift gears according to the driving conditions so that the buzzer does not sound. If the engine speed exceeds the permissible engine speed, the engine could be damaged.

▼ Tyre Inflation Pressure Warning Beep*

The warning beep sound will be heard for about 3 seconds when there is any abnormality in tyre inflation pressures (page 4-223).

▼ Power Steering Warning Buzzer

If the power steering system has a malfunction, the power steering malfunction indicator light turns on or flashes and the buzzer operates at the same time.
Refer to Stop Vehicle in Safe Place Immediately on page 7-34.

▼ Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) System Warning Beep*

Driving forward

The warning beep operates when the direction indicator lever is operated to the side where the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning light is illuminated.

NOTE

A personalised function is available to change the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning beep sound volume.
Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Reversing

The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning sound is activated if there is a possibility of collision with a vehicle approaching from behind and from the rear on the left and right sides of the vehicle.

▼ Lane Departure Warning Sound*

While the system is operating, if the system determines that the vehicle may depart from the lane, it sounds a warning sound.

NOTE

- *The volume of the LDWS warning sound can be changed.*
  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- *The type of the LDWS warning sound can be changed.*
  Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

 *Some models.

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) System Warnings*

The Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) system warnings notify the driver of system malfunctions and cautions on use when required.
Check based on the beep sound.

Warning beep	What to check
The beep sounds 1 time while the Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) is operating	The vehicle speed is slower than 25 km/h (16 mph) and the Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) system has been cancelled.
(European models) The beep sounds 5 times while driving **(Except European models)** The beep continues to sound while the vehicle is being driven.	The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is too close. Verify the safety of the surrounding area and reduce vehicle speed.
When the Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) is operating, the beep sounds and the Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) warning light (amber) in the instrument cluster turns on.	A malfunction in the system may be indicated. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Speed Limiter Warning Beep*

If the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by about 3 km/h (2 mph) or more, a warning beep operates continuously. The warning beep operates until the vehicle speed decreases to the set speed or less.

⚠ CAUTION

(With cruise control)
If the set speed is set lower than the current vehicle speed by pressing the SET/- or RES/+ switch, the warning beep is not activated for about 30 seconds even if the vehicle speed is faster than the newly set speed by 3 km/h (2 mph). Be careful not to drive over the set speed.
(With Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC))
If the set speed is set lower than the current vehicle speed by pressing the SET- or RES switch, the warning beep is not activated for about 30 seconds even if the vehicle speed is faster than the newly set speed by 3 km/h (2 mph). Be careful not to drive over the set speed.

NOTE
When the system is temporarily cancelled by depressing the accelerator pedal fully, the Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL) display shows the cancel display. Even if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by about 3 km/h (2 mph) or more while the cancel display is displayed, the warning sound is not operated.

▼ Collision Warning*

If there is a possibility of a collision with a vehicle ahead or an obstruction at the rear of the vehicle, the warning light in the instrument cluster flashes at the same time as the warning indication is displayed in the active driving display, and a warning sound is activated intermittently.

OwnersManuals2.com

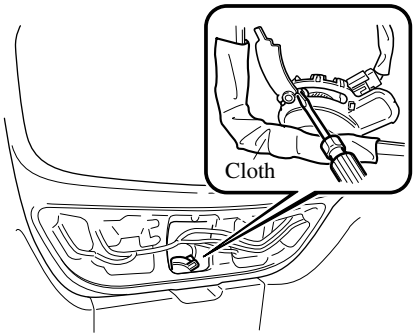
When Liftgate/Boot Lid Cannot be Opened

If the vehicle battery is dead, the liftgate/boot lid cannot be unlocked and opened. In this case, the liftgate/boot lid can be unlocked by taking care of the dead battery situation.
Refer to Jump-Starting on page 7-23.
If the liftgate/boot lid cannot be unlocked even if the dead battery situation has been resolved, the electrical system may have a malfunction.
In this case, the liftgate/boot lid can be opened using the following procedure as an emergency measure.

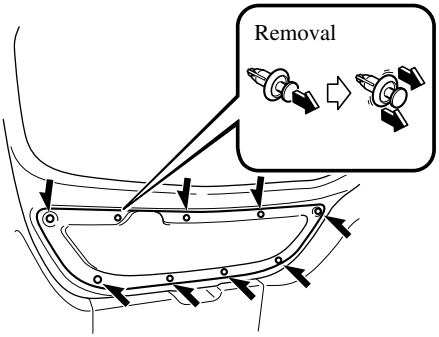
(Hatchback)

⚠ CAUTION

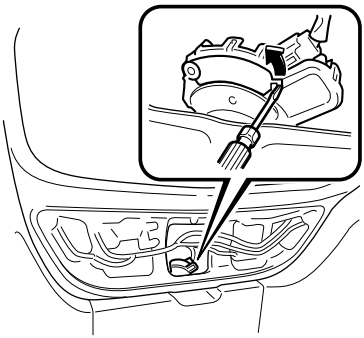
- *Perform the procedure using a cloth to cover sharp edges which could injure your hands.*
- *Perform the procedure carefully when using a flathead screwdriver as it could cause damage to the surrounding area or vehicle parts.*



1. Fold down the rear seatbacks.
   Refer to Split/One-piece Folding the Seatback on page 2-14.
2. Pull the centre section of the plastic fastener and remove the fasteners, then remove cover on the interior surface of the liftgate.

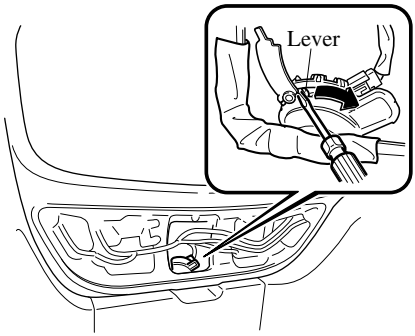


3. Using a flathead screwdriver, open the inner cover.



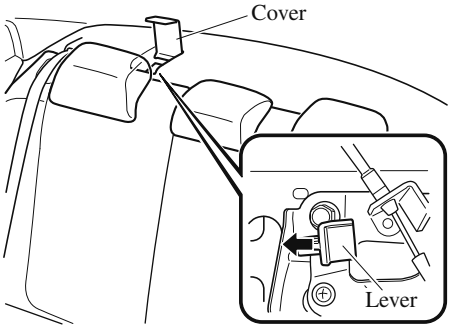
OwnersManuals2.com

4. Using a flathead screwdriver, turn the lever to the right to unlock the liftgate.

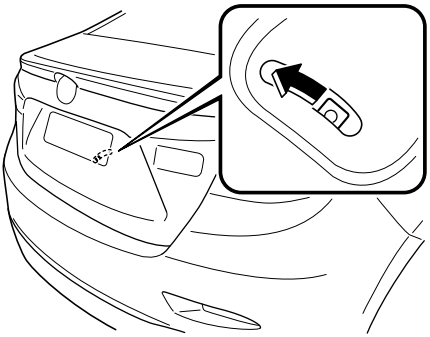


(Saloon)

1. Open the cover.
2. Move the lever to the left to fold the seatback.



3. Move the lever to the left to open the boot lid.



After performing this emergency measure, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.

OwnersManuals2.com

If the Active Driving Display Does Not Operate

If the active driving display does not operate, switch the ignition off and then restart the engine. If the active driving display does not operate even with the engine restarted, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

OwnersManuals2.com

8 Customer Information

Important consumer information including warranties and add-on equipment.

Warranty.....8-2
Registering Your Vehicle in A Foreign Country.....8-2
Add-On Non-Genuine Parts and Accessories.....8-3

Cell Phones.....8-4
Cell Phones Warning.....8-4

Declaration of Conformity.....8-5
Declaration of Conformity.....8-5

Electromagnetic Compatibility.....8-45
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....8-45

Collection/Disposal of Old Equipment/ Used Battery.....8-47
Information for Users on Collection and Disposal of Old Equipment and Used Batteries.....8-47

OwnersManuals2.com

Registering Your Vehicle in A Foreign Country

Registering your vehicle in a foreign country may be problematic depending on whether it meets the specific emission and safety standards of the country in which the vehicle will be driven. Consequently, your vehicle may require modifications at personal expense in order to meet the regulations.
In addition, you should be aware of the following issues:
Satisfactory vehicle servicing may be difficult or impossible in another country.

The fuel specified for your vehicle may be unavailable.

Parts, servicing techniques, and tools necessary to maintain and repair your vehicle may be unavailable.

There might not be an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) in the country you plan to take your vehicle.

The Mazda warranty is valid only in certain countries.

OwnersManuals2.com

Add-On Non-Genuine Parts and Accessories

Please note that technical alterations to the original state of your Mazda vehicle can affect the safety of the vehicle. Such technical alterations include not only the use of unsuitable spare parts, but also accessories, fittings or attachments, including rims and tyres.

Genuine Mazda Parts and Genuine Mazda Accessories have been specifically designed for Mazda vehicles.
Other parts and accessories than those mentioned above have not been examined and approved by Mazda unless explicitly stated by Mazda. We cannot certify the suitability of such products. Mazda is not liable for any damage caused by the use of such products.

⚠ WARNING

Be very careful in choosing and installing add-on electrical equipment, such as mobile telephones, two-way radios, stereo systems, and car alarm systems:
Incorrectly choosing or installing improper add-on equipment or choosing an improper installer is dangerous. Essential systems could be damaged, causing engine stalling, air-bag (SRS) activation, ABS/TCS/DSC inactivation, or a fire in the vehicle.

Mazda assumes no responsibility for death, injury, or expenses that may result from the installation of add-on non-genuine parts or accessories.

OwnersManuals2.com

Cell Phones Warning

⚠ WARNING

Please comply with the legal regulations concerning the use of communication equipment in vehicles in your country:

Use of any electrical devices such as cell phones, computers, portable radios, vehicle navigation or other devices by the driver while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Dialing a number on a cell phone while driving also ties-up the driver's hands. Use of these devices will cause the driver to be distracted and could lead to a serious accident. If a passenger is unable to use the device, pull off the right-of-way to a safe area before use. If use of a cell phone is necessary despite this warning, use a hands-free system to at least leave the hands free to drive the vehicle. Never use a cell phone or other electrical devices while the vehicle is moving and, instead, concentrate on the full-time job of driving.

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

▼ Keyless Entry System/Immobilizer System

[EN] English	Hereby, MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS, declares that the radio equipment type Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU.
[BG] Bulgarian	С настоящото MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS декларира, че този тип радиосъоръжение Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) е в съответствие с Директива 2014/53/ЕС.
[ES] Spanish	Por la presente, MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS declara que el tipo de equipo radioeléctrico Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) es conforme con la Directiva 2014/53/UE.
[CS] Czech	Tímto MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS prohlašuje, že typ rádiového zařízení Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01,SKE13E-03) je v souladu se směrnicí 2014/53/EU.
[DA] Danish	Hermed erklærer MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS, at radioudstyrstypen Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) er i overensstemmelse med direktiv 2014/53/EU.
[DE] German	Hiermit erklärt MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS, dass der Funkanlagentyp Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) der Richtlinie 2014/53/EU entspricht.
[ET] Estonian	Käesolevaga deklareerib MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS, et käesolev raadioseadme tüüp Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) vastab direktiivi 2014/53/EL nõuetele.
[EL] Greek	Με την παρούσα ο/η MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS, δηλώνει ότι ο ραδιοεξοπλισμός Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) πληροί την οδηγία 2014/53/ΕΕ.
[FR] French	Le soussigné, MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS, déclare que l'équipement radioélectrique du type Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01,SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) est conforme à la directive 2014/53/UE.
[HR] Croatian	MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS ovime izjavljuje da je radijska oprema tipa Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) u skladu s Direktivom 2014/53/EU.
[IT] Italian	Il fabbricante, MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS, dichiara che il tipo di apparecchiatura radio Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) è conforme alla direttiva 2014/53/UE.
[LV] Latvian	Ar šo MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS deklarē, ka radioiekārta Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) atbilst Direktīvai 2014/53/ES.
[LT] Lithuanian	Aš, MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS, patvirtinu, kad radijo įrenginių tipas Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) atitinka Direktyvą 2014/53/ES.
[HU] Hungarian	MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS igazolja, hogy a Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) típusú rádióberendezés megfelel a 2014/53/EU irányelvnek.
[MT] Maltese	B'dan, MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS, niddikjara li dan it-tip ta' taghmir tar-radju Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) huwa konformi mad-Direttiva 2014/53/UE.
[NL] Dutch	Hierbij verklaar ik, MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS, dat het type radioapparatuur Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) conform is met Richtlijn 2014/53/EU.
[PL] Polish	MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS niniejszym oświadcza, że typ urzą dzenia radiowego Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) jest zgodny z dyrektywą 2014/53/UE.

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

[PT] Portuguese	O abaixo assinado MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS declara que o presente tipo de equipamento de rádio Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) está em conformidade com a Diretiva 2014/53/UE.
[RO] Romanian	Prin prezenta, MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS declară că tipul de echipamente radio Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) este în conformitate cu Directiva 2014/53/UE.
[SK] Slovak	MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS týmto vyhlasuje, že rádiové zariadenie typu Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) je v súlade so smernicou 2014/53/EÚ.
[SL] Slovenian	MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS potrjuje, da je tip radijske opreme Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) skladen z Direktivo 2014/53/EU.
[FI] Finnish	MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS vakuuttaa, että radiolaitetyyppi Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) on direktiivin 2014/53/EU mukainen.
[SV] Swedish	Härmed försäkrar MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS att denna typ av radioutrustning Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) överensstämmer med direktiv 2014/53/EU.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:http://www.mitsubishielectric.com/bu/automotive/doc/re.html

UK

[EN] English	Hereby, MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS, declares that the radio equipment type Keyless System (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) is in compliance with the relevant statutory requirements. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:http://www.mitsubishielectric.com/bu/automotive/doc/ukgb.html

Manufacturer: MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS
840, Chiyoda-machi, Himeji, Hyogo 670-8677, Japan

Model : SKE13E-03
Operation frequency : 433.92 MHz
Maximum output power : 10mW
Model : SKE134-01、SKE133-02
Operation frequency : 125 kHz
Maximum output power : 107dBμV/m at. 10 meters
Model : SKE136-01
Operation frequency : 433.92 MHz

CAUTION - Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced.
Replace only with the same or equivalent type.
Please check and obey all local laws and regulations for the disposal of batteries or accumulations.
Never dispose of battery in fire or mechanical crushing or cutting.
If battery is incorrectly discarded or heated to high temperature (100 °C(212°F) or higher), gas may be generated inside battery, causing electrolyte leak, internal short circuit, heat generation, explosion and violent flaring.
CAUTION - Do not expose Hand Unit to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

OwnersManuals2.com

WARNING

Do not ingest the battery, Chemical Burn Hazard

This product contains a coin/button cell battery. If the coin/button cell battery is swallowed, it can cause severe internal burns in just 2 hours and can lead to death. Keep new and used batteries away from children. If the battery compartment does not close securely, stop using the product and keep it away from children. If you think batteries might have been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, seek immediate medical attention.

The caution mark of ISO 7000-0434 is located on the internal case.



This symbol is intended to alert the user to the presence of important operating and maintenance (servicing) instructions in the literature accompanying the appliance.

Moldova Prin prezenta, MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION, HIMEJI WORKS declară că tipul de echipamente radio (SKE133-02, SKE134-01, SKE136-01, SKE13E-03) este în conformitate cu Reglementarea tehnică „Punerea la dispoziție pe piață a echipamentelor radio".

Textul integral al declarației de conformitate este disponibil la următoarea adresă de Internet: http://www.mitsubishielectric.com/bu/automotive/doc/mda.html

FCC CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA -SKE13D-03/SKE135-01/SKE134-01/ SKE133-02.

Thailand

This telecommunication equipment conforms to the standard or technical requirements of NBTC.

低功率射頻器材技術規範

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻器材之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

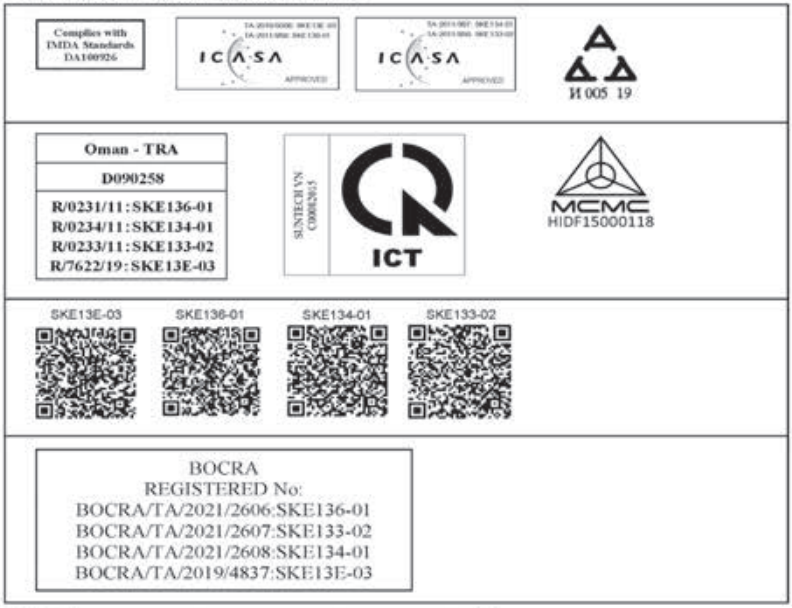
前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

Keyless System Radio approval Marking



Nigeria

Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission

Israel

51-80577(SKE13E-03) - "מספר אישור התאמה מוטעם משרד התקשורת:"

51-80017(SKE133-02) - "מספר אישור התאמה מוטעם משרד התקשורת:"

51-80531(SKE134-01) - "מספר אישור התאמה מוטעם משרד התקשורת:"

51-80019(SKE136-01) - "מספר אישור התאמה מוטעם משרד התקשורת:"

"חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר אשר יש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית ללא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות."

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) System

Company : Hella KGaA Hueck & Co.
Street : Rixbecker Str.75
Location : 59552 Lippstadt
Country : Germany

English	Hereby, Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. declares that the radio equipment type LCA 3.5 - M is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address : www.hella.com/mazda Frequency range : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Transmission power : 20 dBm (maximum)
Bulgarian	С настоящото Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. декларира, че този тип радиосъоръжение LCA 3.5 - M е в съответствие с Директива 2014/53/ЕС. Цялостният текст на ЕС декларацията за съответствие може да се намери на следния интернет адрес : www.hella.com/mazda Честотният диапазон : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Предавателна мощност : 20 dBm (максимум)
Czech	Tímto Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. prohlašuje, že typ rádiového zařízení LCA 3.5 - M je v souladu se směrnicí 2014/53/EU. Úplné znění EU prohlášení o shodě je k dispozici na této internetové adrese : www.hella.com/mazda Frekvenční rozsah : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Transmit Power : 20 dBm (maximum)
Danish	Hermed erklærer Hella KGaA Hueck & Co., at radioudstyrstypen LCA 3.5 - M er i erensstemmelse med direktiv 2014/53/EU. EU-overensstemmelseserklæringens fulde tekst kan findes på følgende internetadresse : www.hella.com/mazda Frekvensområde : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Transmit Power : 20 dBm (maksimum)
German	Hiermit erklärt Hella KGaA Hueck & Co., dass der Funkanlagentyp LCA 3.5 - M der Richtlinie 2014/53/EU entspricht. Der vollständige Text der EU-Konformitätserklärung ist unter der folgenden Internetadresse verfügbar : www.hella.com/mazda Frequenzbereich : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Sendeleistung : 20dBm (maximal)
Estonian	Käesolevaga deklareerib Hella KGaA Hueck & Co., et käesolev raadioseadme tüüp LCA 3.5 - M vastab direktiivi 2014/53/EL nõuetele. ELi vastavusdeklaratsiooni täielik tekst on kättesaadav järgmisel internetiaadressil : www.hella.com/mazda Sagedusala : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Saatevõimsus : 20 dBm (maksimaalselt)
Irish	Leis seo, Dearbhaíonn Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. go bhfuil an cineál trealaimh raidió LCA 3.5 - M i gcomhréir le Treoir 2014/53 / AE. Tá téacs iomlán an dearbhú comhréireachta an AE ar fáil ag an seoladh idirlín seo a leanas : www.hella.com/mazda Réimse Minicíocht : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Tarchuirfidh Power : 20 dBm (uasmhéid)
Greek	Με την παρούσα ο/η Hella KGaA Hueck & Co., δηλώνει ότι ο ραδιοεξοπλισμός LCA 3.5 - M πληροί την οδηγία 2014/53/ΕΕ. Το πλήρες κείμενο της δήλωσης συμμόρφωσης ΕΕ διατίθεται στην ακόλουθη ιστοσελίδα στο διαδίκτυο : www.hella.com/mazda Εύρος συχνοτήτων : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Ισχύς μετάδοσης : 20 dBm (μέγιστο)

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

Spanish	Por la presente, Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. declara que el tipo de equipo radioeléctrico LCA 3.5 - M es conforme con la Directiva 2014/53/UE. El texto completo de la declaración UE de conformidad está disponible en la dirección Internet siguiente : www.hella.com/mazda Gama de frecuencias : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Potencia de transmisión : 20 dBm (máximo)
French	Le soussigné, Hella KGaA Hueck & Co., déclare que l'équipement radioélectrique du type LCA 3.5 - M est conforme à la directive 2014/53/UE. Le texte complet de la déclaration UE de conformité est disponible à l'adresse internet suivante : www.hella.com/mazda Gamme de fréquences : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Puissance de transmission : 20 dBm (maximum)
Croatian	Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. ovime izjavljuje da je radijska oprema tipa LCA 3.5 - M u skladu s Direktivom 2014/53/EU. Cjeloviti tekst EU izjave o sukladnosti dostupan je na sljedećoj internetskoj adresi : www.hella.com/mazda Frekvencijski raspon : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Prijenos snage : 20 dBm (maksimalno)
Italian	Il fabbricante, Hella KGaA Hueck & Co., dichiara che il tipo di apparecchiatura radio LCA 3.5 - M è conforme alla direttiva 2014/53/UE. Il testo completo della dichiarazione di conformità UE è disponibile al seguente indirizzo Internet : www.hella.com/mazda Gamma di frequenza : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Trasmissione di potenza : 20 dBm (massimo)
Latvian	Ar šo Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. deklarē, ka radioiekārta LCA 3.5 - M atbilst Direktīvai 2014/53/ES. Pilns ES atbilstības deklarācijas teksts ir pieejams šādā interneta vietnē : www.hella.com/mazda Frekvenču diapazons : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Pārraidīt Jauda : 20 dBm (maksimums)
Lithuania	Aš, Hella KGaA Hueck & Co., patvirtinu, kad radijo įrenginių tipas LCA 3.5 - M atitinka Direktyvą 2014/53/ES. Visas ES atitikties deklaracijos tekstas prieinamas šiuo interneto adresu : www.hella.com/mazda Dažnių diapazonas : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Perduoti Galia : 20 dBm (maksimali)
Hungarian	Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. igazolja, hogy a LCA 3.5 - M típusú rádióberendezés megfelel a 2014/53/EU irányelvnek. Az EU-megfelelőségi nyilatkozat teljes szövege elérhető a következő internetes címen : www.hella.com/mazda Frekvencia tartomány : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Átviteli teljesítmény : 20 dBm (maximum)
Maltese	B'dan, Hella KGaA Hueck & Co., niddikjara li dan it-tip ta' tagħmir tarradju LCA 3.5 - M huwa konformi mad-Direttiva 2014/53/UE. It-test kollu tad-dikjarazzjoni ta' konformità tal-UE huwa disponibbli f'dan l-indirizz tal-Internet li ġej : www.hella.com/mazda Firxa ta 'frekwenza : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Jittrasmettu Power : 20 dBm (massimu)
Dutch	Hierbij verklaar ik, Hella KGaA Hueck & Co., dat het type radioapparatuur LCA 3.5 - M conform is met Richtlijn 2014/53/EU. De volledige tekst van de EU-conformiteitsverklaring kan worden geraadpleegd op het volgende internetadres : www.hella.com/mazda Frequentiebereik : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Zendvermogen : 20 dBm (maximum)

OwnersManuals2.com

Polish	Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. niniejszym oświadcza, że typ urządzenia radiowego LCA 3.5 - M jest zgodny z dyrektywą 2014/53/UE. Pełny tekst deklaracji zgodności UE jest dostępny pod następują cym adresem internetowym : www.hella.com/mazda Zakres częstotliwości : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Moc transmisji : 20 dBm (maksymalnie)
Portuguese	O(a) abaixo assinado(a) Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. declara que o presente tipo de equipamento de rádio LCA 3.5 - M está em conformidade com a Diretiva 2014/53/UE. O texto integral da declaraçã o de conformidade está disponível no seguinte endereço de Internet : www.hella.com/mazda Faixa de freqüência : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Potência de transmissão : 20 dBm (máximo)
Rumanian	Prin prezenta, Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. declară că tipul de echipamente radio LCA 3.5 - M este în conformitate cu Directiva 2014/53/UE. Textul integral al declarației UE de conformitate este disponibil la următoarea adresă internet : www.hella.com/mazda Gama de frecvențe : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Putere Transmit : 20 dBm (maxim)
Slovenian	Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. potrjuje, da je tip radijske opreme LCA 3.5 - M skladen z Direktivo 2014/53/EU. Celotno besedilo izjave EU o skladnosti je na voljo na naslednjem spletnem naslovu : www.hella.com/mazda Frekvenčni razpon : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Oddajna moč : 20 dBm (največ)
Slovakian	Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. týmto vyhlasuje, že rádiové zariadenie typu LCA 3.5 - M je v súlade so smernicou 2014/53/EÚ. Úplné EÚ vyhlásenie o zhode je k dispozícii na tejto internetovej adrese : www.hella.com/mazda Frekvenčný rozsah : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Transmit Power : 20 dBm (maximum)
Finnish	Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. vakuuttaa, että radiolaitetyyppi LCA 3.5 - M on direktiivin 2014/53/EU mukainen. EU-vaatimustenmukaisuusvakuutuksen täysimittainen teksti on saatavilla seuraavassa internetosoitteessa : www.hella.com/mazda Taajuusalue : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Lähetysteho : 20 dBm (maksimi)
Swedish	Härmed försäkrar Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. att denna typ av radioutrustning LCA 3.5 - M överensst ämmer med direktiv 2014/53/EU. Den fullständiga texten till EU-försäkran om överensstämmelse finns på följande webbadress : www.hella.com/mazda Frekvensområde : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Transmit Effekt : 20 dBm (max)

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

United Kingdom	UK CA Company : Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. Street : Rixbecker Str.75 Location : 59552 Lippstadt Country : Germany Mazda Importer org : MMUK Company : Mazda Motors UK Limited Street : Victory Way, Crossways Business Park Zip : DA 2 6DT City : Dartford, Kent Country : UK Hereby, Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. declares that the radio equipment type LCA 3.5 - M is in compliance with Radio Equipment Regulations of the United Kingdom. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: www.hella.com/mazda Frequency range : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Transmission power : 20 dBm (maximum)
Moldova	Company : Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. Street : Rixbecker Str.75 Location : 59552 Lippstadt Country : Germany Prin prezenta, Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. declară că tipul de echipamente radio LCA 3.5 - M este în conformitate cu Reglementarea tehnică "Punerea la dispozitie pe piată a echipamentelor radio". Textul integral al declarației de conformitate este disponibil la următoarea adresă de Internet: www.hella.com/mazda Gama de frecvențe : 24.150 GHz ... 24.250 GHz Putere Transmit : 20 dBm (maxim)
Ukraine	Цим HELLA GmbH & Co. KGaA заявляє, що радіотехнічне обладнання типу BSD 3.0/LCA3.5-M відповідає Технічному регламенту радіотехнічного обладнання та Директиві 2014/53/ЄС. Повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний за адресою: www.hella.com/mazda Частотний діапазон: 24,05 – 24,25 ГГц Потужність передачі: 20 дБм (макс.) EIRP
State of Israel	Match approval number on behalf of the Ministry of Communications: 51-79244 It is prohibited to perform operations on the device that could alter the wireless features of the device, including software changes, replacement of an original antenna or adding the option of connecting to an external antenna, without obtaining approval from the Ministry of Communications, due to fear of employee interference.

OwnersManuals2.com

Malaysia	MCMC HIDF18000266	Singapore	Complies with IDA Standards DA103238
United Arab Emirates	TRA Registered No: ER40308/15 Dealer No: DA0053436/10	South Africa	TA-2015/367 ICASA APPROVE
Oman	Approval number: TRA/TA-R/2446/15 Applicant number: D090016		
Republic of Senegal	AGREE PAR ARTP SENEGAL Numéro d'agrément : 072321/AG/ER		
Vietnam	THACO-MAZDA C0022019 ICT THACO-AUTO C0900248 ICT		
INDONESIA	66157/R/SDPPI/2022 8032		
THAILAND	เพื่อหลีกเลี่ยงจากการสัมผัสสนามแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้า ควรอยู่ห่างจากเซ็นเซอร์ตรวจจับ ในระยะไม่ต่ำกว่า 20 เซนติเมตร เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของคณะกรรมการ กิจการกระจายเสียง กิจการโทรทัศน์ และกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติ(กสทช.) เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐาน ความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่ คณะกรรมการ กิจการกระจายเสียง กิจการโทรทัศน์ และกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติ(กสทช.) กำหนด *มีเฉพาะบางรุ่น		

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

Taiwan	低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 第十二條　經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。 第十四條　低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。 前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。 **Regulations for the low-power radio wave radiation devices** 12. Without permission, for the approved low-power radio-frequency devices, any companies, firms or users are not allowed to change the frequency band, increase the power or change the specifications and functionality of the original design. 14. The low power radio-frequency devices are not allowed to influence aircraft safety or interfere any legal communications. In case any interference phenomenon is detected, the use of this device should stop immediately, and it is allowed to continue to use until it is improved to be without interference any more. The term legal communications stated in last paragraph refers to the operating radio communication system which is in compliance with the Regulations for the Telecommunications. The low power radio-frequency devices should be able to tolerate the interferences from any legal communications or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation devices or equipment. **Regelungen für die Low-Power-Funkwellenstrahlung Geräten** 12. Ohne Erlaubnis, der zugelassenen Low-Power-HF-Geräten, werden alle Gesellschaften, Unternehmen oder Benutzer nicht erlaubt, um das Frequenzband zu ändern, die Leistung zu erhöhen oder ändern Sie die Spezifikationen und Funktionen des ursprünglichen Designs. 14. Die Low-Power-Radio-Frequenz-Geräte sollten keine Einfluss auf die Flugsicherheit und stören legale Kommunikation nicht. Bei Störungen Phänomen erkannt wird, die Verwendung dieses Gerätes sollten sofort aufhören, und es ist erlaubt, auch weiterhin benutzen, bis sie wird verbessert und keine Störungen mehr. Der Begriff legalen Kommunikation im letzten Absatz genannten bezieht sich auf den operativen Funkkommunikationssystem, die in Übereinstimmung mit den Regelungen für die Telekommunikation ist. Die Low-Power-Radio-Frequenz-Geräte sollten in der Lage sein, um die Störungen von jeder legalen Kommunikation oder industrielle, wissenschaftliche und medizinische Funkwellenstrahlung Geräte oder Ausrüstungen zu tolerieren.

OwnersManuals2.com

SENEGAL	AGREE PAR ARTP SENEGAL Numéro d'agrément : 072321/AG/ER
ISRAEL	Match approval number on behalf of the Ministry of Communications: 51-79244 It is prohibited to perform operations on the device that could alter the wireless features of the device, including software changes, replacement of an original antenna or adding the option of connecting to an external antenna, without obtaining approval from the Ministry of Communications, due to fear of employee interference.

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

▼ Radio System

Type A

Manufacturer: Address:
Clarion Co., Ltd.
7-2 Shintoshin,Chuo-ku,Saitama-shi,Saitama,Japan

Importer: Address:
Mazda Motor Logistics Europe NV
Sleeuwijkstraat 162, 2830 Willebroek,België

Albania	Më poshtë, Clarion Co., Ltd. deklaron se ky model **CAM201** ose CAM202 është në përputhje me kërkesat thelbësore dhe me dispozitat e tjera përkatëse të Direktivës 2014/53/EU. Teksti i plotë i deklaratës së përputhshmërisë të BE-së është në dispozicion në adresën e internetit në vijim: CAM201 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA01/index.html CAM202 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA02/index.html
Bulgarien	С настоящото Clarion Co., Ltd. декларира, че този модел CAM201 или CAM202 съответства на основните изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 2014/53/ЕС. Пълният текст на декларацията за съответствие с ЕС можете да намерите на следния интернет адрес: CAM201 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA01/index.html CAM202 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA02/index.html
Czech	Společnost Clarion Co., Ltd. tímto prohlašuje, že tento model **CAM201** nebo CAM202 splňuje základní požadavky a další příslušná ustanovení směrnice 2014/53/EU. Celý text prohlášení o shodě EU je k dispozici na následující webové adrese: CAM201 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA01/index.html CAM202 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA02/index.html
Danish	Clarion Co., Ltd. erklærer hermed, at nærværende model **CAM201** eller CAM202 er i overensstemmelse med de væsentlige krav og andre relevante bestemmelser i direktiv 2014/53/EU. Den fulde tekst i denne EU-overensstemmelseserklæring er tilgængelig på følgende Internetside: CAM201 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA01/index.html CAM202 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA02/index.html
German	Hiermit erklärt Clarion Co., Ltd., dass das Modell **CAM201** oder CAM202 der Richtlinie 2014/53/EU entspricht. Der vollständige Text der EU-Konformitätserklärung ist unter der folgenden Internetadresse verfügbar: CAM201 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA01/index.html CAM202 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA02/index.html
Greek	Με το παρόν, η Clarion Co., Ltd. δηλώνει ότι το μοντέλο **CAM201** ή CAM202 συμμορφώνεται με τις βασικές απαιτήσεις και άλλες σχετικές διατάξεις της Οδηγίας 2014/53/ΕΕ. Το πλήρες κείμενο της δήλωσης συμμόρφωσης ΕΕ είναι διαθέσιμο στη διαδίκτυο στη παρακάτω διεύθυνση: CAM201 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA01/index.html CAM202 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA02/index.html
English	Hereby, Clarion Co., Ltd. declares that this model CAM201 or CAM202 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: CAM201 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA01/index.html CAM202 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA02/index.html
Spanish	Por la presente, Clarion Co., Ltd. declara que este **modelo CAM201** como el modelo CAM202 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y otras disposiciones aplicables de la Directiva 2014/53/UE. El texto completo de la declaración de conformidad de la UE se encuentra disponible en la siguiente dirección de Internet: CAM201 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA01/index.html CAM202 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA02/index.html
Estonia	Clarion Co., Ltd. kinnitab, et see mudel **CAM201** või CAM202 vastab direktiivi 2014/53/EL põhinõuetele ja muudele asjakohastele sätetele. ELi vastavusdeklaratsiooni terviktekst leidub järgmisel Internetiaadressil: CAM201 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA01/index.html CAM202 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA02/index.html
Finnish	Clarion Co., Ltd. vakuuttaa täten, että tämä malli **CAM201** ja CAM202 täyttää direktiivin 2014/53/EU olennaiset vaatimukset ja muut asiaankuuluvat ehdot. EU-vaatimustenmukaisuusvakuutuksen kokonaisuudessaan seuraavasta osoitteesta: CAM201 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA01/index.html CAM202 http://www.clarion.com/ww/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA02/index.html

OwnersManuals2.com

French	Clarion Co., Ltd. déclare par la présente que ce modèle **CAMZ01** ou CAMZ02 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la Directive 2014/53/EU. Le texte intégral de la déclaration de conformité européenne est disponible à l'adresse internet suivante : CAMZ01 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ1/index.html CAMZ02 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ2/index.html
Croatian	Tvrtka Clarion Co., Ltd. ovim izjavljuje da je ovaj model **CAMZ01** ili CAMZ02 sukladan s osnovnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 2014/53/EU. Cjeloviti tekst izjave o sukladnosti dostupan je na sljedećoj internetskoj adresi: CAMZ01 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ1/index.html CAMZ02 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ2/index.html
Hungarian	A Clarion Co., Ltd. ezennel kijelenti, hogy a jelen **CAMZ01** és a CAMZ02 modell eleget tesz a 2014/53/EU irányelv alapvető követelményeinek és más idevágó rendelkezéseinek. Az EU-megfelelőségi nyilatkozat teljes szövege az alábbi weboldalon érhető el: CAMZ01 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ1/index.html CAMZ02 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ2/index.html
Icelandic	Clarion Co., Ltd. lýsir því hér með yfir að þessi gerð **CAMZ01** eða CAMZ02 samræmist helstu kröfum og öðrum viðeigandi ákvæðum tilskipunar 2014/53/ESB. Finna má ESB-samræmisyfirlýsinguna í heild sinni á eftirfarandi veffangi: CAMZ01 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ1/index.html CAMZ02 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ2/index.html
Italian	Clarion Co., Ltd. lvi dichiara che il presente modello **CAMZ01** o CAMZ02 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali e ad altre disposizioni della Direttiva 2014/53/UE. Il testo completo della Direttiva di conformità UE è disponibile al seguente indirizzo Web: CAMZ01 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ1/index.html CAMZ02 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ2/index.html
Lithuanian	„Clarion Co., Ltd." patvirtina, kad šis modelis **CAMZ01** arba CAMZ02 atitinka esminius Direktyvos 2014/53/ES reikalavimus ir kitas svarbias nuostatas. Visą ES atitikties deklaracijos tekstą galite rasti šiuo interneto adresu: CAMZ01 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ1/index.html CAMZ02 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ2/index.html
Latvin	Ar šo Clarion Co., Ltd. apliecina, ka modelis **CAMZ01** vai CAMZ02 atbilst Direktīvas 2014/53/ES pamatprasībām un citiem saistošiem noteikumiem. ES atbilstības deklarācijas pilns teksts ir pieejams šajā vietnē: CAMZ01 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ1/index.html CAMZ02 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ2/index.html
Maltese	Bil-preżenti, Clarion Co., Ltd. tiddikjara li dan il-mudell **CAMZ01** jew CAMZ02 huwa konformi mar-rekwiżiti essenzjali u ma' dispożizzjonijiet rilevanti oħrajn tad-Direttiva 2014/53/UE. It-test shih tad-dikjarazzjoni ta' konformità tal-UE huwa disponibbli fl-indirizz tal-internet li ġej: CAMZ01 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ1/index.html CAMZ02 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ2/index.html
Norway	Clarion Co., Ltd. erklærer herved at denne modellen, **CAMZ01** eller CAMZ02, er i samsvar med de grunnleggende kravene og de andre relevante vilkårene i Direktiv 2014/53/EU. Den fullstendige EU-samsvarserklæringen er tilgjengelig på følgende internett-adresse: CAMZ01 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ1/index.html CAMZ02 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ2/index.html
Dutch	Bij dezen verklaart Clarion Co., Ltd. dat dit model **CAMZ01** of CAMZ02 voldoet aan de essentiële vereisten en overige relevante bepalingen in Richtlijn 2014/53/EU. De volledige tekst van de EU-conformiteitsverklaring is beschikbaar op het volgende internetadres: CAMZ01 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ1/index.html CAMZ02 http://www.clarion.com/ae/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/1TDC-CAZ2/index.html

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

Polish	Firma Clarion Co., Ltd. deklaruje niniejszym, że ten model **CAMZ01** lub CAMZ02 jest zgodny z wymaganiami podstawowymi i innymi stosownymi wytycznymi dyrektywy 2014/53/EU. Pełny tekst deklaracji zgodności z wymaganiami Unii Europejskiej jest dostępny pod następującym adresem internetowym: CAMZ01 http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA01/index.html CAMZ02 http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA02/index.html
Portuguese	A Clarion Co., Ltd. declara por este meio que este modelo **CAMZ01** ou CAMZ02 está em conformidade com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições relevantes da Diretiva 2014/53/UE. O texto da declaração de conformidade da UE está disponível na íntegra no seguinte endereço da Internet: CAMZ01 http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA01/index.html CAMZ02 http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA02/index.html
Romanian	Prin prezenta, Clarion Co., Ltd. declară că acest model , **CAMZ01** sau CAMZ02, este în conformitate cu cerințele de bază și cu alte prevederi relevante ale Directivei UE 53/2014. Textul integral al declarației de conformitate UE este disponibil la adresa de internet următoare: CAMZ01 http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA01/index.html CAMZ02 http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA02/index.html
Serbia	Ovim Clarion Co., Ltd. izjavljuje da je ovaj model **CAMZ01** ili CAMZ02 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 2014/53/EU. Kompletan tekst Deklaracije Evropske unije o prilagođenosti dostupan je na sledećoj internet adresi: CAMZ01 http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA01/index.html CAMZ02 http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA02/index.html
Slovak	Spoločnosť Clarion Co., Ltd. týmto vyhlasuje, že tento model **CAMZ01** alebo CAMZ02 je v súlade so základnými požiadavkami a ďalšími príslušnými ustanoveniami smernice 2014/53/EÚ. Úplný text vyhlásenia o zhode EÚ je k dispozícii na tejto internetovej adrese: CAMZ01 http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA01/index.html CAMZ02 http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA02/index.html
Slovene	Družba Clarion Co., Ltd. izjavlja, da je ta model **CAMZ01** ali CAMZ02 skladen z bistvenimi zahtevami in drugimi ustreznimi določbami Direktive 2014/53/EU. Celotno besedilo izjave EU o skladnosti je na voljo na tem spletnem naslovu: CAMZ01 http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA01/index.html CAMZ02 http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA02/index.html
Swedish	Clarion Co., Ltd. intygar härmed att denna modell **CAMZ01** och CAMZ02 är överensstämmelse i enlighet med de obligatoriska kraven och övriga relevanta bestämmelser i direktivet 2014/53/EU. Denna EU-försäkran om överensstämmelse kan läsas i sin helhet på följande internetadress: CAMZ01 http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA01/index.html CAMZ02 http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA02/index.html
Turkey	Clarion Co.,Ltd işbu vesile ile bu modelin **CAMZ01** ya da CAMZ02 2014/53/EU Direktifinin temel gerekseinlerine ve diğer ilgili hükümlerine uyumlu olduğunu beyan etmektedir. EU uygunluk beyanının tam metni, aşağıdaki internet adresinde mevcuttur: CAMZ01 http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA01/index.html CAMZ02 http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/product-compliance/mazda/re-doc/170C-CA02/index.html

OwnersManuals2.com

Type B

Manufacture, Address: Öretici, Adres: Prodhimi, Adresa:
Panasonic Corporation
4261 Sonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-City Kanagawa-ken 224-8520, Japan

Importer, Address: İthalatçı, Adres: Importuesi, Adresa:
Mazda Motor Logistics Europe NV
Blaasveldstraat 162, 2830 Willebroek, België
Mazda Motor Poland sp.z.o.o.
ul. Postępu 14B, 02-676 Warsaw, Poland
Mazda Motor Czech, s.r.o.
Türkova 2319/5b, Chodov, 149 00 Prague 4, Czech Republic
Mazda Motor Slovakia, s.r.o.
LINDNER II, Galvaniho 7/B, Bratislava – Ružinov 821 04, Slovak Republic

Model. NO.
A: CG-TM16E0JTA,CG-TM16E1JTA,CG-TM16E2JTA,CG-TM16E3JTA,
CG-TM16E0TTA,CG-TM16E1TTA,CG-TM16E2TTA,CG-TM16E3TTA,
CG-TM16E0GXA,CG-TM16E2GXA
B: CGTM16E0JT,CG-TM16E0TT,CG-TM16E0GX,CG-TM16E1JT,CG-TM16E1TT

Albania	Me anë të këtij dokumenti, "Panasonic Corporation" deklaron se radiopajisja e tipit të listuar më lart është në përputhshmëri me Direktivën 2014/53/BE. Hyni në http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, klikoni "Declaration of Conformity (Deklarata e përputhshmërisë)", shkruani termin kyç në kutinë e kë rkimit të termave kyçe dhe mund të shkarkoni versionin e fundit të "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DEKLARATËN E PËRPUTHSHMËRISË)" (DoC). Termi kyç: A : CR-LM14F6JMA B: CQ-TM47E24M
Bulgarian	С настоящото Panasonic Corporation декларира, че радиооборудването от типа, посочен по-горе, е в съответствие с Директива 2014/53/ЕС. Отидете на http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, щракнете върху „Declaration of Conformity (Декларация за съответствие)", въведете ключовата дума, дадена по-долу, в полето за търсене по ключова дума и ще можете да изтеглите най-новата „ DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (ДЕКЛАРАЦИЯ ЗА СЪОТВЕТСТВИЕ)" (DoC). Ключова дума: A : CR-LM14F6JMA B: CQ-TM47E24M
Czech	Tímto společnost Panasonic Corporation prohlašuje, že výše uvedené rádiové zařízení typu CQ-TM16E0JTA,CQ-TM16E1JTA,CQ-TM16E2JTA,CQ-TM16E3JTA,CQ-TM16E0TTA,CQ-TM16E1TTA,CQ-TM16E2TTA,,CQ-TM16E3TTA,CQ-TM16E0GXA,CQ-TM16E2GXA je v souladu se směrnicí 14/53/EU. Když přejdete na stránky http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, klikněte na „Declaration of Conformity (Prohlášení o shodě)" a zadáte číslo modelu CR-LM14F6JMA do pole pro vyhledávání podle klíčového slova, budete si moci stáhnout nejnovější verzi „DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (PROHLÁŠENÍ O SHODĚ)" (DoC). Tímto společnost Panasonic Corporation prohlašuje, že výše uvedené rádiové zařízení typu CQ-TM16E0JT,CQ-TM16E1JT,CQ-TM16E0TT,CQ-TM16E0GX,CQ-TM16E1TT je v souladu se směrnicí 14/53/EU. Když přejdete na stránky http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, klikněte na „Declaration of Conformity (Prohlášení o shodě)" a zadáte číslo modelu CQ-TM47E24M do pole pro vyhledávání podle klíčového slova, budete si moci stáhnout nejnovější verzi „DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (PROHLÁŠENÍ O SHODĚ)" (DoC).
Danish	Hermed erklærer Panasonic Corporation, at radioudstyret af typen nævnt ovenfor er i overensstemmelse med direktiv 2014/53/EU. Du kan hente den seneste "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (OVERENSSTEMMELSESERKLÆRING)" (DoC) ved at besøge http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, klikke på "Declaration of Conformity (Overensstemmelseserklæring)" og indtaste nedenstående nøgleord i feltet til nøgleordssøgning. Nøgleord: A : CR-LM14F6JMA B: CQ-TM47E24M
German	Hiermit erklärt Panasonic Corporation, dass der obengenannte Funkanlagentyp der Richtlinie 2014/53/EU entspricht. Klicken Sie unter http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/ auf „Declaration of Conformity" (Konformitätserklärung), geben Sie das nachstehende Schlüsselwort in die Schlüsselwortsuche ein und laden Sie die aktuelle „DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (Konformitätserklärung)" (DoC) herunter. Schlüsselwort: A : CR-LM14F6JMA B: CQ-TM47E24M
Greek	Με την παρούσα, η Panasonic Corporation δηλώνει ότι ο ραδιοεξοπλισμός που παρατίθεται ανωτέρω συμμορφώνεται με την οδηγία 2014/53/ΕΕ. Επισκεφθείτε τον ιστότοπο http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, κάντε κλικ στο «Declaration of Conformity (Δήλωση συμμόρφωσης)», καταχωρίστε την παρακάτω λέξη-κλειδί στο πλαίσιο αναζήτησης λέξης-κλειδιού για να μπορέσετε να κατεβάσετε την πιο πρόσφατη «DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (ΔΗΛΩΣΗ ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΣΗΣ)» (DoC). Λέξη-κλειδί: A : CR-LM14F6JMA B: CQ-TM47E24M
English	Hereby, Panasonic Corporation declares that the radio equipment type Listed above is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. Access to http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/,click "Declaration of Conformity", enter the below Keyword into the keyword search box, you can download the latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC). Keyword: A : CR-LM14F6JMA B: CQ-TM47E24M
Spanish	Por la presente, Panasonic Corporation declara que el equipo de radio del tipo citado más arriba cumple con lo establecido en la Directiva 2014/53/UE. Acceda a http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, haga clic en "Declaration of Conformity (Declaración de conformidad)", introduzca la palabra clave indicada a continuación en el cuadro de búsqueda y podrá descargar la última "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (Declaración de conformidad)" (DoC). Palabra clave: A : CR-LM14F6JMA B: CQ-TM47E24M

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

[illegible]	Käesolevaga deklareerib Panasonic Corporation, et allnimetatud raadioseadme tüüp vastab direktiivi 2014/53/EL nõuetele Mege veebilehele http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, klõpsake valikul "Declaration of Conformity" (Vastavusdeklaratsioon) sisestage allloodud mudeli spetsiifilised otsinguväljale ning laadige alla dokument "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (Vastavusdeklaratsioon (DoC)) viimane versioon Mudel: A: CR-LM14F6JMA B: CQ-TM47E24M
[illegible]	Panasonic Corporation vakuuttaa, että edellä luetellut radiolaitetyypit täyttää direktiivissä 2014/53/EU asetetut vaatimukset Viimeisin "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (VAATIMUSTENMUKAISUUSVAKUUTUS)" (DoC) on ladattavissa verkkosivulta http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu valitsemalla kohta "Declaration of Conformity (vaatimustenmukaisuusvakuutus)" ja syöttämällä alla mainitun hakusanan hakukenttään Hakusana: A: CR-LM14F6JMA B: CQ-TM47E24M
[illegible]	Par la présente, Panasonic Corporation déclare que le type d'équipement radio, répertorié ci-dessus, est en conformité avec la directive 2014/53/UE Pour télécharger la dernière « DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DÉCLARATION DE CONFORMITÉ) » (DoC), rendez-vous sur http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, cliquez sur « Declaration of Conformity (Déclaration de conformité) », puis saisissez le mot clé ci-dessous dans le champ de recherche par mots clés Mot clé : A: CR-LM14F6JMA B: CQ-TM47E24M
[illegible]	Ovime Panasonic Corporation izjavljuje da je radijska oprema gore navedene vrste u skladu s Direktivom 2014/53/EU Pristupite http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, kliknite "Declaration of Conformity" (Izjava o sukladnosti), unesite ključnu riječ koja je navedena u nastavku u okvir za pretraživanje ključne riječi, i zatim preuzmite najnoviju "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (IZJAVU O SUKLADNOSTI)" (DoC) Ključna riječ: A: CR-LM14F6JMA B: CQ-TM47E24M
[illegible]	A Panasonic Corporation ezennel nyilatkozik arról, hogy a fent megjelölt típusú rádiós berendezés-teljesen megfelel a 2014/53/EU irányelv előírásainak Lépjen a http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/ oldalra, kattintson a "Declaration of Conformity" (Megfelelőségi nyilatkozat) elemre, és írja be az alábbi Kulcsszót a kulcsszó keresőmezőjébe, hogy letöltse a legújabb "DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY" (Megfelelőségi nyilatkozat) dokumentumot (doc fájl) Kulcsszó: A: CR-LM14F6JMA B: CQ-TM47E24M
[illegible]	Hér með lýsir Panasonic Corporation því yfir að ofangreindur útvarpsbúnaður er í samræmi við tilskipun 2014/53/ESB Farðu á http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, smelltu á "Declaration of Conformity" (Samræmisyfirlýsing), sláðu síðan tiltekið leitarorð inn í leitarreitinn og þá getur þú sótt nýjustu "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (SAMRÆMISYFIRLÝSINGUNA)" (DoC) Leitarorð: A: CR-LM14F6JMA B: CQ-TM47E24M
[illegible]	Il sottoscritto, Panasonic Corporation, dichiara che il tipo di apparecchiatura radio elencato sopra è conforme alla direttiva 2014/53/UE Accedere al sito http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, fare clic su "Declaration of Conformity (Dichiarazione di Conformità)" e inserire la parola chiave seguente nella casella di ricerca per parola chiave per poter scaricare la "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (Dichiarazione di Conformità)" (DoC) più recente Parola chiave: A: CR-LM14F6JMA B: CQ-TM47E24M
[illegible]	Šiuo dokumentu, Panasonic Corporation pareiškia, kad pirmiau pateiktas radijo ryšio įrangos tipas atitinka direktyvą 2014/53/ES Atverkite http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, spustelėkite "Declaration of Conformity" (Atitikties deklaracija) paieškos laukelyje įveskite toliau pateiktą raktažodį ir galėsite atsisiųsti naujausią "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (ATITIKTIES DEKLARACIJA) Raktažodis: A: CR-LM14F6JMA B: CQ-TM47E24M
[illegible]	Ar šo Panasonic Corporation deklarē, ka iepriekš minētā radioiekārta atbilst Direktīvas 2014/53/ES prasībām Dodieties uz vietni http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, noklikšķiniet uz sadaļas "Declaration of Conformity" (Atbilstības deklarācija) un atslēgvārdu meklēšanas laukā ievadiet turpmāk minēto atslēgvārdu, lai lejupielādētu jaunāko "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC) (ATBILSTĪBAS DEKLARĀCIJA)" Atslēgvārds: A: CR-LM14F6JMA B: CQ-TM47E24M
[illegible]	B'dan, Panasonic Corporation tiddikjara li t-tip ta' tagħmir tar-radju elenkat hawn fuq huwa konformi mad-Direttiva 2014/53/UE Aċċessa għal http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, ikklikkja "Declaration of Conformity (Dikjarazzjoni ta' Konformità)" daħħal il-Kelma Muftieħ hawn taħt fil-post tat-tfittxija tal-kliem muftieħ biex tniżżel id-"DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DIKJARAZZJONI TA' KONFORMITÀ)" l-aktar reċenti (DoC) Kelma Muftieħ: A: CR-LM14F6JMA B: CQ-TM47E24M
[illegible]	Panasonic Corporation erklærer herved at radioutstyret av typen nevnt ovenfor er i samsvar med direktiv 2014/53/EU Ved å gå til http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, klikke på "Declaration of Conformity (samsvarserklæring)", og taste inn nedenstående nøkkelord i nøk- kelord-søkefeltet, kan du laste ned den nyeste "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (SAMSVARSERKLÆRINGEN)" (DoC) Nøkkelord: A: CR-LM14F6JMA B: CQ-TM47E24M

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

Dutch	Hierbij verklaart ik, Panasonic Corporation, dat radioapparatuur van het hierboven vermelde type conform is met Richtlijn 2014/53/EU Ga naar http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, klik op "Declaration of Conformity (conformiteitsverklaring)", vul in het vak Keyword Search de onderstaande code in en dan kunt u de recentste "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (conformiteitsverklaring)" (DoC) downloaden Code: A CR-LM14F6JMA B CQ-TM47E24M
Polish	Niniejszym firma Panasonic oświadcza, że podany powyżej typ urządzeń radiowych jest zgodny z dyrektywą 2014/53/UE Wejdź na stronę http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, kliknij "Declaration of Conformity (Deklaracja zgodności)", w polu wyszukiwania słów kluczowych wprowadź podane poniżej słowo kluczowe i pobierz najnowszą wersję „DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DEKLARACJA ZGODNOŚCI)" (DoC) Słowo kluczowe: A CR-LM14F6JMA B CQ-TM47E24M
Portuguese	Pela presente, a Panasonic Corporation declara que o equipamento de rádio do tipo listado acima se encontra em conformidade com a Diretiva 2014/53/UE Aceda a http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, clique em "Declaration of Conformity (Declaração de Conformidade)", introduza a palavra-chave indicada abaixo na caixa de pesquisa de palavras-chave para descarregar a mais recente "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DECLARAÇÃO DE CONFORMIDADE)" (DoC) Palavra-chave: A CR-LM14F6JMA B CQ-TM47E24M
Romanian	Prin prezentul document, Panasonic Corporation declară că echipamentul radio de tipul enumerat mai sus este în conformitate cu Directiva 2014/53/UE Accesați http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, faceți clic pe „Declaration of Conformity (Declarația de conformitate)", introduceți cuvântul cheie de mai jos în caseta de căutare după cuvinte cheie și puteți să descărcați cea mai recentă „DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DECLARAȚIE DE CONFORMITATE)" (DoC) Cuvânt cheie: A CR-LM14F6JMA B CQ-TM47E24M
Serbian	Ovim kompanija Panasonic Corporation izjavljuje da je gorenavedena radio oprema tipa u skladu sa odredbama direktive 2014/53/EU Pristupite stranici http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, kliknite na „Declaration of Conformity (Izjava o usklađenosti)", dolenavedenu ključnu reč unesite u polje za pretragu ključnih reči i onda možete da preuzmete najnoviji dokument „DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (Izjava o usklađenosti)" (DoC) Ključna reč: A CR-LM14F6JMA B CQ-TM47E24M
Slovak	Spoločnosť Panasonic Corporation týmto vyhlasuje, že rádiové zariadenie vyššie uvedeného typu je v súlade so smernicou 2014/53/EÚ Na lokalite http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/ choďte kliknúť na možnosť „Declaration of Conformity (Vyhlásenie o zhode)", zadať nižšie uvedené kľúčové slovo do vyhľadávacieho poľa a prevziať si najnovšie „DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (VYHLÁSENIE O ZHODE)" (DoC) Kľúčové slovo: A CR-LM14F6JMA B CQ-TM47E24M
Slovene	Panasonic Corporation potrjuje, da je zgoraj navedeni tip radijske opreme skladen z Direktivo 2014/53/EU Obiščite http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, kliknite "Declaration of Conformity (Izjava o skladnosti)", v okence za iskanje vnesite spodnjo ključno besedo in prenesite najnovejšo izjavo o skladnosti "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (IZJAVA O SKLADNOSTI)" (DoC) Ključna beseda: A CR-LM14F6JMA B CQ-TM47E24M
Swedish	Härmed intygar Panasonic Corporation att radioutrustningen ovan uppfyller direktiv 2014/53/EU Gå till http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/, klicka på "Declaration of Conformity (försäkran om överensstämmelse)", och ange nyckelordet nedan i sö- krutan. Sedan kan du ladda ned den senaste "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (försäkran om överensstämmelse)" (DoC) Nyckelord: A CR-LM14F6JMA B CQ-TM47E24M
Turkey	Işbu belge ile Panasonic Corporation yukarıda listelenen radyo ekipmanın tipinin 2014/53/AB Direktifine uygun olduğunu beyan ederiz http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/ adresinden "Declaration of Conformity (Uygunluk beyanı)" başlığına tıklad ktan sonra, aşağı daki anahtar kelimeyi arama kutusuna girerek en son "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (UYGUNLUK BEYANI)"ni (DoC) indirebilirsiniz Anahtar kelime: A CR-LM14F6JMA B CQ-TM47E24M

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

No.355.2017(Ukraine)

Виробники:
назву компанії: Panasonic Automotive Systems Co., Ltd.
адресу: 4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken, 224-8520, Japan

Імпортер:
назву компанії: Авто Інтернаціональ
адресу: 04073, 22-а Stepana Bandery Ave., Kiev, Ukraine

справжнім Panasonic Corporation заявляє, що тип радіообладнання [*]
відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання;
повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою
адресою:
https://service.panasonic.ua/
(розділ «Технічне регулювання»)
[*] CQ-TM16E0GXA、CQ-TM18E0GX

[English]	Hereby, Panasonic Corporation declares that the radio equipment type【CQ-TM16E0JTA,CQ-TM16E0TTA,CQ-TM16E1JTA,CQ-TM16E1TTA,CQ-TM18E0JT,CQ-TM18E0TT,CQ-TM18E1JT,CQ-TM18E1TT】is in compliance with The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://www.pto.panasonic.eu/

UK CA

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Audio System

Audio Set

български [Bulgarian]	С настоящото Visteon Corporation декларира, че този тип радиосъоръжение MAZ е в съответствие с Директива 2014/53/ЕС. Цялостният текст на ЕС декларацията за съответствие може да се намери на следния интернет адрес: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Čeština [Czech]	Tímto Visteon Corporation prohlašuje, že typ radiového zařízení MAZ je v souladu se směrnicí 2014/53/EU. Úplné znění EU prohlášení o shodě je k dispozici na této internetové adrese: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Dansk [Danish]	Hermed erklærer Visteon Corporation, at radioudstyrstypen MAZ er i overensstemmelse med direktiv 2014/53/EU. EU-overensstemmelseserklæringens fulde tekst kan findes på følgende internetadresse: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erklärt Visteon Corporation, dass der Funkanlagentyp MAZ der Richtlinie 2014/53/EU entspricht. Der vollständige Text der EU-Konformitätserklärung ist unter der folgenden Internetadresse verfügbar: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Eesti [Estonian]	Käesolevaga deklareerib Visteon Corporation, et käesolev raadioseadme tüup MAZ vastab direktiivi 2014/53/EL nouetele. ELi vastavusdeklaratsiooni taielik tekst on kättesaadav järgmisel internetiaadressil: https://www.visteondocs.com/
English	Hereby, Visteon Corporation declares that the radio equipment type MAZ is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Espanol [Spanish]	Por la presente, Visteon Corporation declara que el tipo de equipo radioeléctrico MAZ es conforme con la Directiva 2014/53/UE. El texto completo de la declaración UE de conformidad está disponible en la dirección Internet siguiente: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Ελληνική [Greek]	Με την παρούσα ο/η Visteon Corporation, δηλώνει ότι ο ραδιοεξοπλισμός MAZ πληροί την οδηγία 2014/53/ΕΕ. Το πλήρες κείμενο της δήλωσης συμμόρφωσης ΕΕ διατίθεται στην ακόλουθη ιστοσελίδα στο διαδίκτυο: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Francais [French]	Le soussigne, Visteon Corporation, declare que l'equipement radioelectrique du type MAZ est conforme a la directive 2014/53/UE. Le texte complet de la declaration UE de conformite est disponible a l'adresse internet suivante: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Hrvatski [Croatian]	Visteon Corporation ovime izjavljuje da je radijska oprema tipa MAZ u skladu s Direktivom 2014/53/EU. Cjeloviti tekst EU izjave o sukladnosti dostupan je na sljedećoj internetskoj adresi: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Italiano [Italian]	Il fabbricante, Visteon Corporation, dichiara che il tipo di apparecchiatura radio MAZ e conforme alla direttiva 2014/53/UE. Il testo completo della dichiarazione di conformita UE e disponibile al seguente indirizzo Internet: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Latviešu valoda [Latvian]	Ar šo Visteon Corporation deklarē, ka radioiekārta MAZ atbilst Direktīvai 2014/53/ES. Pilns ES atbilstības deklarācijas teksts ir pieejams šādā interneta vietnē: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Lietuvių kalba [Lithuanian]	Aš, Visteon Corporation, patvirtinu, kad radijo įrenginių tipas MAZ atitinka Direktyvą 2014/53/ES. Visas ES atitikties deklaracijos tekstas prieinamas šiuo interneto adresu: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaar ik, Visteon Corporation, dat het type radioapparatuur MAZ conform is met Richtlijn 2014/53/EU. De volledige tekst van de EU-conformiteitsverklaring kan worden geraadpleegd op het volgende internetadres: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Malti [Maltese]	B'dan, Visteon Corporation, niddikjara li dan it-tip ta' tagħmir tar-radju MAZ huwa konformi mad-Direttiva 2014/53/UE. It-test kollu tad-dikjarazzjoni ta' konformità tal-UE huwa disponibbli f'dan l-indirizz tal-Internet li ġej: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Magyar [Hungarian]	Visteon Corporation igazolja, hogy a MAZ típusu rádióberendezés megfelel a 2014/53/EU irányelvnek. Az EU-megfelelőségi nyilatkozat teljes szövege elérhető a következő internetes címen: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Polski [Polish]	Visteon Corporation niniejszym oświadcza, że typ urządzenia radiowego MAZ jest zgodny z dyrektywą 2014/53/UE. Pełny tekst deklaracji zgodności UE jest dostępny pod następującym adresem internetowym: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Portugues [Portuguese]	O(a) abaixo assinado(a) Visteon Corporation declara que o presente tipo de equipamento de radio MAZ esta em conformidade com a Diretiva 2014/53/UE. O texto integral da declaracao de conformidade esta disponivel no seguinte endereco de Internet: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Română [Romanian]	Prin prezenta, Visteon Corporation declară că tipul de echipamente radio MAZ este în conformitate cu Directiva 2014/53/UE. Textul integral al declarației UE de conformitate este disponibil la următoarea adresă internet: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Slovenščina [Slovenian]	Visteon Corporation potrjuje, da je tip radijske opreme MAZ skladen z Direktivo 2014/53/EU. Celotno besedilo izjave EU o skladnosti je na voljo na naslednjem spletnem naslovu: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Slovenčina [Slovak]	Visteon Corporation týmto vyhlasuje, že rádiové zariadenie typu MAZ je v súlade so smernicou 2014/53/EU. Úplné EU vyhlásenie o zhode je k dispozícii na tejto internetovej adrese: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Suomi [Finnish]	Visteon Corporation vakuuttaa, että radiolaitetyyppi MAZ on direktiivin 2014/53/EU mukainen. EU-vaatimustenmukaisuutavakuutuksen täysimittainen teksti on saatavilla seuraavassa internetosoitteessa: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed försäkrar Visteon Corporation att denna typ av radioutrustning MAZ överensstämmer med direktiv 2014/53/EU. Den fullständiga texten till EU-försäkran om överensstämmelse finns på följande webbadress: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Íslenska [Icelandic]	Hér með Visteon Corporation lýsir yfir að tegund þráðlausan búnað MAZ er í samræmi við tilskipun 2014/53/ESB. The fullur texti af ESB-samræmisyfirlýsingu er í boði á eftirfarandi veffangi: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Norsk [Norwegian]	Herved Visteon Corporation erklærer at radioutstyr type MAZ er i samsvar med direktiv 2014/53/EU. Den fullstendige teksten i EU-samsvarserklæringen er tilgjengelig på følgende internettadresse: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Türkçe [Turkish]	Burada, Visteon Corporation radyo ekipmanı türünün MAZ 2014/53/EU direktiflerine uyumlu olduğunu beyan eder. Uyumlu beyanının tam metni beirtilen internet sitesinde mevcuttur: https://www.visteondocs.com/

Frequency Range	2400-2483.5MHz
Output Power	< 4dBm

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

Model: MAZ
Brand: Visteon
Manufacturer: Visteon Corporation
Address: One Village Center,Van Buren Township
48111-5711 Michigan
United States of America

CE MARK:

Israel מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא 51-55444
אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר ולא
לעשות בו כל שינוי סכני אחר

Jordan The manufacturer: Visteon Corporation
Equipment type:MAZ
TRC's type approval certificate number: T/4/11/11/4973

Jamaica This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – "MAZ."

Singapore
Complies with
IDA Standards
N3714-20

South Africa
TA-2015/1841
ICASA
APPROVED

Algeria ' Agrée par l'ARPT' 'Référence d'agrément '

Morocco
AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
N° D'AGREMENT ..... MR 8114 ANRT 2018
DELIVRE LE 03/05/2018

Serbia

UAE
TRA
Registered No:
ER39297/15
Dealer No:
DA0099812/12

Moldova
M005 21
1024

Botswana
BOCRA
REGISTERED No :
BOCRA/TA/2020/2056

Taiwan
Product Name: Bluetooth Telematic Device
Model Name: MAZ
Applicant Name: Visteon Corporation

警語
低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法
第十二條經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機,未經許可,公司,商號或 使用者均不得擅自變更頻率,加大功
率或變更原設計之特性及功能。
第十四條低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法 通信;經發現有干擾現象時,應立即停
用,並改善至無干擾時方得繼續 使用。
前項合法通信,指 電信法規定作業之無線電通信低功率射頻電機消 忍受合法通信或工業,科學及醫療用
電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Oman
OMAN - TRA
D100428
TRA/TA-R/2950/15

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

Ukraine

Модель: **MAZ**
Діапазон частот: **2400 - 2483.5 МГц**
Максимальна потужність вихідної потужності (Bluetooth): **4 дБм**

Дана Visteon Corporation заявляє, що тип радіообладнання (позначення типу радіообладнання) відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання;
Повний текст декларації про відповідність можна знайти на сайті за адресою: https://www.visteondocs.com/.

Paraguay

Distributor: Garden MPY S.A.
Address: Republica Argentina y Facundo Machain. Asuncion. PARAGUAY

Indonesia

78030/SOPPI/2021
8032

Brazil

ANATEL

MODEL:MAZ
02234-15-06215
(01)7899730500934

ANATEL web link:
http://www.anatel.gov.br/dotacionvisivel/

"Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário."

Thailand

กสทช.

เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้ ได้รับยกเว้น ไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาตให้มี ใช้ซึ่งเครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม หรือตั้งสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมตามประกาศ กสทช. เรื่อง เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม และสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมที่ได้รับยกเว้นไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาต วิทยุคมนาคม ตามพระราชบัญญัติวิทยุคมนาคม พ.ศ. 2498

กสทช. โทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติ
กำกับดูแลเพื่อประชาชน
Call Center 1200 (Free!!)

Mozambique

INCM - 15715
Model - MAZ
Manufacturer - Visteon Corporation

Nigeria

Connection and use of this communication equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communication Commission

Philippines

NTC
Type Accepted
No. ESD 130/13DC

FCC ID: NT8MBLUEC09

FCC

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Caution:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

UK

Hereby, **Visteon Corporation** declares that the radio equipment type **MAZ** is in compliance with the Radio Equipment Regulations of the United Kingdom. The full text of the Declaration of Conformity is available at the following internet address: www.visteondocs.com

a.Frequency band : 2.4 GHz
b.Maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates.
Max output power = 4 dBm

UK
CA

OwnersManuals2.com

Mazda Connect (Type A)

Without Wireless CarPlay

български [Bulgarian]	С настоящото Visteon Corporation декларира, че този тип радиосъоръжение MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU е в съответствие с Директива 2014/53/ЕС. Цялостният текст на ЕС декларацията за съответствие може да се намери на следния интернет адрес: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Čeština [Czech]	Tímto Visteon Corporation prohlašuje, že typ rádiového zařízení MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU je v souladu se směrnicí 2014/53/EU. Úplné znění EU prohlášení o shodě je k dispozici na této internetové adrese: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Dansk [Danish]	Hermed erklærer Visteon Corporation, at radioudstyrstypen MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU er i overensstemmelse med direktiv 2014/53/EU. EU-overensstemmelseserklæringens fulde tekst kan findes på følgende internetadresse: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erklärt Visteon Corporation, dass der Funkanlagentyp MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU der Richtlinie 2014/53/EU entspricht. Der vollständige Text der EU-Konformitätserklärung ist unter der folgenden Internetadresse verfügbar: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Eesti [Estonian]	Käesolevaga deklareerib Visteon Corporation, et raadioseadme tüüp MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU vastab direktiivi 2014/53/EL nõuetele. ELi vastavusdeklaratsiooni täielik tekst on kättesaadav järgmisel internetiaadressil: https://www.visteondocs.com/
English	Hereby, Visteon Corporation declares that the radio equipment type MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Español [Spanish]	Por la presente, Visteon Corporation declara que el tipo de equipo radioeléctrico MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU es conforme con la Directiva 2014/53/UE. El texto completo de la declaración UE de conformidad está disponible en la dirección Internet siguiente: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Ελληνική [Greek]	Με την παρούσα ο/η Visteon Corporation, δηλώνει ότι ο ραδιοεξοπλισμός MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU πληροί την οδηγία 2014/53/ΕΕ. Το πλήρες κείμενο της δήλωσης συμμόρφωσης ΕΕ διατίθεται στην ακόλουθη ιστοσελίδα στο διαδίκτυο: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Francais [French]	Le soussigné, Visteon Corporation, déclare que l'équipement radioélectrique du type MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU est conforme à la directive 2014/53/UE. Le texte complet de la déclaration UE de conformité est disponible à l'adresse Internet suivante: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Hrvatski [Croatian]	Visteon Corporation ovime izjavljuje da je radijska oprema tipa MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU u skladu s Direktivom 2014/53/EU. Cjeloviti tekst EU izjave o sukladnosti dostupan je na sljedećoj internetskoj adresi: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Italiano [Italian]	Il fabbricante, Visteon Corporation, dichiara che il tipo di apparecchiatura radio MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU è conforme alla direttiva 2014/53/UE. Il testo completo della dichiarazione di conformità UE è disponibile al seguente indirizzo Internet: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Latviešu valoda [Latvian]	Ar šo Visteon Corporation deklarē, ka radioiekārta MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU atbilst Direktīvai 2014/53/ES. Pilns ES atbilstības deklarācijas teksts ir pieejams šādā interneta vietnē: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Lietuvių kalba [Lithuanian]	Aš, Visteon Corporation, patvirtinu, kad radijo įrenginių tipas MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU atitinka Direktyvą 2014/53/ES. Visas ES atitikties deklaracijos tekstas prieinamas šiuo interneto adresu: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaar ik Visteon Corporation, dat het type radioapparatuur MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU conform is met Richtlijn 2014/53/EU. De volledige tekst van de EU-conformiteitsverklaring kan worden geraadpleegd op het volgende internetadres: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Malti [Maltese]	B'dan, Visteon Corporation, niddikjara li dan it-tip ta' tagħmir tar-radju MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU huwa konformi mad-Direttiva 2014/53/UE. It-test kollu tad-dikjarazzjoni ta' konformità tal-UE huwa disponibbli f'dan l-indirizz tal-Internet li ġej: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Magyar [Hungarian]	Visteon Corporation igazolja, hogy a MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU típusú rádióberendezés megfelel a 2014/53/EU irányelvnek. Az EU-megfelelőségi nyilatkozat teljes szövege elérhető a következő internetes címen: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Polski [Polish]	Visteon Corporation niniejszym oświadcza, że typ urządzenia radiowego MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU jest zgodny z dyrektywą 2014/53/UE. Pełny tekst deklaracji zgodności UE jest dostępny pod następującym adresem internetowym: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Portugues [Portuguese]	O(a) abaixo assinado(a) Visteon Corporation declara que o presente tipo de equipamento de radio MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU esta em conformidade com a Diretiva 2014/53/UE. O texto integral da declaracao de conformidade esta disponível no seguinte endereco de Internet: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Română [Romanian]	Prin prezenta, Visteon Corporation declară că tipul de echipamente radio MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU este în conformitate cu Directiva 2014/53/UE. Textul integral al declarației UE de conformitate este disponibil la următoarea adresă internet: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Slovenščina [Slovenian]	Visteon Corporation potrjuje, da je tip radijske opreme MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU skladen z Direktivo 2014/53/EU. Celotno besedilo izjave EU o skladnosti je na voljo na naslednjem spletnem naslovu: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Slovenčina [Slovak]	Visteon Corporation týmto vyhlasuje, že rádiové zariadenie typu MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU je v súlade so smernicou 2014/53/EÚ. Úplné EÚ vyhlásenie o zhode je k dispozícii na tejto internetovej adrese: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Suomi [Finnish]	Visteon Corporation vakuuttaa, että radiolaitetyyppi MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU on direktiivin 2014/53/EU mukainen. EU-vaatimustenmukaisuusvakuutuksen täysimittainen teksti on saatavilla seuraavassa internetosoitteessa: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed försäkrar Visteon Corporation att denna typ av radioutrustning MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU överensstämmer med direktiv 2014/53/EU. Den fullständiga texten till EU-försäkran om överensstämmelse finns på följande webbadress: https://www.visteondocs.com/

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

Íslenska [Icelandic]	Hér með **Visteon Corporation** lýsir yfir að tegund þráðlausan búnað **MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU** er í samræmi við tilskipun 2014/53/ESB. The fullur texti af ESB samræmisyfirlýsingu er í boði á eftirfarandi veffangi: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Norsk [Norwegian]	Herved Visteon Corporation erklærer at radioutstyr type MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU er i samsvar med direktiv 2014/53/EU. Den fullstendige teksten i EU-samsvarserklæringen er tilgjengelig på følgende internettadresse: https://www.visteondocs.com/
Türkçe [Turkish]	Burada, **Visteon Corporation** radyo ekipmanı türünün **MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU** 2014/53/EU direktifleriyle uyumlu olduğunu beyan eder. Uyumlu beyannin tam metni belirtilen internet sitesinde mevcuttur: https://www.visteondocs.com/

Frequency Range	2400-2483.5MHz	
Output Power	Bluetooth < 4dBm	
	WLAN < 30dBm	

UK

Hereby, **Visteon Corporation** declares that the radio equipment type **MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU** is in compliance with the Radio Equipment Regulations of the United Kingdom. The full text of the Declaration of Conformity is available at the following internet address: www.visteondocs.com

a.Frequency band : 2.4 GHz
b.Maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates.
Max output power = 30 mW

UK
CA

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

Model: MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU
Brand: Visteon
Manufacturer: Visteon Corporation
Address: One Village Center Van Buren Township
48111-5711 Michigan
United States of America

CE MARK

CE

Botswana

BOCRA
REGISTERED No :
BOCRA/TA/2020/2057

Indonesia

78026/SDPPI/2021
8032

Israel

51-79398 מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא
אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של הבכשיר אלא
לעשות כן כל שינוי טכני אחר

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – "MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU".
This product contains a Type Approved Module by Jamaica: SMA – "MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU".

Jordan

The manufacturer: Visteon Corporation
Equipment type: MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU
TRC's type approval certificate number: T/4/11/11/3654

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 830 ANRT 2013
Date d'agrément : 06/08/2013

Mozambique

INCM - 23EBP16
Model - MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU
Manufacturer - Visteon Corporation

Nigeria

Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission

Philippines

NTC
Type Accepted
No.: ESD-1307587C

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

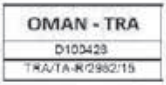
Algeria

'Agréé par l'ARPT' and 'Référence d'agrément '.

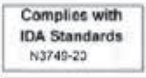
Thailand



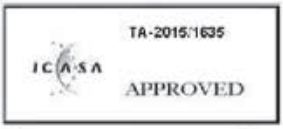
Oman



Singapore



South Africa



UAE



Ukraine

Модель: **MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU**
Діапазон частот: **2400 - 2483.5 МГц**
Максимальна потужність вихідної потужності (Bluetooth): **4 дБм**
Максимальна потужність вихідної потужності (WLAN): **30 дБм**

Дана Visteon Corporation заявляє, що тип радіообладнання (позначення типу радіообладнання) відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання.
Повний текст декларації про відповідність можна знайти на сайті за адресою: https://www.visteondocs.com/.

Paraguay

Distributor: Garden MPY S.A.
Address: Republica Argentina y Facundo Machain, Asuncion, PARAGUAY

OwnersManuals2.com

Taiwan



Product Name: Automotive Electronics Infotainment Head Unit
Certification Name: MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU
Certificate Holder: Visteon Corperation

警語
低功率電波輻射電機管理辦法
第十二條經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機,非經許可,公司,商號或 使用者均不得擅自變更頻率,加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。
第十四條低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航影響安全及干擾合法 通信,經發現有干擾現象時,應立即停用,並改善至無干擾時方得繼續 使用。
前項合法通信,指一電信法規定作業之無線電通信低功率射頻電機須 忍受合法通信或工業,科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾.

Brazil



ANATEL web link:
http://www.anatel.gov.br/institucional/

"Este equipamento opera em caracter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caracter primário"

FCC ID: NT862932
FCC
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
Caution:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

With Wireless CarPlay

Model Name: MAZDA_68_CMU
Type of product: Automotive Electronics Infotainment Head Unit
Brand Name: Visteon Corporation
One Village center drive, Van Buren Township
48111-5711 Michigan
United States of America

CE MARK:

CE

Simplified EU DoC:

Hereby, Visteon Corporation declares that the radio equipment type MAZDA_68_CMU is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: http://www.visteondocs.com/

Български [Bulgarian]	С това фирмата **Visteon Corporation** декларира, че частта **MAZDA_68_CMU** е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и други приложими разпоредби на директивата 2014/53/ЕС.
Česky [Czech]	**Visteon Corporation** tímto prohlašuje, že tento **MAZDA_68_CMU** je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 2014/53/EU.
Dansk [Danish]	Undertegnede **Visteon Corporation** erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr **MAZDA_68_CMU** overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 2014/53/EU.
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erklärt **Visteon Corporation**, dass sich das Gerät **MAZDA_68_CMU** in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 2014/53/EU befindet.
Eesti [Estonian]	Käesolevaga kinnitab **Visteon Corporation** seadme **MAZDA_68_CMU** vastavust direktiivi 2014/53/EL põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
English	Hereby, **Visteon Corporation**, declares that this **MAZDA_68_CMU** is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU.
Español [Spanish]	Por medio de la presente **Visteon Corporation** declara que el **MAZDA_68_CMU** cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 2014/53/UE.
Ελληνική [Greek]	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ **Visteon Corporation** ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ **MAZDA_68_CMU** ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 2014/53/ΕΚ.
Français [French]	Par la présente **Visteon Corporation** déclare que l'appareil **MAZDA_68_CMU** est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 2014/53/UE.

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

Italiano [Italian]	Con la presente **Visteon Corporation** dichiara che questo **MAZDA_68_CMU** è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 2014/53/UE.
Latviski [Latvian]	Ar šo **Visteon Corporation** deklarē, ka **MAZDA_68_CMU** atbilst Direktīvas 2014/53/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių [Lithuanian]	Šiuo **Visteon Corporation** deklaruoja, kad šis **MAZDA_68_CMU** atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 2014/53/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart **Visteon Corporation** dat het toestel **MAZDA_68_CMU** in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 2014/53/EG.
Malti [Maltese]	Hawnhekk, **Visteon Corporation**, jiddikjara li dan **MAZDA_68_CMU** jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Direttiva 2014/53/UE.
Magyar [Hungarian]	Alulírott, **Visteon Corporation** nyilatkozom, hogy a **MAZDA_68_CMU** megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 2014/53/EU irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Polski [Polish]	Niniejszym **Visteon Corporation** oświadcza, że **MAZDA_68_CMU** jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 2014/53/UE.
Português [Portuguese]	**Visteon Corporation** declara que este **MAZDA_68_CMU** está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 2014/53/UE.
Slovensko [Slovenian]	**Visteon Corporation** izjavlja, da je ta **MAZDA_68_CMU** v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 2014/53/ES.
Slovensky [Slovak]	**Visteon Corporation** týmto vyhlasuje, že **MAZDA_68_CMU** spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 2014/53/EÚ.
Suomi [Finnish]	**Visteon Corporation** vakuuttaa täten että **MAZDA_68_CMU** tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 2014/53/EU oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed intygar **Visteon Corporation** att denna **MAZDA_68_CMU** står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 2014/53/EU.
Íslenska [Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir **Visteon Corporation** yfir því að **MAZDA_68_CMU** er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 2014/53/EU.
Norsk [Norwegian]	**Visteon Corporation** erklærer herved at utstyret **MAZDA_68_CMU** er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 2014/53/EF.
Crnogorski jezik, Црногорски језик [Montenegrin]	Ovim, **Visteon Corporation**, izjavljuje da ovaj **MAZDA_68_CMU** je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 2014/53/UE.

Frequency Range	2400-2483.5MHz
Output Power	Bluetooth <4dBm
	WLAN <33dBm

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

FCC

FCC ID: NT8-MAZDA68CMU

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Caution:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.





Indonesia

68111/R/SDPPI/2021
8032

Israel

51-85670 מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא
אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר ו/או
לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – "MAZDA_68_CMU".
This product contains a Type Approved Module by Jamaica: SMA – "MAZDA_68_CMU".

Jordan

The manufacturer: Visteon Corporation
Equipment type: MAZDA_68_CMU
TRC's type approval certificate number: T/4/11/11/3277

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 22740 ANRT 2020
Date d'agrément : 2020/04/06

Nigeria

Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission

OwnersManuals2.com

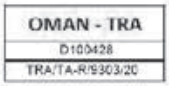
Algeria

"Agréé par l'ARPT" and "Référence d'agrément ".

Thailand



Oman



Singapore



South Africa



UAE



Ukraine

Модель: MAZDA_68_CMU
Діапазон частот: 2400 - 2483.5 МГц
Максимальна потужність вихідної потужності (Bluetooth): 4 дБм
Максимальна потужність вихідної потужності (WLAN): 33 дБм

Дана Visteon Corporation заявляє, що тип радіообладнання (позначення типу радіообладнання) відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання.
Повний текст декларації про відповідність можна знайти на сайті за адресою:
https://www.visteondocs.com/.

Paraguay

Distributor: Garden MPY S.A.
Address: Republica Argentina y Facundo Machain, Asuncion, PARAGUAY

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

Taiwan



Product Name: Automotive Electronics Infotainment Head Unit
Certification Name: MAZDA_68_CMU
Certificate Holder: Visteon Corporation

警語
低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法
第十二條經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機,非經許可,公司,商號或 使用者均不得擅自變更頻率,加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。
第十四條低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法 通信;經發現有干擾現象時,應立即停用,並改善至無干擾時方得繼續 使用。
前項合法通信,指一電信法規定作業之無線電通信低功率射頻電機需 忍受合法通信或工業,科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Brazil



ANATEL web link:
http://www.anatel.gov.br/institucional/

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados

UK

Hereby, **Visteon Corporation** declares that the radio equipment type **MAZDA_68_CMU** is in compliance with the Radio Equipment Regulations of the United Kingdom. The full text of the Declaration of Conformity is available at the following internet address: www.visteondocs.com

a.Frequency band : 2.4 GHz
b.Maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates.
Max output power = 32.2 mW

UK CA

OwnersManuals2.com

▼ Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS)/Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)/Smart Brake Support (SBS)

Transmitter:	Model: DNMWR006 Operation frequency: 76.5 GHz Maximum output power: 6.31 W or less
Manufacturer:	DENSO CORPORATION
Address:	1-1, Showa-cho, Kariya-shi, Aichi-ken, 448-8661 Japan

CE The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC) is available at the following address:
https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that the radio equipment type is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa, että radiolaitetyyppi on direktiivin 2014/53/EU mukainen. EU-vaatimustenmukaisuusvakuutuksen täysimittainen teksti on saatavilla seuraavassa internetosoitteessa: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
Hierbij verklaar ik, DENSO CORPORATION, dat het type radioapparatuur conform is met Richtlijn 2014/53/EU. De volledige tekst van de EU-conformiteitsverklaring kan worden geraadpleegd op het volgende internetadres: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
Le soussigné, DENSO CORPORATION, déclare que l'équipement radioélectrique du type est conforme à la directive 2014/53/UE. Le texte complet de la déclaration UE de conformité est disponible à l'adresse internet suivante: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
Härmed försäkrar DENSO CORPORATION att denna typ av radioutrustning överensstämmer med direktiv 2014/53/EU. Den fullständiga texten till EU-försäkran om överensstämmelse finns på följande webbadress: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
Hermed erklærer DENSO CORPORATION, at radioudstyrstypen er i overensstemmelse med direktiv 2014/53/EU. EU-overensstemmelseserklæringens fulde tekst kan findes på følgende internetadresse: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass der Funkanlagentyp der Richtlinie 2014/53/EU entspricht. Der vollständige Text der EU-Konformitätserklärung ist unter der folgenden Internetadresse verfügbar: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
Με την παρούσα ο/η DENSO CORPORATION, δηλώνει ότι ο ραδιοεξοπλισμός πληροί την οδηγία 2014/53/ΕΕ. Το πλήρες κείμενο της δήλωσης συμμόρφωσης ΕΕ διατίθεται στην ακόλουθη ιστοσελίδα στο διαδίκτυο: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
Il fabbricante, DENSO CORPORATION, dichiara che il tipo di apparecchiatura radio è conforme alla direttiva 2014/53/UE. Il testo completo della dichiarazione di conformità UE è disponibile al seguente indirizzo Internet: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
Por la presente, DENSO CORPORATION declara que el tipo de equipo radioeléctrico es conforme con la Directiva 2014/53/UE. El texto completo de la declaración UE de conformidad está disponible en la dirección Internet siguiente: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
O(a) abaixo assinado(a) DENSO CORPORATION declara que o presente tipo de equipamento de rádio está em conformidade com a Diretiva 2014/53/UE. O texto integral da declaração de conformidade está disponível no seguinte endereço de Internet: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
B'dan, DENSO CORPORATION, niddikjara li dan it-tip ta' tagħmir tar-radju huwa konformi mad-Direttiva 2014/53/UE. It-test kollu tad-dikjarazzjoni ta' konformità tal-UE huwa disponibbli f'dan l-indirizz tal-Internet li ġej: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
Käesolevaga deklareerib DENSO CORPORATION, et käesolev raadioseadme tüüp vastab direktiivi 2014/53/EL nõuetele. ELi vastavusdeklaratsiooni täielik tekst on kättesaadav järgmisel internetiaadressil: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
DENSO CORPORATION igazolja, hogy a típusú rádióberendezés megfelel a 2014/53/EU irányelvnek. Az EU-megfelelőségi nyilatkozat teljes szövege elérhető a következő internetes címen: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že rádiové zariadenie typu je v súlade so smernicou 2014/53/EÚ. Úplné EÚ vyhlásenie o zhode je k dispozícii na tejto internetovej adrese: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
Tímto DENSO CORPORATION prohlašuje, že typ rádiového zařízení je v souladu se směrnicí 2014/53/EU. Úplné znění EU prohlášení o shodě je k dispozici na této internetové adrese: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
DENSO CORPORATION potrjuje, da je tip radijske opreme skladen z Direktivo 2014/53/EU. Celotno besedilo izjave EU o skladnosti je na voljo na naslednjem spletnem naslovu: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
Aš, DENSO CORPORATION, patvirtinu, kad radijo įrenginių tipas atitinka Direktyvą 2014/53/ES. Visas ES atitikties deklaracijos tekstas prieinamas šiuo interneto adresu: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
Ar šo DENSO CORPORATION deklarē, ka radioiekārta atbilst Direktīvai 2014/53/ES. Pilns ES atbilstības deklarācijas teksts ir pieejams šādā interneta vietnē: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
DENSO CORPORATION niniejszym oświadcza, że typ urządzenia radiowego jest zgodny z dyrektywą 2014/53/UE. Pełny tekst deklaracji zgodności UE jest dostępny pod następującym adresem internetowym: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 2014/53/EU. Samræmisyfirlýsing er einnig aðgengileg á eftirfarandi vefslóð: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
DENSO CORPORATION erklærer at er i overensstemmelse med direktiv 2014/53/EU. Samsvarserklæringen i fulltekst er tilgjengelig på følgende internettadresse: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

С настоящото DENSO CORPORATION декларира, че този тип радиосъоръжение е в съответствие с Директива 2014/53/ЕС. Цялостният текст на ЕС декларацията за съответствие може да се намери на следния интернет адрес: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
Prin prezenta, DENSO CORPORATION declară că tipul de echipamente radio este în conformitate cu Directiva 2014/53/UE. Textul integral al declarației UE de conformitate este disponibil la următoarea adresă internet: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
DENSO CORPORATION ovime izjavljuje da je radijska oprema tipa u skladu s Direktivom 2014/53/EU. Cjeloviti tekst EU izjave o sukladnosti dostupan je na sljedećoj internetskoj adresi: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
Овиме, DENSO CORPORATION изјављује да је радио опрема тип усаглашена са Директивом 2014/53/EU. Цео текст ЕУ декларације о усаглашености доступам је на следећој интернет адреси: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
Amb aquest document, DENSO CORPORATION declara que el tipus d'equipament radioelèctric es conforme a la Directiva 2014/53/UE. El text complet de la declaració UE de conformitat està disponible en la següent adreça d'Internet: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
İşbu belge; DENSO CORPORATION telsiz ekipmanı tipinin 2014/53/AB sayılı Direktif'e uygun olduğunu beyan eder. AB uygunluk beyanının tam metni aşağıdaki internet adresinde mevcuttur: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
Nepermjet kesaj, DENSO CORPORATION, deklaroj qe ky DNMWR006 eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, DENSO CORPORATION declară că tipul de echipamente radio este în conformitate cu Reglementarea tehnică „Punerea la dispoziție pe piață a echipamentelor radio". Textul integral al declarației de conformitate este disponibil la următoarea adresă de Internet: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/

This equipment complies with European radio regulation.
Doesn't comply with the radio regulation of other countries.

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

UK CA

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that the radio equipment type is in compliance with the relevant statutory requirements.
The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:
https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/

Me anë të kësaj deklaratë, subjekti DENSO CORPORATION deklaron se pajisjet radio është në përputhje me këtë rregull teknik për pajisjet radio dhe fundore të komunikimeve elektronike.
Teksti i plotë i Deklaratës së Konformitetit është i disponueshëm në adresën e mëposhtme të internetit:
https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司，商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率，加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業，科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

NOTICE
This equipment has been registered with the Telecommunications Regulatory Authority for use in the UAE.
TRA
REGISTERED No : ER0056099/12
DEALER No : 0019629/09
DENSO DNMWR006

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity



UA RF: 3DENS FR06

модель:DNMWR006
смуга радіочастот: 76-77 ГГц
максимальна вихідна потужність: 6.31 Вт або менше
виробник: DENSO CORPORATION
адреса: 1-1, Showa-cho, Kariya-shi, Aichi-ken, 448-8661 Japan
справжнім DENSO CORPORATION заявляє, що тип радіообладнання відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання;
повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою:
https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/
імпортер
виробник: AUTO International

เพื่อหลีกเลี่ยงจากการสัมผัสสนามแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้า ควรอยู่ห่างจากเซ็นเซอร์ตรวจจับ ใน ระยะไม่ต่ำกว่า 20 เซนติเมตร

เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของคณะกรรมการ กิจการกระจายเสียง กิจการโทรทัศน์ และกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติ(กสทช.)

เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐาน ความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่ คณะกรรมการ กิจการกระจายเสียง กิจการโทรทัศน์ และกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติ(กสทช.) กำหนด

*มีเฉพาะบางรุ่น

OwnersManuals2.com

○Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards DB106440

DENSO DNMR13

○Malaysia

MCMC
CIDF15000184

○Israel

IL: 55-13820

חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי הוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

מוצר : מכ"מ התראה
סימן רשום : DENSO
שם היבואן: דלק מוטורס בע"מ
כתובת היבואן : ת.ד. 200, מושב ניר צבי 7290500, ישראל
ארץ ייצור : ראה מוצר
דגם: DNMWR006
שנת ייצור : ראה מוצר

○ South Africa

TA-2021/2420
ICASA
APPROVED

OwnersManuals2.com

Declaration of Conformity

▼ Wireless Charger (Qi)

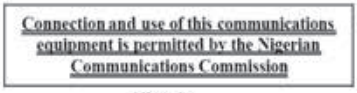
Simplified EU Declaration of Conformity :
The simplified EU declaration of conformity referred to in Article 10(9) shall be provided as follows: Hereby, [*Huizhou Desay SV Automotive Co., Ltd.*] declares that the radio equipment type [designation of type of radio equipment] is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: http://www.desaysv.com/index.php?id=oumeng

Importer, address:
Mazda Motor Logistics Europe NV
Blaasveldstraat 162, 2830 Willebroek, België

Max power transmitter(Wireless Charging)：15W
Operating Frequency: 127KHz
NFC Operating Frequency:13.56Mhz
Maximum RF Output Power(NFC)：6.48 dBuA/m at 3m distance



Philippines



Nigeria



UAE(United Arab Emirates)

For more certification marks, please see the product label.

Taiwan
RoHS 含有物質標識表，請至下列網址查閱：https://www.desaysv.com/index.php?id=twrohs

台灣 NCC 警語：

低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法

第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

商標：Mazda

OwnersManuals2.com

Electromagnetic Compatibility

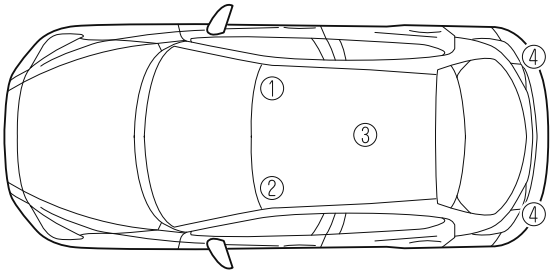
Your Mazda has been tested and certified to the UN-R*1 10 regulation as related to electromagnetic compatibility. Radio Frequency (RF) transmitter equipment (e.g. cellular telephones, amateur radio transmitters, etc.) may only be fitted to your Mazda if they comply with the parameters shown in the table below.

*1 UN-R stands for United Nations Regulation.

It is your responsibility to ensure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislations. Have any equipment fitted by properly trained technicians.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not mount any transceiver, microphones, speakers, or any other item in the deployment path of the air bag system.*
- *Do not fasten aerial lead to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes or brake pipes. Avoid running the aerial lead parallel with the wire harness to the best extent possible.*
- *Keep the aerial and power leads at least 100 mm (3.9 in) from any electronic modules and the air bags.*
- *Avoid using the cigar lighter or accessory socket as a power source for the RF-transmitting equipment.*



Aerial positions:

① : front right of roof
② : front left of roof
③ : centre of roof
④ : both sides of liftgate (Hatchback)

Frequency Band (MHz)	Maximum output power (Wattage)	Aerial Positions
50 — 54	50	①②③④
68 — 87.5	50	①②③④
142 — 176	50	①②③④
380 — 470	50	①②③④
806 — 940	10	①②③④
1200 — 1300	10	①②③④

OwnersManuals2.com

Electromagnetic Compatibility

Frequency Band (MHz)	Maximum output power (Wattage)	Aerial Positions
1710 — 1885	10	①②③④
1885 — 2025	10	①②③④
2400 — 2500	0.01*1	In a cabin*1

*1 Only for Bluetooth®

NOTE

After the installation of RF transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in the vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.
Check all electrical equipment:

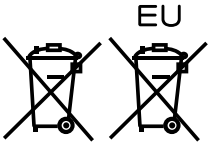
- *with the ignition ON*
- *with the engine running*
- *during a road test at various speeds.*

OwnersManuals2.com

Information for Users on Collection and Disposal of Old Equipment and Used Batteries

When disposing your old battery, please refer to the information as follows.

▼ Information on Disposal in the European Union



These crossed-out wheeled bin symbols on the products, packaging, and/or accompanying documents mean that used electronic products and batteries should not be mixed with general household waste. For proper treatment, recovery and recycling of old products and used batteries, please take them to applicable collection points, in accordance with your national legislation and the Directives 2006/66/EC.

By disposing of these products and batteries correctly, you will help to save valuable resources and prevent any potential negative effects on human health and the environment which could otherwise arise from inappropriate waste handling.

For more information about collection and recycling of old products and batteries, please contact your local municipality, your waste disposal service or the point of sales where you purchased the items.

NOTE



The bottom two letters might be used in combination with the crossed-out wheeled bin symbol. In this case it complies with the requirement established by the Directive for the chemical involved.
“Pb” and “Cd” mean lead and cadmium respectively.

OwnersManuals2.com

Collection/Disposal of Old Equipment/Used Battery

▼ Information on Disposal in Other Countries Outside the European Union

The above symbols are only valid in the European Union. If you wish to discard old products and used batteries, please contact your local authorities, your waste disposal service or the point of sales where you purchased the items, and ask for the correct method of disposal.

OwnersManuals2.com

9 Specifications

Technical information about your Mazda.

Identification Numbers.....9-2
Vehicle Identification Number (South Africa, Arab Gulf Cooperation Council)..... 9-2
Model Plate.....9-2
Chassis Number/Vehicle Identification Number (Ireland, U.K, Cyprus, Malta, Swaziland, Namibia, Botswana, Lesotho)..... 9-3
Vehicle Emission Control Information Label (Thailand, Philippines).....9-3
Tyre Pressure Label..... 9-4
Engine Number.....9-4
Conformity Plate (Arab Gulf Cooperation Council)..... 9-5

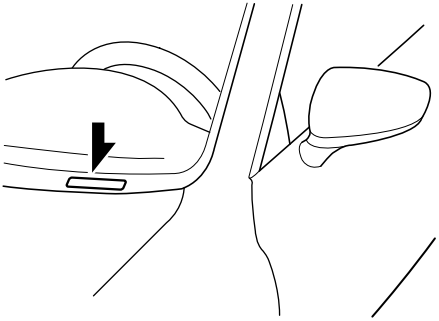
Vehicle Specification.....9-6
Engine.....9-6
Electrical System.....9-7
Lubricant Quality.....9-8
Cleaner.....9-9
Capacities..... 9-10
Dimensions.....9-12
Light Bulbs..... 9-14
Tyres..... 9-15
Brakes.....9-17

OwnersManuals2.com

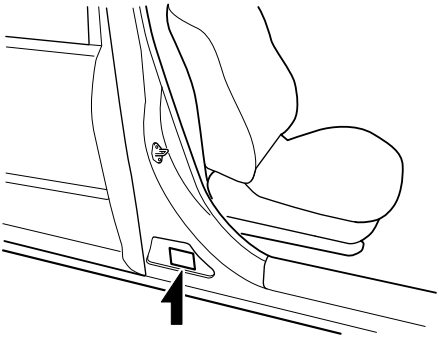
Identification Numbers

Vehicle Identification Number (South Africa, Arab Gulf Cooperation Council)

The vehicle identification number legally identifies your vehicle. The number is on a plate attached to the cowl panel located on the left corner of the instrument panel. This plate can easily be seen through the windscreen.



Model Plate

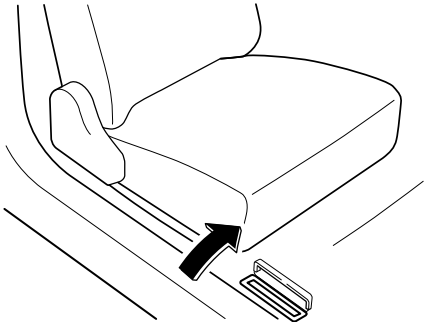


OwnersManuals2.com

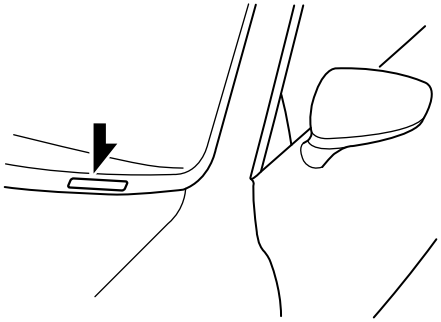
Chassis Number/Vehicle Identification Number (Ireland, U.K, Cyprus, Malta, Swaziland, Namibia, Botswana, Lesotho)

Chassis Number

Open the cover shown in the figure to check the chassis number.

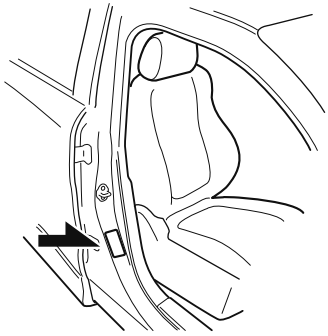


Vehicle Identification Number

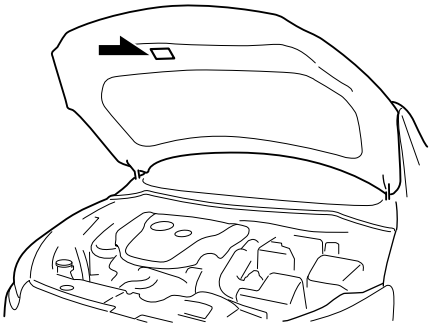


Vehicle Emission Control Information Label (Thailand, Philippines)

Thailand



Philippines

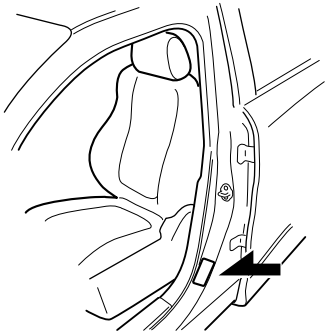


OwnersManuals2.com

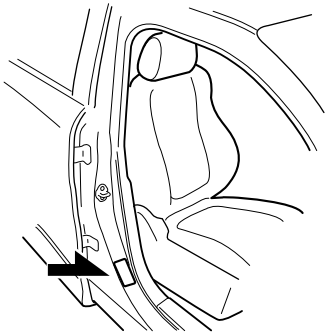
Identification Numbers

Tyre Pressure Label

Left-hand drive model

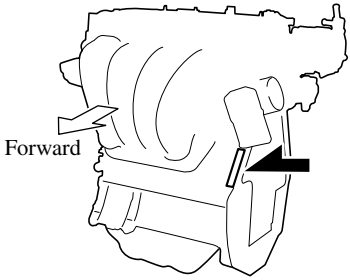


Right-hand drive model

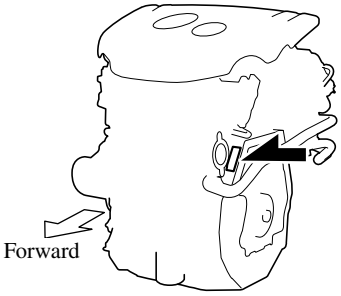


Engine Number

SKYACTIV-G 1.3, SKYACTIV-G 1.5, SKYACTIV-G 2.0



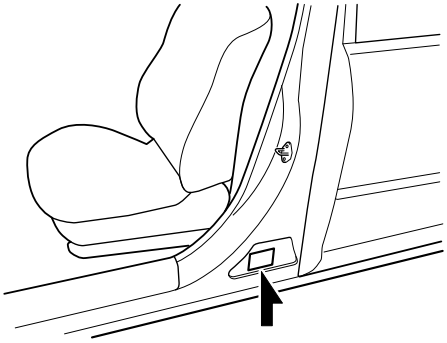
SKYACTIV-D 1.5



OwnersManuals2.com

Conformity Plate (Arab Gulf Cooperation Council)

Production year and month are shown on this plate.



OwnersManuals2.com

Vehicle Specification

Engine

Petrol engine

Item	Specification		
	SKYACTIV-G 1.3	SKYACTIV-G 1.5	SKYACTIV-G 2.0
Type	DOHC-16V in-line, 4-cylinder		
Bore × Stroke	71.0 × 82.0 mm (2.80 × 3.23 in)	74.5 × 85.8 mm (2.93 × 3.38 in)	83.5 × 91.2 mm (3.29 × 3.59 in)
Displacement	1,299 ml (1,299 cc)	1,496 ml (1,496 cc)	1,998 ml (1,998 cc)
Compression ratio	12.0	12.0/13.0/14.0/15.0	13.0

Arab Gulf Cooperation Council

Item	Specification
	SKYACTIV-G 1.5
Maximum engine power/revolution	81 kW/6,000 rpm
Maximum engine torque/revolution	141 N·m/4,000 rpm
Maximum speed	184 km/h (114 mph)

Diesel engine

Item	Specification
	SKYACTIV-D 1.5
Type	DOHC-16V in-line, 4-cylinder
Bore × Stroke	76.0 × 82.6 mm (2.99 × 3.25 in)
Displacement	1,499 ml (1,499 cc)
Compression ratio	14.8

OwnersManuals2.com

Electrical System

Battery*1

(With Mazda M Hybrid)

Classification	Specification
SKYACTIV-G 1.5	N-55 (S)

(Without Mazda M Hybrid)

Classification		Specification
SKYACTIV-G 1.3		N-55 (S)
SKYACTIV-G 1.5, SKYACTIV-G 2.0	With i-stop	Q-85
	Without i-stop	GR35 or 55D23L (12V-60Ah/20HR)
SKYACTIV-D 1.5		Q-85

*1 The battery specification differs depending on the country or region. Check the battery installed on the vehicle and use a battery with an equal or higher performance. However, the performance of the battery may vary even among the same battery types, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for replacement.

Spark-plug

Classification		Specification	
SKYACTIV-G 1.3		Mazda Genuine spark plug*1	PE5R-18-110-A or PE5S-18-110
SKYACTIV-G 1.5	Europe	Mazda Genuine spark plug*1	P5SP-18-110
	Except Europe	Mazda Genuine spark plug*1	P5SP-18-110/ PE5R-18-110-A or PE5S-18-110
SKYACTIV-G 2.0		Mazda Genuine spark plug*1	PE5R-18-110-A or PE5S-18-110

*1 The spark plugs provide the SKYACTIV-G its optimum performance. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for details.

⚠ CAUTION

When cleaning the iridium plugs, do not use a wire brush. The fine particulate coating on the iridium alloy and platinum tips could be damaged.

OwnersManuals2.com

Lubricant Quality

<table>
<tr><th>Engine oil*1</th><th colspan="2">Europe and Taiwan</th><th>Except Europe and Taiwan</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">SKYACTIV-G 1.3,
SKYACTIV-G 1.5,
SKYACTIV-G 2.0</td><td colspan="2">Recommended Oils*2</td><td>Oil Quality</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Mazda Original Oil Supra-X 0W-20</td><td rowspan="5">API SL or higher</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Mazda Original Oil Ultra 5W-30</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Alternative Oil Quality*3</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">API SN or higher</td><td>0W-20</td></tr>
<tr><td>5W-30</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACEA A5/B5</td><td>5W-30</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">SKYACTIV-D 1.5</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">-</td><td>Oil Quality</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACEA C3
0W-30/5W-30</td></tr>
</table>

*1 Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers on page 6-22.
*2 Mazda Original Oils are specially designed/tested for the respective engine. For optimum performance we recommend to use Mazda Original Oils at all times.
*3 If you are unable to find a Mazda Original Oil, alternative oils meeting the listed specification may also be used.

Do not use oils which do not meet the above specification or requirements. Use of unsuitable oil may lead to engine damage which is not covered by the Mazda Warranty.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Lubricant</th><th>Europe</th><th>Except Europe</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Coolant</td><td colspan="2">FL-22 type</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Manual transaxle oil</td><td colspan="2">Mazda Long Life Gear Oil G7*1</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Automatic transaxle fluid*2</td><td>Left-hand drive model</td><td rowspan="2">Mazda Original Oil
ATF-A7</td><td>Mazda Original Oil
ATF-FZ</td></tr>
<tr><td>Right-hand drive model</td><td>Mazda Original Oil
ATF-FZ/
Mazda Original Oil
ATF-A7</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Brake/Clutch fluid</td><td colspan="2">SAE J1703 or FMVSS116 DOT-3 or DOT-4</td></tr>
</table>

*1 Mazda Long Life Gear Oil G7 is superior oil for low fuel cost and optimum shift-feel. Using Mazda Long Life Gear Oil G7 is recommended.
If Mazda Long Life Gear Oil G7 cannot be obtained, use standard oil (API Service GL-4 (SAE 75W-80)).
*2 Periodic replacement is unnecessary.

OwnersManuals2.com

Cleaner

Cleaner	Classification
Deposit Cleaner*1	Mazda genuine deposit cleaner (K002 W0 001 A)

*1 Use Mazda genuine deposit cleaner. Using non-genuine deposit cleaner would cause internal failure of the fuel system. Refer to 3-23, 6-10 for the details.

OwnersManuals2.com

Capacities

(Approximate Quantities)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="4">Item</th><th>Europe</th><th>Except Europe</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">Engine oil</td><td rowspan="2">SKYACTIV-G 1.3, SKYACTIV-G 1.5</td><td colspan="2">With oil filter replacement</td><td colspan="2">4.2 L (4.4 US qt, 3.7 Imp qt)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Without oil filter replacement</td><td colspan="2">3.9 L (4.1 US qt, 3.4 Imp qt)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">SKYACTIV-G 2.0</td><td colspan="2">With oil filter replacement</td><td colspan="2">4.2 L (4.4 US qt, 3.7 Imp qt)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Without oil filter replacement</td><td colspan="2">4.0 L (4.2 US qt, 3.5 Imp qt)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">SKYACTIV-D 1.5</td><td colspan="2">With oil filter replacement</td><td colspan="2">5.1 L (5.4 US qt, 4.5 Imp qt)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Without oil filter replacement</td><td colspan="2">4.7 L (5.0 US qt, 4.1 Imp qt)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="7">Coolant</td><td colspan="3">SKYACTIV-G 1.3</td><td colspan="2">5.4 L (5.7 US qt, 4.8 Imp qt)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">SKYACTIV-G 1.5</td><td rowspan="2">Manual transaxle</td><td>Left-hand drive model</td><td rowspan="2">5.4 L (5.7 US qt, 4.8 Imp qt)</td><td>5.2 L (5.5 US qt, 4.6 Imp qt)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Right-hand drive model</td><td>4.9 L (5.2 US qt, 4.3 Imp qt)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Automatic transaxle</td><td>Left-hand drive model</td><td rowspan="2">5.7 L (6.0 US qt, 5.0 Imp qt)</td><td>5.5 L (5.8 US qt, 4.8 Imp qt)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Right-hand drive model</td><td>5.2 L (5.5 US qt, 4.6 Imp qt)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">SKYACTIV-G 2.0</td><td colspan="2">5.9 L (6.2 US qt, 5.2 Imp qt)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">SKYACTIV-D 1.5</td><td colspan="2">For engine</td><td colspan="2">6.8 L (7.2 US qt, 6.0 Imp qt)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">For water-cooled charge air cooler</td><td colspan="2">2.0 L (2.1 US qt, 1.8 Imp qt)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Manual transaxle oil</td><td colspan="3">SKYACTIV-G 1.5</td><td colspan="2">1.59 L (1.68 US qt, 1.40 Imp qt)</td></tr>
</table>

OwnersManuals2.com

Item			Europe	Except Europe
Automatic transaxle fluid	SKYACTIV-G 1.5	Left-hand drive model	6.9 L (7.3 US qt, 6.1 Imp qt)	7.2 L (7.6 US qt, 6.3 Imp qt)
		Right-hand drive model		6.9 L (7.3 US qt, 6.1 Imp qt)/ 7.2 L (7.6 US qt, 6.3 Imp qt)
	SKYACTIV-G 1.3		7.2 L (7.6 US qt, 6.3 Imp qt)	
	SKYACTIV-G 2.0, SKYACTIV-D 1.5		7.8 L (8.2 US qt, 6.9 Imp qt)	
Fuel tank	SKYACTIV-G 1.3		35.0 L (9.25 US gal, 7.70 Imp gal)	
	SKYACTIV-G 1.5, SKYACTIV-G 2.0, SKYACTIV-D 1.5		44.0 L (11.6 US gal, 9.68 Imp gal)	

Check oil and fluid levels with dipsticks or reservoir gauges.

OwnersManuals2.com

Vehicle Specification

Dimensions

Saloon

Item		Vehicle specification
Overall length	Without number plate holder	4,340 mm (170.9 in)
	With number plate holder	4,345 mm (171.1 in)
Overall width		1,695 mm (66.7 in)
Overall height	Except Colombia	1,470 mm (57.9 in)
	Colombia	1,485 mm (58.5 in)
Front tread		1,495 mm (58.9 in)
Rear tread		1,485 mm (58.5 in)
Wheelbase		2,570 mm (101.2 in)

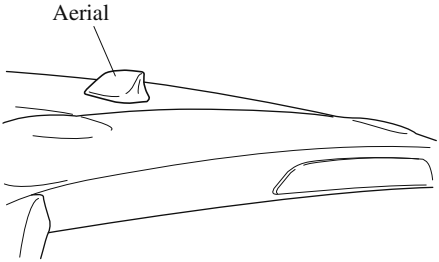
Hatchback

Item			Vehicle specification
Overall length	Without number plate holder		4,080 mm (160.6 in)
	With number plate holder	Except Bolivia, Ecuador	4,085 mm (160.8 in)
		Bolivia, Ecuador	4,075 mm (160.4 in)
Overall width			1,695 mm (66.7 in)
Overall height*1	Except Bolivia, Colombia, Ecuador, Uruguay	Type A	1,515 mm (59.7 in)
		Type B	1,495 mm (58.9 in)
	Bolivia, Colombia, Ecuador, Uruguay	Type A	1,530 mm (60.2 in)
		Type B	1,510 mm (59.5 in)
Front tread	Except Bolivia, Colombia, Ecuador, Uruguay		1,495 mm (58.9 in)
	Bolivia, Colombia, Ecuador, Uruguay		1,490 mm (58.7 in)
Rear tread			1,485 mm (58.5 in)
Wheelbase			2,570 mm (101.2 in)

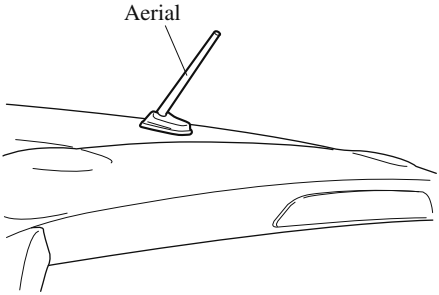
*1 The overall height is categorized according to the aerial type as follows:

OwnersManuals2.com

Type A



Type B



OwnersManuals2.com

Light Bulbs

Exterior light

Light bulb		Category	
		Wattage	UN-R*1 (SAE)
Headlights	High beam/Low beam	LED	— (—)
	Wide-range low beam*	LED	— (—)
Running lights*	LED type	LED	— (—)
	Bulb type	21*2	W21/5W (7444)
Position lights	LED type	LED	— (—)
	Bulb type	5	W5W (—)
Front direction indicator lights		21	WY21W (7443NA)
Side direction indicator lights		LED	— (—)
High-mount brake light		LED	— (—)
Rear direction indicator lights		21	WY21W (7443NA)
Brake lights/Tail lights	LED type	LED	— (—)
	Bulb type	21/5	W21/5W (7443)
Reverse lights	Saloon	16	W16W (921)
	Hatchback	LED	— (—)
Rear fog light*	Saloon	21	W21W (7440)
	Hatchback	LED	— (—)
Number plate lights		5	W5W (—)

*1 UN-R stands for United Nations Regulation.
*2 Double-filament light bulb, however, only 21 W filament bulb is used in the running lights.

Interior light

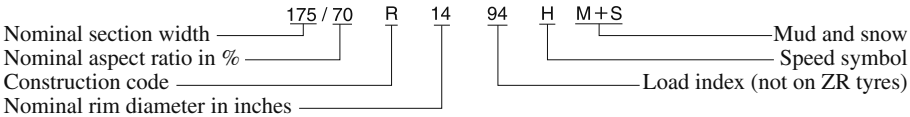
Light bulb		Category	
		Wattage	UN-R*1
Overhead light (Front)	With map lights	8	—
	Without map lights	10	—
Overhead light (Rear)*		10	—
Boot light (Saloon)		3	—
Luggage compartment light (Hatchback)		5	—

*1 UN-R stands for United Nations Regulation.

OwnersManuals2.com

Tyres

Sample tyre mark and its meaning



Tyre mark information

Choose the proper tyres for your vehicle using the following tyre mark information.

Speed symbol	Maximum permissible speed
Q	Up to 160 km/h (99 mph)
R	Up to 170 km/h (105 mph)
S	Up to 180 km/h (111 mph)
T	Up to 190 km/h (118 mph)
U	Up to 200 km/h (124 mph)
H	Up to 210 km/h (130 mph)
V	Up to 240 km/h (149 mph)
W	Up to 270 km/h (167 mph)
Y	Up to 300 km/h (186 mph)
ZR	Over 240 km/h (149 mph)

Tyre and inflation pressure

NOTE

The tyres have been optimally matched with the chassis of your vehicle.
When replacing tyres, Mazda recommends that you replace tyres of the same type originally fitted to your vehicle. For details, contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Check the tyre pressure label for tyre size and inflation pressure.

· Refer to Tyre Pressure Label on page 9-4.
· Refer to Tyre Inflation Pressure on page 6-40.

OwnersManuals2.com

Vehicle Specification

Standard tyre

Tyre size		Inflation pressure	
		Up to 3 persons	—Full load
185/65R15 88T	Front	250 kPa (2.5 bar, 36 psi)	270 kPa (2.7 bar, 39 psi)
	Rear	230 kPa (2.3 bar, 33 psi)	320 kPa (3.2 bar, 46 psi)
185/60R16 86H	Front	250 kPa (2.5 bar, 36 psi)	270 kPa (2.7 bar, 39 psi)
	Rear	230 kPa (2.3 bar, 33 psi)	330 kPa (3.3 bar, 48 psi)

1 person's weight: About 75 kg

Winter tyre

Tyre size		Inflation pressure	
		Up to 3 persons	—Full load
185/65R15*1M+S	Front	230 kPa (2.3 bar, 33 psi)	260 kPa (2.6 bar, 38 psi)
	Rear	230 kPa (2.3 bar, 33 psi)	320 kPa (3.2 bar, 46 psi)
185/60R16*2M+S	Front	250 kPa (2.5 bar, 36 psi)	270 kPa (2.7 bar, 39 psi)
	Rear	250 kPa (2.5 bar, 36 psi)	320 kPa (3.2 bar, 46 psi)*3/ 350 kPa (3.5 bar, 50 psi)*4

1 person's weight: About 75 kg

*1 Load index and Speed Symbol: 88Q/88S/88T

*2 Load index and Speed Symbol: 86Q/86S/86T/86H

*3 Load index and Speed Symbol: 86Q/86S/86T

*4 Load index and Speed Symbol: 86H

Wheel nut tightening torque

When installing a tyre, tighten the wheel nut to the following torque.
108—147 N·m (12—14 kgf·m, 80—108 ft·lbf)

OwnersManuals2.com

Brakes

If you require information regarding the wear limit specification for the brake disc plates and drums, or the measurement method, please contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). The information is made freely available.

OwnersManuals2.com

MEMO

OwnersManuals2.com

10 Index

OwnersManuals2.com

A

Accessory Socket..... 5-93
Active Driving Display.....4-36
Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)... 4-101
Add-On Non-Genuine Parts and Accessories.....8-3
Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL).... 4-153
Activation/deactivation.....4-157
Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL) display.....4-154
Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL) main indication (white)..... 4-155
Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL) set indication (white)/indicator light (green).....4-155
Setting the system..... 4-158
Speed limiter warning beep.....4-156
Temporarily cancelling the system..... 4-159
Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL) Display..... 4-32
Advanced Key
Advanced keyless entry system.....3-9
Operational range..... 3-10
Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS).....4-160
Collision warning..... 4-162
Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) Indicator Light (Red).....4-162
Stopping the Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) system operation.....4-162
Air Bag Systems..... 2-47
Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Beep.....7-49
Air-Conditioning System..... 5-2
Fully Automatic Type.....5-11
Manual Type.....5-5
Operating Tips..... 5-2
Vent Operation.....5-3
Ambient Temperature Display..... 4-31
Antilock Brake System (ABS).....4-84
Ashtray..... 5-102
Audio Control Switch
Adjusting the Volume.....5-15
Mute Switch..... 5-15
Seek Switch..... 5-16
Audio Set
Appendix..... 5-68
AUX.....5-27
Bluetooth®..... 5-34
Clock.....5-23
Error Indications.....5-33
iPod mode.....5-31
Power/Volume/Sound Controls... 5-21
Radio.....5-24
Radio (RDS).....5-24
Troubleshooting.....5-64
USB..... 5-28
Voice Recognition..... 5-60
Audio System
Aerial..... 5-19
Audio Control Switch..... 5-15
Audio set..... 5-21
AUX/USB mode.....5-17
Before Using the Audio System..... 5-15
Automatic Transaxle..... 4-52
Active Adaptive Shift (AAS)..... 4-55
Automatic transaxle controls.....4-52
Direct mode.....4-61
Driving tips.....4-62
Manual shift mode.....4-56
Shift-lock system.....4-53
Transaxle ranges.....4-54

B

Battery..... 6-36
Electrical system.....9-7
Inspecting Electrolyte Level.....6-38

OwnersManuals2.com

Maintenance.....6-37
Replacement..... 6-38
Battery runs out.....7-23
Jump-Starting.....7-23
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)..... 4-109
Cancelling operation of Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM).....4-114
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) System warning beep..... 7-52
Bluetooth®
Bluetooth® Audio..... 5-50
Bluetooth® Hands-Free.....5-53
Bluetooth® Preparation.....5-37
Body Lubrication..... 6-31
Bonnet Release.....6-18
Boot Lid..... 3-18
When liftgate/boot lid cannot be opened.....7-54
Boot Light..... 5-91
Bottle Holder.....5-99
Brakes
Brakes..... 9-17
Brakes assist..... 4-81
Foot brake.....4-79
Pad wear indicator.....4-80
Parking brake.....4-80
Warning light.....4-80

C

Carbon Monoxide..... 3-26
Cell Phones..... 8-4
Child Restraint
Categories of child-restraint systems.....2-33
Child-restraint precautions..... 2-28
Child-restraint system installation..... 2-33
Child-restraint system suitability for various seat positions table.....2-38
Installing child-restraint systems.....2-43
Child Safety Locks for Rear Doors... 3-18
Collision warning..... 7-53
Coming Home Light..... 4-67
Cruise Control..... 4-217
Cruise Control Switch..... 4-218
Cruise main indication (white)..... 4-219
Cruise set indication (white)/indicator light (green)..... 4-219
Cruise Control Set Vehicle Speed Display..... 4-32
Cup Holder.....5-98

D

Defogger
Mirror.....4-77
Rear window..... 4-76
Deposit Cleaner.....3-23
Diesel Particulate Filter.....4-226
Direction Indicators.....4-70
Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS)..... 4-121
Indication on display..... 4-122
Door Locks.....3-11
Driver Attention Alert (DAA).....4-123
Drive selection..... 4-92
Driving In Flooded Area.....3-48
Driving Tips
Automatic transaxle.....4-62
Driving in flooded area..... 3-48
Floor mat..... 3-44
Hazardous driving..... 3-44
Rocking the vehicle.....3-45
Running-in..... 3-43
Saving fuel and protection of the environment..... 3-43
Turbocharged vehicles (SKYACTIV-D 1.5).....3-49

OwnersManuals2.com

Winter driving..... 3-46
Dynamic Stability Control (DSC).....4-86
DSC OFF Indicator Light.....4-87
DSC OFF Switch.....4-87
TCS/DSC Indicator Light.....4-86

E

Electronic steering lock warning beep..... 7-51
Emergency Starting
Push-Starting..... 7-27
Running Out of Fuel (SKYACTIV-D 1.5).....7-28
Starting a flooded engine..... 7-27
Emergency Stop Signal System..... 4-82
Emergency Towing
Towing Description..... 7-31
Towing/Tiedown Hooks..... 7-32
Emission Control System.....3-25
Emission Control System (SKYACTIV-D 1.5)..... 3-25
Engine
Bonnet release..... 6-18
Coolant.....6-27
Engine.....9-6
Engine Compartment Overview..... 6-20
Engine number..... 9-4
Exhaust gas.....3-26
Oil..... 6-22
Starting.....4-5
Essential information..... 6-2
Exhaust Gas..... 3-26
Exterior Care..... 6-59
Aluminium Wheel Maintenance.....6-64
Bright-Metal Maintenance.....6-63
Cavity Protection..... 6-63
Maintaining the Finish..... 6-60
Paint Damage Touch-up..... 6-63
Plastic Part Maintenance..... 6-64
Undercoating..... 6-63

F

Flasher
Hazard warning..... 4-78
Headlights.....4-63
Flat Tyre..... 7-3
Mounting the Spare Tyre.....7-21
Removing a Flat Tyre.....7-18
Floor Mat..... 3-44
Fluid
Brake/Clutch..... 6-29
Washer..... 6-30
Fog Lights
Rear.....4-69
Foot Brake.....4-79
Forward Sensing Camera (FSC)..... 4-204
Front Seat.....2-5
Fuel
Filler flap and cap..... 3-27
Gauge.....4-30
Requirements..... 3-22
Requirements (SKYACTIV-D 1.5).....3-24
Fuses.....6-53
Panel description..... 6-55
Replacement..... 6-53

G

Gauges.....4-23
Glove Compartment.....5-100

H

Hazardous Driving..... 3-44
Hazard Warning Flasher.....4-78
Headlights
Coming home light.....4-67
Control.....4-63
Flashing..... 4-67

OwnersManuals2.com

High-low beam....4-67
Leaving home light....4-68
Levelling....4-68
Running lights....4-68
Washer....4-75
Headlight Washer....4-75
Head Restraint....2-17
High Beam Control System (HBC)....4-98
Hill Launch Assist (HLA)....4-82
Horn....4-77

I

If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes....7-34
If the Active Driving Display Does Not Operate....7-56
Ignition
Switch....4-4
Ignition not switched off (STOP) warning beep....7-50
Illuminated Entry System....5-92
Immobilizer System....3-37
Indicator Lights....4-43
Glow plug....4-47
Low engine coolant temperature....4-47
Wrench....4-47
Inspecting Brake/Clutch Fluid Level....6-29
Inspecting Coolant Level....6-27
Inspecting Engine Oil Level....6-26
Inspecting Washer Fluid Level....6-30
Inspection and Maintenance
Capacities....9-10
Chassis number/vehicle identification number....9-3
Cleaner....9-9
Conformity plate....9-5
Dimensions....9-12
Lubricant quality....9-8
Model plate....9-2
Vehicle emission control information Label....9-3
Vehicle identification number....9-2
Instrument Cluster....4-23
Instrument Panel Illumination....4-30
Interior Care....6-65
Active driving display maintenance....6-67
Cleaning the window interiors....6-67
Instrument panel top maintenance....6-66
Leather upholstery maintenance....6-66
Panel maintenance....6-67
Plastic part maintenance....6-66
Seat belt maintenance....6-65
Upholstery maintenance....6-66
Vinyl upholstery maintenance....6-65
Interior Lights....5-91
Boot Light....5-91
Luggage Compartment Light....5-91
Map Lights....5-91
Overhead Lights....5-91
i-ACTIVSENSE....4-94
Active Safety Technology....4-94
Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)....4-101
Adjustable Speed Limiter (ASL)....4-153
Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)....4-160
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)....4-109
Detection Devices....4-96
Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS)....4-121
Driver Attention Alert (DAA)....4-123
Forward Sensing Camera (FSC)....4-204

OwnersManuals2.com

High Beam Control System (HBC)..... 4-98
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)..... 4-103
Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)..... 4-140
Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)..... 4-129
Pre-Crash Safety Technology..... 4-95
Radar Sensors (Rear)..... 4-213
Radar sensor (front)..... 4-210
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)..... 4-125
Smart Brake Support (SBS)..... 4-174
Smart City Brake Support [Forward] (SCBS F)..... 4-164
Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R)..... 4-169
Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR)..... 4-115
Ultrasonic sensor (rear)..... 4-215
360°View Monitor..... 4-177
i-ELOOP..... 4-88
Control status display..... 4-88
Display..... 4-88
i-ELOOP indicator light..... 4-88
i-stop..... 4-12
Indicator light (Green)..... 4-18
i-stop OFF switch..... 4-20
Vehicle roll prevention function..... 4-21
Warning light (Amber)..... 4-18
i-stop warning beep..... 7-51

J

Jack..... 7-8
Jump-Starting..... 7-23

K

Keyless Entry System..... 3-4
Keys..... 3-2
Key suspend function..... 3-8
Transmitter..... 3-5
Key left-in-luggage compartment warning beep (With the advanced keyless function)..... 7-50
Key left-in-vehicle warning beep (With the advanced keyless function)..... 7-51
Key removed from vehicle warning beep..... 7-50
Key Suspend Function..... 3-8

L

Lane Departure Warning sound..... 7-52
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)..... 4-103
LDWS OFF switch..... 4-106
Lane-Change Signals..... 4-71
Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)..... 4-140
Leaving Home Light..... 4-68
Liftgate..... 3-18
When liftgate/boot lid cannot be opened..... 7-54
Liftgate/Boot Lid
Luggage compartment..... 3-21
Lighting Control..... 4-63
Lights
Light bulbs..... 9-14
Lights-on reminder..... 7-49
Light Bulbs
Replacement..... 6-44
Luggage Compartment..... 5-101
Cargo Sub-Compartment..... 5-101
Luggage Compartment Light..... 5-91

OwnersManuals2.com

M

Maintenance
Information....6-2
Scheduled....6-3
Manual Windows....3-36
Map Lights....5-91
Mazda Connect....5-73
Appendix....5-84
Mazda Connect Basic Operations....5-76
Mazda M Hybrid....4-90
Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)....4-129
Close proximity warning....4-132
Cruise control function....4-138
Display indication....4-131
Setting the system....4-132
Shift-up/shift-down request display....4-137
Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) System warnings....7-53
Message Indicated on Display....7-47
Meters and Gauges....4-23
Mirrors
Outside mirrors....3-29
Rearview mirror....3-31
Mirror Defogger....4-77

O

Odometer and Trip Meter....4-25
Outside Mirrors....3-29
Outside Temperature Display....4-31
Outside temperature warning beep....7-51
Overhead Console....5-100
Overhead Lights....5-91
Overheating....7-29
Over Rev. buzzer....7-52
Owner Maintenance
Closing the Bonnet....6-18
Engine Compartment Overview....6-20
Key battery replacement....6-38
Opening the Bonnet....6-18
Owner Maintenance Precautions....6-16

P

Parking Brake....4-80
Parking Sensor System....4-235
Parking sensor system operation....4-239
Sensor detection range....4-237
Power Steering....4-93
Power steering warning buzzer....7-52
Power Windows....3-33

R

Radar Sensors (Rear)....4-213
Radar Sensor (Front)....4-210
Rearview Mirror....3-31
Rear Coat Hooks....5-102
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)....4-125
Rear Door Child Safety Locks....3-18
Rear Seat....2-14
Rear View Monitor....4-227
Displayable range on the screen....4-229
Picture quality adjustment....4-234
Rear view monitor operation....4-230
Rear view parking camera location....4-228
Switching to the rear view monitor display....4-228
Variance between actual road conditions and displayed Image....4-233
Viewing the display....4-230
Rear Window Defogger....4-76
Rear Window Washer....4-75

OwnersManuals2.com

Rear Window Wiper..... 4-75
Recommended Oil.....6-22
Registering Your Vehicle in A Foreign Country.....8-2
Replacement
Fuse.....6-53
Key battery..... 6-38
Light Bulbs.....6-44
Tyres..... 6-42
Wheel.....6-43
Wiper..... 6-31
Request switch inoperable warning beep (With the advanced keyless function)..... 7-50
Roadside Emergency Triangle Retaining Strap..... 7-2
Rocking the Vehicle.....3-45
Running-In..... 3-43

S

Saving Fuel and Protection of the Environment.....3-43
Scheduled Maintenance..... 6-3
Seats..... 2-5
Driver's seat.....2-5
Driving position memory..... 2-11
Front passenger's seat.....2-13
Front seat.....2-5
Head restraint..... 2-17
Rear seat.....2-14
Seat warmer.....2-19
Seat Belt System
Emergency locking.....2-23
Pregnant women.....2-23
Seat belt precautions..... 2-21
3-point type..... 2-24
Seat belt warning beep.....7-49
Security System
Immobilizer system.....3-37
Theft-deterrent system.....3-39
Smart Brake Support (SBS).....4-174
Collision warning..... 4-175
Smart Brake Support (SBS) indicator light (red).....4-175
Stopping the Smart Brake Support (SBS) system operation.....4-175
Smart City Brake Support [Forward] (SCBS F).....4-164
Collision warning..... 4-167
Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) Indicator Light (Red).....4-167
Stopping the Smart City Brake Support [Forward] (SCBS F) system operation.....4-167
Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R)..... 4-169
Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) Indicator Light (Red).....4-173
Stopping the Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) system operation.....4-173
Spare Tyre..... 7-9
Speedometer.....4-25
Speed Limiter Warning Beep.....7-53
Speed Unit Selector..... 4-25
SRS Air Bags
Front passenger air bag deactivation switch.....2-52
How the SRS air bags work..... 2-56
Limitations to SRS air bag.....2-60
Monitoring.....2-62
SRS air bag deployment criteria.....2-59
Supplementary restraint system components.....2-55
Starting the Engine.....4-5
Steering Wheel
Heated steering wheel..... 2-20
Horn.....4-77
Storage Compartments.....5-99
Glove compartment..... 5-100

OwnersManuals2.com

Luggage Compartment..... 5-101
Overhead console..... 5-100
Rear coat hooks..... 5-102
Sunvisors..... 5-91

T

Tachometer..... 4-29
Theft-Deterrent System..... 3-39
Towing
Towing Caravans and Trailers (Europe/Turkey/Israel/South Africa)..... 3-50
Towing Description..... 7-31
Towing/Tiedown Hook..... 7-32
Traction Control System (TCS)..... 4-85
TCS/DSC Indicator Light..... 4-85
Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR)..... 4-115
Transmitter..... 3-5
Trip Computer..... 4-32
Trip Meter..... 4-25
Trouble
Battery runs out..... 7-23
Emergency Starting..... 7-27
Emergency Towing..... 7-31
Flat Tyre..... 7-3
Overheating..... 7-29
Parking in an Emergency..... 7-2
When liftgate/boot lid cannot be opened..... 7-54
Tyres..... 6-40
Flat Tyre..... 7-3
Replacing a Tyre..... 6-42
Replacing a Wheel..... 6-43
Snow tyres..... 3-46
Temporary Spare Tyre..... 6-43
Tyres..... 9-15
Tyre chains..... 3-47
Tyre Inflation Pressure..... 6-40
Tyre pressure label..... 9-4
Tyre Rotation..... 6-41
Tyre inflation pressure warning beep..... 7-52
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System... 4-223

U

Ultrasonic Sensor (Rear)..... 4-215

V

Vanity Mirrors..... 5-91
Vehicle speed alarm..... 7-51

W

Warning Lights..... 4-40
Warning Sound is Activated..... 7-49
Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Beep..... 7-49
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) System warning beep..... 7-52
Collision warning..... 7-53
Electronic steering lock warning beep..... 7-51
Ignition not switched off (STOP) warning beep..... 7-50
i-stop warning beep..... 7-51
Key left-in-luggage compartment warning beep (With the advanced keyless function)..... 7-50
Key left-in-vehicle warning beep (With the advanced keyless function)..... 7-51
Key removed from vehicle warning beep..... 7-50
Lane Departure Warning sound... 7-52
Lights-on reminder..... 7-49
Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) System warnings..... 7-53
Outside temperature warning beep..... 7-51

OwnersManuals2.com

Over Rev. buzzer.....7-52
Power steering warning buzzer....7-52
Request switch inoperable warning beep (With the advanced keyless function).....7-50
Seat belt warning beep.....7-49
Speed Limiter Warning Beep.....7-53
Tyre inflation pressure warning beep.....7-52
Vehicle speed alarm.....7-51
120 km/h warning beep.....7-51
Warranty.....8-2
Windows
Manual windows.....3-36
Power windows.....3-33
Windscreen Washer.....4-74
Windscreen Wipers.....4-72
Winter Driving.....3-46
Wiper
Replacing Rear Window Wiper Blade (Hatchback).....6-34
Replacing Windscreen Wiper Blades.....6-32
Wireless Charger (Qi).....5-94

0-9

120 km/h warning beep.....7-51
360°View Monitor.....4-177
Front wide view.....4-190
How to use the system.....4-183
Margin of error between road surface on screen and actual road surface.....4-200
Rear wide view.....4-198
Side view.....4-192
Top view/front view.....4-187
Top view/rear view.....4-195
Types of images displayed on the screen.....4-181

OwnersManuals2.com

MAZDA MOTOR CORPORATION

8LM4 Form No. 8LM4-EE-23B_1

Printed in Europe

OwnersManuals2.com